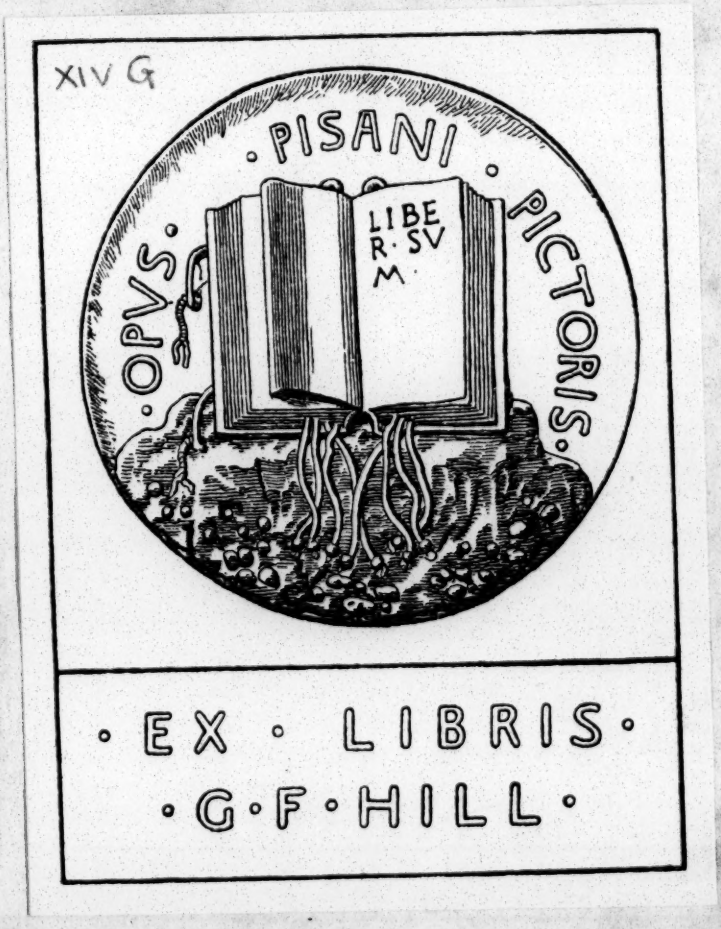


Randolph Greenway
of Thavies Inn London and of
Chertsey in Surry Gent..

fv3:3

Randolph Greenway Junr. of Thavies
Inne Holbourn his Book Bought
28th August 1732.



Cp. B.M. 2098 b

This Lacks frontispiece
(portrait of George Augustus,
Prince of Wales)
& Title Page differs
Otherwise corresponds



X 1481 aaa.50.

THE HISTORY

Of the most NOBLE

Order of the GARTER:

And the several ORDERS of *Knighthood* extant in *EUROPE.*

Containing

I. The Antiquity of the Town, Castle, Chapel, and College of *Winasor*; with their several *Officers:* The Foundation of the *ORDER* by King *EDWARD* III. The Statutes and Annals at large, as they have been altered and amended

II. The HABITS, ENSIGNS, and OFFICERS of the *ORDER.* The Ceremonies of Election, Investiture, and Instalment of Knights: The manner of their Feasts; and the Duties and Fees payable on these Occasions. Some Account of the *Founders*, with an exact List of all that have been installed since the Institution, and their several Coats of Arms emblazon'd.

Written at the Command of King Charles II. *By* ELIAS ASHMOLE, *Esq*; Windsor *Herald. Now compared with the Author's Corrections in his Library at* Oxford, *faithfully digested, and continued down to the present Time.*

The Whole illustrated with proper Sculptures.

LONDON: Printed for *A. Bell* in *Cornhill*, *E. Curll*, *J. Pemberton*, and *A. Collins* in *Fleet-street*; *W. Taylor* and *J. Baker* in *Pater-Noster-Row*, 1715.

Price 7 *s.* 6 *d.*


BRITISH MUSEUM
26
46
AUG

TO HIS

ROYAL HIGHNESS

GEORGE-AUGUST,

Prince of WALES, *&c.*

KNIGHT and *COMPANION* of the *MOST NOBLE ORDER* of the *GARTER.*

PARDON me, Mighty Prince, that in the Crowd of Your Joyful and Devoted *Britons*, one of an obſcure Fame preſumes to lay his *Humble Offering* at Your Feet.

IT is the *Hiſtory* of the *MOST NOBLE ORDER of the GARTER*; which, from its firſt Inſtitution, has been conſtantly worn by Perſons of the higheſt Birth, and moſt illuſtrious Merit.

IF the *Stile* and *Manner*, in which it is treated, were proportionable to the Dignity of the Subject, there would need no Apology for this Dedication. For to whom, next to the *Great Sovereign* of the *Garter*, whose true *Heir* You are, in all manner of *Virtue* and *Honour*, could this Treatise have recourse for Protection, but to Your Royal Highness, who are the Premier *Knight of this Most Noble Order*, and the standing *Grace* and *Ornament* of it.

BUT far above all particular *Views*, are the unspeakable Blessings derived to these Kingdoms, by the SUCCESSION of Your Illustrious Royal *House*:

Every

Every *Briton* ſeems new Born, and to have borrow'd freſh Influence from its Glorious Preſence.

THE Godlike Virtues of Your Royal Father, are not to be excelled; and ſhould we venture to expreſs an Equality, it can only be the Appearance of Your Royal Highneſs's imitating ſo Great a Pattern.

AS He is Wiſe and Good beyond Praiſe, ſo has He a Title to the Hearts of His People beyond Queſtion; which ſtands Confirmed by the higheſt Inſtances of Divine Providence, as well as the inconteſtible Authorities of Temporal Laws: On theſe Foundations, what glorious Proſpects may we not

Build

Build of future Happineſs?

IT were eaſy to dwell on this Subject, were it not waſting Moments of much more concern to Your Royal Highneſs, than what I am able to Expreſs.

MAY Your Royal Highneſs long Live to Adorn this *MOST NOBLE ORDER*, and to ſupport the Crown, by a bountiful and flouriſhing Iſſue, that there may never want one of Your Royal Line to ſit on the Throne of *Great-Britain*,

Is the Ardent Prayer of,
ILLUSTRIOUS SIR!

Your Royal Highneſs's
Moſt Faithful,
Moſt Obedient,
and Humbly Devoted Servant.



THE PREFACE.

THoſe who are acquainted with Mr. Aſhmole's Hiſtory of the moſt Noble Order of the Garter, *will eaſily ſatisfy themſelves; that no Pains or Induſtry was wanting to Perfect and Complete ſo Voluminous a Work: He had the Encouragement of a very gracious Prince, and the uſe of publick Records, more particularly the ſeveral Books of the* Order, *with the Aſſiſtance of ſeveral MSS wrote by the Officers of Arms, who bore Part in the Ceremonies, or went on Embaſſies to Stranger Kings, Princes,* &c. *and by their conſtant Obſervations, were familiarly verſed in all its Laws and Cuſtoms.*

Theſe were very great helps to him, and it muſt be confeſſed his own elaborate Study had not leſs owing to it. There is nothing that has relation to this moſt Noble Order, *which he has not touched on; and indeed*

deed it is a Work ſo very copious, that he does himſelf acknowledge he has inſerted ſome things of little importance; which he deſires may be conſidered to be done, to gratify ſome few, who have a more immediate concern therein.

The Reader will in this Treatiſe find little elſe omitted: A very painful and exact Abridgment has been made, many Corrections of the Author's, which he ſaw before his Death, and left among his other Books in his Library at Oxford, *are here carefully altered; ſome Additions are made, a Liſt continued, of the ſeveral* Knights-Companions, *as well as Officers of the* Order, *for above forty Years; and the Coats of Arms of abundance of the* Knights-Companions *viſibly corrected from good Authorities; and every diſtinct Chapter treated of at large; ſo that this Work has not been compleated but at great Labour as well as Expence, which could not have been ſupported, but for the Encouragement ſome of the* Knights-Companions *of the* moſt Noble Order *were pleaſed to give it; as well in their Subſcriptions, as in the good Opinion they ſeemed to Expreſs of the Deſign.*

THE



THE HISTORY OF THE Most Noble ORDER OF THE GARTER.

IT was, undoubtedly, a good Sentiment in the firſt Collector of this Learned Work, to introduce, as well as a Diſcourſe of *Knighthood* in general, a Treatiſe of all the ſeveral *Orders* that have prevail'd in other Parts of the World; for theſe in their Riſe and Inſtitutions, having a relative Senſe to the particular Subject he was to illuſtrate, ſeemed to afford him a very good Opportunity of doing it, by building on ſo convenient a Foundation.

I ſhall therefore, (tho' much more confin'd to brevity) follow the ſame Method, making it ſerve as a proper Introduction; there being many Things in the voluminous Original, which I conceive may with leſs Inconveniency be diſpenc'd with.

IT was a conſtant Maxim in all well-regulated Governments, to give a juſt Encouragement to Merit, and this by proportioning Rewards to the Service done; for Merit muſt be ſuppos'd to conſiſt in the Perfor-

mance of ſome Vertuous or Heroick Action, directed for the publick Good: And as Vertue is either Military or Civil, ſo the Diſtribution of Rewards is different; either by beſtowing Degrees and Titles of Honour, or by Donations of Wealth; ſo that in either Conſtruction, Vertue may have its proper and ſuitable Reward.

But the proper Reward of Military *Vertue*, is Honour: (to which diſtinct Head this Work is confin'd.) Honour, which *Ariſtotle* calls the *Greateſt of exteriour Goods*: And being an Object of a nobler Ambition than the Accumulation of Wealth, is principally the Aim of that *Vertue* we underſtand by *Valour*; which ſprings from more generous Spirits, and hath been the conſtant Foundation of raiſing Men to the higheſt Eminence of Glory, and ſuperiour Dignity.

But that Fame might not loſe it ſelf in an unbounded Notion, it was at length thought fit to reduce Honour into Form and Order, by inveſting the Perſon meriting with ſome particular Title or Appellation of Excellence, (the Original of all Nobility;) of which Knighthood, as it hath been accounted the moſt ſuitable Reward to the greateſt Vertue, ſo it hath been eſteemed the chief and primary Honour among many Nations.

The *Romans* held Honour and Vertue in that Eſteem, that they deify'd, and dedicated Temples to them: They made them ſo contiguous in their Situation, that there was no other Paſſage to that of Honour, but thro' the Temple of Vertue, myſtically admoniſhing, that Honour was not to be attained by any other Way.

In ſeveral of the *Roman* Coins we ſee Honour and Vertue repreſented together in one Reverſe, and in one Medal; the Face of Honour ſo ſhadows that of Vertue, that but a little of it appears, *Honour being the more illuſtrious of the two; and where we behold any Perſon outwardly adorned with it, we are to judge him inwardly endued with Vertue, inaſmuch as Honour is his due, and juſtly beſtowed upon him.*

§. 2. In tracing the Original of Knighthood, we are not ſo vain to ſay, with the *French*, that S. *Michael* was the *premier Chevalier*; yet thus much we may aſſert, that 'tis near as ancient as Valour and Heroic Vertue, notwithſtanding the Ceremonies and Circumſtances of it have varied according to ſeveral Ages and Nations: And therefore, with much Probability, we may derive the

Origi-

Original of Military Honour from the *Trojans* and *Greeks*; among whom, as Knights of great Renown, were *Hector*, *Troilus*, *Æneas*, *Antenor*, *Agamemnon*, *Menelaus*, *Peleus*, *Tydeus*, &c. And thus *Homer* uſes the Word ἱππότης, in the ſame Senſe as *Eques* was afterwards among the *Latins*.

Τοῖσι δὲ καὶ μετέειπε γερήνιος ἱππότα Νέστωρ,

'Mong whom thus *Neſtor* ſpake, that honour'd Knight.

§. 3. Upon a more ſubſtantial Baſis we ſhall deſcend to the *Romans*; among whom, in the very Infancy of their Military Glory, a Society of Knights was inſtituted, immediately after their Union with the *Sabines*. *Romulus* inrolled *Centuriæ tres Equitum*, three Centuries of Knights, out of the chiefeſt Families, whom he appointed to be his Life-guard, and called them *Celeres*, from their Activity and Diſpatch in Martial Affairs.

Tarquinius Priſcus made an Addition to theſe Centuries; the like did *Servius Tullius*, who ordained, that thoſe who ſhould ſucceed in that Body, ſhould be elected *ex cenſu*, *viz.* from a conſiderable and certain Valuation of their Eſtates, who had the greateſt Cenſe, and were of the moſt Noble Families, ſays *Dyonyſ. Halicarn.* And ſoon after, the Equeſtrian Claſs began to be formed and conſtituted one of the three Orders of the Commonwealth, which were thus rank'd, according to *Livy*: *Senatus*, *Ordo Equeſtris & Plebs*; which in the *Roman* Literal Notes is ſet down after this Manner: CON. SEN. E. ORD. P. Q. R. And foraſmuch as this Degree is placed between the *Patricians*, or Senators, and the *Plebeians*, it anſwers exactly the State of our Knights between the Nobility and Commonalty: And from this Order, to the Height of Nobility which reſided in the Senators, was the Way prepared; *Junius Brutus* being the firſt who was raiſed to a Senator from the Equeſtrian Order.

It was a Conſtitution, as old as *Tiberius*'s Reign, that none ſhould be admitted, unleſs Free-born, or a Gentleman for three Generations; and, indeed, for a long Time none were elected Knights but the beſt Sort of Gentlemen, and Perſons of Extraction, as was the illuſtrious *Mæcenas*.

Atavis regibus ortus eques, Mart.

who aſpired no higher, not out of any Incapacity of attaining greater Honours, but that he deſired them not, ſays *Paterculus*: Yet at length, thro' Corruption of Times, *Plebeians* and Freedmen being too frequently received into this Degree (too near a Parallel among the Knights of this Age) occaſion'd their Power to grow leſs and leſs, 'till it ſhrunk to nothing; ſo that the Places and Offices of Judges which they before had executed, became conferrable upon the *Publicans*. And when *Cicero* was Conſul, *anno ab urbe conditi* 690, the Equeſtrian Order ſtood in need of Re-eſtabliſhment, whereupon they were then incorporated into that Commonwealth in the third Degree, all Acts paſſing *in the Name of the Senate, the People of* Rome, *and the Equeſtrian Order*.

They often enjoy'd Abroad the Government of ſeveral Provinces, whereof *Egypt* had this peculiar to itſelf, that none of the Senators were admitted, but only thoſe of the Equeſtrian Order, whoſe Decrees *Auguſtus* commanded to be had in like Regard, as if the Magiſtrates of *Rome*, or Kings, Conſuls, or Prætors, had pronounced them.

As a Mark of Eminence, they had the Titles of *Splendidi* and *Illuſtres* beſtowed upon them, and ſometimes have been called *moſt ſacred* Knights.

And beſides other Privileges, they had Seats with the Senators in the *Circus Maximus*; and by the *Roſcian* Law, ſat next them in the Theatres: They had likewiſe a College called *Collegium Equitum*; and Temples were dedicated to the Goddeſs *Fortune*, under the Title of *Equeſtri Fortunæ*.

Having ſhewn the Dignity and Honours of the Equeſtrian Order among the *Romans*, we ſhall now touch upon the Degrees of Knighthood which have been Perſonal, and may be comprehended under the Modern Title of *Equites Aurati*, or *Milites Simplices*, (as diſtinguiſh'd from the ſeveral Orders of Chivalry, inſtituted in Chriſtendom.) In the Circumſtance of whoſe Creation we confeſs, nothing in the *Roman Ordo Equeſtris* hath place, tho' that might be the Ground and Original of the Dignity, and one common End in both, namely, the Purſuit of Military Exploits, and Service in the Wars.

§. 4. Of the Degrees of Knighthood. We ſhall firſt of the *Monozons*, *i. e.* Knights begirt with the Military Girdle, a Cuſtom devolved to the *Germans* and *Gauls* from ancient Times, and from them to After-Ages.

Sir *Henry Spelman* notes, *That the late Emperors conferred the Dignity af Knighthood with the Military Girdle inſtead of all other Arms, becauſe that Part more eminent amongſt them girdeth, ſupporteth, and adorneth the reſt*; whence *Selden* calls this Girding the moſt eſſential part of the Ceremony. Nor do we find among the various Ceremonies of *Knighthood* any that have continued ſo conſtant in Practice as the endowing with Girdle and Sword, Ornaments proper to the Dignity and Marks of *Honour* and *Vertue*, with which the Statues and Portraitures of *Knights*, on their Grave-ſtones have been adorned.

For as at this Day *Knights* are ſtyled *Equites Aurati*, from the Golden Spurs, heretofore put on at their Creation, ſo were they more anciently *Singulo Miletari donati*, in reſpect, when any one was *Knighted*, he was not only ſmitten with the Sword, but inveſted with Sword and Belt, yet retain'd at the creating our Knights of the *Bath*, as the old Formulary thus hath it; **Then ſhall the King of great Favour take the Sword, and gird the Eſquire therewith.**

Secondly, The *Bacculaurei* or Knights Batchelors, are to be conſider'd, who are indifferently ſtyled *Chevaliers*, *Milites*, *Equites Aurati*, and *Knights*. This Degree is truly accounted the firſt of all Military Dignity, and the Foundation of all Honours in our Nation, and is derived from, if not the ſame with that immediately preceding. For as the Ceremony of a gentle Touch on the Shoulder with the flat Side of the Sword hath been ſince uſed, inſtead of girting with the Sword and Belt, (eſpecially in Times of War, or in Haſte) as an Initiation into the Military Order; ſo on the contrary, it is not unuſual now-adays, for the Prince, at leaſt *Gladio*, if not *Cingulo donare*; for he oftentimes beſtows the Sword upon the Perſon he *Knighteth*.

Miræus gives them the Epithet *Aurati*, from the Privilege of wearing Gold upon their Swords and Spurs, omitting *Tiraquel*'s fanciful Diſtinction between *Miles* and *Eques Auratus*, who allows the former to ſignify a Knight Noble before, and the other to denote one whom we call a Knight and no Gentleman, or applicable to the *Neapolitan* Gentlemen, (uſually called *Cavalieri*) who

are all ſtyled *Equites*, tho' they never have attained the Knightly Dignity.

The third Sort were *Knights Banerets*, who ſo well deſerv'd in the Wars, that they were afterwards permitted to uſe *Vexillum quadratum*, a ſquare Banner, whence they were called *Equites vexillarii*, or *Chevaliers a Buniere* from the Dutch *Banerheere*, Lord or Maſter of the Banner.

Camden conceives this Title firſt devis'd by K. *Edward* 3. in Recompence of Martial Proweſs; a Recital of which Dignity is mention'd in a Patenr 20 *E.* 3. to *John Coupland*, for his Service, in taking *David* King of *Scots* Priſoner. But it was much more ancient with us, as well as in *France*; and they had particular Robes, and other Ornaments given them from the Crown, *ad apparatum ſuum pro militia, tanquam pro Baneretto, a Rege ſuſcipienda*, &c. *viz. ad unum Tunicam*, &c. after which is ſet down the particular Robes, and other Ornaments appointed for his Creation.

To ſhew this Dignity yet more ancient, there is the Evidence of a Writ in K. *Edw.* 3d's Time, for furniſhing *Thomas Bardolf* with the Robes of a *Baneret*. It is an Honour eſteemed the laſt among the Greateſt, *viz. Nobilitum Majorum*, or the Firſt of the Second Rank; and is placed in the Middle between the *Barons* and the other *Knights*; in which reſpect the *Baneret* may be called *Vexillarius minor*, as if he were the leſſer *Banner-Bearer*; to the End he might be ſo differenced from the Greater, namely the *Baron*, to whom the Right of bearing a ſquare Banner doth belong.

But there are ſome remarkable differences between theſe Knights and Knights-Batchelors; as in the Occaſions and Circumſtances of their Creations, the *Baneret* being not Created, unleſs at a Time when the King's Standard is erected, and that he bears his own Banner in the Field; whilſt the *Knight-Batchelor* follows that which is anothers.

This farther difference is obſerved between them, that the *Knight-Baneret* had ſo many Gentlemen his Servants at Command, as that he could raiſe a Banner, and make up a Company of Soldiers to be maintained at his Table, and with his own Pay: But the *Knight-Batchelor* had not ſufficient for this, and therefore marched under the Banner of another; and the Wages of the *Baneret* were double.

Next to these, we are to mention Knights of the *Bath*, which is a Degree that hath the Investiture and Title of Knight, with an additional Denomination, derived from Part of the Ceremony of his Creation. It is the general receiv'd Opinion, that our K. *Hen.* 4. first instituted these Knights, which is justify'd by Sir *John Froisard*, who says he created 46 of them at his Coronation, chusing them from such, as were either his Favorites, or had pretensions to it from their personal Merits, or Services.

But if the Ceremonies and Circumstances of their Creation be well consider'd, it may be inferr'd, that he rather restor'd the ancient way of making Knights, than Instituted them; and consequently that the Knights of the *Bath*, are really no other than *Knights-Batchelors*; that is, such as are created with those Ceremonies, wherewith *Knights-Batchelors* were formerly created by Eccleſiasticks: But some of them having been laid aside, were then brought again into Use, and made peculiar to this Degree, and since continued to them upon some solemn and great Occasion.

At the first View they look like a distinct Order of Knighthood; but cannot be so accounted, because they have no Statutes assigned them, nor are in Case of Vacancy, supply'd, (the Essentials of distinct Orders) nor do they wear their Robes beyond the Time of that Occasion upon which they were created; as chiefly, the Coronation of a King or Queen, the Creation of a Prince of *Wales*, Duke of *York*, and the like; whereas also their Number is uncertain, and always at the Pleasure of the King.

Favine calls them Knights of the Crown, because, to distinguish them from Esquires, they wore upon their Left Shoulder an Escutcheon of Black Silk embroider'd with three Crowns of Gold; but therein he mistakes, for they never used only a Silk Lace, and the Jewel they wore was made of Gold, containing three Crowns, with this Motto *Tria juncta in una*, hanging down under the left Arm at a Carnation Ribbon worn cross the Body.

This leads us to the Degree of Baronets, who seem allied to Knighthood, by having granted them the Addition of *Sir* to be set before their Names: But this gives them not the Dignity of Knighthood; nor can they properly be styled Knights, until they be actually Knighted.

It is a Degree erected *Anno* 9. *Jac.* 1. and the Grant made by Letters Patents under the Great Seal of *England*. It is Hereditary to them, and the Heirs Male of their Bodies lawfully begotten, for ever; and by a ſubſequent Decree of the ſaid King, Precedence is granted to them before all Banerets, except ſuch as ſhould be made by the King under his Standard, diſplay'd in an Army Royal in open War, and the King perſonally preſent, and next to and immediately after the younger Sons of Viſcount and Barons.

The Ground for erecting this Degree was partly Martial; for tho' themſelves were not enjoined perſonal Service in the Wars, yet each Baronet was to maintain thirty Foot Soldiers for three Years in *Ireland*, after the rate of Eight Pence *per* Day, for the Defence of that Kingdom, and chiefly to ſecure the Plantation of *Ulſter*.

They were at leaſt to be deſcended from a Grandfather, on the Father's Side, that bore Arms, and had a Revenue of 1000 *l. per Ann.* or Lands of old Rents of equal Value with 1000 *l. per Ann.* of improv'd Lands, or at leaſt two Parts of three of ſuch Eſtate in Poſſeſſion; the other third in Reverſion Expectant upon one Life held only in Jointure.

The Year after, King *James* I. added ſome new Privileges and Ornaments, *viz.* to Knight thoſe already made that were no Knights; and the Heirs hereafter of every Baronet ſhould, at the Age of One and Twenty Years, receive Knighthood; likewiſe that all Baronets might bear in Canton, or in an Ineſcutcheon, the Arms of *Ulſter*; and farther, to have place in the Armies of the King in the Groſs, near about the Royal Standard.

Since the Inſtitution of Baronets in *England*, there have been made divers in *Ireland* after the like Form: And the Knights of *Nova Scotia* in the *Weſt-Indies* were ordained in Imitation of Baronets in *England* by the ſaid King *James*, *A. D.* 1622. for the Planting that Country by *Scotch* Colonies, and the Degree made likewiſe Hereditary.

These latter wear an Orange Tawny Ribbon as their Badge, to diſtinguiſh them from other Knights; and it appears, there was an Intention, 1627. to move his then Majeſty, that all Baronets and Knights Bachelors might wear Ribbons of ſeveral Colours, ſome Badge or Jewel, in ſuch Sort as did the Knights of the *Bath*, to diſtinguiſh the one from the other: But that Matter dropt.

§. 5. We

§. 5. We ſhall now obſerve the Etymology of *Eques*, *Miles*, *Chevalier*, *Ritter*, and *Sir*. The *Grecians* had a Title of Honour equivalent to the Signification of *Eques* in the *Latin*, from *Equus*, an Horſe, becauſe one Part of the Ceremony, whereby this Honour became conferred, was the giving of an Horſe; or becauſe having an Horſe at the Publick Charge, they received the Stipend of an Horſeman to ſerve in the Wars, Horſes being Symbols of War, *Bello armantur equi*. It is to be noted, That the Degree of Knighthood in the Dialects of other Nations hath the ſame Derivation: For in the *French*, a Knight is called *Chevalier*; in the *German*, *Ridder*, or *Ritter*, *q. d. Rider*; ſo the *Gheſlagen Ridder* is interpreted, *The dubbed Knight*; in the *Italian*, it is *Cavagliero*; in the old *Britiſh*, *Marchog*; concerning which, hear one of *Jeffery Chaucer*'s Scholars.

Eques ab Equo is ſaid of very right,
And Chevalier is ſaid of Chevalrie,
In which a Rider called is a Knight;
Arragoners done alſo ſpecifie
Caballiero through all that Partie,
Is Name of Worſhip, and ſo took his 'ginning
Of Spurs of Gold, and chiefly Riding.

And tho' the Word *Miles* ſignified at firſt any legally inrolled for the War, which Inrolment was twofold, *Honoraria* and *Vulgaris*; yet upon the Decay of the *Roman* Empire, upon the Irruption of the innumerable Forces of the *Alani*, *Goths*, *Vandals*, *&c.* which conſiſted in Horſe, their Foot was rendred uſeleſs. *Miles* was no longer ſaid of him that ſerved on Foot in the Wars, but began to be properly ſpoken of the Horſeman; whence it came into Vogue, That among the Titles of Nobility, he who had that of *Miles* beſtowed on him, was underſtood to be Horſeman, or *Eques*, that is, of the Equeſtrian Dignity.

Selden obſerves *Miles* to be equivocal: and that in the old feodal Laws of the Empire it ſignify'd a Gentleman, as the Word Gentleman is ſignify'd in *Nobilis*; and with us it hath been frequently uſed to denote both Gentlemen, and Knights; for *Milites* denotes Gentlemen, or great Freeholders, and not dubbed Knights, *viz.* ſuch who hold by Knights Service from a Lord of

a Mannour, and ſuch who are choſen from the ſeveral Counties to ſerve in the High Courts of Parliament.

Miles, even in the *Saxon* Times, denoted ſometimes a Dignity. But about the Year 1046, becoming a Title of Honour, it is ſince moſt generally appropriated to Perſons who have received Knighthood correſpondent to *Eques* and *Chevalier*, tho' indeed leſs proper; in regard Knighthood is the Dignity of Horſemanſhip, and the Tenure of Lands by Knights Fees here in *England*, anciently called *Regale Servitium*, is in truth Horſe Service; and the Tenants ſuch as ſerved the King on Horſeback in Wars, are Gentlemen at leaſt (if not of Noble Extraction.)

Minſhew ſays, the *Equites*, which heretofore followed and accompanied the Emperor, are, in the *German* Tongue, called *Knechtes*, that is, Servitors, or Miniſters; but *Camden* ſays, *Knecht*, in *Saxon Cniht*, was in far more ancient Times accepted as an honorary Title; and, among the old *Germans*, ſignify'd a Perſon arm'd with Spear and Lance, (the Enſigns of their Knighthood) as in After-Times ſuch were, among other Nations, adorned with a Girdle and Belt, ſince called *Equites aurati*, and ſometimes ſimply *Milites*.

The Addition *Sir* to the Names of all Knights Banerets, Knights of the *Bath*, and Batchelor Knights, pronounced at the Time when they are created, with this Compellation: *Ariſe*, *Sir John*, or *Sir Thomas*, *&c.* is accounted Parcel of their Style, which the Banerets enjoy by virtue of a Clauſe in their Patent. It is a Contraction of the Old *French* Sire, taken for Seigneur, or Lord, from the *Greek* Κύριος. But how it came to be firſt given, we cannot find; nevertheleſs, our *Engliſh* Writers have beſtowed it upon the major Part of the Nobility, after they had been received into the Order of Knighthood; and in the Life of St. *Thomas Becket*, written about the Time of King *Edw.* 1. we meet with the Title prefix'd to the Names of the four Knights, who ſlew the ſaid St. *Thomas*.

§. 6. The Enſigns of the Equeſtrian Order among the *Romans*, by which they were made, was a Publick Horſe, or a Gold Ring; yet ſtill, to thoſe who had Equeſtrian Cenſe, the Horſe was the ancienter Badge of the two; but when thro' the Multitude of theſe Knights no Publick Horſes were aſſigned, but to ſuch who were ready to enter upon Military Service, and to

fight

fight in the Legions, ſuch were called *Legionary Knights*, to diſtinguiſh them from the reſt, who had only receiv'd the Honour of a Gold-Ring; for they were not all employ'd in Wars.

The Cenſor (after the Inſtitution of that Offiee *ab urbe condita*, 310.) and afterwards the Emperor, were the Perſons who beſtowed this *Equus Militaris*, or *Publicus*, as it was called from the Annual Allowance, to keep him, which they gave unto thoſe of known Vertue and ap prov'd Life, compelling him to ſerve in the Wars, tho' againſt his Will; (but in the more ancient Method of Election, Conſtraint was not uſed.) And upon Negligence in the Care of theſe Horſes, or any Blemiſh, Reproach, or Infamy, or Loſs of Patrimony in the Knights, the Horſes were not only taken away, but the Knights wholly disfranchis'd. *Roſinus* laying down the Manner and Order uſed in ejecting ſuch Knights, adds, *A Recital being made of all the Knights that were inrolled, thoſe whoſe Names he omitted, were thereby underſtood to be depriv'd of that Dignity.*

When they had ſerved in the Wars the Time appointed by Law, it was the Cuſtom to lead their Horſes by the Bridle into the Forum, before the *Duumvirs* [Cenſors,] and giving an Account under whom and what Generals or Captains they had ſerved; they were thereupon diſmiſſed from farther Service in the Wars: An Example whereof *Plutarch* relates to have been given by *Pompey* himſelf.

But whereas among the *Roman* Inſcriptions we find *Equo publico honoratus donatus, ornatus*, and *exornatus*, ſuch is not to be conſtrued to be of Equeſtrian Dignity, but only to have received the *præmia militaria*, with which the Emperors uſed to recompenſe ſome particular Exploit, by the Honour of ſuch a Gift, according to *Salmaſius*. *Equus Publicus*, by a wondrous, nevertheleſs an accuſtom'd Speech, among the *Romans*, is the Knight, *qui equo publico meret*. And *qui equo publico donatus*, the other deſerving Perſon.

As to the Ring: In *Geneſis* we read of *Pharoah*'s taking off his Ring, and putting it upon *Joſeph*'s Hand. When they came in Faſhion with the *Romans*, the Senators at firſt wore Iron ones, which were accounted the Enſign of Military Vertue, received upon a Publick Account. Howbeit, in Proceſs of Time, when Gold Rings were drawn into Uſe, none but Senators and Knights had them.

them. The Difference among the Rings of the three Orders in the State were, as *Licetus* obſerves, Gold Rings ſet with precious Stones were given to the Senators only; Plain Rings without Stones to the Knights, and Iron Rings to the *Plebeians*, or Free-born-men; inſomuch that *Equeſtri dignitate donare*, and *annulo honorare*, is a promiſcuous Phraſe in *Tacitus*, to give the Dignity of Knighthood; and at the Battle of *Cannæ*, by the two Meaſures or Buſhels of Gold Rings ſent to *Carthage*, the Number of the *Roman* Knights there ſlain was computed.

§. 7. At length Freed-Men being created Knights, the *Jus annulorum*, the Right of wearing Gold Rings, became promiſcuous.

Among the *Germans*, the Shield and Lance were accounted the grand Badges of Military Honour, or Knighthood. This the *Lombards*, the *Franks*, and our Country-men, all deſcending out of *Germany*, uſed, and was to us (in the Opinion of Sir *Hen. Spelman*) the Foundation of the Knightly Order. Much like the ancient *Germans* was the Cuſtom of making Knights among the *Iriſh*: And *Favine* notes the Shield and Lance were the proper Arms appertaining to a *French* Knight, which Eſquires, *Armigers*, carried always after their Maſters, Shields and Scutes (as they are vulgarly called) *i. e.* Equeſtrian Targets, inclining to an Oval, not Shields or Bucklers of Foot Soldiers.

Another Enſign and Ornament of Knightly Honour is, the *Cingulum militare*. or *Balteus*, which, *Varro* ſays, is *Tuſcan*, ſignifying a military Girdle, which were garniſhed with great Buckles, Studs, and Rings of pure Gold, to ſhew their Dignity and Power in military Commands; and with ſuch a Belt, ſet with Pearls and precious Stones, young *Athelſtan* was girded, when he receiv'd *Knighthood* from his Grandfather King *Alfred*. Our Knights were no leſs anciently known by theſe Belts, than by their gilt Swords, Spurs, *&c.* Howbeit the Uſe now only appears in Knights of the *Bath*.

To this Belt was alſo added a Sword, not of Ordinary Uſe; and therefore termed the Sword of a *Knight*, which was hallowed with great Ceremony.

Another eminent Badge is the Golden Spurs, wherewith, at the Time of their Creation, Knights Spurs were wont to be adorned; and to theſe, a little after the Conqueſt, were added far more and greater Oruaments. They were uſually put on after the Perſon had been pre-

Preſented to the Prince who gave the Honour, to ſignify, that the new-made Knight ſhould not only declare his Valour by his Sword, but alſo by the Management of his Horſe, which he ſhould encourage and excite with his Spurs, to the carrying on his valiant Deſigns. Theſe Spurs have been of that Eſteem, that Knight Batchelors are latinized *Equites aurati*; among the *Germans*, *Ritter deſs Gulden Sporns*; and with us heretofore, *Knights of the Spurs*: And ſeveral Families by the Name of *Knight*, bear for their Arms the Spurs on a Canton.

It is farther certify'd among the Rights of a Knight Baneret, that upon the Account of his Knighthood he may wear gilt Spurs, as well as a gilt Sword; and that the Spurs are eſſential, may be collected from the Degradation of a Knight, where his gilt Spurs are firſt cut off with an Hatchet, the Caſe of Sir *Andra Harcla*. In the laſt Place is the Collar, an Enſign of Knightly Dignity among the *Germans*, *Gauls*, *Britons*, *Danes* and *Goths*, among whom it was cuſtomary to wear them, as denoting ſuch as were remarkable for their Valour. But in later Times, it was the peculiar Faſhion of *Knights* among us to wear Golden Collars compoſed of *S S.* or other various Devices; ſo that thoſe *Monuments* are known to be erected for *Knights* on whoſe Portraitures ſuch Ornaments are found.

§. 8. The Qualifications for Knighthood are principally three. 1. Merit, the bare mentioning whereof ſhall ſuffice here. 2. Birth, *viz.* that the Parties who enter thereinto ought firſt to make appear they be Gentlemen of three Paternal Deſcents, bearing Coat Armour; and much the ſame was the Law of the Empire under *Frederick* 2. *A. D.* 1212. Some think it alſo inſufficient, unleſs deſcended ſo by the Mother's Side; at leaſt ſhe muſt be a freed Woman. And, 3. Eſtate, which alſo ſerves to ſupport the Dignity.

Thus Wealth was ſo much regarded among the *Chaledonians*, that thoſe who were rich, bore the Name of Knights. It was Eſtate that entitled a Man to this Honour among the *Romans*; for the Cenſor might compel any Citizen equal to the Equeſtrian Cenſe, whom he thought fit to take that Order: And this conſiſted of 400000 Seſterces, *i. e.* 3025 *l.* of our Money.

And as in *Old Rome*, ſo here in *England*, not long after the Conqueſt, they who held a Knights Fee, *viz.* 680 Acres of Land might claim it, ſays *Camden*. But it appears from *Selden*, that no certain Number, or Extent

of

of Acres, made a Knight's Fee ; and *Temp. Hen.* 3. and *Edw.* 1. and 1 *Edw.* 2. the *Cenſus militis* was meaſured by 20 *l.* by the Year, or more ; and by the Royal Prerogative, ſome who held 15, then 20, at other times 30, then 40, and ſometimes 50 *l.* Lands, were required to accept this Honour by Writs directed to the Sheriffs of the Counties, and were excuſed only by Reaſon of old Age, irrecoverable Weakneſs, Loſs of Limbs, or being in Holy Orders ; and upon all other Cauſes (if exempted) they paid a Fine, eſtimated according to the Nature of the Excuſe, or length of Time given.

But in the promiſcuous Courſe of Knighthood, where the Men of Wealth and Eſtate (whether otherwiſe worthy or not) became dignify'd ; yet the Gate of Honour was not then ſhut againſt thoſe, who wanting Riches, deſerved well of their Country ; for when Princes conferr'd ſuch Dignities upon Men of narrow Fortunes, they uſually beſtowed with them annual Penſions, or Lands, agreeable to the Judgment of the Author of the *Diviſion du monde*, who ſaith that the Honour of Knighthood is not to be given any Perſon who hath not a conſiderable Eſtate, unleſs ſufficient Means to ſupport the Honour of the Order be alſo given with it.

These Penſions are frequently mention'd in our Rolls, ſometimes during Pleaſure, and ſometimes during the Life of the Knight, or till better Proviſion ſhould be made for their Supports : Examples whereof are, Sir *John Atte Lee*, Sir *Nele Loring*, Sir *John Walſh*, Knights. The like Rewards our Kings gave to ſuch whoſe Merit raiſed them to the Degree of a *Baneret*, expreſs'd in their Patents, *ad manutenendum ſtatum Baneretti*, *Pro ſuſtentatione ſua, ut ipſe ſtatum Baneretti melius manutenere poſſit*, *Pro ſtatu ſuo manutenendo* ; or Words to the like Effect : Examples where of are, Sir *Reginald Cobham*, Sir *Thomas de Rokeley*, Sir *John Lyſle*, and Sir *Roger de Swynerton*, Banerets.

It may be next conſider'd who can make *Knights* ; wherein it is apparent, that they who never were, and others who never could be *Knights*, have conferr'd this Dignity ; yet 'tis to be underſtood, that Neceſſity and Cuſtom hath in this Caſe the Force of a Law : For anciently, *Biſhops* and *Prieſts* made *Knights* ; ſo alſo do the *Popes*, and ſome Commonwealths ; likewiſe our *Queens*. For the *Sovereign*, or the *Heir apparent*, tho' they be no *Knights*, may nevertheleſs do it, by reaſon they poſſeſs the *Kingdom* ; and are therefore the Head and Chief of *Chevalry*, and conſequent all the Power thereof is contained

tained in their Command. To conclude this Point, *Knighthood* was always received from the Hands of another Perſon, either by Ceremony, or Diploma, except only the Kings of *Spain*, who Time out of Mind made themſelves *Knights*; and this by Vertue of an old Law written in the *Arragonian* Tongue, as *Ambroſias Morales* repotts. *And, to ſhew that no Man upon Earth hath any Power over him, he ſhall gird himſelf with the Sword made after the Form of a Croſs; and that Day can no other Man be Knighted.*

§. 9. Of the Ceremonies and Formalities uſed at the Conferring of Knighthood, the moſt ancient was perform'd by putting the Belt looſe over the Shoulder, or girding it cloſe about the Waſte. The *Bend* in *Armoury* repreſents the one, and the *Feſs* the other. The firſt Chriſtian Kings at giving this Belt kiſſed the new Knight on the Left Cheek, ſaying, *In the Honour of the Father, and the Son, and of the Holy Ghoſt, I make you a Knight.* It was called *Oſculum pacis*, the Kiſs of Favour, or Brotherhood, and is preſumed to be the Accollade, or Ceremony of Imbracing, which *Charles* the Great uſed when he Knighted his Son *Lewis* the *Debonair*. It was in the Time of the ſame Emperor, the Way of Knighting by the *Colaphum*, or Blow on the Ear, uſed in Sign of ſuſtaining future Hardſhips, which is thought to have been deriv'd from the Manner of Manumiſſion of a Slave among the *Romans*; a Cuſtom long after retained in *Germany* and *France*. Thus *William* Earl of *Holland*, who was to be Knighted before he could be *Emperor*, at his being elected King of the *Romans*, received Knighthood by the Box of the Ear, *&c.* from *John* King of *Bohemia*, *A. D.* 1247.

In the Time of the *Saxons* here in *England*, Knights received their Inſtitutions at the Hands of Great *Prelates* or *Abbots*; which, according to their Opinion, render'd them more auſpicious. In the accompliſhing of which Solemnity, they added many religious Ceremonies, as Watching, Faſting, Bathing, and Conſecrating the Sword; an Inſtance of which we have in *Heward* Lord of *Brune*, in in *Lincolnſhire*, who received this Honour from *Brand*, *Abbot* of St. *Edmundsbury*. But not long after the Conqueſt, this Cuſtom was reſtrained by a Synod a, *Weſtminſter*, *A. D.* 1102. 3 *H.* 1. which among other Things ordained *Ne Abbates* [*i. e.* all Spiritnal Perſons] *faciunt milites*. However the religious Ceremonies for the moſt part continued, eſpecially Vigils and Bathings, as appears by that grand Solemnity at the Creation of 267 Knights, Sons of Earls, Barons, and Knights, upon

Whit-

Whitſontide, anno 34 *Edw.* 1. cited by *Selden* and *Camden*. And theſe Formalities the *Saxons* and *Normans*, not only here in *England*, but the *French*, *Spaniards*, and other Nations, obſerv'd, concluding from it, that decency of Habit was as well expected from them, as Integrity of Life, and purity of Manners. And the like religious Ceremony was heretofore obſerv'd in *Spain* at the Creation of Knights, whether *Cavelleros de Eſpuela d' Orada*, or *Amados* [our Knights Batchelors,] In this Form, the Perſon to be Knighted was bathed in the Evening, and preſently laid in Bed; then cloathed in rich Robes, and led to the Church to perform his Vigils: That being over, and Maſs heard, his Spurs were put on, and his Sword girt about him, then drawn out, and put into his Right Hand; whereupon the Oath was forthwith adminiſtred to him; which taken, he that beſtowed the Dignity gave him *una Peſconade*, a Blow, or Stroke on the Neck, ſaying, God aſſiſt you in the Performance of your Promiſe.

The Oath or Vow the Knights profeſſed, was in general, to relieve and protect Widows, the Fatherleſs, Oppreſſed and Miſerable, and to defend the Church of God; which to keep and perform was eſteem'd as meritorious, as to do all that a Monk, Frier, or Canon Regular ſhould.

There is alſo mention (by Mr. *Selden*) of conſecrating the Sword, offering it at the Altar, and receiving it again from thence, as an implicit Kind of taking an Oath. But as in Peace and great Leiſure theſe tedious Ceremonies were uſed, yet it was otherwiſe in Times of War, or on a Day of Battle, where Hurry and Throng of Affairs would not permit; and therefore, as well before the joining of Battle, as after Victory obtained, it was uſual for the Prince or General in the Field, on Sight of the Army, to give thoſe whom he thought fit to advance to that Honour (they humbly kneeling before him) a Stroke with a naked Sword flatwiſe upon their Shoulders, or elſe to touch their Heads or Shoulders lightly, without any other Ceremony, except pronouncing *Sis Eques in nomine Dei*; to which he adds, *Riſe, Sir ------ Knight*, or in the *French*, *Sus*, or *Sois, Chevalier, au nom de Dieu*, which we commonly call Dubbing, the old *Engliſh* Word uſed for Creating [Conſecrating] a Knight, from *doopen* to dip, by Bathing.

Another Manner of creating Knights Abroad was, by Royal Codicils, or Letters Patents (theſe the *Spaniards* call

call *Privilegios de Cavelleria*) whereupon ſuch Knights are intitled *Equites Codicellares*; and theſe were ſent to ſuch as dwelt in remote Countries, and ſometimes, but rarely, extended ſo as to make the Degree hereditary. There is one Example, that by the bare ſignification of Letter, without any Ceremonies or Patents under Seal; *Philip* IV. of *Spain*, *Jan.* 15. 1633. conferr'd upon all the Captains that behav'd themſelves valiantly in Defence of *Maſtricht* (then lately beſieg'd by the *Hollanders*) to thoſe that were Gentlemen, the Title of Knights; and to others, that of Gentlemen.

HAVING thus briefly ſhew'd the variousForms of Creation of *Knights Batchelors*, I ſhall remark what *Selden* has obſerv'd of *Knights Bannerets* in later Times, wherein he that was advanc'd to that Honour in the Field, was inducted between two Senior Knights with Trumpets before them, and the Heralds carrying a long Banner of his Arms, call'd a *Penon*; in which Manner being brought to the King or Lieutenant, who bidding him good Succeſs, the Tip of the Banner is cut off, that of an Oblong it might become a Square, like the Banner of a Baron: This done, he returns to his Tent, conducted as before. As for the many and various Formularies at the Creation of a Knight of the *Bath*, ſee Sir *Edward Byſshe* among his Notes upon *Upton* and Sir *William Dugdale*'s *Warwickſh.* The Knights of the *Bath*, at the Coronation of King *Charles* II. watched and bathed; they took an Oath; they were girded with a Sword and Belt; and laſtly, dubbed by the King with the Sword of State.

§ 10. IN the Dignity, Honour and Renown of Knighthood, is included ſomewhat of Magnificence more excellent than Nobility it ſelf; which mounting the Royal Throne, becomes the Aſſertor of Civil Nobility, and ſits as Judge at the Tribunal therefore. *Knight* is noted by *Camden* as a Name of Dignity, but *Baron* is not ſo. For if heretofore a Baron had not receiv'd Knighthood, he was written plainly by his Chriſtian Name, and that of his Family, without any Addition but that of *Dominus*, a Term attributed to a *Knight*; and in ancient Charters, the Titles and Names of *Knights* may be ſeen ſet before *Barons*. It beſtows Gentility not only upon the meanly Born, but upon his Deſcendants, and

encreaſeth the Honour of thoſe well-deſcended. Hereunto agrees the Common-Law: If a Villain be made a Knight, he is thereby immediately enfranchiſed, and conſequently accounted a Gentleman; agreeable to the *Roman* Law, where the Donation of a Gold-Ring ennobled a Slave. *Mœcenas* dy'd a Companion of that Order; even Kings and Princes look upon it as an Acceſſion to their Honour, their other Titles ſhewing Dominion and Power, this their Valour and Courage. *Geyſa*, King of *Hungary*, *Leopold*, Marquis of *Auſtria*, *Ottacher*, Duke of *Stiria*, and *Frederick*, Duke of *Auſtria* and *Stiria*; *Godfry*, Duke of *Brabant*, with *Henry* his Son, *Peter*, King of *Arragon*, the Emperor *Henry* III. our *William Rufus*, King *Edward* III. *Henry* VI. *Henry* VII. *Edward* VI. *Lewis* XI. *Francis* I. Kings of *France*, and others, received this Dignity at the Time they enjoy'd their other Titles. And tho' it is ſaid the Sons of the *French* King are Knights as ſoon as they receive Baptiſm, yet are they not judg'd worthy the Kingdom, unleſs firſt ſolemnly created. And we elſewhere find, that the Royal Heirs of *Arragon* were ſuſpended from that Crown, until they had received the Honour of Knighthood. And after the *Norman* Conqueſt, our young Princes were ſent over to the neighbouring Kings to receive this Honour. Thus our King *Henry* II. was ſent to *David*, King of *Scots*, and Knighted by him in *Carliſle*; and *Edward* I. at the Age of Fifteen Years, to *Alphonſus* XI. King of *Caſtile*, for the ſame Dignity. In like manner did foreign Princes repair hither, to receive the Honour from our Kings. As *Malcolme*, King of *Scotland*, and *Alexander*, Son of *William*, King of *Scotland*, Knighted by our King *John*, *Anno* 1212. So was *Alexander* III. by our King *Henry* III. at *York*, *Anno* 1252. and *Magnus*, King of the *Iſle of Man*, by the ſame King. All which ſufficiently demonſtrate the great Renown of Knighthood, and the Honour and Eſteem which was ever had for that Order.

CAP.

CAP. II.

Of the Religious Orders of Knighthood in Chriſtendom.

§ 1. THE Grounds and Cauſes of founding *Societies* or *Knightly Orders*, were ſeveral and different, tho' all terminated in one End. Among which, principally were theſe, *Firſt*, A ſincere Love to *Honour*, and therein chiefly to excite and promote *Vertue* by ſuitable Rewards; ſuch was the Deſign of King *Arthur*, when he formed himſelf and other Martial Men into a Fellowſhip, which he ſtiled *Knights of the Round Table*. *Secondly*, To repreſs the Incurſions and Robberies of the *Saracens* and *Barbarians*, to vindicate the Oppreſſed, redeem the Enſlaved, and to entertain and relieve Pilgrims and Strangers, which were Part of the Duties the *Knights Hoſpitallers* and *Templars*, &c. ſtood engag'd in. A *third* Reaſon was, To Fight in Defence of the Chriſtian Faith, againſt Pagans and Infidels; to enlarge the Chriſtian Territories, and promote the Service of the Catholick Church: And indeed their Zeal very much advanced Chriſtianity. *Laſtly*, When Sovereign Princes perceived themſelves embroiled in Wars or dangerous Factions, the erecting ſuch an Order or Society was, that they might by ſuch a Tye reſtore Peace, quiet all Jealouſies, unite Affections, and ſecure a laſting Friendſhip and powerful Aſſiſtance, both for their own and their Country's Safety. And to this End were Badges of ſeveral Orders deviſed, as Pledges of Remembrance to quicken and eſtabliſh their Friendſhip.

§ 2. THESE Orders are of Two Kinds, 1. *Religious*, or *Eccleſiaſtical*; and, 2. *Military*, or *Secular*.

§ 3. THE Inſtitutions of the latter Sort were after a while thought too weak to continue, if not ſuſtained

by Religion and Piety; and too defective without adjoyning Eccleſiaſtical Perſons thereunto. Therefore the Founders, conſidering Divine Aſſiſtance ſhould concur with Military Induſtry, began to dedicate theſe Orders to the Honour and Worſhip of God, or to our Saviour, or to the bleſſed Virgin, or ſome other of the Saints, to gain the Protection and Favour of Heaven, more eaſily, as they thought, obtainable by the Prayers and Offices of the Clergy. Whereupon ſome in their Inſtitution joyned Sacred Orders to their Military, and made Proviſion for Sacred Perſons to pray for their Proſperity at home, while they were engaged abroad. Hence King *Edw.* III. at the firſt Inſtitution of the *Garter*, appointed Thirteen Secular Canons, and Thirteen Vicars to attend the Celebration of Divine Offices. Upon the ſame Account certain Foundations of Divine Service were erected at *Bugey*, for the Order of the *Annunciads*; at *Dijon*, for the Order of the *Golden Fleece*; and at *Mont St. Michael* in *Normandy*, for the Order of St. *Michael*.

§ 4. I ſhall now deliver a brief Account of the Religious Orders of Knighthood, proceeding according to their Antiquity.

1. *The Knights of the* Holy Sepulchre *in* Jeruſalem, *are accounted the moſt Ancient.*

Dr. *Heylin* reports this Order to be inſtituted *A. D.* 1099. at ſuch Time as the Temple of *Jeruſalem* was regain'd from the *Saracens* by *Philip* King of *France*. Yet *Favin* will have it to be by *Baldwin* the Firſt, King of *Jeruſalem*; for while the *Saracens* poſſeſs'd the City, there were certain Canons Regular of St. *Auguſtin*, to whom they permitted the Cuſtody of the Holy Sepulchre. Theſe Canons *Baldwin* made Men of Arms, and *Knights of the Holy Sepulchre*, and ordained that they ſhould nevertheleſs retain their white Habits, and on the Breaſt bear his own Arms, which were *Argent a Croſs potent: Or*, between *four Croſſes of the ſame*, commonly call'd *The* Jeruſalem *Croſs*. Their Great Maſter was the Patriarch of *Jeruſalem*. They were to guard the Sepulchre, fight againſt the *Saracens* and Infidels, protect Pilgrims,

grims, redeem Chriſtian Captives, hear Maſs every Day, recite the Hours of the Croſs, and to bear the five red Croſſes in memory of our Saviour's Wounds. Their Rule was confirm'd by Pope *Innocent* III. Upon the loſs of the Holy Land, theſe Knights retired to *Perugia* in *Italy*; but retaining their white Habit, chang'd their Arms to a double *red Croſs*. *A. D.* 1484. they were incorporated to the *Knights Hoſpitallers of* Jeruſalem then in *Rhodes*. But *A. D.* 1496. *Alexander* VI. made himſelf, and the Popes his Succeſſors, Great Maſters thereof, and empower'd the Guardian of the Holy Sepulchre (his Vicar General) to beſtow the ſame upon Pilgrims to the Holy Land. *Philip* II. King of *Spain*, endeavour'd to reſtore this Order in ſome of his Dominions, about the Year 1558. himſelf being elected Great Maſter: And another Attempt was made by the Duke of *Nevers*, 1615. but theſe Deſigns took no Effect.

2. *Knights Hoſpitallers of St.* John Baptiſt *in* Jeruſalem.

BEFORE the taking of *Jeruſalem* from the *Saracens*, certain Chriſtian Merchants of *Naples* obtain'd leave from the Caliph of *Egypt* to erect a ſmall and convenient Houſe, for the Entertainment of themſelves and Countrymen, which they built before the Church of the *Holy Sepulchre*, together with a ſmall Oratory. To them repair'd certain Canons of the Order of St. *Auguſtin*, who built another Oratory; but the Confluence of Pilgrims growing great, they erected a large Hoſpital, in the Place where our Saviour celebrated his laſt Supper, for the better accommodating devout Travellers, who for want of a Place to lodge in were often robb'd and murder'd: So that at length from their Charity and Hoſpitality, as alſo for that they took St. *John Baptiſt* for their Patron, they obtain'd that Title. It was inſtituted *A. D.* 1092. or according to others 1099. by *Gerard*, a Native of *Thouloufe*, who came to *Jeruſalem* in the Time of *Godfry* of *Bouillon*, and built this Hoſpital (which became the firſt Seat of this Order) dedicated to St. *John* of *Cyprus*, Bp. of *Alexandria*,

commonly call'd *Johannes Eleemoſynarius*; and King *Baldwin* I. conferred on them large Privileges, permitting them Arms, and inſtituted them to be Knights, *A. D.* 1104. Their Duty was to fight againſt the Infidels, and they acknowledged Obedience to the Patriarch of *Jeruſalem*; but growing rich, they obtained from *Rome* to be abſolved from that Obedience. Pope *Gelaſius* II. or *Calixtus* II. *A. D.* 1120. confirmed their Rule of living; and *Adrian* IV. receiv'd them under the Protection of the Papal See, being likewiſe endowed with ample Privileges, and exempted from Payment of Tithes, by ſucceeding Popes, chiefly by *Pius* IV.

They took the black Habit of Hermits of St. *Auguſtin*, and lived under his Rule by Grant of *Honorius* II. *Anno* 1125. vowing Obedience, Poverty, and Chaſtity; and on the Breaſt of their Habit wore at firſt a plain Croſs of White Cloth, which was after changed to one with Eight Points; but in time of War they uſed a Red Caſſock, bearing the White Croſs upon it. Unto *Gerard* ſucceeded *Raimund*, who digeſted and enlarged their Laws and Inſtitutions in the Compoſition whereof his Stile was *Raimundus Dei gratia ſervus pauperum Jeſu Chriſti & Cuſtos Hoſpitalis Jeruſolymitani*; but afterwards he and his Succeſſors had the Title of Great Maſter of the Order given him, to denote his Power and Authority. At this Day he has the Title of Prince of *Malta* and *Goza*; among his Privileges he ſeals in Lead, as doth the Pope and Doge of *Venice*; he acknowledges the Pope for his Head, and the King of *Spain* for his Patron; he had under him in ſeveral Kingdoms Priors; ſome of whom had alſo the Addition of Great with us in *England* he was ſtiled *Prior Hoſpitalis*; *St. Johannis Jeruſalem in Anglia*, and by that Title was he ſummoned to the Parliament as a Baron of this Kingdom, and at length for Place and Precedency was ranked the firſt Baron; and the greatneſs of theſe Knights grew to ſuch height that *temp. H.* 3. they had in Chriſtendom 19000 Mannors.

When *Saladine* took *Jeruſalem*, theſe Knights retreated to *Acres* or *Ptolemais*, and that being taken they ſeized upon the Iſland of *Rhodes*, *A.D.* 1308. whence they began to be call'd Knights of *Rhodes*; but *A.D.* 1522. being driven thence by *Solyman*, they betook themſelves to the Iſland

of

of *Malta*, which with *Tripoli* and *Goza* were granted to them in Fee by the Emperor *Charles* V. *A. D.* 1530. under the Tender of one Falcon yearly to the Viceroy of *Sicily*, and to acknowledge the King of *Spain* and *Sicily* for their Protectors. In this Iſle they continue a Bulwark to thoſe Parts, and from this their Settlement are called Knights of *Malta*.

3. *Knights* Templars.

About the Year 1117, 1118, 1119, or 1120, this Order took Beginning, *Baldwin* II. then reigning in *Jeruſalem*; when Nine Gentlemen, of whom Two of noble Extraction, *Hugh de Paganes* and *Godfrey de St. Omer*, came in Devotion to the *Holy Land*; they were called Brothers of the Militia of the Temple, ordinarily Knights Templars, from the Habitation aſſigned them out of a part of the King's own Palace, adjoyning to the Temple of *Solomon* in *Jeruſalem*. Their firſt Undertaking was to guard the moſt dangerous Ways about that City, againſt the Violence and Robberies of the *Saracens*, which made them acceptable to all, and for which they had Remiſſion of their Sins; but for the firſt Nine Years they were yet ſo poor that they lived upon the Alms of others, wore Clothes beſtowed in Charity upon them, and rode two on one Horſe; in memory of which primitive Poverty their Seal had the Impreſs, which is repreſented in *Math. Paris*, *A. D.* 1127. They had Rules aſſigned them, drawn up by St. *Bernard* Abbot of *Clairvaux*, by the Appointment of Pope *Honorius* II. and *Stephen* Patriarch of *Jeruſalem*. They made their Vows of Obedience, Poverty and Chaſtity, and to live under the Rules of Canons regular of St. *Auguſtin*. Their Habit was White, to which, in the Time of *Eugenius* III. they added the Red Croſs, and of the ſame Form that the Hoſpitallers wore (*Favin* ſays a patriarchal Croſs) and ſowed it on the left Shoulder of the *Maulles*. Theſe with the Holy Sepulchre Hoſpitallers and Teutonicks, principally ſupported a long time the Kingdom of *Jeruſalem*; but when Riches encreas'd, and their Revenues augmented, they grew proud, fell from the Obedience of the Patriarch to joyn with the Pope; and at laſt,

1307. all the Knights of this Order in *France* were, in one and the ſame Hour, ſeized and impriſon'd by *Philip le Bel*, King of *France*, with Conſent of Pope *Clement* V. being charged with moſt infamous and damnable Crimes. And in *England*, *Anno* 1. *Ed.* 2. they were alſo apprehended afterwards, rendred Convicts, and all their Poſſeſſions ſeized into the King's Hands. Howbeit the Biſhop of *York* commiſerating their deplorable Condition within his Dioceſs, charitably diſpoſed of them in Monaſteries under his Juriſdiction. Two Years after many of theſe Knights were burn'd in *France*, and *Jaques de la Maule*, the laſt great Maſter, ſuffered the ſame Fate, having ſeen, *A. D.* 1312. his Order by Papal Authority, condemned and perpetually diſſolved; after which their Lands were annexed to the Hoſpitallers, for their Service againſt the *Turks*.

Thus they fell, no leſs famous for Martial Atchievments in the Eaſt, than their Wealth in the Weſt; for they enjoyed 16000 Lordſhips in *Europe*, and a *Spaniſh* Author tells us, their Revenue was Two Millions yearly, and had in poſſeſſion 40000 Commanderies, which occaſion'd divers to think they were falſly accuſed, and by ſuborned Witneſſes, merely upon the Ambition and covetous Deſign of *Philip* King of *France*.

4. *Knights of the Order of St.* Lazarus.

These were at the firſt a Fraternity of Religious Monks, after which they became Eccleſiaſtick Knights, in Imitation of the Knights of the Holy Sepulchre. Pope *Pius* V. 1572. ſtiles it *Antiquiſſimum Charitatis & Militiæ Chriſti Ordinem*; yet it muſt be underſtood as an Order of Monks, founded by St. *Baſil*, about the time of *Julian the Apoſtate*, *A. D.* 366. upon a Charitable Account, *viz.* to take Care of Leprous Perſons (a Malady frequent in the Eaſt) by which they became ſeparated, even from the Converſation of Men. At length, through the Incurſion of the *Barbarians*, and Injury of Time, it lay extinguiſh'd, but was revived when the *Latin* Princes joyned in a Holy League to recover the *Holy Land*. And a famous Hoſpital was erected at *Jeruſalem*, under the Title of St. *Lazarus*, for

for the Reception of Lepers: For in that Time the Monks of this Order added Martial Diſcipline to their Skill in Phyſick; and for their Services againſt the Infidels, begat a great Eſteem from *Baldwin* II. King of *Jeruſalem*, and ſome of his Succeſſors. In proceſs of Time this Order decayed, being ſuppreſſed by *Innocent* VIII. who united it to the *Hoſpitallers* at *Rhodes*, *A. D.* 1490. Nevertheleſs *Pius* IV. reſtored it *A. D.* 1565. confirming the old, and granting new Privileges, making his Kinſman Don *Janot de Chaſtillon* great Maſter. *Pius* V. *A. D.* 1567. enlarged their Privileges, permitting them to take one Wife only, to wit, a Virgin, not a Widow. Laſtly, Pope *Gregory* XIII. *A. D.* 1572. beſtowed the Great Maſterſhip of this Order upon *Emanuel Philibert* Duke of *Savoy*, and his Succeſſors, and preſcribed them the *Ciſtercian* Rule; and accordingly he had the Inveſtiture and Collation of the *Commanderies* in *Spain* and *Italy*.

5. *Knights of the* Teutonick *Order, or* Pruſſia.

In the Time of the Holy War, a wealthy Gentleman of *Germany*, who dwelt at *Jeruſalem*, commiſerating the Condition of his Country-men, coming thither in Devotion, made his Houſe their Receptacle; afterwards he erected a Chapel to the Bleſſed Virgin, whence they had alſo the Title of *Marian* Knights. To him aſſociated other *Germans*, and in ſhort time encreaſing, they profeſſed the Military Employments of the *Templars*, and followed the Acts of Piety and Charity of the *Hoſpitallers*. *A. D.* 1190. or 1191. they elected *Henry Walpott* their firſt Maſter, and the following Year were confirmed by *Celeſtine* III. under the Title of Knights *Teutonicks*, or *Dutch* Knights, of the Hoſpital of St. *Mary* the Virgin, vowing Poverty, Obedience, and Charity, and following the Rule of St. *Auguſtin*. Their Statutes were compoſed from thoſe of the *Hoſpitallers* and *Templars*, and One Article was, *That none but* Germans *ſhould be of this Order*. Their Habit was a White Mantle, on the Breaſt a plain *Black Croſs*, but ſome make it a *Black Croſs* voided with a *Croſs Potent*. At *Acon* they erected another Hoſpital; but after that City

City was taken by *Saladine*, they removed under *Hermannus* their Master into *Germany*, on whom the Emperor *Frederick* II. *A. D.* 1229. and Pope *Honorius* III. bestowed *Prussia*; where having conquer'd that Nation, and reduced it from Paganism, they built the City of *Maryburgh*, and there, *A. D.* 1340. fixed the chief Residence of their great Master. This Country they enjoyed till 1525. that *Albertus Brandenburgh*, the last great Master, made solemn Renunciation of that Order, and became feudatory to *Sigismond* I. King of *Poland*, who created this *Albert* first Duke of *Prussia*: However, some of the Knights disrelishing this Action elected another great Master, *viz. Albert Wolfang*, and leaving *Prussia* setled in *Germany*, where they now reside. The younger Sons of the *German* Princes being, for the most part received into this Order, giving it the greatest Reputation.

6. *Knights of* Mount-Joy.

These are so called, from a Castle where this Order was instituted, built upon the Point of a Mountain not far from *Jerusalem*, whence the Pilgrims first view'd the *Holy City*, and where these Knights lay in Garrison. Their Habit was White, and the Badge thereof an *Octogonal Cross Red*; they vowed Poverty, Chastity, and Obedience, and followed the Rule of St. *Basil*; which Pope *Alexander* III. *A. D.* 1180. changed to that of *Augustine*. Upon the Loss of the *Holy Land* they retired to *Spain*, and fought against the *Moors*, and according to the Places they resided in, had other Names, in *Catalonia* and *Valentia*, *Equites de Mongoia*, i. e. *Mount Joy*; but in *Castile*, Knights of *Monfrac*, a Castle there. When *Alphonso* IX. King of *Castile* gave them Lands they had won from the *Moors*, the Donation says, *To you Don* Rodrigo Gonsales, *Master of* Monfrac, *of the Order of* Mount Joy. Upon the Decay of this Order, *A. D.* 1221. this Castle was given to Don *Gonsalionez*, Master of the Order of *Calatrava*, by *Ferdinand* the Saint; and these Knights were incorporated with them.

7. *Knights*

7. *Knights of St.* John *of* Acon *or* Acres.

UNDER the Patronage of this Saint was this Order erected; they exerciſed all Duties of Charity towards Pilgrims, and aſſumed Arms in imitation of the *Hoſpitellers*; they followed the Rule of St. *Auguſtine*; and according to *Favina*, had a Black Habit, upon which they wore a *White Croſs patee*. After *Acon* was taken they removed into *Spain*, and flouriſhed in the Reign of *Alphonſus* the Aſtrologer King of *Caſtile*, about which time Pope *Alexander* IV. approved the Order under the conjoined Title of St. *Thomas* and St. *John* of *Acon*. This King gave them by his Will all the Furniture of his Houſe, and much Money; but afterward they dwindled, and at laſt were united to the *Hoſpitallers*. The Enſign was a *Red Croſs*, in the middle whereof ſtood the Figures of St. *John* and St. *Thomas*.

8. *Knights of St.* Thomas.

DISTINCT from the former, yet wearing the ſame Habit, as the Knights of St. *John* of *Acon*, making the ſame Proceſſions, and following the ſame Rule; their Badge was a *Saltire Gules*, (or as others are of Opinion) the ſame with that of St. *John* of *Acon*, wanting the Figures in the middle: But *Favin* reports, this Order was inſtituted by King *Richard* I. after the Surprizal of *Acon*; and that theſe Knights were of the *Engliſh* Nation, who wore a White Habit and a *Red Croſs*, charged in the middle with an *Eſcallon*, and that St. *Thomas Becket* was their Patron. Howbeit, after the Chriſtians were driven out of the *Holy Land*, the Knights of this Order were joined to the *Hoſpitallers*.

9. *Knights of St.* Blaze.

THESE were alſo called Knights *de Sta. Maria*; they were Officers and Servants to the Kings of *Armenia*; their Habit was Sky colour with a *Croſs Gold* on their Breaſts; others ſay a *Red Croſs*, and in the middle the Picture

Picture of St. *Blaze*, their Patron. This Order was at the height, when the *Armenian* Kings of the Houſe of *Luzignan* kept their Court in *Acon*.

10. *Knights of the Martyrs in* Paleſtine.

These took their Denomination from an Hoſpital in *Paleſtine*, dedicated to St. *Coſmus* and St. *Damianus*, Martyrs; where Acts of Charity were exerciſed towards Sick Strangers. Their Profeſſion obliged them to other Works of Mercy, *viz.* to redeem Captives, and bury their Dead. They followed the Rule of St. *Baſil*, which was confirmed to them by Pope *John* XXII. There Badge was a *Red Croſs*, in the middle whereof, within a Circle, was the aforeſaid Two *Saints*. When they retir'd into *Europe* they changed into a *Red Croſs*, and St. *Auguſtin*'s Rule.

11. *Knights of St.* Catherine *at Mount* Sinai.

This Order was inſtituted, *A. D.* 1063. under the Patronage of St. *Catherine*, whoſe Body was there depoſited in the Church of the Monaſtery erected and dedicated to her Name. Their firſt Inſtitution was to guard the ſaid Sepulchre, to ſecure Travellers, defend the *Grecian* Pilgrims, and to relieve them with Hoſpitality. Their Habit was White, and they lived under the Rule of St. *Baſil the Great*, vowing conjugal Chaſtity, and Obedience to the Abbot of this Monaſtery, who was their Superior. But when the *Turks* obtained theſe Countries, theſe Knights were ill treated and driven away, and the Order almoſt aboliſhed; nevertheleſs ſome Shadow remains for ſuch as travel to viſit the Holy Sepulchre at *Jeruſalem*, do now and then paſs to this Monaſtery at Mount *Sinai*, where in imitation of the *Padre Guardian* of *Jeruſalem*, the principal Monk in this Covent makes them Knights of St. *Catherine* over her Tomb, with the like Queſtions and Formulary as uſed at the Holy Sepulchre. Theſe Knights now wear upon the left ſide of their White Habit the Croſs of *Jeruſalem*, and Inſtrument of St. *Catherine*'s Martyrdom; but according to others, the middle of the Wheel is pierced with a Sword.

12. *Knights of St.* Anthony *in* Æthiopia.

After the Death of St. *Anthony* the Hermite, who dy'd about the Year 357. many of his Diſciples remaining near *Æthiopia*, follow'd his Example and Manner of Life, and their Succeſſors liv'd in great Auſterity and Solitarineſs in the Deſart (therefore call'd *Anchorites*) till the Year 370. when 'tis ſaid *John*, Emperor of *Æthiopia*, erected them into a Religious Order of Knighthood, under the Title and Protection of St. *Anthony*, Patron of his Empire, and beſtow'd upon them great Privileges; and being thus inſtituted, they receiv'd St. *Baſil*'s Rule, and cohabited in Monaſteries. Their Habit is black, with a blue Croſs *Tau*. Their chief Seat is in the *Iſle of Meroe*; but in other Parts of *Æthiopia* they have great Numbers of Convents, and no leſs than 2000000 of annual Revenue. The eldeſt Sons of Nobles and Gentlemen cannot be admitted, but the ſecond Sons may; and if a Man (except a Phyſician) have three Sons, he is bound to aſſign one of them to be of this Order. Their Vow is to obſerve conjugal Chaſtity; to die in Defence of the Chriſtian Faith; to guard the Empire; to obey their Laws and their Superiors; and to go to War when and whereſoever commanded: Moreover, they take an Oath not to fight in Wars between Chriſtians, nor receive Holy Orders, or marry without Licenſe. They are of two Sorts: One employ'd in the Wars, the other who being Old are exempted from Military Services, and retire themſelves under the Title and Profeſſion of Monks, to the Abbies where they firſt took their Habit; before which they muſt ſerve three Years againſt the *Arabian* Pyrates about the *Red Sea*, three Years againſt the *Turks*, and three againſt the *Moors* upon the Borders of *Borneo*. When they come to be admitted into their Abbey, they are introduced in their Military Habit, of which being diſrob'd, the Religious one is put on, *viz.* a black Gown reaching down to the Ground, lined with blue, having a blue Croſs fix'd to the Breaſt, and over that a black Cowle; they are afterwards led to the Church, and there make their Profeſſion.

Profeſſion. *Philip* VII. Son to the Founder, enlarg'd their Lands and Privileges, and added a Border of *Gold* to the Badge of the *blue Croſs*, as obſerved at this Day.

In *Italy*, *France* and *Spain*, there are a Sort of Monks that have the Title of Knights of St. *Anthony*, which obſerve the Rule of St. *Auguſtin*, and they wear a plain Croſs like that in *Æthiopia*; but the Principals of theſe wear a double St. *Anthony*'s Croſs of blue Satin, the one above the other. Their chief Seat is at *Vienne* in *Dauphine*, of which Place the General of the Order bears the Title of Abbot, the Monaſtery being erected into an Abbey 1297. in Honour of St. *Anthony*, whoſe Body was tranſlated thither from *Conſtantinople*; and all other Places built in Honour of his Name, were made ſubject to him *A. D.* 1523. *Moræus* calls them *The Hoſpitallers of St.* Anthony, and ſays they begun in *France A. D.* 1121. from *Gaſton* a Nobleman of *Vienna*. But *Baronius* and others ſay, *Gaſton* and *Gerin* inſtituted it earlier, making the Letter *Thau* their Enſign or Badge.

13. *The* Conſtantinian *Angelick Knights of St.* George *in* Greece, *but now in* Italy.

Marquez, a *Spaniſh* Writer, makes this one of the firſt Military Orders in Chriſtendom, and derives a formal Inſtitution, Rules and Laws from *Conſtantine* the Great, which appears little better than Fabulous, therefore we ſhall omit his Account.

The Great Maſters have their chief Seat and Convent at *Brianno* near *Venice*, and is Hereditary in the Family of *Angelus Flavius Comnenus*. Among the reſt of their Prerogatives, the Maſters are *Commenſales Pontificum*, i. e. may ſit at the Table with the Pope, who defends them as Benefactors to the Church, and Founders of the *Lateran* Cathedral at *Rome*. As Subjects to no Prince, they have Power of coyning Money: They give Titles of Counts and Princes to their own Fraternity, and take upon them the reſtoring to *Honours*, of legitimating *Baſtards*, making *Doctors*, *Poets Laureats* and *Publick Notaries*. This Order is under the Protection of the

the Virgin *Mary* and Patronage of St. *George*; and they profeſs Obedience and conjugal Chaſtity; they wear a white Habit, on the left Side whereof is ſowed a red or crimſon Velvet Croſs, Flory; in the middle is the *Labarum* ☥ imbroidered with the Letter A upon one Arm of the Croſs, and Ω on the other. The Sides are wrought with Gold and Silk, but the *Labarum* is all Gold. Amongſt theſe Knights are three Degrees; the firſt call'd Collered or Grand Croſſes, wearing a Collar form'd of *Labarums*, whereat hangs the Croſs and St. *George*. The ſecond are the Knights, and theſe wear the Croſs above deſcrib'd. The third are Servants, and they bear the Croſs only, without the *Labarum*. The many Grand Priorates or Commanderies belonging to this Order, ſhew the Power they were formerly endow'd with.

14. *Knights of St.* James *in* Galicia *or* Sanctiago.

This is the principal Order in *Spain*, and had its Title of *Don Raniro*, King of *Leon*, who about the Year 826. at *Clavigio*, by the Aſſiſtance of St. *James* (ſaid to appear upon a white Horſe, bearing a Banner with a *red Croſs*) and gain'd a mighty Victory over a great Army of the *Moors*. Some place the Inſtitution about the Year 1160. others 1175. whereas it was only then confirm'd, and their Rule of Living preſcrib'd by Pope *Alexander* III. there being a Fraternity of Knights in *Spain*, *A. D.* 1030. under a *Maſter* and *Governor*, with Revenues.

And altho' this Order at firſt were diſpos'd to vertuous Courſes, and valiantly to encounter the *Moors*, Enemies to the *Croſs* of *Chriſt*, yet in time they became ſcandalouſly perverted, but were afterwards reduc'd to a better Life, and approv'd on by the ſaid Pope *Alexander*, who receiv'd them into the Protection of the Papal See, and gave them the Rule of St. *Auguſtin*, the Form of holding Chapters, of electing their *Maſters*, of *Treves*, and thirteen Commendadores of Houſes, and of the Viſitors; and in ſhort very large Privileges, together with the Monaſtery of St. *Lorjo*, ſituate in *Galicia* near *Sanctiago*;

Santiago; and the Prior and Canons thereof were incorporated into this Order.

THEIR Enſign is a *red Croſs*, which the Knights wear upon their Breaſt, terminating like the Blade of a Sword, the Hilt croſletted and faſhion'd after the ancient Manner; whereupon it was call'd *La Order de Santiago de la Eſpada*.

THEIR Habit is a white Mantle cloſe before, on the Breaſt whereon is placed the ſaid Croſs, made of Silk or Cloth, and they are obliged to wear it upon their Garments, Coats or Cloaks, tho' they uſe Croſſes of Gold likewiſe.

WHEN the *Moors* were driven out of *Spain*, and the principal Branch of this Order expir'd, upon a Conteſt for the Place of Great Maſter, the Crown of *Caſtile* ſtepp'd in between, and by conſent of the Knights. obtain'd it under the Title of Adminiſtrator, which was granted to King *Ferdinand*; and his Son *Charles* V. annex'd it with all its Rights, *&c.* to his Succeſſors in the Kingdoms of *Caſtile* and *Leon*. Since which, the Kings of *Spain* now enjoy the Adminiſtration of this Order, and carry that Title and Stile in the Inſcription upon the Great Seal thereof, which holds the Royal Arms of *Spain*, upon a Croſs that filleth all the Shield, with a Sword at each of the four Corners.

15. *Knights of St.* Saviour *in* Arragon.

THESE were inſtituted *A. D.* 1118. by Don *Alphonſo*, call'd *Emperor* of *Spain*, *King* of *Navarre*, *Arragon*, &c. choſen out of the *Spaniſh* and *French* Nobility that aſſiſted in his Wars. He form'd them into a Society, the better to enable him to drive the *Moors* out of *Saragoſſa*, and the whole Territory of *Arragon*. Their Rule of living was the *Ciſterian*, and ſomewhat conformable to the *Knights Templars*. When the *Moors* were driven out of *Spain*, their rich *Commanderies* were at length united to the Crown.

THEIR Habit was a white Mantle, on the Breaſt whereof was a *red Croſs Anchre*; but ſome ſay it was the Figure of our Saviour

16. *Knights* d'Avis *in* Portugal.

Don *Alphonſo Henriquez*, firſt King of *Portugal*, took from the *Moors*, *A. D.* 1147. the City of *Evora*, and to ſtrengthen it, ſent thither ſeveral gallant Commanders, who aſſum'd the Title of Knights of St. *Mary* of *Evora*, putting themſelves under the Protection of our bleſſed Lady. Not long after they were call'd *d'Avis*, from a Caſtle upon the *Portugueſe* Frontiers, conquer'd from the *Moors*, whither they tranſplanted themſelves. It was confirm'd by Pope *Innocent* III. *A. D.* 1204. under the Rule of St. *Benedict*, and therefore in ſome Papal Rules call'd of St. *Benedict d'Avis*. The *Knights* profeſs *conjugal Chaſtity* and *Obedience*. *Anno* 1213. they ſubmitted themſelves to the *Rule*, *Statutes* and *Viſitation* of the Order of *Calatrava*; but in the Time of *John* of *Portugal* (natural Son to *Pedro* King of *Portugal*) ſeventh Great Maſter *d'Avis*, they caſt off their Acknowledgments to *Calatrava*, and never after ſubmitted to them; and afterwards, when the Crown of *Portugal* fell into the Hands of *Philip* II. King of *Spain*, this Order was govern'd according to the Statutes of *Portugal*.

Their Badge is a *green Croſs*, *Flory*, (ſuch as the *Knights* of *Alcantara* us'd to wear.) They muſt be Gentlemen by Extraction, both of the Father's and Mother's ſide.

17. *Knights of St.* Michael's *Wing in* Portugal.

About the Year 1165. others ſay 1171. Don *Alphonſo*, who founded the Order *d'Avis*, founded this alſo after his obtaining a notable Victory over the *Moors* and *Albara* King of *Sevil*, in which Battle St. *Michael* the Archangel is ſaid to appear on the right Side of *Alphonſo*, and fight againſt them.

Their Inveſtiture, *&c.* was the ſame with *d'Avis*. It is now grown out of Uſe, but the Maſterſhip remains with the King of *Portugal*.

18. *Knights of St.* Gereon.

This Order was eſtabliſh'd by *Frederick Barbaroſſa* the Emperor; others ſay by *Frederick* II. and conſiſted only of the *German* Nation. They follow'd the Rule of St. *Auguſtin*, and wore a white Habit, whereon was ſow'd a black Patriarchal Croſs, ſet on a little green Hill.

19. *Knights of St.* Julian de Pereyro, *or of* Alcantara.

They had the firſt Appellation from St. *Julian de Pereyro*, a Town in *Leon*, where they had a Monaſtery built for them by *Ferdinand* II. King of *Leon* and *Galicia*, who in his Diploma of Privileges granted thereunto 1176. ſtiled himſelf Protector of this Society of Knights. In the Approbation-Bull of Pope *Alexander* III. their Chief is called Prior; but in that of Pope *Lucius* III. he is ſtiled Maſter of *Pereyro*. They uſed a Secular Habit, modeſt and grave, and the Eccleſiaſticks a Clerical Habit, with a Shred of Cloth and a Scapulary, to diſtinguiſh them from other Seculars and Eccleſiaſticks. They obſerved the Rule of St. *Benedict* moderated, as it was convenient for the Exerciſe of Arms againſt the *Moors*, for which End it was inſtituted. Their ancient Badge was a *Pear-tree Vert*, in Alluſion to the Name.

The Occaſion of altering the firſt Appellation was upon change of their Habitation. Pope *Adrian* VI. annex'd this Maſterſhip, together with thoſe of St. *James* and *Calatrava*, to the Royal Crown of *Caſtile* for ever.

20. *Knights of* Trugillo *or* Truxillo *in* Spain.

This Order is ſo call'd from the City of *Trugillo* in *Eſtremadura*, but when, or by whom founded, or their Badge, is unknown. Some ſuppoſe theſe Knights the ſame with that of *Alcantara*; 'tis evident they were in being *A. D.* 1227. when 'tis pretended the Maſter of *Alcantara* took *Trugillo* from the *Moors*, and plac'd there a Brotherhood of Knights. But it ſeems theſe Knights of

of *Truxillo*, were a diſtinct Order ſeveral Years before, and 'tis not unlikely that they might be incorporated into that of St. *Julian de Pereyro*, and by this Means the Order of *Alcantara* acquired the Towns of *Trugillo*, *Santta Cruz*, &c. which *Alfonſo* IX. King of *Caſtile* had given them. They were to be of Noble Deſcent, and make proof of their Gentility; they were obliged to be near the King's Perſon, and to attend him in all Martial Expeditions, maintaining always Two Horſes and Servants in Readineſs.

21. *Knights of* Calatrava.

This Order was inſtituted in *Caſtile* by *Sanchio* III. and ſo called from *Calatrava*, a Frontier Caſtle of *Caſtile* and *Toledo*, which the *Moors* took, *A. D.* 714. compounded of the *Arabick Cala* a Caſtle, and the *Spaniſh Travas* Manacles, with which the *Moors* fettered the Chriſtians; 400 Years after which, upon the Recovery of the Town from the *Moors*, it was given to the Knights *Templars*; but they, unable to ſtop the mighty Conqueſts of the *Moors*, the ſaid *Sanchio* by Proclamation promis'd the Inheritance to any who would undertake the Defence of it, being the Key of the Kingdom of *Toledo*. At length *Raymond* of *Barcelona* (formerly a Knight, then a *Ciſtercian* Abbot) by the Perſwaſion of *Velaſquez*, accepted the Proffer, and had the Donation, *A. D.* 1158. and fortifying it by the Help of his Aſſociates, this Order aroſe, call'd at firſt *Militia de Calatrava*. Upon the account of the Fertility of the Place, 20000 Men and their Families were drawn from the neighbouring Countries to ſettle there, ſo that the *Moors* never after attempted it. They remain'd under their own Maſters till Pope *Adrian* VI. annex'd it to the Crowns of *Caſtile* and *Leon*.

22. *Order of the Holy Ghoſt at* Rome.

Marquez calls them *Brothers of the Hoſpital of the Holy Ghoſt*, who tho' not inveſted with Swords and Spurs, are nevertheleſs reckoned among the Military Orders, becauſe bound to certify their Gentility before Admit-

tance. Their chief Seat is the Sumptuous Hoſpital of the Holy Ghoſt, founded at *Saxia* near the River *Tyber* at *Rome*, by Pope *Innocent* III. *A. D.* 1198. or 1201. But the Ancient Foundation was the Hoſpital of the *Holy Ghoſt* at *Montpelier* in *France*, tho' this other became the Principal. They profeſs Chaſtity, Poverty, and Obedience, living under the Rule of St. *Auguſtine*, and have a Maſter. Their Enſign is a *White Patriarchal Croſs with Twelve Points*, ſowed to their Breaſt, and on the left ſide of their Black Mantle.

In this Hoſpital, Care is taken for the nurſing and bringing up expoſed Children, curing Infirmities, Entertainment of Strangers for Three Days, relieving the Poor, and the like Works. Their Revenue is about 24000 Ducats *per* Day, having great Commandaries in *Italy*, *Sicily*, *Spain*, *France*, *Burgundy*, *Germany*, and elſewhere.

23. *Knights of St.* George d'Alfama.

So named from a Town in *Tortoſa*, were inſtituted, *A. D.* 1201. received Approbation from the Papal See, *A. D.* 1363. and *A. D.* 1399. was united to the Order of our Lady of *Monteſa*.

24. *Knights of* Chriſt *in* Livonia, *or of the Sword-bearers.*

A. D. 1186. *Mainard* firſt preach'd Chriſtianity to the *Livonians*, and erected the Biſhoprick of *Riga*; but his Succeſſors meeting with many Difficulties, *A. D.* 1200. *Albert*, then Biſhop of *Livonia*, inſtituted this Order in Imitation of the Knights *Teutonicks*, with deſign to extirpate Idolatry, and promote the Goſpel. He preſcribed to theſe Knights the *Ciſtercian* Rule and Habit, *viz.* a long White Mantle and Black Hood; on the Breaſt was the Figure of a *Red Sword*, or rather *Two plac'd in Saltire*, whence they had the Title of *Enſiferi fratres*, or *Brethren Sword-bearers*. Their Statutes were ſomething like the Knights *Templars*, and they vowed Obedience and Chaſtity. Pope *Innocent* III. confirmed this Order, which became fully inſtituted, *A. D.* 1203. but becauſe they

they could not of themſelves accompliſh their End. About the Year 1237, they were united to the *Teutonick* Order, and ſubmitted to their Rule and Habit, by whoſe Help they overcame the *Livonians*, and brought them to the Chriſtian Faith; thenceforward the Great Maſter of *Livonia* acknowledged him of *Pruſſia* their Superior, until *Walter de Pletemberg*, their Great Maſter, ſeparated this Order from their Obedience to the *Teutonick*. Finally, *A. D.* 1561. *Gothard de Ketler*, the laſt Great Maſter, following the Example of the Great Maſter of *Pruſſia*, became ſubject to the Crown of *Poland*, ſurrendering to King *Sigiſmond* II. the City and Caſtle of *Riga*, and all the Lands, Charters, Privileges, *&c.* of this Order, receiving in exchange the Dukedom of *Curland*, to him and his Heirs for ever; ſo the Order expired after 357 Years continuance.

25. *Knights of* Jeſus Chriſt *in* Italy *or* France.

St. *Dominick* deſcended of the Family of the *Guzmans* in *Spain*, inſtituted this Order, *A. D.* 1206. principally to fight againſt the *Albigenſes*, then call'd Hereticks. He preſcribed to them a White Habit, and for their Badge a *Croſs flory, quarterly, ſable and argent.* The Work being done with the *Albigenſes*, they devoted themſelves wholly to ſpiritual Warfare; and afterwards, upon admitting Widows and Virgins into their Order, they became called *Fratres ſeu Sorores de Pœnitentia B. Dominici*, whoſe Rule Pope *Innocent* VI. confirm'd *circa An.* 1360.

26. *Knights of St.* Mary de Merced. *in* Aragon.

James I. of *Aragon*, being ſometime a Priſoner to *Simon* Earl of *Montfort* in *France*, where he ſuffered much Hardſhip, and being moved with the inſufferable Miſeries the Chriſtians endured under the Slavery of the *Moors*, made a Vow to the Bleſſed Virgin, That when delivered himſelf, he would endeavour the Redemption of ſuch Chriſtians as the *Moors* had made Captives, and accordingly laid up great Summs for the Performance; and afterwards, by the Council of *Raymond de Penafort*, his Confeſſor, and *Pedro Nolaſco*, a Noble

Chevalier, he founded in *Barcelona* this Order of *la Nueva Merced*, ſo named by the Virgin, who, as they reported, appeared to them all in one and the ſame Hour, directing the Inſtitution. In *Anno* 1358. I find it called alſo *Ordo beatæ Eulaliæ*, from St. *Eulalia* the Virgin and Martyr, buried at *Barcelona* in the Church bearing her Name. This Order began on the Day of St. *Laurence*, in *Auguſt*, *A. D.* 1218. in the Fifth Year of that King, which Day they annually commemorate. They were to gather Alms, and go in Perſon to redeem Chriſtian Slaves; which Work proſpered ſo well, that *Velaſco* (the firſt General or Head) ſet at Liberty 400 within the Space of Six Years after its Foundation. Their Habit was a Coat and Scapular of courſe white Cloath, garniſhed with Cordons and Ribbons, wherewith they faſt'ned it about their Necks, and from the upper-end thereof iſſued a Cap that covered half their Head: The Monks wore their Coats and Scapulars reaching down to their Feet; but thoſe of the Knights were much ſhorter. *A. D.* 1251. King *James*, the Founder, granted unto all the Fraternity, that they ſhould wear upon their Scapulars the Arms of *Aragon*, *viz.* *Or* 4 *Pales Gules*, and above that the White Croſs of the Church of *Barcelona* in a red Field, with Two Coats joined together *per feſs* in one Shield, which came afterwards to be encompaſſed with a *Bordure*, which the Knights wore on their Scapulars, but the Monks on their Mantles, and both upon their Breaſts. Diſputes ariſing among themſelves, they were incorporated with the Knights of *Monteſa*; ſo that, ever ſince, the whole Fraternity have been only Prieſts. The Maſter General hath his Reſidence at *Barcelona*, by the Decrees of Pope *Clement* V. and *John* XXII. To conclude, they now collect great Sums of Money, ſend out their Agents yearly, chiefly to *Algiers* and *Feſs*, and for the Redemption of Chriſtian Captives, and have from the Time of their Inſtitution followed their propoſed Ends with all religious Care and Faithfulneſs.

27. *Knights of the* Roſary *in* Toledo.

Roderick, Biſhop of *Toledo* in *Spain*, ſeeing the Country ſore oppreſſed by the *Moors*, aſſembled the Nobleſt of the City, and propoſed the Neceſſity of their Aſſiſtance to extirpate the *Moors*; whereunto they being unanimouſly inclin'd, he gave Beginning to this Order. By their Statutes, beſides fighting againſt the *Moors*, they are obliged to ſay, continually, the Roſary of our Bleſſed Lady. Their Rule of Living was that of St. *Dominick*; and their Enſign the *Figure of our Lady of the Roſary upon a Croſs flory, quarterly, argent and ſable.*

28. *Knights of St.* Mary the Glorious, *in* Italy.

Their Author was *Bartholomeo de Vincenza*, a Friar Preacher, or *Dominican*, afterwards Biſhop of that City. The End he chiefly deſigned, was to procure Peace to *Italy*, then much diſquieted by Civil Wars. It was inſtituted, *A. D.* 1233. called *Generalis Devotionis annus*, and approved and confirmed by Pope *Urban* IV. *A. D.* 1262. and the Rule of St. *Dominick* preſcribed them, who are obliged to take into their Care Widows and Orphans, and endeavour to beget Concord among ſuch as are at Variance. Their Habit is a White Tunick or Caſſock, and a Mantle of Ruſſet; ſome make their Badge which they wear upon their Beaſt *a purple Croſs patee bordered with Gold*, others make it *a purple Croſs patee, with Two Stars in chief*; but *Marquez*, that has writ of the Order of Knighthood, gives it an *Octogonal Croſs*, like that of *Malta*. They profeſs Obedience and Conjugal Chaſtity; but are forbid to wear Spurs or Bridles of Gold: They are commonly called *Cavaleri de Madona*, and reſide at *Bolonia*, *Modena*, and other *Italian* Cities; and becauſe they have no Monaſteries, but dwell in their own Houſes at Eaſe and Plenty, they were called *Fratres Gaudentes* or *Hilares*.

29. *Knights of St.* James, *in* Portugal,

WERE inſtituted, *A. D.* 1310. by *Denys* VI. King of *Portugal*, in honour of St. *James*, under whoſe Protection he became victorious in divers Battles againſt the *Moors*, and at length quieted his Kingdom by the Aſſiſtance of theſe Knights. It was not long after its Inſtitution ere this Order flouriſhed, through the Privileges the Founder beſtowed, and the Approbation of Pope *Nicholas* IV. and others his Succeſſors. The Knights profeſs Conjugal Chaſtity, Hoſpitality and Obedience, and none are admitted till they make proof of their Gentility by Blood. Their Enſign is a *red Sword*, formed like that of St. *James* of *Galicia*; the Habit White, and the only difference between them lies in a little Twiſt of Gold which theſe of *Portugal* draw about their Sword. At *Alcaſar de Sul* was their Principal Convent, which they afterwards removed to *Dalmela*, where it yet continues. Their Statutes, *&c.* are much the ſame with thoſe of St. *James* in *Galicia*, whereupon ſome erroneouſly have confounded them.

30. *Knights of our* Lady, *and of St.* George *of* Monteſa.

THIS Order ſucceeded into the Lands and Poſſeſſions of the Knights *Templars* in *Valentia*, as the Knights *Hoſpitallers* did into thoſe of the *Templars* in *France*, *Italy*, and *England*; for *James* II. King of *Aragon* and *Valentia*, refuſing to give their Revenues to the *Hoſpitallers* (which as other Princes had done) gave them to the Convent of *Monteſa*, where had been placed both Knights and Friars of the Order of *Calatrava*; and excuſing himſelf to Pope *John* XXII. *A. D.* 1317. he inſtituted this Order in the City *Valentia* (nevertheleſs ſubject to that of *Calatrava*) and made choice of the Town of *Monteſa*, to give the Knights both Name and Habitation, whom he obliged to defend his Kingdom againſt the *Moors*. Their College, dedicated to St. *George*, was built the following Year, and their Statutes confirmed by the ſaid Pope *John*, who gave them the *Ciſtercian* Rule.

Rule. Upon their Habit is White, and the Badge a plain *red Croſs*, which they wear on their Breaſts. *A. D.* 1399. the Order of St. *George d'Alfama* was incorporated to it. And the Great Office of Maſter hereof is in the King of *Spain*, who hath the Revenue of Thirteen Commandaries belonging thereunto to the Value of 23000 Ducats *per annum*.

31. *Knights of* Chriſt *in* Portugal.

These ſprang alſo from the Ruin of the Knights *Templars*, whoſe confiſcated Eſtates King *Denys*, ſirnamed *Penoca*, deſired of Pope *John* XXII. might not be diſpoſed out of his Kingdom, in regard of the great Evils the Neighbouring *Moors* in *Algarves*, did his Kingdom; and foraſmuch as the Town of *Caſtro Marin* was a Frontier, and commodious to reſiſt the Enemy, he moved for Licence to inſtitute an Order of Knights therein, and offer'd his Holineſs the Rents and Juriſdiction thereof, which accordingly was granted by the Pope, and dedicated it to the Honour of God, and the Exaltation of the Catholick Faith, under the Title of the *Military Order of our Lord Jeſus Chriſt*, as is alledged from the miraculous Apparition of our Saviour crucified, ſeen by the King when he went out to fight the *Moors*.

32. *Knights of the* Paſſion of Jeſus Chriſt.

This Order was erected by *Charles* King of *France*, (tho' it made no Progreſs) and our King *Richard* II. with a large Deſign exceeding all other Religious Orders, except thoſe of St. *John of Jeruſalem* and Knights *Templars*. They were to renew the Memory of our Saviour's Paſſion, to extirpate Pride, Covetouſneſs and Luxury, to make way for the Reconqueſt of *Jeruſalem* and *Paleſtine*, and for the Subverſion and Confuſion of Enemies of the Faith. A MSS. in the *Arundelian* Library, reckons up Twenty Cauſes for the Neceſſity of its Inſtitution, which are too long to be inſerted; and altho' it was dedicated to our Saviour, yet the Bleſſed Virgin was look'd upon as a principal Mediatreſs and

Advocate

Advocate of this Holy Chevalry. Their Governments in the principal Convent, were to be debated by Five Councils, in the Preſence of the Prince: 1. The *Quotidian* Council, conſiſting of Twenty-four: 2. The Particular conſiſting of about Fourty: 3. The Grand Council conſiſting of Eighty. 4. The General Chapter held every Year. And, 5. The Univerſal Chapter to be held every Fourth or Sixth Years, conſiſting of a Thouſand Knights of the Chevalry. The Principal Officer was the *Grand Juſticiary*, the next the *Grand Bailiff*: In the Chief City, and in every City and Caſtle of theirs, one was to adminiſter Juſtice called a *Poteſtate*. In the general Chapter was to be an Officer called the *Senator*, and in the Univerſal Chapter a *Dictator* with Coadjutors and Aſſiſtants.

In the principal Convent were to be Ten Executers of Juſtice, and Four ſtyled Charitable Commiſſaries, whoſe Office was, to provide for Widows and Orphans; and whereas this Order was made up of Eight ſeveral Languages, and as many Notaries, who put on the Habit of the Brothers; for the greater Regularity of their Order, they were to bind themſelves by Oath to the Obſervance of theſe Three Points, Obedience to Sovereigns, Poverty of Spirit, and Conjugal Chaſtity. They were allotted for their Maintainance, the Poſſeſſion of Cities, Caſtles, *&c.* Gold, Silver, *&c.* and all to be in common, *&c.*

There was to belong to the Caſtle or Principal Convent a Church of marvellous Structure; it was deſign'd Fifty Cubits in breadth, without any Pillars, a Hundred Cubits long, and in height Twenty-five; likewiſe an Hoſpital, where the Widows of the Holy Chevalry ſhould attend upon the Sick and Infirm; a Baptiſtery or Font, for the Baptizing the Children of the Knights; a ſtately Palace, with a great Hall and large Conſiſtories, to contain the Prince and Council with their Retinue; with a large and delightful Cloiſter for the Canons and Clerks; together with a very ſpacious Palace, to entertain the Princes of the *Weſt* when they came that Way, either to War, or upon Pilgrimage: In fine, there was to have been Three chief Halls, wherein they

they might dine together; with distinct Lodgings and Habitations, Wine-Cellars, Granges, Granaries, Stables for Horses and Cattel, Easements, Mills, Cisterns, Baths, and all other Necessaries for the Chevalry. Their Habit was to denote the Passion of Jesus.

The Dress they were obliged to was a handsome Cloth Coat of a civil Colour, reaching down half way their Legs, and girt with a large Girdle of Silk or Leather Two Fingers broad, the Buckle of Black Horn, the Tongue and Garnishing of the Holes, Tin; to have Red Chaperons or Caps, representing the Blood of our Saviour; over their said Coats, a Mantle of White Cloth or Serge, which from the Shoulders downward was to be open on both Sides along the Arms, and in that Part before the Breast a *Cross* of red Cloth or Serge Two Fingers broad, extending to the Breadth and Length of that Part of the Mantle; the *Cross* of the Prince's Mantle was to be edged round with a Gold Fringe about half an Inch broad; there were to be some other small Distinction as to the Shape of the Cross upon the White Habit to be used by this Holy *Chevalry*. Their Arms in a Banner were *Argent*, upon a *Cross Gules*; *a Compass of Four convex semi-circles, conjoyning Four intervening Angles alternately sable* (in Allusion to the Agony of our Lord) charged with an *Agnus Dei Or, the Compass and Cross both fimbriated Gold, with a little red Bordure.*

In Times of extraordinary Danger, and great Battles, they were to have another singular and solemn Banner; every Knight was to have his Esquire armed at all Points, a little Valet for his Lance and Helmet, a bigger to carry his Mail, and a third to lead his Sumpter; Five Horses, and Four Servants were to attend him in all Warlike Expeditions, and Two or Three Horses and Servants in all Times of Peace. The Number of these Knights of the *Holy Chevalry* was 1000 or 1100.

33. *The Order of the* Brician *Knights in* Sweden.

Was founded, *A. D.* 1366. by an holy and famous Queen of that Kingdom which they repute St. *Bridget*, the

the Aim of whoſe Profeſſion was to oppoſe Hereſy, ſecure the Confines of the Kingdom, bury the Dead, ſuccour Widows and Fatherleſs, and to keep up Hoſpitality. Their chief Enſign was a *Blue Octogonal Croſs, and under it a Tongue of Fire*, the Symbol of Love and Charity.

34. *Knights of St.* Maurice *in* Savoy.

This Order took its riſe upon the Retreat of *Amadeus* VIII. Duke of *Savoy*, into the Deſart of *Ripaille*, near the Lake of *Geneva*, and was conferr'd by him, *A. D.* 1434. on Ten of his Courtiers, who retir'd with him, as well as to preſerve the Memory of St. *Maurice*, the Patron of *Savoy*. Nine Years after its Inſtitution, the Founder was elected Pope, *A. D.* 1439. and aſſumed the Name of *Felix* V. Nine Years after that he reſigned the Chair, and retir'd to his Solitude in *Ripaille*, where he died, *Jan.* 7. 1451. and lies buried at *Lauſanna*. The Order continued not long after his Death; but Duke *Emanuel Philibert* reſtored it, *A. D.* 1572. and the Dukes of *Savoy* are their Grand Maſters.

35. *Knights of the* Holy Ghoſt,

Were inſtituted by Pope *Paul* II. *A. D.* 1468. under the Title of Brethren of the Hoſpital of the *Holy Ghoſt*. They wore upon their Habits a *White Croſs forme*.

36. *Knights of St.* George *in* Auſtria *and* Carinthia.

The Emperor *Frederick* III. others ſay *Rudolphus* of *Hapsburgh*, firſt Founder of the Greatneſs of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, inſtituted this Order, *A. D.* 1470. chiefly to guard the Frontiers of *Germany*, *Hungary*, *Auſtria*, *Stiria*, and *Carinthia*, and to ſuppreſs the Inſolency of the Turks, ſince which theſe Knights have gallantly behaved themſelves. The Great Maſter was advanc'd to the Honour of a Prince; and the Caſtle of *Mildſtad* in *Carinthia* was given him for his Seat, where was

founded a Cathedral Church of Canons, under the Rule of St. *Auguſtin*. Their Enſign is the Arms of St. *George*, a *red Croſs*, and their Habit white; they profeſs Conjugal Chaſtity and Obedience, and have the Emperors for their Protectors.

THERE are alſo *Cavalleros de San Jorge en Alemania*, an Order erected by the Emperor *Maximilian*, 1494. upon the like Deſign with the former; it was confirmed by Pope *Alexander* VI. and is under the ſame Profeſſion and Protection as the other. There Enſign is a *red Croſs*, with a *Crown of Gold* on the top of it; they were otherwiſe called *crowned Knights*; for after they had ſerved a Year, they and their Heirs have a peculiar right of Adorning their Shields and Helms with a Crown; the Occaſion was upon a notable Victory obtained againſt the *Turks*, who confeſſed that a Man on Horſeback ſuppoſed to be St. *George*, put them into that Fear and Diſorder as to quit the Field.

37. *Knights of St.* George *at* Rome.

THESE were inſtituted by *Alexander* VI. 1498. or, as others ſay, by Pope *Paul* III. at whoſe Death it became extinct. They dwelt at *Ravenna*, their Province, and were to ſecure the *Adriatick Sea* from Pyrates.

38. *Knights of St.* Peter *at* Rome.

POPE *Leo* X. *A. D.* 1520. inſtituted this Order to fight againſt the *Turks*, and defend the Sea Coaſts. Their Number was Four Hundred; they wore the Image of St. *Peter within an Oval of Gold hanging at a Golden Chain.*

39. *Knights of St.* Paul *at* Rome,

WERE inſtituted by *Paul* III. 1540. and while he was Pope, he made Two Hundred of them. Their Enſign was *St.* Paul's *Image hanging at a Golden Chain.*

40. *Knights called* Pios *at* Rome.

Pope *Pius* IV. erected this Order 1560. He created of them at first 375. but they encreased to 535. He granted them very considerable Endowments, and preferr'd them before the Knights of the Empire, and *Malta*, because they were his Courtiers, and had the Charge of carrying his Chair on their Shoulders when he went abroad.

41. *Knights of St.* Stephen *at* Florence.

This Order was founded in imitation of the Knights of *Malta*, 1561. by *Cosmo de Medicis* II. Duke of *Florence*, afterwards first Duke of *Tuscany*, in honour of St. *Stephen*, Pope and Martyr, the Patron of the City of *Florence*, and in memory of the Battle on the 6th of *August*, (St. *Stephens-day*) at *Marciano*, where overthrowing the Assertors of Liberty, he laid the Foundation of his Grandeur. *Pius* IV. confirmed it under the Rule of St. *Benedict*, which was afterwards enlarged with many Emoluments and Privileges, by the succeeding Popes. The Knights vow'd Conjugal Chastity and Charity, in relieving the Afflicted, Obedience to their Masters the Great Dukes of *Tuscany*. The chief Place of their Residence was at *Pisa*, where the Founder erected a Church and Convent, as a Nursery for Persons skilful in Maritime Affairs, but since it is transferred to *Cosmopoli* in the Isle of *Ilva*. Their Habit is a long Mantle of White Chamlet trimmed with Red, and on the left part of their Breast a *Cross* (like that of *Malta*) *of red* or *crimson Satin bordcr'd with Gold*; it is daily worn on their Cloaks, and on their Military Garments, and about their Necks in a Ribbon on Festival Days. This Order (like the *Maltese*) also consists of Knights, Priests and Servants. The Priests wear the *Cross of red Taffaty* without a Bordure, the Servants the *Cross* of St. *Anthony* only. The Statutes were reformed by *Ferdinand* Duke of *Tuscany*, Son to the Founder, and approv'd, 1590.

42. *Knights of St.* Maurice *and St.* Lazarus *in* Savoy.

Pope *Gregory* XIII. having, at the Requeſt of *Emanuel Philibert*, Duke of *Savoy*, reſtor'd the Order of St. *Lazarus*, and the Order of St. *Maurice*, *A. D.* 1572. and conſtituted this Duke Grand Maſter, the ſame Year, for their greater Honour, he united them under the Title of St. *Maurice* and St. *Lazarus*, and appointed the Dukes of *Savoy* Hereditaries and Maſters, and oblig'd them to furniſh out two Gallies for the Service of the Papal See, to be employ'd againſt Pyrates. Upon this Union, the Knights had aſſign'd them for Habit a Gown of Crimſon Tabby, with wide Sleeves, a long Train, and edg'd with white Taffaty, and a Cordon with a Taſſel of White and Green fix'd to the Collar. The Badge is, *A green Croſs ancree of St.* Laurence, *plac'd Saltirewiſe, ſurmounted with the white Croſs pornelle of St. Maurice*, which the Knights wear either in a Gold Chain, or any colour'd Ribbon. And the ſaid Duke founded for the Knights two fair Convents, one at *Nice*, the other at *Turin*, and beſtow'd on them all the Revenues within his Territories, formerly appertaining to the Order of St. *Lazarus*. The Dukes of *Savoy*, as Grand Maſters, uſe this Title.

43. *Knights of* Loretto.

This Order, about the Year 1587. was inſtituted by *Sixtus* V. who erected the Church of our Lady at *Loretto* into a Cathedral and Biſhop's See, and gave the Knights for their Enſign, *the Image of our Lady of Loretto*, hung in a Gold Chain. This is not quite extinguiſh'd.

44. *Knights of the Bleſſed Virgin* Mary *of Mount* Carmel.

Tho' the Grand Maſterſhip of St. *Lazarus*, and its Commandaries in all Dominions, were confirm'd by Pope *Gregory* XIII. upon the Houſe of *Savoy*, yet under King

Henry

Henry III. ſome Knights in *France*, of that Order, refus'd to joyn with their Fellows, under the Obedience of the Duke of *Savoy*. King *Henry* IV. deſirous to have a new order, bearing the Denomination of *The Bleſſed Virgin*, &c. apply'd himſelf to Pope *Paul* V. and obtain'd what he ſu'd for *A. D.* 1608. (beſides other Penſions out of certain Eccleſiaſtical Benefices in *France*) the Commandaries and Hoſpitals of St. *Lazarus* in that Kingdom, and the *Knights of St.* Lazarus that remain'd in *France*, were incorporated with them under two Titles; their Seal being inſcrib'd, *Sigillum Ordinis & Militiæ Mariæ Virginis de Monte Carmeli, & Sancti Lazari in Hieruſalem.* The Order conſiſts of One Hundred choice *French* Gentlemen, whoſe Offices are to attend on the King in every warlike Expedition. They vow Chaſtity and Obedience, and profeſs to fight againſt the Enemies of the Romiſh See. The Feaſt of the Patroneſs is the 16th of *July*; *Philibert Nereſtang*, a valiant Knight of St. *Lazarus*, was elected their firſt Maſter 1608. Their Badge is a Croſs of 8 Points of tawny Velvet or Sattin, with a white Border ſow'd on the left Side of their Cloaks, and the Image of the Virgin *Mary* of *Mount Carmel* plac'd in the Middle, within a Rundle encompaſs'd with Rays of Gold. They alſo wear about their Necks, in a tawny Silk Ribbon, the like Croſs of Gold; but the Image of the ſaid Knights is enamel'd on both Sides. There Inveſtiture is like that of *Malta*.

45. *Knights of the moſt Glorious Virgin* Mary *of* Rome.

A. D. 1618. *Pedro*, *John Baptiſta*, and *Bernardo*, ſirnam'd *Petrignaneos* (three Brethren of *Spelta* in *Italy*) invented this Order: To which was added, the Rule of St. *Francis d'Aſſiſe*, whereof the Popes are Great Maſters. *Paul* V. confirm'd them, and gave theſe Knights the Palace of St. *John Lateran* for their Convent, and the City and Port of *Civita Vecchia* to make their Arſenal; with an Iſland adjacent, together with the Government of his Gallies. Their Inſtitution was for the Exaltation of the *Roman* Church, and to check or ſuppreſs the

the *Turks* roving in the Mediterranean. There are three Sorts of this Order, 1. *Knights Gentlemen*, Laicks. 2. *Knights Gentlemen*, Prieſts and benefic'd. 3. *Knights Chaplains*, or *Servants of Arms*. All of theſe wear on the left Side of their Mantles their Badge, which is a *blew Croſs floree Azure*, border'd with *Silver*, having 4 *Mullets*, or *Stars*, at the End of each Flower, to ſignifie the Four Evangeliſts; in the Middle is a Circle (extended round underneath the Arms of the Croſs) ſet with 12 Rays for the 12 Apoſtles, inſcrib'd, *In hoc ſigno vincam*; and within it (taking up the Center of the Croſs) is a Cypher of *M. S.* i. e. *Sancta Maria*, crown'd with Chaplets of Flowers, and Stars of Gold ſet over the Chaplet.

46. *Knights of the* Annunciade, *and St.* Michael *the Archangel in* Mantua, *or of the Chriſtian Militia in* Moravia.

By theſe Names they have been promiſcuouſly called. It was inſtituted 1618. by *Charles Gonzaga*, Duke of *Mantua* and *Nevers*, in Conjunction with *Adolph*, Count of *Altham* his Brother, and *John Baptiſt Petrignan Sfortia*. To give it the greater Luſtre, they divided the World among them; *Charles* took the North and Weſt Parts, *Adolph* the Eaſtern, and the other had the South, where they were perſonally to found Convents and inveſt Knights. Duke *Charles* began his Inſtitution of this Order under the Rule of St. *Francis*, in *Olmutz* the Metropolis of *Moravia*, the Year aforeſaid, and dedicated it to the bleſſed Virgin and St. *Michael*: But what Progreſs the others made in their pious Reſolutions, Hiſtory is ſilent. It has been likewiſe ſtyl'd, *Conceptionis Ordo & Militis Virginis annunciatæ. Anno* 1612. ſeveral illuſtrious Princes of divers Countries entered themſelves into that Order at *Vienna*. It was approv'd by Pope *Paul* V. and confirm'd by Pope *Paul* VIII. 1624. The Deſign of its Inſtitution was, to eſtabliſh Peace and Concord among Chriſtian Princes and their Subjects; to releaſe Captives, and deliver the Oppreſſed out of the Hands of the Infidels..

On ſome unhappy Difference among the illuſtrious Founders, in a ſhort time it moulder'd away and became

ineffectual, that the Mahometans (for whose Destruction it was design'd) heard only the Report of it.

CAP. III.

§ 1. HAVING particulariz'd the Religious Orders, I shall proceed to those accounted absolutely Military. Among them,

1. *Knights of the* Round Table *may, for Antiquity, challenge the first Place.*

The Founder was *Arthur* King of *Britain*, crown'd in the Year of our Lord 516, at the Age of 15 Years; of whose incredible Courage and Gallantry, tho' some have stretch'd too far, yet *William* of *Malmsbury* is of Opinion, he was worthy to have been celebrated by true and faithful Historians, and not false and spurious Tales. He it was that long prop'd up his declining Country, and inspir'd Martial Courage into his Subjects, the *Saxons*, in twelve pitch'd Battles having overcome, and conquer'd divers Countries. He liv'd in so great Repute and Renown, that worthy Knights came from all Parts to his Court, as a Seminary of Military Discipline, to demonstrate their Valour in point of Arms. This gave him Occasion to select out of these, and his own Subjects, some say Twenty Four of the most Valiant, which he united in a Fellowship; and to avoid all Controversy upon Precedency, caus'd a Round Table to be made, whence the Order had its Appellation. He admitted not only *Britains*, but Strangers; and their Qualifications were to be Persons of Nobility, Dignity, and renown'd for Vertue and Valour. The Place where they were instituted was *Windsor*; and those others of Note, where he and his Knights assembled, were at *Caerleon* in *Monmouthshire*, *Winchester*, and *Camelot* in *Com' Somerset*; and their time of convening was *Whitsuntide*. In *Winchester* Castle was a large Round Table, call'd (and affirm'd to be) King *Arthur's*;

Arthur's; or at leaſt ſet up in the room of one more ancient, which was deſtroy'd in the rebellious Times of Forty One, with other Reliques there. The Articles of their Profeſſion (Number 12) are ſet down by Sir *William Segar*. We find no authentick Proof what Badge they bore, notwithſtanding the Report that King *Arthur* had a Shield nam'd *Pridwin*, wherein the Virgin *Mary* was depicted. His Sword and Lance had alſo their Names, one being call'd *Caliburne*, the other *Irone* or *Rone*. It's not remember'd that this Order ſurviv'd the Founder, but rather that it expir'd with him, moſt of theſe Knights periſhing with him at the Battle of *Kamblan*, now *Camelsford*, in *Cornwall*, where tho' he kill'd his Enemy *Mordred*, yet he dy'd *A. D.* 542.

It may be noted, that the like Round Table grew in Eſtimation ſhortly after the *Norman* Conqueſt, being permitted at Haſtilades, Tilts and Turnaments, *temp. Steph.* and *R.* I. And *Roger Mortimer*, Earl of *March*, kept the Celebration of the Round Table (conſiſting of One Hundred Knights, and as many Ladies) with Tilting at *Kenelworth*-Caſtle, in *Com' Worceſt'* 7 *Ed.* I. And King *Edward* III. deſigning to reſtore it, held a Juſt at *Windſor* in the 18th Year of his Reign; and in the 19th ordain'd it annually to be kept there at *Whitſontide*. But it was thought fit upon divers Accounts to forbid theſe Aſſemblies, and in particular 16 *H.* III. at *Shrewſbury*, when the King went to meet *Llewellin* Prince of *Wales*, and in 36 *H.* III. and at many other times.

2. *Knights of the* Oak *in* Navarre,

Were inſtituted by *Garcia Ximenes* of the Blood of the *Goths*, who had formerly retir'd from the World to a ſolitary Life, but relinquiſh'd it to command an Army rais'd by the *Navarrois*, to deliver themſelves from the Oppreſſion of the *Moors*. As he was marching to encounter them, *A. D.* 722. there appear'd to him from the Top of an Oak the Sign of the Croſs, ador'd by an infinite Number of Angels. On giving Battle to the Infidels he gain'd a remarkable Victory, and the People elected him their King; and he in thankfulneſs to God erected this Order, inveſting his Nobles there-

with, and oblig'd them to defend the Chriſtian Faith, and acknowledge Obedience to his Succeſſors, Kings of *Navarre*. Time has eclips'd this Order.

3. *The Order of the* Gennet,

WAS Founded by *Charles Martel*, in Memory of the famous Battle near *Tours*, *A. D.* 726. where he overthrew 385000 *Saracens* and *Moors*, with their General *Abdiramo*; and to reward thoſe who had well-behav'd themſelves in this Action. The great Number of rich Gennet Furr, (Ermine has ſince gain'd the better value) as alſo the Creatures themſelves taken alive among the Spoils, was the Occaſion of aſſuming the Name: But others impute it to Gennets, a kind of neat-ſhap'd Horſes, whereof not unlikely a great Part of the Founder's Cavalry conſiſted. The Knights were Sixteen in Number, and were accounted the firſt Order of this Nature among the *French*, which continu'd till the Inſtitution of the *Star*, when it was laid aſide, tho' ſome *French* Authors queſtion if ever the Order was in being.

4. *The Order of the* Crown-Flower,

ERECTED by *Charles* the Great, Son of King *Pepin*, *A. D.* 802. to reward the *Frizons*, who had behav'd themſelves valiantly in his Armies, and to encourage others to emulate their Vertue. It was ſo call'd from its Enſign, *viz.* an Imperial Crown embroider'd with Gold. The Knights were inveſted with the Military Belt and a Box on the Ear.

5. *The Order of the* Dog *and* Cock.

THAT there was ſuch an Order in *France* is related by ſeveral Writers, but they give no certain Account of its Inſtitution.

6. *The Order of St.* Andrew, *or the* Thiſtle, *in* Scotland,

Is reported by *John Leſley*, Biſhop of *Roſs*, to take beginning from a bright Croſs in Heaven, in Faſhion of that whereon St. *Andrew* ſuffer'd Martyrdom, which appear'd to *Hungus*, King of the *Picts* (and to the *Scots* whom *Achaius* King of *Scotland* ſent to his Aſſiſtance) the Night preceding the Battle with *Athelſtan* King of *England*; over whom prevailing, they went in Solemn Proceſſion to the Kirk of St. *Andrew*, to thank God and his Apoſtle for their Victory, promiſing that they and their Poſterity would ever bear the Figure of that Croſs in their Enſigns and Banners. *Favin*, in his *Theatre of Honour*, relates it to be inſtituted upon the famous League, Offenſive and Defenſive, made between *Achaius* and *Charlemain* King of *France*; to preſerve the Memory of which Alliance, *Achaius* added the *Treſſure of Flowers de Lys* to the Lyon, and took for Device the *Thiſtle* and *Rue*, which he compos'd into a Collar of his Order; and for his Motto, *Pour ma Defence*: Yet doth *Menenius* make theſe the Symbols of two different Orders, one of the *Thiſtle*, whence the Knights were ſo ſtyl'd, and the Motto, *Nemo me impune laceſſit*; the other call'd *Sertum Rutæ*, or *The Garland of Rue*: Nevertheleſs to both theſe Collars hung one and the ſame Jewel, *viz.* the Figure of St. *Andrew*, bearing his Croſs before him. *But there are ſome*, ſaith the ſame Author, *that refer the Inſtitution of the* Thiſtle (the Badge of the *Scotch* Kingdom from the Times of *Achaius*) *to the Reign of* Charles VII. *King of* France, *when the Amity was renew'd between both Kingdoms*. Laſtly, Others place its Foundation 1500. Their principal Enſign is a Gold Collar, compos'd of Thiſtles interlink'd with Anulets of Gold, and pendant thereto St. *Andrew* with his Croſs, and this Epigraph, *Nemo me impune laceſſit*. Their ſolemn Meeting was annually on St. *Andrew*'s Day, in the Church of the Town dedicated to his Name: During the Feſtivity, the Knights were richly habited, and wore their Parliament Robes, having fix'd on their left Shoulders an Azure Roundle, charg'd with a Saltire Argent,

or St. *Andrew*'s Croſs enfil'd in Centre, with a Crown compos'd of *Flower de Luces Or.* For the ordinary and common Enſign, the Knights us'd a Green Ribbon, whereat hung a Thiſtle of Gold, crown'd with an Imperial Crown, within a Circle of Gold, containing the laſt nam'd Epigraph; and now of late they have ſew'd to their left Breaſt an Irradiation (like that of *The Knights of the Garter*) over a Saltire Silver, the Irradiation charg'd with a Blew Roundle of St. *Andrew*'s Croſs. Their Number conſiſted of Thirteen, in Alluſion to our bleſſed Saviour and the Twelve Apoſtles.

7. *Knights of* our Lady of the Star,

Owe their Original to *Robert* the Devout of *France*, *A. D.* 1022. to manifeſt his ſtrict Devotion to the bleſſed Virgin. They were in Number Thirty, incluſive of the Chief. Their Seat was in the noble and ancient Houſe of St. *Owen*, call'd *de Chichey*, near St. *Denys* in *France*. This Order was of no long continuance, for being much ſully'd and diſgrac'd (during the Civil and Foreign Wars) by the Imitation of Perſons that had neither Birth nor Merit to recommend them, King *Charles* VII. took Occaſion to efface it *A. D.* 1455. by delivering up, in a Chapter, the Enſign that he wore to the Chevalier *du Guet*, Captain of the Night-watch in *Paris*, the Lords and Princes throwing it off after it had receiv'd that Mark of Infamy; tho' ſome alledge it declin'd upon the Erection of *The Order of St.* Michael, as the *Star* ſupplanted that of the *Gennet*.

8. *The Order of the* Lilly *in* Navarre, *or of St.* Mary *of the* Lilly,

Was founded *A. D.* 1048. by *Garcius* VI. King of *Navarre*, in Honour of the bleſſed Virgin *Mary*, after his Recovery from a languiſhing Sickneſs. Others relate, that prevailing againſt the *Moors*, he made a Feaſt in Honour of the bleſſed Virgin, at which he inſtituted this Order, electing his Brothers and Sons among the firſt Knights. It was eſteem'd the moſt Illuſtrious of all *Spain*, and conſiſted of Thirty Eight Knights, extracted

tracted out of the ancienteſt Blood of *Navarre*, *Biſcay* and *Old Caſtile*. The Kings of *Navarre* were their Chief. They promis'd, at their Inſtitution, to expoſe their Lives and Fortunes in Defence of the Chriſtian Faith, the Conſervation of the Crown, and Expulſion of the *Moors*.

9. *The Order of the* Sword *in* Cyprus,

WAS erected 1195. by *Guy* of *Luſignan*, King of *Jeruſalem* and *Cyprus*, after he had purchas'd that Iſle of our King *Richard* I. in Commemoration of ſo fortunate a Plantation of 15000 Perſons whom he brought thither. Some queſtion the Truth of this; however all aſſent, its Founder was one of the *Luſignan* Family. The Collar was compos'd of round Cordons of white Silk, woven into Love-Knots, interlac'd with the Letters S and R. Beneath this Collar hung an Oval of Gold, whereon was perſigur'd a Sword, the Blade enamell'd Silver, the Hilt Gold, and about the Oval this *Motto*, *Securitas Regni*. *Micheli* ſays, *Pro Fide Servanda*, and *Gothofredus*, *pro integritate tuenda*. Their Feſtivity was *Aſcenſion-Day*, whereon the Founder gave it (in the Church of St. *Sophia*, the Cathedral of *Nicoſia* in *Cyprus*) to his Brother *Amaury*, and to Three Hundred Barons eſtabliſh'd in that his new Kingdom. There were Eight Kings of *Cyprus* of the *Luſignan* Line, Great Maſters; but when this Iſle fell into the Hands of the *Turks*, this Inſtitution ceas'd.

10. *The* Bear *in* Switzerland,

WAS inſtituted *A. D.* 1213. by the Emperor *Frederick* II. in Favour of the Abbot of St. *Gall* in *Swaben*, who had aſſiſted him in gaining the Empire. Theſe Knights wore a Collar of Gold, at the End whereof hung a Bear Gold, mounted on an Hillock enamell'd with Black, in Honour of St. *Urſus* of the *Theban* Legion, who was martyr'd before the Temple of the Sun at *Soleurre* in *Switzerland*. It was alſo call'd *The Order of St.* Gall, from the Name of the Patron (a *Scotch* Gentleman, and the Apoſtle of *Swaben*) of the Place where

ſt receiv'd its Appellation. The Abbot whereof, for the Time being, had Power to confer this Honour, which was done by girding with the Military Belt (the Sword being firſt conſecrated) and putting on the Collar. It continu'd 'till the *Switzers* became a Common-Wealth; and then the Caſtles of the Nobles being diſmantled, it was laid aſide.

11. *The* Broom-Flower *in* France.

Took its Original from *Lewis* of *France*, to honour the Coronation of his Queen *Margaret*, *A.D.* 1234. Their Habits were Caſſocks of White Damask, and Violet Chaperons; the Collar compos'd of Broom-Flowers Proper, interlac'd with Flowers *de Lys*, hanging thereat a Croſs *Florence* Gold, to which was added this Inſcription, *Exaltat Humiles*; the Founder accounting the Broom the Symbol of Humility. Their Number was at the Sovereign's Pleaſure, and this Order continu'd till the Death of King *Charles* V. Some ſay *Charles* VI. inſtituted it, and others deny the being of any ſuch Order.

12. *The* Ship *and* Double Creſcent *in* France.

Such an Order was of Old, in Honour of the great Atchievements of that Nation, tho' by whom founded is unknown. *Favin* affirms, St. *Lewis* erected this after he had inſtituted the *Broom Flower*, to animate the Nobility to accompany him in his Expedition to *Africa*, 1269. Their Badge was alluding to the Name of the Order, the Figure of a Ship Pendant in an Oval of Gold; and expir'd with St. *Lewis* after the firſt Claſs of Knights; but its Honour was kept up by *Charles*, Brother of St. *Lewis*, and flouriſh'd in *Sicily* with his Succeſſors, until the Kings of *Arragon* obtain'd that Kingdom.

13. *Knights of St.* James *in* Holland.

This Order was erected by *Florentius*, Earl of *Holland* and *Zeland*, and Lord of *Friſeland*; and he, *A. D.* 1390. beſtow'd the Enſigns of it, in his Palace at the

Hague,

Hague, upon Twelve of his chief Nobility, among which was *Lancenot* Lord *Hamilton*, Embaſſador from the King of *Scots*. They were inveſted with a Collar of Gold, or Military Belt of Silver gilt, ſet off with Six Eſcallops, whereat was hung the Picture of St. *James* the Apoſtle.

14. *The Order of the* Swan *in* Cleveland.

If ever any ſuch was, it has been effac'd long ſince. Yet *Favin* ſays, the Princes of *Cleve* have born the *Swan* for their Order, Deviſe, Creſt and Supporters, to preſerve the Memory of the *Knight of the Swan*, whoſe Romance he ſets down. And further reports, That *Charles Gonzaga* of *Cleve*, Duke of *Nevers*, had a Deſign to reeſtabliſh it.

15. *The Knights of* Jeſus *at* Rome,

Were inſtituted by Pope *John* XXII. at *Avignon* in *France*, *A. D.* 1320. as a Temporal Prince, being Lord Paramount of St. *Peter*'s Patrimony. *Paul* V. much augmented it. Their Badge is a plain Croſs Gules, inclos'd within a Croſs patee Or, hanging at a Gold Chain. Pope *Clement* IX. 1668-9. treated Three of the Embaſſadors from the *Swiſs Cantons* with the uſual Ceremonies, himſelf putting on the Chains, and the Captains of his Guards girding their Swords about them.

16. *The* White Eagle *in* Poland,

Was inſtituted by *Ladeſlaus*, King of *Poland*, to honour the Marriage of his Son *Caſimire* the Great, with *Anne* Daughter of *Gedimer* Duke of *Lithuania*, 1325. The Enſign was a white Eagle crown'd.

17. *The Order of Knights* de la Banda *in* Caſtile,

Was ſet up by *Alphonſus* II. King of *Leon* in *Caſtile*, in the City of *Victoria*, *A. D.* 1332. (or *Palencia* 1330. or *Burgos* 1368. according to others) not long before

hi

his Coronation, the better to ſecure himſelf againſt his Enemies. Soon after the Solemnity was celebrated at *Burgos*, in the Monaſtery of St. *Mary Royal*, where the Candidates, conducted by the King to the Altar, and depoſiting their Arms, ſpent the Night in Watching and Prayer. The Morrow after Maſs, they were inveſted with a red military Belt or Ribbon, of four Fingers broad, which came a-croſs the Body over the right Shoulder, and ſo under the left Arm, and was the Enſign from whence they took their Denomination. This Order was chiefly to Honour the Nobility; and at firſt none were admitted but the younger Sons of Noblemen [excluding elder Brothers] or Perſons well-deſcended, or Eſquires, who had ſerv'd in Court or Camp Ten Years at leaſt. It was anciently of great Eſteem, and Kings have vouchſafed to take its Enſign; but at length it was diſus'd.

18. *The Order* de la Calza,

Instituted at *Venice A. D.* 1400. from the Example of the *Knights* de la Banda, in Honour of the Inauguration of Duke *Michele Steno*. It conſiſted of a Society of particular Noblemen and Gentlemen, who voluntarily met together, and elected a Chief among themſelves. They took an Oath to obſerve their Articles, part whereof was, the Honour of the City, where noble and ſplendid Regales were made; and with ſuch like magnificent Divertiſements did they entertain King *Henry* III. of *France*, and other noble Perſonages. It receiv'd the greater Luſtre, by the Addition of ſeveral *Italian* Princes; and the moſt conſpicuous Families were receiv'd into it. Their Habit, on Solemn Days, was a Crimſon Senator's Veſt appearing very ſplendid. Their Enſign, a Sun in a Sheild painted in their Banners. It arriv'd to ſuch Profuſeneſs, that in 1590. it was wholly laid aſide.

19. *The Order of St.* Mark *in* Venice,

Is here reckon'd, becauſe the Knights are dignify'd with a Title and particular Enſign of Honour at their Creation.

Creation. The Ceremony is after the Manner of *Knights Batchelors*, by Dubbing with a Sword, and their Title a bare Mark of Honour, having no Laws or Statutes, or particular Obligations enjoyn'd. It had the Denomination from St. *Mark* the Evangeliſt, whoſe Body was tranſlated to *Venice*, 828. and became the Titular Angel and Guardian of that City, his Picture being diſplay'd in their Banners. The exact Time of its Inſtitution is not certainly determin'd. The Badge that adorns theſe Knights, is, a Gold Chain put over their Shoulders at their Creation, whereat depends a Medal, on one ſide whereof is the Symbol of St. *Mark*, *viz.* a winged Lyon, holding in his right Paw a drawn Sword, and in his left an open Book, with this Motto, *Pax tibi Marce Evangeliſta meus.* On the Reverſe, the Duke ſurviving is beautify'd with a particular Impreſs. Sometimes repreſented on his Knee, receiving a Standard from the Hands of St. *Mark*. This Medal is worn on a Croſs enamell'd Blew. The Duke confers this Honour, either privately in his Chamber, or publickly in a full College. The Senate have the Power of creating this Order; and they who receive it by their Sanction, the Dignity is greater than from the Hands of the Duke himſelf. Abſent Perſons are inveſted by Letters Patents; and to aggrandize their Honour and Title, ſtyle themſelves *Knights of St.* Mark.

20. *The Order of the* Seraphims, *or* Seraphick Knights, *otherwiſe ſirnam'd of* Jeſus,

Was begun by *Magnus* IV. King of *Sweden* 1334. in Memory of the Siege laid to the Metropolitan City of *Upſala*. The Collar was compos'd of Seraphims and Patriarchal Croſſes.

21. *The Order of the* Sword *and* Military Belt *in* Sweden.

By whom or when founded we have no Memoirs. The Collar made up of Swords, with Belts twining round them (the Symbol of Love and Juſtice) the Swords ſomewhat inclining towards the Point, and ſo joyn'd

joyn'd Two and Two, Point to Point, plac'd round in a Circle.

22. *The Order of the* Knot *in* Naples.

When *Lewis*, King of *Hungary*, warr'd againſt *Joan*, Queen of *Naples*; not ſo much to diſpoſſeſs her of the Kingdom, as to revenge his Brother *Andrew*'s Death, whom this *Joan*, his Wife, had ſtrangled 1351. On the 26th of *May*, the Queen and *Lewis* Prince of *Tarantuni*, being crown'd King and Queen of that Realm on the ſame Day, in Commemoration of ſo pacifick an Union, and to tear up all their Enmities, the Prince inſtituted this Order; into which enter'd, at that Time, Threeſcore and Ten Lords. Their Habit was White, and their Enſign a Knot (the Emblem of Love and Friendſhip) intermixt with Gold. This Order expir'd in a ſhort Time.

23. *Knights of the* Annunciade *in* Savoy.

Ame VI. Earl of *Savoy*, inſtituted this Order, under the Title of *The Collar* 1362. in Honour of the Fifteen Divine Myſteries of the *Roſary*. *Favin*, on a miſtaken Ground, calls it *The Order of the Snares of Love*, in regard its Founder had receiv'd of his Lady, a Bracelet made of the Treſſes of her Hair, plaited in Love-knots, and that the four Letters, afterwards interlac'd by the Founder, ſhould ſignifie *Frappes*, *Entres*, *Rompes*, *Tout*. It is conſpicuous enough at the firſt Erection it was call'd of *The Collar*, and ſo remain'd till *Charles* III. or *Le Bon* Duke of *Savoy*, beſtow'd on it the Title of *The Annunciation*, from the Picture of the Annunciation which he annex'd to *The Collar*, 1518. The Founder appointed the Number of his Knights to be Fifteen, among whom Sir *Richard Muſard*, an *Engliſhman*, is recorded 1434. and 1568. their Number was encreas'd to Twenty, that being ſolely lodg'd in the Breaſt of their Sovereign. *Riene* Caſtle, in *Buger*, was their principal Seat; they had a Chartreuſe to entertain Fifteen Prieſts to celebrate Fifteen Maſſes to the Honour of the Fifteen Joys of the bleſſed Virgin, and to the Soul's Health of

theſe Knights; and here were their Ceremonies and Chapters held, until *Charles Emmanuel* I. exchang'd it and other Places for the Marquiſate of *Saluces*, 1607. on the Anniverſary of the Feaſt and Celebration of the Order (being fix'd upon the Day of the Annunciation) were tranſlated firſt to the Church of St. *Dominick* at *Montmeiller*, and afterwards by him to the Hermitage of *Camaldule*, upon the Mountain of *Turin* call'd *l'Eremo Aſſis*. The ancient Collar was of Gold, Three Fingers broad; in barbarous Characters were ingraved theſe Letters, FERT, and one Knot (commonly call'd the *Savoy Knot*) at the end of each *Fert*; which, with Three other Knots entwin'd one within another, made up the Circumference *pendant* at the Collar without any Figure. Theſe old Characters were ſuppos'd to be the Initials of *Fortitudo ejus Rhodum tenuit*, alluding to *Amadeus le Grand*, who ſo valiantly defended *Rhodes* againſt the *Turks*, 1310. But that this was long before the Deviſe of the Houſe of *Savoy*, is manifeſt from the Coins of *Lewis de Savoy*, Baron *de Vaud.* who dy'd 1301. the Monument of *Thomas de Savoy*, who dy'd 1233. whereon was lying at the Feet of his Portaiture a Dog with a Collar about his Neck, inſcrib'd *Fert*, as an integral Word, and from a Braſs Coin of the ſaid Earl's, on the Reverſe whereof are Two Knots of the Model before ſpoke of, and the Word *Fert* in the midſt. There is the Ectype of a Silver Coin of *Peter de Savoy*, (who erected in *England* the noble Pile of that Name in the *Strand*, *temp. H.* III.) wherein is repreſented the Deviſe *Fert* in *Gothick* Characters, the true Interpretation of which Word cannot be explain'd. This ancient Collar is ſtill in vogue and daily worn, but now called *The little Collar*, faſhion'd of Gold or Silver gilt, about an Inch broad, and of different weight. The Knights wear it about their Necks, cloſe to the Collar of their Doublet. Duke *Charles* III. as he much reſtor'd the Splendor of this Order, *Anno* 1518. introduc'd the larger one, only worn upon high Days. It weighs about Two Hundred Crowns, and is compos'd of the Word *Fert*, interwoven with Knots, ſevered with Fifteen Roſes of Gold, whereof Seven are enamell'd with White, and Seven with Red, and border'd with Two Thorns.

Thorns. The Figure of the Annunciation is enamell'd in various Colours, *pendant at three Chainets* to another Rose-colour'd both White and Red. He first appointed the great Mantle of Crimson Velvet, his own being furr'd with Ermines, but the rest of the Knights with Miniver, fring'd and border'd with *Savoy Knots* in fine Gold; under this Mantle is worn a Surcoat of fine Damask. Duke *Emanuel Philibert*, his Son, alter'd the Colour of the Mantle to Azure, and lin'd it with White Taffaty, of which Silk he made the Surcoats. *Charles Emanuel* chang'd the Mantle into an *Amaranthus* or Purple Colour, seeded with Roses and Flames in embroidery of Gold and Silver, and lin'd with Cloth of Silver tissu'd Blue, now in use; under which, instead of the White Taffaty Surcoat, is now worn a White Satin Suit embroider'd with Silk, the Hose gather'd upwards in the fashion of Trouses.

24. *The* Thistle *in* France.

Was instituted on *New-Year's Day* 1370. by *Lewis* II. Duke of *Bourbon*, upon his Marriage with *Anne*, Daughter to the Count *Daulphine* in *Auvergne*. The first Solemnities of this Order were perform'd at *Nostre Dame de Maulins* in *Bourbonnois*, where he founded a College of Twelve Canons, in Honour of the blessed Virgin; the Intent was, to corroborate his Interest for the Aid of the Duke of *Orleans*, against the Faction of the House of *Burgundy*, and by joyning of Flowers *de Lys* and Thistles (the Symbols of Hope and Courage) emblematically to express the Nobleness of his Spirit against all the Power of Fortune. He ordain'd the Number of Knights to be Twenty Six, comprehending himself and his Successors, Dukes of *Bourbon*, as Chiefs, and oblig'd them to wear daily a Belt, a Girdle of Watchel coloured Velvet, lin'd with Crimson Sattin embroider'd with Gold, and therein the Word *Esperance* curiously wrought. The Girdle was fasten'd with a Buckle and Thong of Gold, bearded and chequer'd with Green, enamel'd in Form like the Head of a Thistle. On the Anniversary of the Festival (the Conception of our Lady) the Knights wore Cassocks or Surcoats of Carnation

nation Damask with White Sleeves, girded as before; the Mantle of the Order was sky-colour'd Damask with broad Welts of Gold Embroidered on the Collar, and lined with Red Satin, but the Mantlet of Green Velvet, the Bonnet was also of Green Velvet; at the Point of the Band hung a Tassel of Crimson Silk and Threads Gold, the Lining of Crimson Taffaty, and turn'd up after the antique manner, whereon they had embroided the Golden Shield with the Word *Allen*; the great Collar was of Gold, of the weight of Ten Marks, enamelled with Green, distended like Network, which was filled with Flowers *de Lys* (together with the Letters of the Impress) plac'd in a Lozenge of Red Enamel; at the Bottom of the Collar, in an Oval of Gold (the Circle whereof was enamelled with Green and Red) appeared the Figure of the Patroness, the Virgin *Mary*, irradiated with Gold, and crowned with Twelve Silver Stars, a Crescent of the same under her Feet, enamell'd with Purple and Sky-colour; at the End of the Oval depended the Head of a Thistle enamelled Green, but bearded White. The Founder took an exact Patern for the Order of the *Garter*, with which he acquainted himself while he was Prisoner in *Windsor* Castle.

25. *The Order of the* Dove

Was begun by *John* I. King of *Castile* in *Segovia*, 1390. or, as others, 1379. to encourage his Nobles to prosecute the Noble Acts of his Grandfather King *Henry* III. but the Founder dying the same Year, before it had taken root, it became of small Continuance.

26. *The Order of the* Argonauts *of St.* Nicholas

Was instituted by *Charles* III. King of *Naples*, 1382. to preserve Amity among the Nobles, to compose Enmities and suppress Seditions. If any of these Knights, upon a Variance, refused a Reconciliation, the Ensigns were to be forfeited. Others say the Design was to advance Navigation, to which their Ensign alludes, being a Ship floating upon the Waters in the midst of a Storm, having this Motto, *Non credo tempori.* In the

Convent

Convent of that ſumptuous Church which St. *Nicholas*, Biſhop of *Smyrna*, erected, was the grand Feaſt held on the Anniverſary of that Saint. This King appointed a White Habit for the Knights, and preſcribed them laudable Conſtitutions; but for want of a ſettled Revenue, their Splendor expired with their Founder.

27. *Knights of St.* Anthony *in* Hainault.

ALBERT of *Bavaria*, Earl of *Hainault*, *Holland*, and *Zeland*, deſigning an Expedition againſt the *Turks* and *Moors*, inſtituted this Order, 1382. The Enſign thereof was a Golden Collar wrought after the Faſhion of an Hermit's Girdle, at which hung a Walking-Staff, and a little Golden Ball.

28. *The* Porcupine *in* France,

WAS erected by *Lewis* of *France*, Duke of *Orleans*, 1393. to honour the Solemnization of the Baptiſm of his eldeſt Son *Charles*, by his Wife Daughter to the Duke of *Milain*. He choſe the Porcupine for his Deviſe, with this Epigraph, *Cominus & Eminus*; not only out of the aſpiring Hopes conceived of this Child, but alſo to intimate ſomething of Revenge againſt *John* Duke of *Burgundy*, his mortal Enemy; the Porcupine being an Emblem both Offenſive and Defenſive. Others make *Charles* aforeſaid the Founder of this Order, 1430. in Imitation or Emulation of the Golden Fleece, inſtituted by *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy*. Their Number, including the Founder, was Twenty Five; their Habit, Surcoats of Violet Velvet, and over them Mantles of Watchet Velvet lin'd with Carnation Satin; the Collar was formed of Gold Chains, at the End whereof hung a Porcupine of Gold upon an enamelled Hillock of Graſs and Flowers, which Creature was alſo embroidered on the Knights Belts.

29. *The Order of the* Lily *or* Lilies *in* Arragon *or* de la Jarra de S. Maria, *of the Veſſel of St.* Mary,

Was erected by *Ferdinand* King of that Country, called the Infant of *Antiquera*, 1403. and dedicated to the Bleſſed Virgin. *Favin* ranges it under the Denomination of the Title of the *Looking-glaſs of the Bleſſed Virgin in* Caſtile, inſtituted in Memory of a Victory King *Ferdinand* obtained in that Kingdom againſt the *Moors*, 1410. whence he tranſplanted them with him into *Arragon*, 1413. when he received the Crown, where it flouriſhed under the Sons of that King, and then the Line was extinct.

30. *The Order of the* Dragon overthrown *in* Hungary,

Was inſtituted, *A. D.* 1413. by the Emperor *Sigiſmond the Glorious*, 1418. for the Defence of the Chriſtian Religion, and to cruſh or oppugn all Hereticks and Schiſmaticks, and for the Satisfaction he receiv'd in conferring Peace to the Churches of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, by the Aid of the Council of *Conſtance*. It was in high eſteem ſhortly after in *Germany*; but the Order and Founder had very near the ſame Period. The Knights wore daily, as their Enſign, a *Green Croſs flory*, on ſolemn Days, a Scarlet Cloak, and on the Mantlet of Green Silk a double Chain of Gold (others ſay a Green Ribbon) at the End of which hung a Dragon dead with broken Wings, in poſture of being overcome (the Symbol of Hereſy) enamelled with Variety of Colours.

31. *The* Equites Tuſini *in* Bohemia, *or elſe both in* Bohemia *and* Auſtria.

This Order had its Name from *Toca*, a Cap or Coif. The Archdukes of *Auſtria* were its Founders; which they enacted to engage their Subjects in Defence of the Chriſtian Faith againſt *Turks* and *Hereticks*, conferring upon the Knights towards their Support whatſoever

they acquired in the Wars, which was a reſpite to themſelves, after almoſt Two Hundred Years Charges, and Military Expence; indeed the Encouragement proved ſo good a Bait, that they cleared their Provinces almoſt of all *Turks* and *Schiſmaticks* that infeſted them. Their Badge was a plain *Green Croſs*, and their Habit Red.

32. Ordo Diſciplinarum,

Was inſtituted by the *Bohemian* Kings, or rather the *Auſtrian*, to be a Curb upon the *Turks* and *Hereticks*, at leaſt to preſcribe the Confines of the Kingdom. The Collar of the Order had a White Eagle. Theſe Knights flouriſhed in *Germany*, in the Reigns of *Sigiſmond* and *Albert* Emperors.

33. Orde de la Scama, *in* Caſtile,

Was inſtituted by *John* II. King of that Realm, about the Year, 1420. to excite his Nobility to fight againſt the *Moors*, which produced ſo good Effect, that in a ſhort time the *Moors* were ſhamefully overthrown. That King granted them Privileges, gave them their Statutes and Rules; but upon his Death the Splendor hereof was greatly eclips'd. Their Enſign was a Croſs compoſed of the Scales of Fiſhes. They were obliged to defend *Caſtile* againſt the *Moors*, to dye in Defence of the Faith, and when the King went to War they marched before him. Their Enſign was a Croſs compoſed of the Scales of Fiſhes, the *Spaniſh Scama* bearing the ſame Signification as the *Latin Squama*.

34. *The Order of the* Golden Fleece,

Had its Original from *Philip* II. Duke of *Burgundy*, Sirnam'd *the Good*, the 10th of *Jan.* 1429. at his Marriage with *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *Portugal*, in the City of *Bruges* in *Flanders*, to perpetuate the Memory of his great Revenues raiſed by Wools with the *Low-Countries*. Some ſay in Commemoration of *Gideon*, who with Three Hundred Men vanquiſhed a numerous Army of the *Midianites*; or of *Jacob*'s *Fleece*, viz. the Party-coloured and

and ſtreaked Fleece, after the Example of *Jaſon* and his *Argonauts*, whoſe Expedition to *Colchos* he intended to make his Patern by a Voyage into *Syria* againſt the *Turks*. He founded it to the Glory of the Almighty Creator, and Redeemer, in Reverence of the Virgin *Mary*, and St. *Andrew* the Apoſtle, who was Patron thereof, and whoſe Feſtival was celebrated on that Day, but afterwards tranſlated to the 1ſt of *May*, by reaſon of the ſhortneſs of the Days, and the Fatigue aged Knights would find to convene in an intemperate Seaſon. The Knights at firſt were Twenty Four, beſide the Duke, chief and ſupream, who reſerved the Nomination of Six more at the next Chapter; but *Charles* V. encreaſed them, 1516. to Fifty. Duke *Charles* and *Maximilian*, Sons to the Founder, annex'd many Privileges to them, which were confirmed, 1556. For their Habit Three different Mantles were ordain'd them at the grand Solemnity; the firſt Day, of Scarlet Cloth, richly embroidered about the Lower End, with Flints ſtruck into Sparks of Fire and Fleeces, with Chaperons of the ſame; and the ſame Day, after Dinner, to proceed to Veſpers in Mantles of Black, and of the Colour of Chaperons; the Day following they were to hear Maſs habited as themſelves thought fit; but Duke *Charles* aforeſaid preſcribed them Mantles of White Damask for that Day's Ceremony, and changed their Cloth Mantles into Velvet. The great Collar is compoſed of double Fuſils, placed Back to Back, Two and Two together, in form of the Letter B, repreſenting it both Ways, to ſignify *Bourgoigne*. And theſe Fuſils are interwoven with Flint-ſtones (in reference to the Arms of the ancient Kings of *Bourgoigne*) ſeeming to ſtrike Fire, and Sparkles of Fire between them, the Device of the Founder, at the End whereof hung the Reſemblance of a Golden Fleece, enamelled proper. To the Flint *Paradine* aſcribes the Motto, *Ante ferit quam Flamma micet*; and to the Fleece, *Pretium non vile laboris*. The Jewel is commonly worn in a double Chainet or Males of Gold, linked together at convenient Diſtance, between which runs a ſmall Red Ribbon, or otherwiſe it is worn in a Red Ribbon alone. The Emperors of *Germany* deſcended from *Philip* Archduke of *Auſtria*, Duke of

Burgundy and Count of *Flanders*, were the Sovereigns of it, till *Charles* V. gave the Guardianſhip of it to the Kings of *Spain*, which he perform'd on the 25th of *October*, 1556. conferring it on his Son King *Philip* at *Bruxelles*, when he took the Collar from his Neck, and with his own Hands put it over his Son's Shoulders in the Preſence of divers of the Knights, with this Form, *Accipe, fili mi, quem e collo meo detraho, tibi præcipuum Aurei velleris torquem, quem Philippus Dux Burgundiæ cognomine bonus Atavus noſter, monumentum Fidei Sacræ Romanæ Eccleſiæ, eſſe voluit & hujuſce Inſtitutionis ac Legum ejus, fac ſemper memineris:* Since which the Honour of being Chief of this Order remains at this Day in that Crown.

35. *The Order of St.* George *at* Genoa,

Was given by *Frederick* III. Emperor of *Germany*, in honour of St *George* the titular Saint and Patron of *Genoa*. The Enſign is a plain Croſs *Gules*, and worn by the Knights at a Chain of Gold about their Neck. The Dukes of *Genoa* are Chiefs thereof; and in regard their Dignity laſts but two Years, the Order is much impair'd thro the Inconſtancy and Alteration of the Times.

36. *The Order of the* Croiſſant, *or* Half-Moon *in* France,

Was erected in the City of *Anjou*, 1464. or according to the *Sainte Marthes*, *A. D.* 1448. by *Rene* of the Houſe of *Anjou*, King of *Jeruſalem* and *Sicily*, &c. Duke of *Anjou*, &c. The Intent thereof was the Honour of God, Support of the Church, and Exaltation of Knighthood; over which he declared himſelf and his Succeſſors, Dukes of *Anjou* and Kings of *Sicily*, Chiefs. He alſo choſe St. *Maurice*, Knight and Martyr, for Patron, and held the firſt Ceremonies in the Church of *Angiers* dedicated to his Name. The Symbol which the Knights wore on the right Side of their Mantle, was a Golden Creſcent, whereon in Red Enamel was this Word *L'oz*, ſignifying *L'oz en Croiſſant*, whereby they were ſpur'd forwards

forwards to ſearch after the Increaſe of Valour and Reputation. At this *Creſcent* was faſten'd as many ſmall Pieces of Gold, faſhion'd like Columns, and enamell'd with Red, as the Knights had been engag'd in Battels and Sieges; for none could be adopted into this Order, unleſs he had well trod the Paths of Honour. The Knights were Thirty Six, others ſay Fifty, in Number. For their Habit they wore Mantles of Red or Crimſon Velvet, and a Mantlet of White, with the Lining and Surcoat of the ſame.

37. *The Order of the* Ermin *in* Britanny,

Was erected by *Francis* I. Duke of *Bretagne*, to perpetuate the Memory of his Grand-father *John* the Conqueror, or elſe in Imitation of other Orders in *France*; and thereupon he new built his Caſtle of *Ermin*. The Number of theſe Knights were Twenty Five. Their Habits were Mantles of White Damask lin'd with Carnation, and the Mantlet of the ſame. The great Collar was of Gold, compos'd of Ears of Corn in *Saltire*, bound above and beneath with Two Circles of Gold, imitating the Crown of *Ceres*, denoting the Care of Husbandry, and was ſometimes called *The Order of the Ears of Corn*. At the End of this Collar hung the *Mus Ponticus*, or Ermin, paſſing over a Turf of Graſs diaper'd with Flowers, at the Edge whereof was imboſs'd this Epigraph in *French*, *Amaire*, the Device of his ſaid Grand-father, by which he made known his Courage; and rather than fail in the leaſt Punctilio of his Word, he would undergo any Misfortune. This Order ended when the Dukedom of *Bretagne* became annex'd to the Crown of *France*, by the Marriage of *Anne*, Dutcheſs of *Bretagne*, to *Charles* VIII. and *Lewis* XII. both *French* Kings.

38. *The Order of the* Ermin *in* Naples

Owes its Inſtitution to *Ferdinand* I. King of *Naples*, at the Expiration of the War which he was engag'd in with *John* of *Lorain*, Duke of *Calabria*, 1463. being induc'd thereto by the Treaſon and Confederacy of his

Brother-in-law *Marinus Marcianus*, Duke of *Sessa*, who design'd to murder him, and transfer the Kingdom to the Duke of *Calabria*: But the Plot being defeated, instead of bringing him to Justice, he not only pardon'd him, but instituted this Chevalry, admitting therein all the Noblemen of Title and Figure in the Kingdom, and generously appointed him one of the first Knights. The Collar was of Gold, intermix'd with Mud or Dirt, to which depended an Ermin and this Motto, *Malo mori quam fœdari*, alluding to the clean Nature of the Animal.

39. *The Order of St.* Michael *in* Naples.

Had its Original from the same King *Ferdinand*, in honour of St. *Michael* the Arch-Angel, Patron of *Apulia*. The Habit of the Knights was a long White Mantle embroider'd with Ermins, and the Collar of Gold compos'd of the Letter O, to which hung in an Oval the Epigraph *Decorum*. By the Habit it seems to be the preceding Order, if that was dedicated to St. *Michael*.

40. *The Order of St.* Michael *in* France.

Lewis XI. King of that Realm, considering how his Affairs were entangled, to re-unite the Affections of his Nobility to himself, instituted these Knights, 1469. giving them their Denomination from St. *Michael* the Arch-Angel, the titular Angel and Protector of *France*, in Reverence of whom their ancient Kings were wont to solemnize this Feast-day with great Magnificence, and keep an open Court. Their Number at first were to be Thirty Six, whereof the King and his Successors were Chief: But it afterwards proceeded to Three Hundred. The Collar is compos'd of Escallop-Shells of Gold, joyn'd one with another and double-banded, fasten'd on small Chains of Gold, at the End of which is annex'd an Oval of the same; and therein, on an Hillock, is the Figure of St. *Michael* combating and trampling down the Dragon. The Motto, *Immensi tremor Oceani*. The Habit was a Mantle of White Damask

mask hanging down to the Ground, furr'd with Ermin, having its Cope embroider'd with Gold, and the Border of the Robe interwoven with Eſcallops of Gold; the *Chaperon* or Hood, with its long Tippet, was made of Crimſon Velvet; but afterwards King *Henry* II. order'd this Mantle to be Cloth of Silver, embroider'd with Three *Creſcents* of Silver, interwoven with Trophies, Quivers and *Turkiſh* Bows, *ſemied* and *canton'd* with Tongues and Flames of Fire; the *Chaperons* of Crimſon Velvet ſhould have the ſame Embroidery. Their Grand Feſtival was to be celebrated on *Michaelmas-day*, at the Church of *Mount Michael* in *Normandy*; but afterwards transferr'd to *Bois de Vincennes* near *Paris*. There is an Herald of Arms to attend this Order, called *Monſieur St.* Michael. Upon the inſtituting *The Order of the Holy Ghoſt*, not only Care was taken to preſerve this of St. *Michael*, and to rectify it, but the Knights had the Privilege allow'd them, that if they thought fit they were made capable of receiving that of *The Holy Ghoſt*, which no Stranger or Native could be enroll'd in that had taken upon him any other Order. The Collar of St. *Michael* may be worn with that of *The Holy Ghoſt*, and it is now frequently us'd. The Evening before any receive *The Order of the Holy Ghoſt*, he is admitted into *The Order of St.* Michael.

41. *The Order of the* Elephant *in* Denmark.

King *Chriſtian* I. being at *Rome* upon a religious Account, Pope *Sixtus* IV. among other Honours, inveſted him with this Order, in Memory of the Paſſion of our Saviour; and withal ordain'd the Supreme or Chief in his Succeſſors, Kings of *Denmark*.

This King founded the magnificent Chapel of the Three Kings in the Cathedral Church of *Roſchilt*, (Four Leagues from *Copenhagen*) where the Knights were to aſſemble upon the Death of any of their Fraternity. He admitted thereunto divers Kings, Princes and Noblemen. Its chief Enſign was the Figure of an Elephant, on whoſe ſide (within a Rundle) was a Crown of Thorns, with Three Nails all bloody, in Memory of the Paſſion. The Knights were oblig'd to Acts of Piety,

Alms-Deeds, and certain Ceremonies, eſpecially upon thoſe Days on which they wore the Enſigns. King *John* valu'd it ſo highly, that he wore them on every ſolemn Feſtival. He advanc'd it to that Pitch of Grandeur, that our King *Henry* VIII. and *James* V. King of *Scotland*, accepted it.

Hertholm, a learned *Dane*, in a particular Treatiſe of this *Elephantine Order*, ſays, The Badge was meerly Military, anciently given as a Memorial and Incitement to the *Daniſh* Princes, who took upon them the Defence of Chriſtianity againſt the *Moors* and *Africans*.

HERETOFORE the Knights wore a Collar of Gold compos'd of caſtellated Elephants and Croſſes, ſomething like the *Croſſes ancrees* (*Menenius* calls them Spurs) at which hung the Picture of the Virgin *Mary* to the Middle, holding Chriſt in her Arms, and ſurrounded with a Glory of Sun-beams. But that long ſince laid aſide, they now wear only a Blue Ribbon, at which hangs an Elephant enamell'd White, adorn'd with Five large Diamonds ſet in the Middle. Theſe Elephants, in the Reign of King *Chriſtian* IV. had in the ſame Place, within a Circle, the Letter C, and in the Center of it the Figure 4, denoting *Chriſtianus Quartus*.

THIS Honour is uſually conferr'd on the Days of the King's Coronation. *Frederick* III. brought into uſe, in Imitation of *The Garter*, an embroider'd Glory of Silver Purple wrought upon the left Side of their Cloak or Veſt, on which was embroider'd Two Crowns within a Rundle, bearing this Motto, *Deus providebit*. The late King, his Son, chang'd the Motto to, *Pietate & Juſtitia*; but all the Knights created by his Father are oblig'd to continue the former Motto.

42. *The Order of the* Burgundian Croſs *at* Tunis.

WAS inſtituted on St. *Mary Magdalen*'s Day, 1535. by *Charles* V. Emperor of *Germany* and King of *Spain*, after he had reſtor'd *Mulleaſſes*, King of *Tunis*, to his Kingdom, to reward thoſe Commanders who had behav'd themſelves well in the Victory. It was the Day wherein he made his pompous Entry into *Tunis*, when clad in the Coat he uſually wore in Battle, whereon was embroi-

der'd

der'd a *Burgundian Croſs*, which Croſs he made the Badge, and added a Steel ſtriking Sparks of Fire out of a Flint, with this Inſcription, *Barbaria*; and for a more ornamental Decoration, gave a Collar of Gold, whereat hung this Badge.

43. *Knights of the* Holy Ghoſt,

Were inſtituted by the *French* King, *Henry* III. 1578. to unite his Nobles more firmly in their Obedience, to encourage them to perſevere in the *Romiſh* Religion, and to illuſtrate the State of his Nobility. It was ſo call'd by reaſon he was born on *Whitſunday*, 1550. elected that Day, 1573. King of *Poland*; and on that Day, 1574. came to the Crown of *France*. It was to conſiſt of One Hundred Knights, beſides the Sovereign or Great Maſter, which Office is inſeparable from the Crown of *France*. A long Mantle of Black Velvet turn'd up on the left Side, and open'd on the right, was alſo appointed for the Habit, being at firſt embroider'd round with Gold and Silver, conſiſting of Flowers *de Lys* and Knots of Gold, between Three ſundry Cyphers of Silver; and above the Flowers *de Lys* and Knots, were thickly powder'd Flames of Fire. This great Mantle was garniſh'd with a Mantle of Cloth of Silver, cover'd with Embroidery made after the ſame Faſhion, excepting only, that inſtead of Cyphers there were wrought Doves of Silver, and both theſe Robes double lin'd with a Satin of Orange-Tawney. The great Collar worn over the Mantle, was at firſt compos'd of Flowers *de Lys*, canton'd or corner'd with Flames of Fire, interwoven with Three Cyphers and divers Monograms of Silver; one was the Letter *H* and a *Greek Lambda*, both double, for the King's Name and the Queen's, *Loviſa de Lorain*; the other Two were reſerv'd in the King's own Mind. But theſe Cyphers were taken off the Colour and the Embroidery of the Robes by King *Henry* IV. and for a Mark of his Victories, Trophies of Arms were interlac'd inſtead thereof, with the Letter *H* crown'd (the Initial of his Name) whereout aroſe Flames and Sparks of Fire; and for the like Reaſon the *H* has been chang'd into *L*, both by *Lewis* XIII and

XIV.

XIV. At this Collar hung a Croſs richly enamell'd in the midſt, whereon was figur'd a Dove in a flying Poſture, as deſcending down from Heaven with full ſpread Wings: And that an Epigraph might not be wanting, ſome have attributed to it this, *Duce & Auſpice.* Beſides theſe Ornaments, the Knights wear a Black Velvet Cap, with a White Plume; their Breeches and Doublets are of Cloth of Silver, and their Shoes White ty'd with Roſes or Knots of Black Velvet. The Badges ordain'd to be ordinarily worn, are a Croſs of Yellow or Orange-colour Velvet, like a *Malta* Croſs, fix'd on the left Side of their Breaſt, except in military Expeditions, and then they are permitted to wear them of Cloth of Silver or White Velvet, having a Silver Dove, and at the Angles or Corners, Rays and Flowers *de Lys* of Silver. They have a Croſs of the Order made of Gold (like the *Malta* Croſs) with a Flower *de Lys* in each Angle, to be worn about their Necks in a Blue Ribbon, and to be enamell'd White about the Sides, but not in the Middle. Such as are Knights both of St. *Michael* and *The Holy Ghoſt*, are to bear the Figure of St. *Michael* on one Side, and of a Dove on the other. The Anniverſary is held on the firſt Day of the New-Year, but the firſt Part of the Ceremony begins always on the laſt Day of the Old, when it was inſtituted; and the Place for celebrating thereof is the Church of *Auguſtin* Fryars in *Paris.*

44. *The Order of* The precious Blood of our Saviour Jeſus Chriſt *of* Mantua,

Was inſtituted, 1608. by *Vincentio de Gonzago* IV. Duke of *Mantua*, and II. of *Montferat*, for Defence and Propagation of Chriſtianity, and in Honour of Three Drops of Blood of our Redeemer; as alſo to ſet forth more nobly the Nuptials of his eldeſt Son *Franciſco.* It was confirm'd by Pope *Paul* V. and conſiſted of Twenty Knights, the Founder and his Succeſſors to be Great Maſters. The Collar is compos'd of Ovals of Gold, ſome extended in Length, others in Breadth, alternately, and interlink'd with ſmall Anulets: Thoſe in Length have theſe Words rais'd in White Enamel, *Do-*

mine

mine probaſti; on the other in Breadth is a Grey Crucible fill'd with ſmall Rods of Gold, and placed on a Trevet of Black Enamel over Flames of Fire, intimating, that they who incorporated in this Society, ſhould hold inviolable Faith and Concord in the greateſt Trials and Emergences of Life; at the End of the Collar is *pendant* a larger Oval of Gold, in which are figur'd two Angels ſtanding upright, holding between them a Chalice crown'd, in the Table whereof are painted Three Drops of Bloods enamell'd Red, and round the Oval, *Nihil iſto triſte recepto.*

45. *The Order of the* Amaranta,

Owes its Inſtitution to *Chriſtina*, Queen of *Sweden*, about the Year 1645. in honour of a Lady of that Name, of great Beauty, Courage, Modeſty and Charity. The chief Enſign is a Jewel of Gold compos'd of Two *A*'s, adorn'd with Diamonds on both Sides, and join'd together by reverſing one of them, being ſet within a Circle of Laurel Leaves wreath'd about with White, and on the Four Sides this Motto, *Dolcenella memoria*; which Jewel the Knights wear either in a Gold Chain, or a Crimſon or Blue Ribbon, as they beſt like of. His Inveſtiture is with this Ceremony: The Queen being ſeated under her State, an intended Knight kneels before her, when ſhe acquaints him with her Inducements to confer on him this Honour, enumerating his Services and Merits: This done, he takes an Oath, ſtill kneeling and holding his Hands between the Queen's, to defend her Perſon from Harm, and the Perſons of his Brother Knights; to incite Juſtice, Vertue and Piety, and diſcountenance its Oppoſers; after which the Queen puts about him (in the manner of a Baudrick) a Crimſon Silk Scarf, with the Jewel faſten'd thereto. To an abſent Prince or Perſonage, ſhe ſends the Jewel, accompany'd with her Letter, which ſupplies the Place of a perſonal Inveſtiture. Among many others have been ſeveral Kings and Princes. Sir *Bulſtrode Whitlocke* has been elected Knight of this Order.

46. *The Order of the* Black Eagle,

WAs inſtituted by *Frederick* King of *Pruſſia*, and Elector of *Brandenburgh*, ſoon after he had the Title of King conferr'd upon him.

§ 2. 1. In the *Weſt-Indies*, *Montezuma*, King of *Mexico*, ſet Knighthood in the higheſt Splendor, ordaining certain military Orders, with ſeveral Badges and Enſigns. The moſt honourable among the Knights were thoſe that carry'd the Crown of their Hair ty'd with a little Red Ribbon, having a rich Plume of Feathers, from which did hang Branches and Rolls of Feathers upon their Shoulders. They carry'd as many Rolls as they had done gallant Exploits in the Wars; and the King himſelf and his Sons were of this Order; which *Purchas* calls *Eagle Knights*.

2. THERE was another Order, call'd *Of the Lyons and Tygers*. Theſe Knights being commonly the moſt valiant in the Wars, always bore with them their Badges and Armories.

3. OTHER Knights there were, as *The Grey Knights*, not ſo much reſpected as the reſt. They had their Hair cut round about the Ears: They made War upon their Enemies with Enſigns like other Knights, and were only arm'd to the Girdle, while the moſt Honourable were *Cap-a-Pee'd*. All Knights might carry Gold and Silver, be array'd in rich Cotton, have the uſe of painted and gilt Veſſels, and wear Shoes; but the common People only the earthen ſort; neither might they carry Shoes nor Attire themſelves, but in a groſs Stuff. Every Order had their Lodging aſſign'd them in the Palace, diſtinguiſh'd by their proper Enſigns: The firſt was the Lodging of the Prince, the ſecond of *Eagles*, the third of *Lyons and Tygers*, and the fourth of *Grey Knights*.

THE Province of *Cinaloa* (near *New Mexico*) created their Knights by giving a Bow, and ſetting them to encounter a Lyon or ſome other wild Beaſt.

THE *Inguas*, or Lords of *Peru*, dedicated their Children to Honour, by adorning them with *Guarras* or Enſigns.

Enſigns. They pierced their Ears, whip'd them with Slings, ſmeared their Faces with Blood, in order they ſhould be true Knights to the *Ingua*. Thoſe of Royal Extraction, before they received the Order of Knighthood abſtained Seven Days from all manner of Nutriment, except a little raw Grain and Water, and after being heartned and briſked up again, performed ſome Military Exerciſes, alſo Racing, Wreſtling, Leaping, Shooting, Slinging, throwing the Dart and Lance, *&c.* and enduring to be beaten on the Hands and Legs with Wands; theſe being as it were the Teſts whether they could endure the Hardſhips of War or no; for if they did not ſuſtain them manfully, they were denied Knighthood. The Ceremonies being performed by boaring an Hole in the Ears, putting on gallant Shoes, and wearing of the Breeches, which before they were reſtricted, adorning their Heads with Flowers, and having the Privilege of an Herb that none but themſelves cou'd make uſe of, and laſtly giving an Axe into their Hands. *Menenius* calls theſe Knights *Oreiones*, from the *Spaniſh Orejas*, flop or loll-eared, in the *Latin Auriculares*, from the Leaf which they bore hanging in their Ears, or becauſe they only negotiated Affairs with the Emperor, and had his Ear at all times.

In *Japan* there's an Order of Knights called *Mengoras*, part of whom are called *Bonzees*, living in Fraternities, as our Religioniſts in *Europe*. Some of theſe have the Charge of their Idols, and the Service relating to their Temples, others follow the Wars. They profeſs Chaſtity with ſuch Severity, that no Woman is allow'd to enter their Cities. They govern the Kingdoms they conquer, and are ſo very opulent that ſome of them poſſeſs 60000 Duckets *per Annum*; and have a publick Armory well ſtored to make uſe of upon any Exigence, which is maintain'd by a daily Contribution. Women have been excluded their Share in this Way of Honour, tho' their Courage and Valour have equalized the *Amazons* of old; the Example is of the noble Women of *Tortoſa* in *Spain*, or the *Femme* Cavaliers of the *Torchi*. *Micheli* barely calls them *Chavalleros*, or rather *Chavalleras*, ſeeing the *Latins* have had the Words, *Equitiſſæ & Militiſſæ*, to expreſs, *Virago's* and *Heroines*.

Don *Raymond*, laſt Earl of *Barcelona*, having in the Year 1149. reduced the City of *Tortoſa* from the *Moors*, on the Thirty Firſt following they laid a freſh Siege to it, in hopes to recover it. The Inhabitants were at length reduced to great Streights; they deſired Relief of the Earl, but he not being in a Condition to anſwer their Requeſt, they had Thoughts of a Surrender; which the Women to prevent put on the Apparel of the Men, and by a reſolute Salley forced the *Moors* to raiſe the Siege. The Gallantry of the Action the Earl acknowledged by granting them ſeveral Privileges, and to perpetuate the Memory inſtituted this Order, ſomewhat like a Military one, and none were to be admitted, only thoſe brave Women, and the Honour to derive to their Deſcendants, and aſſigned them for a Badge a Thing like a *Fryer's Capouche*, ſharp at the Top, after the Form of a Torch, of a Crimſon Colour, to be worn upon their Head-Cloaths; that at all publick Meetings the Women ſhould have Precedence of the Men, and ſhould be exempted from all Taxes, and that all the Apparels and Jewels left by their dead Husbands ſhould be theirs.

A more general Ornament of Honour peculiar to the Fair Sex is the *Cordon*, which ſome will have to be an Order, or Equivalent thereunto. The Inſtitution is attributed to *Anne Britaigne*, Wife to *Charles* VIII. of *France*, who inſtead of the Military Belt or Collar, beſtowed a Cordon or Lace on ſeveral Ladies, admoniſhing them to live chaſtly and devoutly, always mindful of the Cords and Bonds of our Saviour, and to engage them to a greater Eſteem of it, ſhe ſurrounded her Eſcutcheon of Arms with the like Cordon; from which Example the Arms of unmarried Ladies and Gentlewomen are uſually adorn'd with them.

CAP.

CAP. IV.

Of the Caſtle, Chapel, and College of Windſor, *&c.*

HAving diſpatch'd the ſeveral Orders of Knighthood, and trac'd them from their proper Fountains, we come now to treat of the moſt Noble Order of the *Garter*; an Order, that not only grants Merit, and Honourable, and Valiant Exploits at Home, but what Imperial Heads and Perſons, fam'd for the Antiquity of their Race, or Gallantry of Actions, have always eſteem'd a further Advancement to their Glory therein to be enroll'd. For the better Explanation, it will be neceſſary to begin with the Deſcription of the Caſtle, Chapel, and College of *Windſor*. The Place claims no greater Antiquity than of the *Saxons*, named by them *Windleſhore*, and, as *Cambden* conjectures, had the Denomination from the Winding of a Shore thereabouts, as did *Wandſworth* in *Surry*, heretofore written *Windleſworth*. The firſt authentick Notice is from the Donation which King *Edward the Confeſſor* made thereof to the Monks of *Weſtminſter*, (as the Charter expreſſes it) *For the Hope of eternal Reward, the Remiſſion of all his Sins, the Sins of his Father, Mother, and all his Anceſtors, to the Praiſe of Almighty*, &c. he grants *Wyndleſhore*, with all its Appurtenances, as an Endowment and perpetual Inheritance, to the Uſe of the *Monks* there, and at *Weſtminſter*, that ſerved GOD. Thoſe Monks enjoy'd it not long, for King *William the Conqueror*, in the firſt Year of his Reign, being greatly enamour'd with the pleaſant Situation and Commodiouſneſs of the Place, ſituate ſo near the *Thames*, and the Wood fit for Game, invited *Eadwin*, the then Abbot, and the *Monks*, to accept in Exchange for it, *Wokendune* in *Eſſex*, a Manſion called *Ferings*, with all its Members and Hamlets, together with Fourteen *Sokemen* and their Lands, and one Freeholder, and Three Houſes in *Colcheſter*, all in *Eſſex*, ſince which it has remained in the Crown.

The King being thus poſſeſs'd, forthwith built a Caſtle upon the Hill, which, in *Doomſday Book*, contained

ed half an Hide of Land, and is there noted to be Parcel of the Mannor of [*Clivore*] *Clure*. This Caſtle King *Henry* I. rebuilt, and beautified with great Magnificence, and, in the Tenth Year of his Reign, held his *Whitſontide* there with great State and Splendor. Shortly after, in a Charter of Peace between King *Stephen* and Duke *Henry*, (King *Henry* II. afterwards) this Caſtle was called *Mola de Windeſor*, the Fortreſs of *Windeſor*. Within this Caſtle was King *Edward* III. born, (commonly called *Edward* of *Windſor*) and was baptized in the old Chapel; and ſo great was his Affection to that Place, that he conſtituted it the Seat of the moſt noble Order of the *Garter*; and to embelliſh it the more, he founded the College of the Chapel of St. *George*, and much enlarged, and beautified the Caſtle.

For this Work he appointed ſeveral Surveyors, whom he aſſigned to preſs Hewers of Stone, Carpenters, and ſuch other Artificers as were thought uſeful and neceſſary, as alſo to provide Stone, Timber, and all other Materials for them. *William de Wyckham* (who attained to be Biſhop of *Wincheſter*) was one of theſe Superviſors, and had that Place conferr'd on him by Letters Patent, *October* 30. *Ed.* III. And a Grant of the ſame Fee was likewiſe allowed to *Robert de Bernham*, viz. One Shilling a Day, while he was at *Windſor*, Two Shillings when he went elſewhere about that Affair, and Three Shillings *per* Week to his Clerk; afterwards he was chief Cuſtos and Surveyor of this Caſtle, of the Mannors of Old and New *Windſor*, and of other Caſtles, Mannors, *&c.* belonging to the King, to provide Workmen, and look after the Repairs, and in thoſe Mannors to hold Leets and other Courts, Pleas of Treſpaſs and Miſdemeanours.

About the 34th of *Ed.* III. it is preſumed the moſt conſiderable Enlargement of the Caſtle was made, ſeeing there was then great Store of the ableſt Diggers and Maſons impreſs'd, by virtue of Writs directed to the ſeveral Sheriffs, with Command under 100 *l.* Penalty to ſend them to *Windſor* the *Sunday* after the Feaſt of St. *George*, to work at the King's Charge, from whence they were not to depart without *Wyckham*'s Licenſe, Security having been firſt taken by the Sheriffs, and returned into *Chancery*. *London* found Forty; *Eſſex*, in conjunction with *Hertford*, Forty; *Wilts*, *Leiceſter*, with

Worceſter

Worceſter, *Cambridge*, with *Huntington* Forty, *Kent*, *Glouceſter*, *Somerſet*, with *Devon*, and *Northampton*, one with another, found alſo Forty a-piece. And becauſe divers of theſe Workmen, for Gain and Advantage, clandeſtinely left *Windſor* to the Hindrance of the Work, all Perſons were forbid to employ or retain them under Forfeiture of all they had, and likewiſe to arreſt thoſe that withdrew themſelves from the Work, and commit them to *Newgate*. *A.* 36. *Ed.* III. many of them being ſwept away by the Peſtilence, the like Writs were directed to other Sheriffs, under a Hundred Pound Penalty, to ſend able Men; whereupon the Counties of *York* ſent Sixty, *Derby* Twenty Four, *Salop* Sixty, *Hereford* Fifty, *Nottingham* Twenty Four, *Lancaſter* Twenty Four, and *Devon* Sixty. *A.* 37. *Ed.* III. The noble Edifice was ready for Glazing, and of Twenty Four of that Occupation impreſs'd for the King's Service, Twelve were to be employed at *Windſor*. In this Year and the next a great Proficiency was made, and vaſt Quantities of Stone were amaſſed, dug out of the Quarries of *Wellesfor*, *Newel*, and *Carby*, and other Places. From the 37th to the 43d, the Building of the Caſtle was diligently purſued. We find no Addition to this auguſt Pile till his 48th Year, and after that Time nothing more during his Reign, ſo that it is ſuppoſed this Famous Piece for Magnificence and Strength was then chiefly finiſhed, *viz.* the Great Hall of St. *George*, the Lodgings on the Eaſt and South ſide of the Upper Ward, the Keep or Tower in the Middle Ward, the Chapel of St. *George*, the Houſes for the Cuſtos and the Canons in the Lower Ward, with the whole Circumference of the Walls, their ſeveral Towers and Gates, as in the preſent Poſture they remain.

In ſucceeding Times King *Hen.* VII. added that ſtately Fabrick adjoining to the King's Lodgings, in the Upper Ward. King *Hen.* VIII. re-edified the great Gate at the Entrance into the Lower Ward. King *Edw.* VI. began, and Queen *Mary* perfected the Conveying the Water, from *Blackmore-Park* in *Wingfield* Pariſh, into a Fountain of curious Workmanſhip erected in the Middle Ward, which ſupplied all the Caſtle. Queen *Elizabeth* made a Terrace Work on the North ſide of the

Caſtle; from whence there is a pleaſant Proſpect down upon *Eaton-bridge*, the *Thames*, and the adjacent Country. King *Charles* I. *A. D.* 1636. built the Gate at the Eaſt end of the Terrace, which leads into the Park. And laſtly, King *Charles* II. greatly beautified and repair'd the Fabrick, and furniſh'd it with a curious Armory; and, in fine, every Thing is ſo fitly diſpoſed and ordered, that they are worthy of the Notice of every nice and curious Traveller.

Camden elegantly deſcribes its Situation in Proſe in this manner: *From an Hill* (ſays he) *that riſes with a gentle Aſcent, it enjoyeth a moſt delightful Proſpect round about; foreright, in the Front, it overlooketh a Vale, lying out far and wide, garniſhed with Corn Fields, flouriſhing with Meadows, deck'd with Groves on either ſide, and watered with the moſt mild and calm River* Thames. *Behind it ariſe Hills every where, neither rough nor over high, attired, as it were with Woods, and even dedicated, as one would ſay, by Nature, to hunting Game.*

And thus *Denham*'s Muſe pourtrays it:

Windeſor, the next (where Mars with Venus dwells,
Beauty with Strength) above the Valley ſwells
Into my Eye, and doth it ſelf preſent
With ſuch an eaſy and unforc'd Aſcent,
That no ſtupendious Precipice denies
Acceſs, no horror turns away our Eyes;
But ſuch a Riſe as doth at once invite
A Pleaſure, and a Reverence from our ſight.
Thy mighty Maſters Emblem, in whoſe Face [Grace;
Sat Meekneſs heightned with Majeſtick
Such ſeems thy gentle height, made only proud
To be the Baſis of that pompous Load.
Than which a nobler weight no Mountain bears
But Atlas only that ſupports the Spheres.

This

This Caſtle is under the Government of a Conſtable, ſo call'd in the Reign of King *John*, and has bore that Denomination ever ſince: The Office is of great Antiquity, Honour and Power, but of ſmall Revenue, for it is partly Military and Civil; as Military he commands the Caſtle and any Garriſon placed therein, and is obliged to defend it againſt all Enemies whatſoever; all the Priſoners brought hither are committed to his Charge, and is anſwerable for all that is in the Caſtle to the King, under whom he is Commander, as a Civil Officer. He is Judge of a Court of Record held there by Preſcription, for determining, by way of Common Law, all Pleas between Party and Party, ariſing within the Precincts of the Foreſt of *Windſor*, and Liberties thereof, which compriſeth many Towns; and all legal Proceſſes iſſue out in his Name. He is allowed a Deputy learned in the Law, who is called the Steward of the Court of Record, and is Keeper of the Conſtable's Seal of Office. This Officer ſupplies the Conſtable's Place as a Judge of the Court of *Common Pleas*, from whoſe Judgment the Appeal is by Writ of Error returnable in the *King's-Bench*, or *Common Pleas* at *Weſtminſter*. The Conſtable is likewiſe Foreſter and Warden of the Foreſt of *Windſor*, which is an 120 Miles in compaſs. He hath under him one or more Lieutenants at his Pleaſure, and may impriſon any Treſpaſſer in Vert and Veniſon Convict, having a Priſon in the Caſtle for that Purpoſe, named the *Coalhole*. He hath the Freedom of uſing the Sports of the Foreſt, which is granted to no Perſon without his or the King's Licenſe, and ſigns all Warrants to kill Deer, (except what the King ſigns) and is to fell Timber and Wood.

He that was *Chaſtelain* (the *French* Word for Conſtable) in *William the Conqueror*'s Reign was *Walter Fitz Other*, from whom the Family of the Barons of *Windſor* are deſcended, and the Earls of *Plimouth*, bearing the Surname of *Windſor*. *Temp. Car.* II. Prince *Rupert* was Conſtable.

We come next to the Chapel of St. *George*, which is ſituate in the Lower Ward or Court of this Caſtle, and ſo named by King *Edw.* III. ſhortly after he had founded the College mention'd in the next Section; he having

ving pulled down the old Chapel erected there by King *Henry* I. and dedicated to King *Edward the Confessor*, to raise a more stately Structure in its stead; to bring which Matter to Perfection, in the 24th Year of his Reign, *John de Spoulee* had the Office of Master of the Stone-Hewers, and had Power to provide Masons, and other Artificers, to whose Care they were entrusted. In *Anno* 25. *Ed.* I. *John de Dorchester*, Sub-Constable of the Castle, was appointed to keep a Controul upon all the Provisions bought for the Works of the Chapel, as well as on the Payments, and all other Affairs relating thereunto. To this Fabrick he erected several Houses adjoining, for the Custos and Canons to reside in; and afterwards King *Hen.* IV. gave them the void Place in the Castle call'd the *Woodhall*, nigh the great Hall, for building of Houses and Apartments for the Vicars, Clerks, and Choristers, and the other Ministers, assigned for the Service of the Chapel; but King *Edw.* IV. observing the Walls and Foundation of the Chapel sapped and consumed, and esteeming the Fabrick not stately or spacious enough, designed another more noble and excellent in its Room: In order to it *Richard Beauchamp*, Bishop of *Salisbury*, was constituted Master and Surveyor of the Work, who had Power from the King to remove all Impediments, demolished divers of the Officiary Houses, and other irregular Piles and decay'd Walls, and dug up their Foundations, particularly those ancient Buildings on the East side of the Chapel, which extended unto the Walls on the North side of the Castle, where the Towers, *viz. Curey*'s Tower, and *Le Amenery*'s Tower, and *Barney*'s Tower, were situated; as also on the South side of the Chapel, unto the Belfry there, exclusively; the Materials whereof he might bestow upon any Buildings in the Castle, as he thought convenient. How well the Bishop discharged this Office, appears from the Preamble of his Patent, whereby that King conferred on him the Chancellorship of the *Garter*, in which is set forth, *That out of meer Love towards the Order, he had given himself the Leisure daily to attend the Advancement and Progress of this goodly Fabrick.*

From this Erection of K. *Ed.* IV. arose the elegant and beauteous Structure now standing, enlarged in Length at

at leaſt an Hundred Fathom (tho' it did not arrive to its Perfection until the Reign of King *Henry* VIII.) together with the Dean and Canons Houſes on the North ſide of the Chapel, and thoſe of the Petty Canons raiſed at the Weſt End, in form of a Fetter-lock (one of King *Edward* the IVth's Badges) and ſo vulgarly call'd. *Temp. Henry* VII. Sir *Reginald Bray*, Knight of the *Garter*, became a liberal Benefactor, finiſhing the Body of the Chapel, and rearing the Middle Chapel on the South thereof, which ſtill retains his Name, and where his Body lies interred, as is manifeſt by his Arms, Badges, *&c.* cut in Stone, and by his laſt Will. *Anno* 21. *Hen.* VII. *John Hylmer* and *William Vertue*, Free Maſons, undertook the Vaulting the Roof of the Choir (a curious Piece of Architecture) for 700 *l.* and finiſh'd it by *Chriſtmas*, 1508. *Anno* 8 *Henry* VIII. the Rood Loft, and Lanthorn, were erected, with the Contributions raiſed by the Knights Companions. Near to the Eaſt end of this Chapel, was a little Fabrick of Free-Stone, raiſed by Cardinal *Wolſey*, call'd the *Tomb Houſe*, in the Middle whereof he deſigned to erect a Monument for King *Henry* VIII. and had almoſt finiſhed it before he died; but this was demoliſhed, 1646. by command of the *Long Parliament*; and all the Copper Figures, exceedingly enriched by Art, carry'd thence. This Place King *Charles* I. intended to enlarge, for the Interment of his own Royal Body, and thoſe of his Succeſſors; but thoſe villainous Times drawn on, they with much ado afforded him but a mean obſcure Place near the firſt high Place in the Choir of this Chapel, in the ſame Vault where the Bodies of King *Henry* VIII. and his laſt Queen yet remain.

In this Chapel, beſides many of the Knights Companions, repoſe the Body of King *Hen.* VI. removed from *Chertſey* Abbey in *Surrey*, depoſited under the Uppermoſt Arch at the South ſide of the Altar, without any Monument or Inſcription, and likewiſe that of King *Edw.* IV. under a large Stone of Tuch, raiſed within the oppoſite Arch, at the North ſide of the Altar, but without Inſcription, having on the outſide of his Grave a Range of Steel gilt, to incloſe it from the North Iſles, cut excellent well in Church-work.

Over this Arch hung this King's Coat of Mail, cover'd over with Crimſon Velvet, and thereon the Arms of *England* and *France* quarter'd and richly embroider'd with Pearl and Gold, interwoven with divers Rubies; which Trophy had remain'd over his Monument ever ſince his Interment, till plunder'd by Captain *Fogg*, 1642. who at the ſame time ſacrilegiouſly robb'd the Chapel of all its Altar-Plate.

Within this Chapel were ſeveral Chantries endow'd with Lands and other Revenues, for Chaplains and Prieſts to ſing Maſſes for the Souls of their Founder's Kindred.

William of *Wickham*, Biſhop of *Wincheſter*, in 3 *Hen.* IV. gave Two Hundred Marks to the Dean and Chapter, to buy Twenty Marks *per Annum* to maintain one Chaplain.

18 *Ed.* IV. The Feoffees of *Richard*, Duke of *Gloceſter*, gave the Mannors of *Bentfieldbury* in *Eſſex*, *Knapton* in *Norfolk*, and *Chetleſworth* in *Suffolk*, for a daily Maſs.

22 *Ed.* IV. Sir *Thomas St. Leger* founded a Chantry of Two Prieſts, who were to officiate in the middle Chapel on the North Side of the Church; and the ſaid King, by his Will, ordain'd Two Prieſts to ſerve at his Tomb, with an Exhibition of Twenty Marks yearly a-piece.

9 *Hen.* VII. There was another Chantry Prieſt aſſign'd for *Thomas Paſche* and *William Hermer*, &c. who was to perform his Office at the Altar on the North Side the new Church.

13 *Hen.* VII. *Margaret*, Counteſs of *Richmond*, founded a Chantry for Four Chaplains, to celebrate Maſs in the Eaſt Part of the new Work of the Chapel.

18 *Hen.* VII. *William*, Lord *Haſtings*, founded a Chantry for One Prieſt, on the North Side of the Choir, about the middle whereof this Lord lies.

21 *Hen.* VII. *Charles Somerſet*, Lord *Herbert*, (afterwards Earl of *Worceſter*) left a Secular Prieſt for a daily Maſs, *&c.* to be ſaid in the South Chapel dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, where he lies interr'd. Both theſe Lords have built Appartments adjoyning for their Chantry Prieſts, now to be ſeen and diſtinguiſh'd by their

their Arms, garter'd and cut in Stone over their ſeveral Doors.

To theſe we ſhall add the Foundation of the new Commons, erected over againſt the North Door of the Body of St. *George*'s Chapel, by *James Denton* one of the Canons, *Anno* 11 *Hen.* VIII. for the Lodging and Dieting ſuch of the Chantry Prieſts, Choriſters and ſtipendiary Prieſts, who had before no certain Place where to hold Commons in, which he furniſh'd with all proper Utenſils, the Charge amounting to 489 *l.* 7 *s.* 1 *d.* in lieu of which the Choriſters were to ſay certain Prayers when they enter'd the Chapel, commemorate his Death, and pray for his and the Souls of all the Faithful departed.

In this Chapel of St. *George* there were heretofore ſeveral Anniverſaries or Obits held and celebrated, which we paſs over. And as it was uſual for ſome of the military Profeſſion to ſpend the Remains of their Lives in pious Speculations, for their King and Country, and the Salvation of their own Souls, Permiſſion was allow'd to the well-diſpos'd *Knights of the Garter*, who retir'd from the Noiſe and Buſtle of the World, to make their Abode there; yet ſo as to maintain themſelves out of their own Revenues. King *Henry* VIII. ordain'd that the Sovereign ſhould aſſign them convenient Appartments within the Caſtle; and the like Favour he granted to other Knights, tho' not of the Order; but the Lodgings to be ſuch as the Sovereign and Knights Companions ſhould decree: However, we do not find the Knights Companions made uſe of the Benefit, but only for their better Accommodation at the grand Feaſt of the Order, *&c.* A Motion was made, 14 *Car.* I. that they might have Lodgings aſſign'd them in the great Court, which they offer'd to repair at their own Charge, ſince all the Officers had Conveniencies in the Caſtle, but the Knights Companions none, which the King did not diſſent to, provided it be without Excluſion of the great Officers of State.

§ 3. Within the Chapel of the Caſtle, erected by King *Henry* I. was founded a College for Eight Canons, to be maintain'd by an annual Penſion out of the Exchequer. King *Edw.* II. founded here a Chantry for

Four Chaplains and Two Clerks; as likewiſe a Chapel in the Park of *Windſor*, under the ſame Regulation, for Four more Chaplains, whom King *Edw.* III. remov'd and joyn'd to thoſe before ſettled in the Chapel of the Caſtle, and built Habitations for their better Accommodation, on the South Side thereof.

The Foundation we treated of here was confirm'd by Letters Patent, dated at *Weſtminſter*, *Aug.* 6. 22 *Edw.* III. three Quarters of a Year before he erected *The Order of the Garter*, when he laid the Foundation of the ancient Chapel a-freſh, in honour of God, the Virgin *Mary*, St. *George* and St. *Edward the Confeſſor*; and ordain'd, that to King *Henry*'s Eight Canons there ſhould be annex'd One Cuſtos, Fifteen more Canons, and Twenty Four Alms-Knights, together with other Miniſters, all under the Power of the Cuſtos, and theſe to be ſupported out of the Revenues wherewith this Chapel ſhould be endow'd: Upon which Pope *Clement* VI. 1351. by his Bull directed to the Arch-biſhop of *Canterbury* and Biſhop of *Wincheſter*, approved in part the King's Intention.

The next Year the Statutes and Ordinances of the College commenc'd, by Virtue of the Pope's Authority, the King's Command, and Conſent of the Biſhop of *Salisbury*, in whoſe Dioceſs the Chapel is ſituate. By which Statutes, *Wincheſter* (one of the Pope's Delegates) inſtituted a College, within the Precincts of the Chapel of St. *George*, conſiſting of one Cuſtos, Twelve Secular Canons, Thirteen Prieſts or Vicars, Four Clerks, Six Choriſters, and Twenty Six Alms-Knights, beſides other Officers.

DEAN.

§ 4. The firſt Cuſtos was *John de la Chambre*, conſtituted *Nov.* 14. 22 *Edw.* III. to whom ſucceeded *William Mugg*, on the 18th of *June* following: Which *Mugg* is the firſt, if the Inſtitution of the College bears Date by Papal, and not Kingly Authority. After him were others that were call'd by the ſame Title; till the laſt Year of King *Henry* IV. when *Thomas Kingſton* was preſented by the Name of Dean; and his Succeſſor, *John Arundel*, obſerving divers Endowments granted to the College

College alternately, by the Name of Cuſtos, Dean and Cuſtos, or laſtly of Dean only; and doubting this Variation of Titles in Time might bring Inconveniences upon the Foundation, petition'd the Parliament, 8 *Hen.* VI. whereupon the King, by Letters Patent under the Great Seal, granted that the ſaid *John* ſhould be *Cuſtos ſive Decanus* for Life, and his Succeſſors *Cuſtodes ſive Decani*, Wardens or Deans of the Free Chapel of St. *George*, within the Caſtle of *Windſor*; and that the Cuſtos, or Dean and Canons thereof, and their Succeſſors, by that Appellation, ſhould have and hold, to them and their Succeſſors for ever, all Lands, Tenements, *&c.* Liberties, *&c.* devolv'd upon the College at any Time before: So that here was a kind of new Incorporation, by the Title of Cuſtos, or Deans and Canons only; at leaſt this was a great Step to compleat the Privilege they after enjoy'd, when thro' the Intereſt of *Richard Beauchamp*, Biſhop of *Salisbury*, then alſo Dean of *Windſor*, and Chancellor of the Order, King *Edw.* IV. by Letters Patent dated *Dec.* 6. in the 19th Year of his Reign, model'd them by the Name of Dean and Canons of the Free Chapel of St. *George* within the Caſtle of *Windſor*, one Body corporate in Thing and Name, with a perpetual Succeſſion, and capable in Law to purchaſe, receive and take Lands, *&c.* in Fee and Perpetuity; to have a common Seal, and might plead and be impleaded by that Name; and for better Security, the Letters Patent of Incorporation were, within Three Years after, paſs'd into an Act of Parliament now in force.

The Authority of the Cuſtos or Dean conſiſts in being Preſident over the reſt of the College; to govern, direct and order them their Goods and Eſtates. He has all manner of Eccleſiaſtical Juriſdiction over them, with a Reſervation of Power of Appeal to the Chancellor of *England*, who is Viſitor of that College.

When any Perſons lead Lives inordinate, he with the Chapter (in Caſes where no particular Penalty is appointed) may reprehend or correct at Diſcretion; and in Matters of Diſcord, ſhall within Eight Days reconcile the contending Parties, or do Juſtice. After thrice Admonition, may expel from the College all

Sowers

Sowers of Diſcord, Backbiters and Whiſperers, that are below the Degree of a Canon. And that there be no defect of Government, when the Dean has Occaſion to be abſent above Eight Days, he ſhall appoint One of the Canon Reſidents for his Deputy, in whoſe abſence he has the Title of Lieutenant, and on all Occaſions to exerciſe his Office; for the Statutes allow him Sixty Days in a Year for Non-reſidence; which ſpace the Royal Viſitation, 1552. enlarg'd to One Hundred and Ten Days; and the Lord Chancellor *Hyde* granted him Liberty of Six Weeks abſence. But in the Vacancy of the Cuſtos, the Chapter has all his Power conferr'd on them; which Chapter ought, within Two Days after the Vacancy made known, elect one of the Reſident Canons, under the Title of Preſident, to govern the College until they be provided of another Cuſtos.

CANONS.

The Canons, by the Letters Patent of the firſt Erection, were appointed to be Twenty Four, including the Cuſtos; but upon the Inſtitution of the College by the Biſhop of *Winton*, there was ordain'd, as afore-noted, One Cuſtos, Twelve Secular Canons, and Thirteen Prieſts or Vicars, in all Twenty Six, compleatly the Number of *The Knights of the Garter*: And for a fuller Diſtinction between theſe Canons Secular and the Prieſts, the firſt Twelve are, in a Bull of Pope *Innocent* VIII. nam'd *Majores Canonici*, the others *Minores*, or Petty-Canons. To theſe Twelve Seculars were aſſign'd ſo many Prebendſhips in the Chapel of St. *George* (as alſo Stalls in the Choir and Place in the Chapter) together with that held by the Cuſtos, whence they are frequently ſtyl'd Prebends, and have a ſacerdotal Power; for if they are not in full Orders before they are inſtal'd, they muſt, within a Year after they have enjoy'd their Prebendſhip, be ordain'd a Prieſt, or quit the Benefice.

By the Bull of Pope *Clement* VI. the Right of preſenting the Canons, Prieſts, Clerks, Alms-Knights and other Miniſters, were reſerv'd to the Founder and his Succeſſors; yet we find the firſt Canons were preſented to the Cuſtos, by the Founders of *The Order of the Gar-*

ter,

ter, *viz.* the Twenty Five first Knights Companions, every one presenting singularly; yet this was but with the Sovereign's Permission, *Pro hac vice*; and that none of them should be entitled to it hereafter but the Sovereign alone. And because it might the more effectually be observ'd, the Custos was oblig'd upon every Canon's Death, to signify the same to the Sovereign, that he might pitch on One to succeed; which being nominated, he is approved, instituted, and instal'd, by the Custos or Dean, to whom he swears Canonical Obedience, and Observance of the Statutes.

The principal Duty of these Canons (and of all the other Ministers of the College) is continually to attend upon the Service of God in the Chapel of St. *George*; and the Statutes run upon each Day's Omission of a Canon Resident, to be mulcted his *quotidian* Distribution 12 *d.* And tho' we find no License of Non-Residence granted them by their Founder, yet there is mention of Canons Resident and Non-Resident, for whom great Defalcations are appointed to be made, to prevent such Neglects, because the residentiary Canons bear not only the Burden of that Duty belonging to the Chapel, but the Expence of Hospitality and other Works of Charity, occasion'd from their residing at *Windsor*.

Richard Beauchamp, Bishop of *Salisbury*, obtain'd Power from *Sextus* IV. to make new Statutes, and dispens'd with the old Ones; and in 1478. he gave to the Dean and every Canon Fourteen Days of Non-Residence in every Term, to wit, Fifty Six Days in the Year. By the Visitation, 1552. they obtain'd a Dispensation for Eighty Days; and the Lord Chancellor *Hatton* yet gave them a further Permission to Two Hundred and Two Days, which the Lord Chancellor *Hyde* confirm'd; so that there remains One Hundred and Sixty Three Days in the Year, in which the Canons ought to be resident with Hospitality, to be consonant to their Statutes.

The Canons are particularly oblig'd to pray for the Sovereign, and for the happy Estate of the Order. If any Knight Companion, or other Person, should bestow Ten Pounds *per Annum*, in order to be Partaker of the Prayers appointed for the Benefactors of the College,

College, his Name was to be inſcribed amongſt them, and he alſo prayed for. Which Article, tho' King *Hen.* V. confirmed, yet with this Reſtriction, it ſhould not be admitted without the Conſent of the Sovereign, or the Knights-Companions of the Order. 4 *Edw.* VI. ſome one of them were enjoyned to commemorate the Benefactors in a Diſcourſe upon the *Tueſday* next after the third *Sunday* in *Lent*, and on the firſt *Tueſdays* in *June*, *September* and *December*, and not only to ſet forth the Munificence of the Founder, and of King *Hen.* VIII. but of all others, ſo as to excite their Auditors to an Emulation, in the Increaſe of Religion, and ſetting forth of God's Glory.

The civil Obligations of theſe Canons are to attend the Sovereign (or his Deputy) and the Knights Companions at their grand Feaſt, and at the Feaſts of the Inſtallation, or when the Sovereign or Knights Companions ſhall come to the Chapel of St. *George* upon a Religious Account. On thoſe ſolemn Days, over their Eccleſſaſtical Habit they wear a Murrey Mantle, (at this Day a Taffaty Robe, in Faſhion like the three inferior Officers of the Order) with the Arms of St. *George* arched within a Rundle on the Right Shoulder.

PETTY CANONS.

Thoſe now call'd Petty Canons in the Patent of Foundation went undiſtinguiſh'd with the *Canones Majores*: only in the Bull of Pope *Clement* VI. to the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury* and Biſhop of *Winton*, for inſtituting the College, they are called *Presbyteri*; and by the ſaid Biſhop in the very Words of his Statutes, *Presbyteri ſeu Vicarii*, by which laſt Name they are ſtyl'd at the firſt Erection of the Garter. Their Number was originally Thirteen, only King *Henry* the VIIIth's *Engliſh* Statutes mention Eight petty Canons, beſides Thirteen Vicars, (but the *Latin* takes Notice only of Thirteen Prieſts, ſome called *Canonici Minores*, others *Vicarii.*) *Ann.* 1. *Edw.* VI. Twelve Prieſts were appointed, and named Petty Canons, that is, Four to be added to the Eight mention'd in the Statute of King *Henry* VIII. Yet in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Ordinances for the continual Charge, the Petty Canons thereby provided for are Thirteen,

Thirteen, agreeable to the ancient Number of Vicars; but at this Day they are reduced to Seven, and one of them Subchanter.

The Vicars at their Admiſſion are bound to be Prieſts, at leaſt Deacons, and at the next Ordination they muſt commence Prieſts. Their Statutes oblige them to continual Reſidence; and if abſent from Matins or from the grand Maſs, they are amerced 2 *d.* and for every Canonical Hour, the Maſs of the Virgin *Mary*, or for the Defunct, a Penny: All which Forfeitures were to be deducted out of their Sallary, and divided among thoſe Vicars that duly attend theſe Duties. But the Statutes 1 *Edw.* VI. ſtate the Forfeit of Abſence from Matins to be one Half-penny, and the like from Proceſſion, Communion or Even-Song, to be paid to the Poor's Box. And not only they, but all other Miniſters of the Chapel, if they leave the College above Twenty Days, without Reaſons ſufficiently approved of by the Reſidentiary Canons; or any of the Society that lead a vicious or ſcandalous Life, after the Fact manifeſtly proved before the *Cuſtos*, are to be expelled; but an Abſence leſs than Twenty Days, without Leave granted, is puniſhable at Diſcretion.

Each Vicar enjoy'd at firſt an annual Penſion of 8 *l.* paid after this Manner, *viz.* every Kalendar Month 8 *s.* for their Diet, and at the Expiration of every Quarter Day the Surplus was conſign'd for other Neceſſaries they ſtood in need of. King *Ed.* IV. encreaſed their Penſions to Twenty Marks a-piece; to which Queen *Elizabeth* (they being then called Petty Canons) advanced 13 *s.* and 4 *d.* *per Annum* to each out of the Lands confirm'd on the College by King *Ed.* VI. and now their yearly Sallaries are encreas'd to Thirty Pounds. Out of theſe Petty Canons is elected a Subchanter, (and commonly the ſame Perſon is the Dean's Vicar) who has the Cure of Souls, marries and buries, *&c.*

CLERKS.

For the Service of the Choir at the Foundation were allotted Four Clerks, one whereof was to be inſtituted a Deacon, and another a Sub-deacon before their Admiſſion,

miſſion, and theſe two were deſign'd (upon Vacancy) to the Vicars Places. But for the other Two, Inſtitution into leſſer Orders, in which they were to continue, were ſufficient. Each of the Two firſt ſort had Eight Marks *per Ann.* and the other Two but Six. King *Ed.* IV. encreas'd their Number to Thirteen, and allow'd them 10 *l. per Ann.* They are mention'd to be Thirteen in *Hen.* VIII's Statutes. 1 *Ed.* VI. they were encreas'd to Fifteen; but here appointed to be Laymen, wearing Surplices in the Choir, each having the ſame Allowance. 4 *Ed.* VI. a Model was propoſed to augment the Number of theſe Fifteen Clerks to Twenty. But in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth* they were again reduced to Thirteen, as at this preſent they remain, (one of them as Organiſt hath a double Clerk's Place, and conſequently reckon'd for Two) and an Augmentation to each of 2 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* three Farthings yearly; which being at firſt oppoſed by the Dean and Prebends, they at length (5 *Eliz.*) conſented to allow them 40 *s. per Ann.* a-piece, not out of the new Lands, but out of other Payments which the Dean and Chapter ſhould otherwiſe receive; and 1662. they encreaſed their annual Penſions to 23 *l.* a-piece. They are obliged to be preſent in the Choir at Divine Service as well as the Petty Canons, and under the ſame Forfeitures; nor may they or the Petty Canons go out of Town above Three at once, leſt the Choir ſhould be left unprovided.

CHOIRISTERS.

For the Service of the Choir were appointed Six Choiriſters, and they to be of the Clerical Order at their Admiſſion; to each of which was allow'd Five Marks *per Ann.* And as the Deacon and Sub-deacon were plac'd in the College only in Addition to the Vicars, and deſign'd to ſucceed them in their Vacancies; ſo alſo were there Six ſecular Children, endued with clear tuneable Voices, to ſucceed the Choiriſters, when they perceiv'd a Roughneſs or Alteration in their Voices. King *Ed.* IV. encreas'd the Number of Choiriſters to Thirteen, and allow'd them annually Six Marks a-piece, and which was again confirm'd by King *H.* VIII's Statutes.

Statutes. Yet the Injunction of 1 *Ed.* VI. reduced them to Ten; but Queen *Elizabeth* eſtabliſh'd the former Number, and gave in Augmentation among them all of 3 *l.* 11 *s.* 8 *d.* They are now reduced to Eight, and their preſent Exhibition is 12 *s. per* Month.

§. 5. The Alms Knights we ſhall treat of in a threefold Eſtate: 1. Under the Foundation; 2. When diſjointed thence by Act of Parliament; and, 3. As eſtabliſhed anew by Queen *Elizabeth*.

1. Then, King *Edward* III. out of the great Regard he had to military Honour, and thoſe who had bravely behav'd themſelves in his Wars, yet after chanced to fall in decay, made a Proviſion for their Relief and comfortable Subſiſtence in old Age, by providing for them in this his Foundation, and making a Coalition in one joint Body with the Cuſtos and Canons; theſe he call'd *Milites Pauperes*, and we Poor or Alms-Knights. The ſtated Number at firſt were Twenty Four, equal to the Cuſtos and Canons at the firſt Erection. But ſhortly after, upon his inſtituting the Order of the *Garter*, Two more were added (as there was to the firſt Canons) to make the compleat Number of the Knights-Companions of that Order, which were Twenty Six, as we find ſtated at the Ordination of the College by the Biſhop of *Winchester*, the Pope's Delegate.

The Intention of the Founder was for thoſe that were real Objects of Charity, as he deſcribes them, *viz.* poor Knights, infirm in Body, indigent and decay'd, or as the Statutes of the *Garter* qualifies them, ſuch as thro' adverſe Turns of Fortune were reduced to that Extremity that they had not wherewithal to ſuſtain themſelves, to live ſo genteelly as was ſuitable for a Military Condition, which for greater Caution was reiterated in the Statutes of King *Hen.* V. King *Hen.* VIII. and in the Orders of Queen *Elizabeth*; for it was expreſs'd, in caſe any Eſtate of 20 *l. per Annum* devolved on them, ſuch Knights were to be diſcharged the College, and they were to proceed to a new Election.

At the firſt each Knight-Companion of the Order preſented his Alms-Knight, but ever after their Election was to be at the Diſpoſal of the Sovereign. Their Habit

bit was a Red Mantle, with the Eſcutcheon of St. *George*, without any Garter to ſurround it. Their Exhibition, after their firſt Election was 12 *d.* a-piece every Day they were at Service in the Chapel, or reſident in the College, beſides 40 *s. per Annum* for other Contingencies, it being the ſtated Allowance appointed to each of the Canons Reſidents.

About the Beginning of King *Hen.* VI's Reign, their *quotidian* Diſtributions and Annual 40 *s.* had been unpaid upon the Account of ſome Diſſentions riſen between them and the Dean and Canons; but upon Complaint of *John* Biſhop of *York*, Lord Chancellor of *England*, and Viſitor of the College, 10 *Hen.* VI. they were redreſſed, and their Arrears of both diſcharged, without any Deduction, and likewiſe obtained this Clauſe, That if the Treaſurer of the College became negligent in future Payments, he ſhould loſe his own *Quotidians*, from the Time of his voluntary Omiſſion, and the ſame to be divided among the Alms-Knights. Their Duty was to pray for the Sovereign and the Knights Companions, to be every Day preſent at High Maſs, the Maſſes of the Virgin *Mary*, at Veſpers and Compline, and in default to be mulcted their 12 *d. toties quoties*, which was to be converted to the Uſe of the other Alms-Knights, then reſiding in the Caſtle of *Windſor*; notwithſtanding which Decree, the Dean did afterwards break in upon them, and diſpoſed of theſe Forfeitures at his Pleaſure, till 2 *Rich.* II. *Adam*, Biſhop of St. *David's*, then Chancellor of *England*, and Viſitor of the College, redreſs'd it, and another Complaint of like Nature being made of the Deans diſpoſing of Donations and other Liberalities of the Knights Companions in wrong of the Alms-Knights, this Chancellor decreed an equal Diſtribution between the Alms-Knights and Canons, till the King and Council ſhould otherwiſe determine.

Theſe and other Differences between the Dean and Canons and Alms Knights, grew up to that height, that they became irreconcileable, inſomuch as in the Act of Parliament, 22 *Edw.* IV. for incorporating of the Cuſtos and Canons, by the Name of Dean and Canons, the Alms-Knights were not only omitted; but this Clauſe inſerted, *That the Dean and Canons, and their Succeſſors,*

ceſſors, ſhould for ever more be utterly quit and diſcharged from all manner of Exhibition or Charge of or for any of the ſaid Knights. And this under the Cover, That the King has greatly augmented the Number of the Miniſters of the Chapel, that the Revenue was inſufficient to maintain both them and the Alms-Knights; but in the Dean and Canons Anſwer to the Knights Petition to repeal this Act, the Cauſe is alledged, For that ſome of theſe Knights uſed their utmoſt Endeavours before this Act, to incorporate themſelves, and to be exempt from the Obedience and Rule of the Dean and Canons.

After this Act, which ſtruck off their Quotidian Portions and Fees aſſigned by King *Edward*'s Foundation, how the Alms Knights ſubſiſted we find not; but ſo ſoon as King *Hen.* VII. came to the Crown, they petitioned the King and Parliament for Repeal of the Act, 22 *Edw.* IV. and alledged it was obtained without their Knowledge, or being called thereunto, which Plea availed not at all; but on the contrary, the Dean and Canons, ſome Years after, got an Exemplification thereof under the great Seal, dated *Feb.* 4. 18 *Hen.* VII.

And it is very evident from King *Hen:* VIII's Letter to the College, that what they did in this Nature after this Act commenced, was merely upon Courteſie; for he returns them Thanks for a Penſion of Twenty Marks conferred upon *Peter Narbone*, whom he had recommended to an Alms-Knights Place, and Promiſes to burthen them no more with Requeſts of this ſort, but that he would ſettle Lands for their Maintenance. So great was their Caution, *Narbone* was by Covenants indented between him and the Dean and Canons, to relinquiſh his Penſion upon that King's ſettling Lands on the College, for the Proviſion of ſuch Knights. In the Interval between the Diſunion of the College and Alms-Knights, to their Eſtabliſhment by Queen *Elizabeth*, their Habit and Badge continued the ſame, and was ſo confirmed by *Hen.* VIII's Statutes. It may be collected by his laſt Will, there was an Intention to draw the *Garter* about the Eſcutcheon of St. *George*, which Projection came to nothing, and expired. In this Interval it is obſerv'd that ſeveral Perſons of conſiderable Rank and Diſtinction became Alms-Knights; ſome of which

were rendred great Objects of Charity; among which Number was Sir *Robert Champlayne*, a valiant Knight, an Honour to our Nation, for his renowned and martial Services abroad. He was of King *Henry* VI's Party in the Civil Wars againſt King *Edw.* IV. Immediately after whoſe coming to the Crown he left *England*, and travelled into *Hungary*, (with an Equipage of Three Servants and Four Horſes) where in the Aſſiſtance of *Mathous Corvinius* King of *Hungary* againſt the *Turks*, he behaved himſelf very gallantly; but proſperous Fortune not always attending him with Succeſs, he receiv'd many Wounds; and at length was taken Priſoner, loſt all, and forced to pay 1500 Ducats for his Ranſom; for the Atteſtation of which he had the Great Seals of the King of *Hungary*, the Archbiſhop of *Crete*, Legate *de Latere* in *Hungary*, the Emperor of *Germany*, the King of *Sicily*, the Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, and the Duke of *Burgundy*; and laſtly, a Declaration thereof under the Privy Seal of King *Edw.* IV. And being reduced to ſo low an Ebb of Fortune, he was, thro' *Hen.* VII's Favour, admitted an Alms-Knight.

But ſome obtained Admittance, probably out of Devotion, rather than Poverty, as *Thomas Hulme*, *Clarenceux* King of Arms, *Temp. Edw.* IV. *Lodowick Carly*, the King's Phyſician, and *John Mewtes*, Secretary of the *French* Tongue, both *Temp. Hen.* VII. and *Bartholomew Weſtby* made ſecond Baron of the *Exchequer*, 1 *Hen.* VIII.

It is evident King *Hen.* VIII. deſigned a Re-eſtabliſhment of half the ancient Number of Alms-Knights, *viz.* Thirteen; for which purpoſe he appointed by his Will 600 *l. per Annum*, in Mannors, Lands, and Spiritual Promotions, ſettled upon the Dean and Canons, and their Succeſſors for ever, upon the Proviſo's that they ſhould find Two Prieſts to ſay Maſs at his Tomb, to commemorate yearly Four Obits for him, and at every Obit diſtribute 12 *l.* in Alms, likewiſe to pay 12 *d.* a Week to thoſe Thirteen Alms-Knights, who were to have once a Year a long Gown of White Cloth, and a Mantle of Red, beſides Five Marks annually, to ſuch one among them as ſhould be conſtituted their Governor, and ſo much for a Sermon every *Sunday* throughout

out the Year. In Performance of which Will, King *Edw.* VI. in the first Year of his Reign, did confer several Lands upon the College; but 600 *l. per Annum* of these Rents were by the Dean and Canons paid back, to be employed on erecting of Houses for the Alms-Knights, intended to be settled by King *Hen.* VIII. This Work began not till the 3d and 4th of *Philip* and *Mary*, and was finished the 5th and 6th of their Reign, the Charge amounting to 2747 *l.* 7 *s.* 6 *d.* These Houses are situate on the South side of the Lower Ward of the Castle, and contain Thirteen Rooms, besides an Hall, a Kitchin, and a Pastry; the Stone was brought from *Reading*, the Timber from the Forest, and the Lead, and Apparels for the Chimnies, from *Suffolk Place* in *Southwark*. At a Chapter of the *Garter*, held the 1st of *June*, the 4th and 5th of *Philip* and *Mary*, the Houses being then near finished, a Debate arose about placing some Alms-Knights therein, if possible, by *Michaelmas* following, whereupon the Marquiss of *Winton*, Lord-Treasurer, had Orders to assign Lands for their Maintenance; and towards the compleating of this the Queen had nominated Nine of the Thirteen designed; but falling sick in *August*, a stop was put to the Affair, till Queen *Elizabeth* coming to the Crown confirmed her Sister's Grants to the Nine nominated Knights, and made up the Number full Thirteen, ordained by King *Henry* VIII. under which Establishment they still remain; for afterwards, *viz.* *Aug.* 30. in the first Year of her Reign, minding the Continuance of King *Edward*'s Foundation, the Intent of her Progenitors, and Advancement of the Order of the *Garter*, and King *Henry* VIII's Will, for the Support of Thirteen poor Men decayed in Wars, to be called Thirteen Knights of *Windsor*; and having erected certain Orders for their better Regulation, and declar'd how and in what manner the 600 *l.* given by her Father should be employ'd for the Maintenance of these Knights and their Successors, she lastly declared, That the Dean and Canons should for ever cause these Rules and Orders to be observed.

Impr. That there be Thirteen Poor Knights, all Gentlemen, one whereof to be Governour, that have spent their Time in the Wars, or other Service of the Realm,

having little or nothing to live upon, to be elected by the Sovereign and Succeſſors.

2. *It.* The Governour and Knights muſt be unmarried, yet that the Crown may diſpence withal; and upon their marrying are to loſe their Place.

3. *It.* None deformed, and convicted of Hereſie, Felony, or any notable Crime, is to be admitted of the Thirteen, and after admittance, ſo convicted, to be expelled.

4. *It.* Each Knight to have yearly, for their Liveries, a Red Gown of Four Yards, and a Mantle of Blue or Purple of Five Yards, at 6 *s.* and 8 *d. per* Yard.

5. *It.* An Eſcutcheon of St. *George* embroidered without the *Garter*, to be upon the Left Shoulder of the Mantle.

6. *It.* The Charges of the Cloth, Lining, Making, and Embroidering, to be paid by the Dean and Chapter, out of the Revenue of the Foundation.

7. *It.* That the Knights attend, Morning and Afternoon, Divine Service, within the College, in their ordinary Apparel, without a reaſonable Let to be allowed by the Governour.

8. *It.* That they keep their Lodgings appointed, and Table in a common Hall appointed, and to have their Proviſions by a common Purſe, except for a reaſonable Cauſe any be licenſed to the contrary by the Dean, and that Licenſe not to endure above Twenty Days in a Year, excepting only for Sickneſs.

9. *It.* They are not to haunt the Town, nor Publick Houſes, nor call any Woman into their Lodgings, without reaſonable Cauſe and Licenſe of the Dean.

10. *It.* Twelve of them to be obedient to him appointed to be Governour, and all Thirteen to the Dean and Chapter, in the Obſervation of theſe Statutes.

11. *It.* The Thirteen Knights to have Places within the Church, where the Dean and Canons ſhall think beſt to hear the Divine Service together.

12. *It.* To be preſent at the quarterly Service, for the Memory of the Patrons and Founder of the College, and eſpecially of King *Hen.* VIII. and Queen *Elizabeth*, and have each of them, at that Time, 20 *d.* and the Governour 2 *s.* The ſaid Service to be the *Sundays* next before

before the Quarter-days, the *Annunciation*, St. *John Baptiſt*, *Michaelmas*, and *Chriſtmas*.

13. *It.* Any of the Twelve Knights diſobeying the Governour, in any of theſe Statutes, to incur the Forfeiture the Dean and Chapter ſhall put on him, the Governour to report the Offence, which if more heinous, the Dean and Chapter are to give a Warning, and regiſter the ſame, and after a ſecond Warning Expulſion is to follow; the like Puniſhment to the Governour, diſobeying the Dean and Chapter in the Obſervation of theſe Statutes.

14. *It.* The Penalties of the Puniſhed to be imployed by the Dean and Chapter at their Diſcretion, upon any of the Miniſters or Choriſters of the Church.

15. *It.* Upon the King or Queen's coming to or going from *Windſor*, the Thirteen Knights are to ſtand before their Doors in their Apparel, and do Obedience.

16. *It.* At the keeping of the Feaſt of St. *George*, they are to ſtand likewiſe in their Apparel before their Doors, at the coming and going out of the Lieutenant, and of other the Knights-Companions.

17. *It.* At every Feaſt of St. *George* they ſhall ſit together in their Apparel at one Table, and have Allowance of Meat and Drink at the Royal Charges.

18. *It.* They are daily in their Prayers to pray for the Sovereign and the Knights-Companions.

19. *It.* They are always to lie in their Lodging, and upon lying out of them and the College, without Licenſe from the Dean, to forfeit 12 *d.*

20. *It.* If Lands or Revenues of 20 *l. per Annum* fall to any of the poor Knights, he is to be removed, and another put into his Place.

21. *It.* They are every Day (excepting Cauſe of Sickneſs) to be preſent at Divine Service in the College, as aforeſaid, and receive a daily Diſtribution of 12 *d. per* Day, to be paid them monthly, if it may be, or at leaſt in ſuch ſort as the other Miniſters of the Chapel be paid; and he that ſhall abſent himſelf one Day, without leave from the Dean, ſhall loſe his Diſtribution of 12 *d.*

22. *It.* The Governour is to keep a Book, and regiſter, the Abſenters, and other Defaulters of the Statutes, whereof he ſhall deliver one to the Dean, and another to the Steward, or him that payeth the poor Knights, who by Order of the Dean is to make proper Defalcations at the Time of paying them.

23. *It.* The Dean once a Year is to appoint a Day and Hour, at which the poor Knights are to be warned to be preſent, to hear theſe Statutes read, and any Knight abſenting after that Warning, and without Licenſe, is to forfeit 6 *s.* 8 *d.*

24. *It.* Any elected poor Knight, before he take any Commodity of his Room, ſhall take a corporal Oath before the Dean, to be faithful and true to the Crown, and that for the time of their tarrying there to truly obſerve the Statutes and Ordinances upon the Penalties contain'd in the ſaid Statutes.

The 25th Article is a Diſpenſation for thoſe poor Knights choſen before theſe Statutes, who were not certainly known Gentlemen, yet Men well reported for Honeſty, and meet to be relieved; but with an Intent that none hereafter be admitted, unleſs a Gentleman born, agreeable to the firſt Order.

The annual Allowance of each, upon this new Eſtabliſhment, is 18 *l.* 5 *s.* to be paid by the Dean of *Windſor*, (but their Governour has 3 *l.* 6 *s.* and 8 *d.* more) beſides their Gown and Mantle mentioned in their Statutes. King *James* I. doubled this Penſion, and made it payable out of the Exchequer quarterly.

To theſe Thirteen Alms-Knights, *temp. Car.* I. Five more were added, Two of the Foundation of Sir *Peter la Maire*, Knight, and Three of Sir *Francis Crane*, Knight, Chancellor of the Garter; for Sir *Peter*, by his laſt Will, dated *Jan.* 8. 1631. bequeath'd 1500 *l.* to charitable Uſes, to be diſpos'd as Sir *Francis* (who had marry'd his Siſter) ſhould think fit, within Four Years after his Death; whereupon Sir *Francis*, determining to erect certain Houſes in *Windſor*-Caſtle, for the dwelling of Five Alms-Knights, deſign'd the ſaid 1500 *l.* towards that Uſe, and what was deficient made up at his own Coſt, charging his Brother Executor, Sir *Richard Crane*, by his Will, dated *Aug.* 27. 1635. to ſee the Pile which he

he had begun, finiſh'd. Sir *Francis* alſo bequeath'd 200 *l.* *per Annum* to be ſettled in Lands, by his Executors, for the perpetual Maintenance of Five Alms-Knights, after the rate of 40 *l.* *per Annum* to every one of them; but his Executor growing ſlack in the Performance, the Work being rather expos'd to Ruin, than forwarded by him; upon Complaints made to the Sovereign and Knights-Companions in Chapter, Orders were iſſu'd out to quicken him, and a peremptory Letter, dated *Mar.* 7. 1639. to go on with the Work faithfully; which Commands he evading, and bad Times coming on, the Building was totally neglected. Sir *Richard Crane* afterwards dying, by his Will, dated *Sept.* 20. 1645. he appointed that his Mannor of *Carbrooke* in *Norfolk*, ſhould ſtand bound for ever for Payment of the ſaid 200 *l.* *per Annum*; whereupon, by Inquiſition taken at *Windſor*, *Mar.* 4. 1652. (by Virtue of a Commiſſion upon the Statute *Anno* 43 *Eliz.* for charitable Uſes) the Mannors of *Woodriſing* and *Weſfield*, &c. in *Norfolk*, were found liable to ſatisfie for building and finiſhing the ſaid Five Houſes, and payment of the 200 *l.* yearly; and further, that the Arrears thereof, from Sir *Francis Crane*'s Death, came at that time to 3200 *l.* ſome Conteſt enſu'd in *Chancery*; nevertheleſs the 200 *l.* *per Annum* was, *July* 19. 1655. decreed to be paid out of all the Lands which were Sir *Richard*'s, and the building of the Houſes out of his perſonal Eſtate. At Two Years Expiration aroſe that fair Pile of Building, between the Chancellor's and Garter's Towers, againſt the Weſt Wall, in the lower Ward of the Caſtle, which was begun again and finiſh'd the next Year; the Expences amounting to 1700 *l.* But for a final End of this Suit, it was decreed, *Jan.* 27. 1659. the Mannor of *Carbrooke* ſhould ſtand charg'd with 200 *l.* *per Annum*, payable half-yearly at *Michaelmas* and *Lady-day*, or within Thirty Days after, for the Maintenance of Five Alms-Knights, together with 30 *l.* yearly for Repairs, payable alſo then; which annual Sum of 230 *l.* *Anno* 12 *Car.* II. in a Chapter held at *Whitehall*, *Jan.* 14. the King decreed the Chancellor of the Order, for the Time being, ſhould receive and diſpoſe thereof thus: 200 *l.* *per Annum* among the Five new Alms-Knights quarterly, at

the Four uſual Feaſts of the Year, and to employ the reſidue upon Repair of the new Buildings erected for their Lodgings; which Powers were inſerted in the Patent for his Office, bearing date the 20th of the ſame Month. And it was moreover decreed, that theſe Five Knights ſhould be ſubject to the ſame Rules and Government of the Thirteen of Queen *Elizabeth*'s Foundation, and made equal Partakers of the ſame Privileges, and wear the like Habits.

King *Charles* I. taking into Conſideration the Donation of Sir *Francis Crane*, which made the Alms-Knights Eighteen, (tho' they were not yet ſettled) intended to make up Twenty Six, as they were at the Inſtitution of the Order; to compleat which Deſign, a Chapter was held at *Whitehall*, *Apr.* 18. 1637. for the Knights-Companions to conſider the beſt Way how the ſame might be effected, and report their Opinions; but nothing was done thereupon, and this Affair waits a more propitious Opportunity.

§ 6. The other Miniſters of the College and Chapel of St. *George*, call'd *Miniſters* in the Foundation Patent, are the ſuperior Officers, *viz.* The Chantor, Steward and Treaſurer.

The Chantor is elected from among the Canons, whoſe Office is chiefly to govern thoſe that ſing in the Choir, and ſuch as are employ'd about Divine Service. Before the Reformation he appointed who ſhould begin the Antiphones, celebrate Maſſes, and read the Leſſons, Epiſtles and Goſpels. To his Care was committed all the Books, Croſſes, Chalices, Veſtments, and all the Sacred Ornaments of the Chapel. He receives the Offerings there made, and Accounts for them; for all which Services an annual Penſion of 5 *l.* is allow'd him.

The Steward and Treaſurer are annually choſen on the Morrow after *Michaelmas-day* from out of the Canons Reſident. To the Steward's Office appertains the Government of all the Revenues of the College, the Rents and Profits whereof he is to pay the Treaſurer. In his Cuſtody are repos'd all the Ornaments, Jewels, and other Treaſure of the Chapel, not committed to the Chantor,

Chantor, under the Obligation of rendring an Account; and his yearly Penſion is 5 *l.*

The Treaſurer is to diſtribute to the Cuſtos, Canons, Vicars, *&c.* their Penſions and Allowances, which if he fail Eight Days after their prefix'd Times of Payment, he is debar'd of his own *quotidians*, as Canon Reſident, until ſuch Arrears be diſcharg'd; as likewiſe the Steward, if he be found delinquent. His Penſion is alſo 5 *l. per Annum.* There is one Treaſurer to receive the Rents of the old Lands, and another choſen from the Canons to receive the new, who have been allow'd the like annual Penſions. The former is term'd *Seneſchallus veteris*, the latter *Seneſchallus novæ Dotationis.*

Moreover, there is a Steward of the Courts, and Clerk of the Lands, which is an Officer under both the before-mention'd Stewards. He keeps the Courts by himſelf or Deputy, and is a Barreſter at Law, and the ſtanding Council for the College. His yearly Penſion is 20 Nobles. But the Council *in Spiritualibus* is uſually a Graduate in the Law.

The Chapter-Clerk enters and regiſters all Acts of the Chapter-Houſe; he draws and engroſſes all Indentures, Patents, Grants, Leaſes, *&c.* which paſs the common Seal of the Dean and Canons. His Penſion is 3 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d. per Annum.* The Under Stewardſhip and Chapter Clerkſhip heretofore were enjoy'd by one Perſon, but of late they are divided, and now he muſt be a Barreſter at Law.

Of the Virgers Inſtitution the Statutes of the College make mention, that in Proceſſion and other Solemnities, they were to go before the Dean and Canons, bearing their Rods, for which Service they were to have annually a Robe, and 6 *d. per Diem.* And beſides theſe, there are Two Sextons, Two Bell-ringers, a Clock-keeper, and a Porter who attends the ſhutting and opening of the Gates.

§ 7. For the Endowment of the College we ſhall only treat upon thoſe Lands given to the Maintenance of this Foundation by the Founder himſelf, or by his Succeſſors,

Succeſſors, or by Sovereigns of *The Order of the Garter*, ſuch as have been Knights-Companions.

King *Edw.* III. by his Letters Patent of the Foundation [22 *Edw.* III.] aforeſaid, gave them [the Cuſtos, Canons, Alms-Knights and Miniſters] the Advowſons of the Churches of *Wyardesbury* [*Rasbury*] in *Lincoln*, *South-Tanton* in *Exeter*, and *Uttoxater* in *Coventry* and *Litchfield* Dioceſs, in Frank Almoigne, free from all Secular Exactions; which Licenſe, to appropriate the ſame to the College, notwithſtanding the Statute of *Mortmain*, he appointed as much out of his Treaſure for their Support, as amounted to an immoveable Eſtate of 1000 *l. per Annum*; and leſt there might be any Defect in the Knights Title to *Uttoxater* and *South-Tanton*, *Henry* Earl of *Lancaſter*, 23 *Edw.* III. and *Thomas Beauchamp* Earl of *Warwick*, that Year had ſpecial Licenſes granted them in Right of Patronage to the ſaid Two Advowſons, and they to receive the ſame. Another ſuch Licenſe, 28th of *January*, 24 *Edw.* III. was given to *William de Bohun* Earl of *Northampton*, for aſſigning to the Cuſtos and Chaplains the Advowſon of *Dodyngton* in *Com. Oxon*, which he held of the King *in Capite*. The 28th of *January* following, this Royal Founder conferr'd on them (by the Name of Cuſtos and Chaplains of his free Chapel at *Windſor*) one Meſſuage, Seventeen Acres of Land, one of Paſture, and 3 *s.* Rent, in *Wyrardesbury* in *Com. Bucks*, which had been convey'd to him by *Richard de Glouceſter*, Heir to *Iſabel de Ditton*; and the 22d of *May* enſuing granted unto them the Advowſon of *Dachet* near *Windſor*.

Anno 25 *Edw.* III. the King gave them the Advowſons of the Churches of *Eure* in *Com. Bucks*, of *Riſton* in *Com. Norfolk*, and of *Whaddon* and *Caxton* in *Com. Cantab.* and in *May* that Year the Advowſon of *Simondeſbourne* (ſurrender'd *temp. Edw.* IV. to *Richard* Duke of *Glouceſter*) and of St. *Stephens* of *Saltaſh*. The firſt of theſe Queen *Philippa* purchas'd of Sir *John Darcy*, and the other of *Edward* the Black Prince; and gave them both, firſt to the King, that by his Grant afterwards to the College its Title might be more corroborated. The ſame Year, *October* 26. the King beſtow'd on them 100 Marks *per Annum*, out of the Farm of the Town

of

of *Northampton*, to be paid by the Bailiff of the Town at *Eaſter* and *Michaelmas* by equal Allotments: And it was at the Founder's Inſtance (therefore worthy to be inſerted) that the Town of *Yarmouth*, 26 *Edw.* III. under their Common Seal, granted them a Laſt of Red Herrings yearly, well dry'd and cleans'd, to take the Corporation into their Prayers; tho' ſome ſay it was a Penance enjoyn'd them for murdering a Magiſtrate.

In the 26 *Edw.* III. the Founder granted them and their Succeſſors the Mannor of *Eure* near *Weybrigg*, in *Com. Bucks*, the Mannor of *Craſwell* in *Bray* in *Com. Berks*, and a Wear call'd *Braybrook*, ſituated in the *Thames*, with all the Lands in that Pariſh convey'd unto him by Sir *John Philibert*, together with the Knights Fees, Advowſons, *&c.* belonging to thoſe Mannors. He gave to the Cuſtos and College ſoon after the Seiſin thereof, as alſo of a Wood call'd *Temple-Wood* in *Stoke-Pogeys*, convey'd to the King by *John de Molyns:* But deeming all the Lands too ſmall for the End he intended, 28 *Edw.* III. the King granted the Cuſtos and College, by Letters Patent, a Penſion of 100 *l. per Annum* out of the Exchequer; and upon the vacating the ſame, 34 *Edw.* III. he gave them yearly Lands of 101 *l.* 11 *s.* 11 *d.* out of the Poſſeſſions of religious Aliens, which fell into his Hands by Occaſion of the *French* Wars: But leſt theſe Poſſeſſions ſhould be again reſtor'd upon a Treaty of Peace, they were to receive the annual Sum of 101 *l.* 11 *s.* 11 *d.* out of the Exchequer, till they were provided of Lands of the like Value. Upon ſeveral Reſtrictions, he granted them 51 *l.* 9 *s.* 9 *d.* yearly to be receiv'd out of 126 *l.* which the Prior of *Takkele* paid him for the Farm of that Priory, it being then in the King's Hand by reaſon of the War with *France*. And by reaſon the Revenues did not amount to 1000 *l. per Annum*, as he deſign'd at the Foundation, in the 35th Year of his Reign, he granted them ſo much Money yearly out of the Exchequer, as would make up the Deficiency, till Lands or Rents of that Value ſhould be ſettled on them. Laſtly, 39 *Edw.* III. the Founder beſtow'd on them a Piece of Ground in *New Windſor*, (whereon had ſtood an Houſe of *John* of *London*) in lieu of the great Garden South

South of the Caſtle, formerly given them by him; and alſo a Garden oppoſite thereunto on the other ſide of the Way. Beſides theſe Largeſſes of the Founders, there were others made by pious and devout Perſons, ſaid to be incorporated into the firſt Foundation, and made up that Revenue which *William* Biſhop of *Wincheſter* adjudg'd ſufficient for the Support of the College, which we ſhall ſilently paſs over with the bare mention only.

The Mannor of *Dodyngton*-Caſtle; two Paſtures call'd *Frith* and *Aſhcroft*; the Chapel of *Langeley*; the Parſonages of *Eſtriton*, *Langeley-Maries*, *Wantynge*, *Shaldeborne*, *Wedonbeek*, *Glynde* and *Ryſlepe*; the Penſions of the Vicarages of *Wantynge*, *Clyffe*, *Tylthey* and *Gottesford*; and the Portions of *Baſſyngborne* and *Preſtwyke*, in *Haſeley* magna, *Chalgrave*, *Adewelle*, *Aſton*, *Rowhand*, *Sevyndon*, *Kyngeſton* and *Henton*, in *Stoke-Baſſet*, and *Clopecote* in *Gatehampton*; *Whytechyrche*, *Maplederham*, *Retherfeld*, *Eſthenreth Stretham*; of *Thornecroft* in *Letherhed*; of *Totynbeek* in *Wodeſdon*; *Evington*, *Woodmerſhthorne*; of *Fordham*, *Ethrope*, *Newenham*, and in *Tolleſworth*.

In ſucceeding Times other conſiderable Donations were made by the Sovereigns and Knights Companions (omitting others.) Some of which, as they fall in our way, we ſhall ſpeak of.

13 *Rich.* II. that King gave them a Croft in *Northmolton*, with the Advowſon of that Church.

9 *Hen.* V. *John*, Duke of *Bedford*, third Son to King *Hen.* IV. conferr'd on them the Priory of *Okeborne* in *Wilts* (a Cell to *Bec* in *Normandy*) with all its Appurtenances: Which Donation was confirm'd by King *Hen.* V. and afterwards by King *Edw.* IV.

7 *Edw.* IV. that King, who had a ſingular Reſpect for the College, conferr'd on them the Mannor of *Atherſton* in *Com. Warwick*, the Mannors and Advowſons of *Cheſingbury* in *Wilts*, and of *Quarle* in *Hantſhire*; the Church and Priorate of *Uphaven*, and the Deanry or Chapel of St. *Burien* in *Cornwall*, with an Addition of an annual Penſion, which the Abbot of *Sautrie* diſcharg'd for the Church of *Fulburne*, to the Abbey *de bona Requie*, and another yearly Income of 20 *l.* paid by the Abbot of *Rousford* for the Mediety of the Church of *Rotheram*.

13 *Edw.*

13 *Edw.* IV. he consign'd to them the Mannor or Priorate of *Munclane*, in *Com. Hereford.*

14 *Edw.* IV. he gave unto them the Custody, Patronage, and free Disposition of the Hospital or Free Chapel of St. *Anthony*, *London*, (a Preceptory to St. *Anthony* of *Vienna*, with all the Liberties, Privileges, Lands, *&c.*) upon the first Vacancy. The same Year he endow'd them with the Priorate of *Brimsfield* in *Com. Glouceſt.* the Mannor of *Blakenham* in *Suffolk*; the Priorate of St. *Elene* in the *Isle of Wight*; the Priorate or Mannor of *Charleton* in *Wilts*; and all the Lands, *&c.* in *Northmundon*, *Compton* and *Weleigh* in *Sussex* and *Southampton*; the Mannor of *Ponyngton* and *Wedon* in *Dorset*, together with an annual Pension of 12 Marks, payable by the Priory of *Monte acuto*, with all the Lands, Tenements, Rents, Advowsons, *&c.* annex'd to the said Priorates and Mannors. The same Year he bestow'd on them the Mannor of *Membury* in *Com. Dorset*; the Lordships of *Preston* and *Monkesilver* in *Com. Somerset*; the Advowsons of *Puryton* and *Wollavington* in that County, together with the Knights Fees, Advowsons, Profits, Rights, *&c.*

18 *Edw.* IV. his Feoffees, the Queen, the Arch-Bishop of *York*, and others seised to the Use of the King, demis'd to them the Mannor of *Wykecombe*, call'd *Bassetsbury*, the Fee-Farm of the Town of *Great Wykecombe*, the Mannor of *Crendon* in *Com. Bucks*, and the Mannors of *Haseley* and *Pyrton* in *Com. Oxon:* And that Year the King gave unto them the Advowson of the Church of *Chesshunt*, being of his own Patronage, provided the Vicarige was sufficiently endow'd, and a compleat Sum of Money annually distributed among the poor Parishioners, according to the Diocesan's Ordinance. To these he united the Custody or Deanry of the Free Chapel of *Wolverhampton* in *Com. Staff.* to the Custos or Dean of this College, and his Successors for ever; which Church, *cum membris*, is exempt from not only the Jurisdiction, *&c.* of the Bishop of *Litchfield* and *Coventry*, but by a Papal Bull from all Legates and Delegates; nor is it subject to any terrene Power, but the King of *England* alone, and under it to the perpetual Visitation of the Keepers of the Great Seal, *pro tempore.*

20 *Edw.* IV. he reſign'd to them the Advowſon or Patronage of the Prebend of *Ewern* in *Com. Dorſet*, with all its Rights and Privileges: And laſtly, in the 21ſt Year of his Reign, he granted them Two Parts of the Mannors of *Old Swynford* and *Gannow*, in *Com. Wygorn.* and the Reverſion of the Third Part of them, with the Advowſon of the Church of *Old Swynford*; nor was he thus munificent alone, but excited and ſpurr'd on others to the like Example, licenſing, in the firſt Year of his Reign, all his Subjects to confer what they pleas'd to the Dean and Canons, within the Value of 300 Marks *per Annum*, as well ſuch as held of him *in Capite* or otherwiſe, notwithſtanding the Statute of *Mortmain*; and afterwards increas'd this Licenſe to Lands of 500 *l. per Annum* Value, (which King *Hen.* VIII. extended to 1000 *l.*) Hereupon, *Anno* 20 *Edw.* IV. *John*, Duke of *Suffolk*, and *Elizabeth* his Wife, the King's Siſter, were permitted to aſſign to them the Mannor or Lordſhip of *Grovebury*, otherwiſe call'd *Leighton Buſard*, in *Com. Bedford*, the Church of *Tintagell* in *Cornwall*, as alſo Nineteen Meſſuages, Seven Tofts, One Hundred and Forty Acres of Land, Fourteen of Meadow, One Hundred and Forty of Paſture, One Hundred of Wood, and Four Shillings Rent in *Newford* and *Blanford*, in *Com. Dorſet*, and Seventy Meſſuages, Twelve Tofts, Five Hundred Acres of Land, One Hundred of Meadow, Two Hundred of Paſture, Forty of Wood, and Twenty Shillings Rent, in *Stokeley*, *Northall*, *Edelesburgh* and *Rodenach*, in *Com. Bucks*, and Twenty Meſſuages, Eight Tofts, Three Hundred Acres of Land, Sixty of Meadow, Two Hundred of Paſture, Forty of Wood, and Twenty Shillings Rent, in *Compton St. John*, in *Com. Suſſex*, and Ten Meſſuages, Nine Tofts, Two Hundred Acres of Land, Twenty of Meadow, One Hundred of Paſture, Ten of Wood, and Twenty Shillings Rent, in *Portſmouth* and *Burghegge*, in *Hampſhire*, and One Meſſuage, Three Tofts, Sixty Acres of Land, Six of Meadow, Forty of Paſture, and Twenty Shillings Rent, in *Stodeham*, in *Com. Hertford*, held of the King *in Capite*, without any Reſtriction whatſoever, for which the Duke and Dutcheſs were to be had in the perpetual Oriſons of the Dean and Canons. The ſame Year

Sir

Sir *Walter Devoreux de Feners*, Knight, together with Sir *John Devoreux* and others his Feofees, made over to them the Mannor, Church, and perpetual Advowſons of *Sutton Courtney* in *Com. Berks.*

All the before-mentioned Endowments are called the Lands of the old Dotation, to diſtinguiſh them from thoſe confirmed on the College by King *Edw.* VI. which are term'd the Lands of the new Dotation; of which hereafter. But ſeveral of them given by King *Edw.* IV. the College never poſſeſſed, *viz. Atherſton*, *Quarle*, *Upbaven*, *St. Burien*, *Fulburne* Penſion, *Brimfield*, *St. Elen*, *Charleton*, *Blakenham*, *Ponyngton*, *Wedon*, *Old Swynford*, and *Gannow*, and of ſome others they were ſeized but a ſhort time, *viz. Cheſingbury*, the Lands in *Newford*, *Blandford*, and *Portſmouth*. Beſides theſe, the College was diſpoſſeſs'd of *Gottesford*, *temp. Hen.* VI. of *Cheſhunt*, *temp. Hen.* VII. *temp. Hen.* VIII. or a little before of *Wodemerſhthorn*, *Tylthey*, *Retherfeld*, *Levyngdon*, *Stoke-Baſſet*, *Stretham*, *Totingbeek*, *Fordham*, *Elthorp*, *Newenham*, and *Tolleſworth*; afterwards they ſurrendred into the Hands of King *Hen.* VIII. *Eure*, *Clyff*, *Aſhton*, *Rowhand*, *Kingſton*, *Eſthenreth*, *Northmundon*, *Compton*, *Weleg*, *Compton St. John*, and *Shobingdon* Portion; and upon the *Reformation* the College loſt at leaſt 1000 Marks *per Annum*, in the Profit made by St. *Anthony*'s Piggs, which the Appropriation of the Hoſpital of St. *Anthony*'s *London* brought to it, and no leſs then 500 *per Annum*, the Offerings of Sir *John Shorne*'s Shrine at *Northmarſton* in *Com. Bucks*, a Man of great Piety and Veneration with the People, and ſometime Rector there. The Advowſon of this Church was appropriated to the Dean and Canons, by the Convent of *Dunſtaple*, *temp. Edw.* IV. in exchange for *Wedenbeck* in *Com. Bedford.*

The Dean and Canons having convey'd unto K. *H.* VIII. the Mannor and Rectory of *Ivor* in *Bucks*, the Mannor of *Dammery-Court* in *Dorſet*, and other Lands, Rents, Portions, and Penſions in the Counties of *Somerſet*, *Hants*, *Middleſex*, *Oxford*, and *Suſſex*, to the yearly Value of 160 *l.* 2 *s.* 4. *d.* for which they had no Recompence in his Life, that King, by his laſt Will, ordered them an Equivalent upon the Commutation and Agreement of an Exchange; which Will, King *Edw.* VI. his Son

and

and Succeſſor performed, as well for the Aſſurance of Lands, to the yearly Value of 600 *l.* to the Dean and Canons for ever, to the Uſes in the Will, as for the Aſſurance of other Lands, of the annual Value of the ſaid 160 *l.* 2 *s.* and 4 *d.* wherefore by Letters Patent, dated the 7th of *October*, in the Firſt Year of his Reign, he granted them the Rectories of *Bradnynche*, *Northam*, *Iplepen*, *Ilſington*, and *Southmolton* in *Com. Devon*, the Tithe of Corn of *Otery*, in that County, as alſo *Bloſſoms-Inn* in St. *Laurence-lane*, *London*, the Tithes of Grain, *&c.* of the Rectory of *Ambrosbury*, in *Wilts*, and all the Tithes of *Bedwyn*, *Stoke*, *Wilton*, *Harden*, *Harden-Tunrige*, *Knoll*, *Pathall*, *Chisbury*, *Eaſt-Grafton*, *Weſt-Grafton*, *Grafton-Martin*, and *Wexcomb*, the Prebend of *Alcannyngs* and *Urchefounte*, the Rectories of *Urchefounte*, *Stapleford*, *Tytcombe*, and *Froxfeild*, all in *Com. Wilts*, and all the annual Penſion of 8 *l.* iſſuing out of the Manner of *Icombe* in *Com. Glouceſter*, the Rectory and Vicarige of *Ikelington* in *Cambridgeſhire*, the Rectory of *Eaſt-Beckworth* in *Surrey*, the Reverſion of the Portion of Tithes of *Trequite* in *Cornwall*, and the Rent of 13 *s.* 4 *d.* reſerved upon the ſame, the Rectory and Church of *Plympton*, and the Chapels of *Plymſtoke*, *Wembury*, *Shagh*, *Sandford-Spone*, *Plympton*, St. *Maurice* and *Brixton*, in *Com. Devon*, the Rectory of *Iſleworth* and *Farickenham* in *Com. Middleſex*, and *Shiplake* in *Com. Oxon*, the Reverſion of the Rectory of *Aberguille*, and of the Chapels of *Llanlawet* [*Llanbadock*] and *Llanpenyſaunt*, with the Rent of 30 reſerved thereon, the Reverſions of the Rectory of *Talgarth*, with the reſerved Rent of 11 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.* the Reverſion of the Rectory of *Mara* in *Com. Brecknock*, and 6 *l.* Rent, and that of St. *Germains* in *Cornwall*, with 61 *l.* 13 *s.* and 4 *d.* Rent, to have and to hold, *&c.* for ever, except the Tithes of *Woolpat* and *Fitzwaren* in *Wilts*, the Vicarige-Houſe of *Ikelington*, Marriage-Money, Dirge-Money, and Maſs-Money, and the whole Profit of the Bedrolls of *Ikelington*; nevertheleſs to pay the Crown in the Court of *Augmentation*, for the Rectories of *Aberguille*, *Talgarth* and *Mara*, the Chapels *Llanbadock* and *Llanpenyſaunt* 4 *l.* 2 *d.* 8 *d.* in the Name of Tenths, and for all Rents, Services, *&c.* of the other Rectories, *&c.* 48 *l.* 7 *s.* 4 *d.* annually at *Michaelmas*. Moreover, within all

all these Premises, the King granted them Court Leets, or Views of Frankpledge, and to levy Fines, Amerciaments, Free Warrens, Waifs, and Felons Goods, and all other Profits, *&c.* whatsoever, and the said Rectories, Tithes, Pensions, Rents, and all other Gifts and Grants in the Possession of the Dean and Chapter, were confirmed to them by Act of Parliament, 2 *Jac.* I.

The ancient Rate of these New Lands in the King's Books was 661 *l.* 6 *s.* and 8 *d.* *per Annum*; but according to the improved Rents, as they were then turned over to the College, 812 *l.* 12. 9 *d.* out of which 160 *l.* 2 *s.* 4 *d.* was yearly allowed them in Requital of their Lands passed to King *Hen.* VIII. and 600 *l.* *per Annum*, for accomplishment of his Will; but the remaining Sum, *viz.* 52 *l.* 10 *s.* 5 *d.* was reserved in lieu of Tenths, to be paid into the Court of *Augmentation*; nevertheless, this last reserved Sum was not assented unto by the Dean and Canons to be so paid, because the Charges issuing out of the Lands were larger than were expressed in the Rental. And we find that, shortly after, the Rents of St. *Germains*, *Northam*, *Ilsington*, &c. part of the New Lands, were received and accounted for, according to the old Rate in the King's Books, to wit, 162 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* *per Annum*, in Recompence for the Lands conveyed to King *Hen.* VIII. and out of which they paid a yearly Surplusage of 2 *l.* 2 *s.* 1 *d.* This Sum, together with the Rents of the rest of the New Lands, being upon the said Improvement accounted to be 597 *l.* 17 *s.* 11 *d.* made in all 600 *l.* *per Annum*; and this was laid out by the Dean and Canons for some time towards erecting the Alms-Knights Apartments.

Thus stood the Lands accounted for till the Settlement made by Queen *Elizabeth*, who in the First Year of her Reign appointed the Dean and Canons to convert the Rents of these New Lands to such Uses and Intents as she had set down in a Book signed with her Sign manual, and annexed to an Indenture made between her and the Dean and Canons; by which Indenture they were obliged to apply the Rents and Profits of these Lands, as was prescribed in the Book, and to observe the Ordinances therein, and upon Default, to a-

bide ſuch Orders as the Crown, or any Knight-Companion, deputed by the Sovereign, ſhall ſet forth.

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
In this Book the Total of the Revenue reckon'd at the ancient Value	661	06	08
The Annual Charge and Diſburſements therein ſet down	430	19	06
And ſo Remains	230	07	02

Which Remainder has been and is aſſigned for Payment of Tenths to the Crown, Vicars, Curates, Annual Stipends, Officers Fees, Reparation of the Premiſſes, and for the Relief of the Dean and Canons, in Maintenance and Defence of the ſaid Lands.

And to the End the Queen might know how the Revenue was diſpoſed of, ſhe gave charge that her Lieutenant and the Knights-Companions ſhould annually (at the Feaſt of the Order held at *Windſor*) ſtate the Accompt, and ſee how the Income was expended, and that her Lieutenant ſhould yearly be put in mind of it by one of the Officers of the Order. This Ordinance was renewed, 21 *Jac.* I. and the Chancellor of the Order was appointed to be the Remembrancer, and in Obedience thereunto, the Account of theſe new Lands (which begins at *Lady-Day*, as that of the old Lands doth at *Michaelmas*) was afterwards exhibited in Chapter, and in particular that Account, 9 *Car* I. which was ſubmitted to the Sovereign and Knights Companion's-Conſideration, who referred the Inſpection thereof to the Knights-Commiſſaries, who were to conſult over the Affairs of the Order.

§. 8. The Privileges of the Chapel and College are Eccleſiaſtical and Temporal: As to the firſt, Pope *Clement* VI. exempted the Chapel, College, Canons, Prieſts, Clerks, Alms-Knights and Officers, from all ordinary Juriſdiction of Archbiſhops, Biſhops, Archdeacons, and all Judges and Officers, and received them within the Protection of the Papal-See; and granted a farther Privilege, That the Cuſtos ſhould have Eccleſiaſtical Juriſdiction over the Canons, Prieſts, *&c.* as alſo the Cure of their Souls, notwithſtanding any Papal Conſti-

tution

tution, Provincial, or Synodical, yet allowing that the Cuſtos ſhould receive that Cure from the Dioceſan of the Place. In Conſideration of this Exemption, the Cuſtos was to pay annually, on St. *George*'s Day, a Mark in Silver, to the Pope's Chamber. Two Years preceding, the Chapel was called the King's Free Chapel, which Title it ſtill enjoys; for it owes Subjection to none but the Sovereign of *England*, the Supream of the Church, as heretofore it ſtood divided between the King and See of *Rome*. The Privilege of Exemption included in the Confirmation of Liberties, made by the Founder in his Charter, dated *Anno Regni ſui* 47. and all other Emoluments granted by him, are confirmed by Act of Parliament, 8 *Hen.* VI. As the College has its ſole Dependance on the Crown, it is viſitable only by the Lord-Chancellor, whoſe Viſitations and Power are reſerved to him by the Statutes of the College, and himſelf called in the King's Commiſſion for Viſitation, 2 *Rich.* II. Governor of the ſaid Chapel, as well in Spirituals as Temporals, and, under the King, immediate Cuſtos. And ſo jealous were the Dean and Canons, leſt the Power of the ſaid Exemption ſhould be infringed, that when *Sixtus* IV. had granted the Biſhop of *Saliſbury*, and themſelves, to make new and interpret the ancient Statutes, they ſoon obtained a Revocation of that Authority, leſt the ſaid Biſhop (in whoſe Dioceſs the College is ſituate) being ſo unpowered, might by Degrees bring them under his Juriſdiction, in prejudice to their Exemption. And, *A. D.* 1485. to prevent ſuch deſign, the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, &c. were commiſſion'd to ſee the Bull revoked, and *Salisbury* enjoyned not to intermeddle further in the College Affairs. Moreover other Biſhops, and the Chancellor of *England*, were to renew, alter, or new make ſuch Statutes as might accrue to the Advantage of the College.

If the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury* be preſent in the Chapel, he ſits below the Dean, nor can he conſecrate there, without his Licenſe. And this is very remarkable, that at the ratifying the Peace between King *Charles* I. and *Lewis* XIII. *A. D.* 1629. in the Chapel at *Windſor*, Dr *Wren*, then Dean of the College, gave the

Oath to the *French* Ambaſſador, and not the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, tho' he was then preſent.

The Dean and Chapter are to weigh well and debate at their yearly Chapters all things fit to be diſpatched in reference to the College Affairs, and whatſoever Determination they come to, not repugnant to their Statutes, all Perſons are firmly obliged to obſerve.

The Deans have no Inſtitution from any Biſhop, but his Inſtitution, Inveſtiture, and Inſtallation into the Cuſtos-ſhip, Canonſhip, and Prebendſhip, is conferred from ſuch of the Canons Reſident, to whom the King (who collates) doth recommend him. Other Marks of Exemption appear in the conſtant proving of Wills before him, or in his Abſence before his Lieutenant. In uſing the Power of Excommunication within their Juriſdiction (the Precincts of the College) granting a Diſpenſation for eating Fleſh in *Lent*, a farther Mark of their Privilege appears, that the Ordination for the Chantry Prieſts were confirmed by the Dean and Chapter, and not the Biſhop of the Dioceſs, as were the Statutes of the new Commons. The Dean is exempt from paying all Synodals, or Procurations, nor can any of the King's Chaplains preach in the Chapel of St. *George*, unleſs he be a Canon there, or have Licenſe from the King, or from the Dean and Canons. They ſend no Delegates to the Synod, and when the Point was debated, 1640. it was carried in the Negative, as being againſt their Liberties, and might intitle them to the Payment of Subſidies; nor are they intitled to any Share in the Government of the Church, more than the Colleges in the Univerſities, where there are many nominal Deans. In ſhort, when by the Act of *Uniformity*, 14 *Car.* II. every Clergyman was bound to ſubſcribe before the Archbiſhop or his Ordinary, the Canons ſubſcribed before the Dean; and tho' ſome of them ſubſcribed before the Biſhop, yet was it with a Salvo, ſaving the Rights and Privileges of this Free Chapel.

Their Temporal Immunities and Privileges are theſe, as granted them by Charter, *6 Mar.* 27 *Edw.* III. and confirmed by ſeveral of his Succeſſors.

The Cuſtos and Canons were free from paying Aid upon making the King's eldeſt Son a Knight, and marrying

ing his eldeſt Daughter, and exempt of all Aids to the King's Contributions and Tallages.

Whensoever the Clergy ſhould give a Tenth, or other Impoſition, out of their Spiritualties, or the Commons give a Tenth, Fifteenth, or other, out of their Temporalties, Subſidy, or the King tax his own Demean, or the Pope impoſe any Money to be raiſed upon the Clergy, to give it the King, this College and their Poſſeſſions were to ſtand freed thereof.

They were diſcharged from any Contributions of arraying Soldiers, and from ſending them to guard the Sea-Coaſts, and from every Fine and Compoſition of the like Nature. Their Houſes within the Caſtle of *Windſor*, as elſewhere, are quit from any Livery of the King's and Queen's Stewards, Marſhals, Purveyors, Officers, and Servants, and from the like Officers of the Peers or Nobles, and the ſaid Officers were not to intermeddle there, without Leave of the Cuſtos and Canons.

No Duke, *&c.* or Nobleman, nor any Stewards, Marſhals, Eſcheators, Sheriffs, Coroners, Bailiffs, or Officers, nor other Perſon of what Condition ſoever, upon any Pretence, were not to lodge or remain in their Houſes without their Conſent.

The Cuſtos, Canons, and their Tenants, were not to pay any Toll, Paviage, Piccage, Barbicanage, Terrage, Pontage, Murage, Paſſage, Payage, Leſtage, Stallage, Tallage, Carriage, Peſage, and from Scot and Geld, Hidage, Scutage, working about Caſtles, Parks, Bridges, Walls for the King's Houſes; and from Suits to the County, or Hundred Courts, and Wapentakes, or Court Leets, Murder, and common Amerciaments, before either King, Juſtices of the Bench, or Itinerant, and from every like Cuſtom had an Immunity.

Within their Lands, Fees, and Precincts, the Chattels of all Felons and Fugitives were ſeized to their own Uſe. All Fines for Treſpaſſes, and all other Contempts and Miſdemeanors, *Fines pro licentia concordandi*, and for all other Cauſes, Amerciaments, Redemptions, Iſſues, and Forfeitures whatſoever, *Annum Diem Vaſtum & Streppum*, and all Things which might belong to the

King and his Heirs, and all Wrecks, Waifs, and Strays, were granted them.

No Purveyance of Corn, Hay, Horſes, Carts, Carriages, Victuals, or any Goods, Chattels, or any thing whatſoever, ſhould be carried off by any of the King's Officers, upon their or their Tenants Land.

They were to be free from paying any Penſion, Corrody, or other Suſtentation to be granted to the Crown.

They were to have free Warren in all their Demain Lands whereſoever, and that altho' they lay within the Bounds of the King's Foreſt.

That they ſhould enjoy for their Conveniency a weekly Market on *Wedneſday*, at their Mannor of *Ever* in *Bucks*, and Two Fairs to laſt Eight Days, one on the Eve and Feaſt of St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*, and Two Days after the other, upon the Eve and Feaſt of St. *Peter ad Vincula*, and Two Days following.

That they ſhould, in all their Lands have Socage and Sackage, Infangthef, Utfangthef, and View of Frankpledge, with Thewe, Pillory, and Tumbrel for puniſhing Malefactors, and Power to erect Gallows upon their own Soil for executing thoſe apprehended in their Juriſdiction.

They were to be exempt of all Suits and Pleas of the Foreſt, and of all Charges or Fees which the Officers of the Foreſt might demand, and from the Expeditation of their Dogs and Suits of Court there; as likewiſe all from Gelds, *Dane* Gelds, Knights Fees, Payments for Murder and Robbery, Building or Repairing of Bridges, Caſtles, Parks, Pools, Walls, Sea Banks, Cauſeways, and Incloſures; and of all Aſſizes, Summonſes, Sheriffs Aids, their Bailiffs, or Officers, bearing of Treaſure, and all other Aids whatever; as alſo from the common Aſſeſſments and Amerciaments of the County, and Hundred, and all Actions relating to them; they were diſcharged from the Payment of Ward-penny, Averpenny, Tithing-penny, and Hundred-penny, and quit from Grithbreck, Foreſtal, Homeſoken, Blodwite, Wardwite, Hangwite, Fightwite, Leyrwite, Laſtage, Pannage, Aſſurt, and Waſte of the Foreſt; ſo that ſuch Waſte be not committed in the Foreſts, Parks, and

Woods

Woods belonging to the Crown, and then reaſonable Satisfaction, without Impriſonment, ſhould be accepted.

All Writs and Attachments were returnable to them, as well relating to the Pleas of the Crown as other, thro' all their Lands and Fees, and no Sheriff, Bailiff, or Officer, ſhould execute any ſuch there, unleſs in Default of the Cuſtos and Canons, and they to have and hold Leets, and Lawdays, and Cognizance of all Pleas betwixt their Tenants, as well of Treſpaſſes and Contracts, as others. And laſtly, They were to have and hold Wards, Reliefs, Eſcheats, Forfeitures, and other Profits, Iſſues, and Emoluments whatſoever, within their own Fees, from all their Tenants, which might appertain to the Crown, as if the Tenants did hold of the Crown or others *in Capite*.

CAP. V.

We come now to treat of the moſt Noble and Illuſtrious *Order of the Garter*; which, if we conſider either its Antiquity, or the Nobleneſs of the Perſonages, that have been enroll'd, it excels and outvies all other Inſtitutions of Honour in the whole World. It owes its Original, as is confeſſed on all Hands, to *Edward* III. King of *England* and *France*; yet as to the Occaſion, there are ſeveral Opinions which we ſhall rectifie. The vulgar and more general is, that the Garter of *Joan*, Counteſs of *Salisbury*, dropping caſually off as ſhe danced in a ſolemn Ball, King *Edward* ſtooping took it up from the Ground, whereupon ſome of his Nobles ſmiling, as at an amorous Action, and he obſerving their ſportive Humour, turned it off with a Reply in *French*, *Honi ſoit qui mal y penſe*; but withal added, in diſdain of their Laughter, *That ſhortly they ſhould ſee that Garter advanced to ſo high an Honour and Renown as to account themſelves happy to wear it.*

But upon Examination of this Tradition, let others judge what Credit it bears to eſtabliſh its Belief; for Sir *John Froiſſart*, the only Writer of the Age that treats

of this Inſtitution, aſſigns no ſuch Original, nor for 200 Years after is there any thing to the Purpoſe in our other Hiſtorians, till *Polydore Virgil* took occaſion to ſay ſomething of it; but had it been Fact, ſome *French* Hiſtorian or other, would not have neglected to regiſter it at a convenient Time with a Scoff and Ridicule, ſince that Nation was ſo ready to deride King *Henry* V's Deſign of invading them with a Return of Tennis Balls.

In the Original Statutes of this Order, there is not the leaſt Conjecture to countenance the Conceit of ſuch a Feminine Inſtitution, no not ſo much as laying an Obligation on the Knights-Companions to defend the Quarrels of Ladies (as ſome Orders then in being enjoyned;) nor doth the Author of that Tract entitled *Inſtitutio clariſſimi Ordinis Militaris a prænobili ſubligaculo nuncupati*, prefaced to the Black Book of the *Garter*, let fall the manifeſt Paſſage to ground it on.

As to what *Polydore* ſays, he is not ſo confident to aſcertain the Perſon whoſe Garter it was; but cautiouſly declining that, ſays, it was either the Queen's, or the King's Miſtreſs's; and if it were the latter, yet doth he omit her Name and Title, both which (on what Authority we find not) are ſupplied by modern Hiſtorians, who call her *Joan* Counteſs of *Salisbury*, the ſame elſewhere celebrated by the Name of the *Fair Maid* of *Kent*, (whom *Edward* the Black Prince, afterward married) whereas no Hiſtorian ever gave the leaſt Inuendo that King *Edward* III. ever courted her as a Miſtreſs. *Selden* points at her when he calls the Lady, from whom the Garter ſlipp'd, Counteſs of *Kent* and *Salisbury*: But about the Time when this Order was founded ſhe in truth was dignified with neither Honour; for altho' ſhe was Daughter to *Tho.* of *Woodſtock*, Earl of *Kent*, and had been ſometime the reputed Wife of *William Mountague*, ſecond Earl of *Salisbury*, yet then ſhe cou'd not properly be accounted Counteſs of *Salisbury*. She was actually Wife to Sir *Thomas Holland*, (one of the Firſt Founders of the Order.) Nor was ſhe yet (tho' afterwards) Counteſs of *Kent*, becauſe her Brother *John* Earl of *Kent*, at the Inſtitution of this Order, ſurvived, and died not till 26 *Edw.* III.

That

That there was a Counteſs of *Salisbury* with whom King *Edward* III. became greatly enamour'd, *Froiſſart* reports after this manner, *That this King having relieved a Caſtle of that Earl's in the North, wherein his Counteſs had been beſieged by the* Scots (*the Earl himſelf being at that time Priſoner in* France ;) *upon ſight of her extraordinary Beauty he fell in love with her ; but ſhe ſo virtuouſly demeaned her ſelf, during his Abode there, that he declined further Solicitation.* However, ſome time after, the King out of Deſire to ſee her, proclaim'd ſolemn Juſts in *London*, whither this Counteſs and other Ladies being invited, came up. This Caſtle it ſeems was *Wark* upon *Tweed* in *Northumberland*, which King *Edward* had formerly beſtowed on her Husband, for his good Service paſt, when he firſt eſpouſed her, being then but a Knight.

Altho' it ſhould be admitted that this Counteſs of *Salisbury* was the King's Miſtreſs, yet muſt it be remark'd, That ſhe was Wife to *William Mountague*, Kt. created Earl of *Salisbury*, *Anno* 11 *Edw.* III. Mother to *William* the before-mention'd ſecond Earl, that her Chriſtian Name was *Catherine*, not *Alice*, as *Froiſſart*, not *Joan*, as others call her, Daughter to *William* Lord *Granſton*, and that ſhe expired 28 *Edw.* III. But that the whole may appear, what indeed it is, a meer Fable, we ſhall inſert the Judgment of Dr. *Heylin*, who took great Pains in this Particular. *This*, ſays he, *I take to be a vain and idle Romance, derogatory both to the Founder and the Order firſt publiſhed by* Pol. Virgil, *a Stranger to the Affairs of* England, *and by him taken upon no better ground than* Fama Vulgi, *the Tradition of the common People, too trifling a Foundation to ſo great a Building.*

Of the ſame Contexture with the former is another Tradition in *Andrew du Cheſne*, *That the Queen departing from the King to her own Apartments, and he following ſoon after, chanced to eſpy a Blue Garter lying on the Ground (ſuppoſed to have ſlipp'd from her Leg) whilſt ſome of his Attendants careleſly paſſed by it, as diſdaining to ſtoop at ſuch a Trifle ; but he knowing the Owner, commanded it to be given him ; at the Receipt of which he ſaid, You make but ſmall account of this Garter ; but within few Months, I'll cauſe the beſt of you all to reverence it alike.* Some ſuppoſe that the Motto was the Queen's Anſwer, when the King asked her,

her, *What Men would conjecture of her, upon her losing her Garter in such a manner?*

Both Relations are far distant from Fact; nevertheless it has thus far'd with other Orders of Sovereign Foundation, and an amorous, instead of an honourable Account, has been falsly render'd of their Institution; as for Instance, *The Order of the* Annunciade, and that of *The Golden Fleece.*

There is a third Opinion grounded on a Relation made of King *Rich.* I. who, whilst his Forces were employ'd against *Cyprus* and *Acon*, and extremely tir'd and harrass'd with the Siege, he, by the Assistance and Mediation of St. *George* (as imagin'd) was inspir'd with fresh Courage, and bethought himself of a new Device, which was to tie about the Legs of a Number of Knights, a Leathern Thong Garter, for such had he then at hand, whereby they being emulated to future Glory, with Assurance of Reward if they prov'd victorious, they might be excited to behave themselves intrepidly and well, much after the Examples of the old *Romans*, among whom were distributed various Crowns for several Causes, to adorn the Soldiers: But if King *Richard* I. did make use of this Device in the *Holy Land*, as a Signal or Mark of Distinction of a Party, upon some warlike Exploit, yet that he took Occasion to create a distinct Order of Knighthood thereupon, there is not sufficient warrant to believe; (for it is only put down in the Preface of the *Black Book*, but not in any Part of the Annals of the Order; nor can it plead higher Antiquity than the Reign of King *Hen.* VIII. when written.) All the Advantage that can be made of it, is, to heighten the Reputation of that Saint among the *English*, by which Means the Garter came to be dedicated to him, and not that it contributed to its Institution.

§ 2. The true Motive was therefore, neither the Ladies Garter, or King *Richard*'s Leathern Thong, that it owes it Original to: But King *Edward*, being a Person of consummate Vertue, gave himself up to military Affairs; and being engag'd in War for recovering his Right to *France*, made use of the best Martialists

tialiſts of the Age, did thereupon firſt deſign (induc'd by its ancient Fame) the Reſtoration of King *Arthur*'s *Round Table*, to invite hither the Gallant Spirits from abroad, and endear them to himſelf; and adjudging no Place more requiſite than *Windſor*, upon *New-Year's-Day*, *A. D.* 1344. he iſſu'd out Letters of Protection for the ſafe going and return of Foreign Knights, to try their Valour at the Solemn Juſts to be held there on *Monday* after the Feaſt of St. *Hilary* following (which happen'd *Jan.* 19.) And theſe Letters of Safe-Conduct continu'd in force until the *Octaves* of the Purification of our bleſſed Virgin enſuing, being the 18th Year of his Reign. At the Time appointed, he provided a great Supper to begin the Solemnity, and then ordain'd this Feſtival to be annually at *Whitſontide*; and immediately after theſe firſt Exerciſes were over, for a future and better Accommodation, he impreſs'd Workmen and Carriages for erecting a particular Building in the Caſtle, and therein plac'd a Table of Two Hundred Foot Diameter, where the Knights ſhould have their Entertainment of Diet, at his Expence of 100 *l. per* Week; to which Building he gave the Name of *The Round Table*. And as at theſe great Conventions the Days were ſpent in all Kinds of noble Feats of Arms, Juſts and Turnaments, ſo were a great Part of the Nights conſum'd in publick Balls and dancing with the Ladies that attended the Queen thither; and perhaps it was hence conjectur'd, that at ſome of theſe Balls the Queen's Garter, or the Garter of *Catherine*, Counteſs of *Salisbury*, might ſlip off, and the King's taking it up occaſion Smiles in the Byſtanders; and afterwards, when the King had modell'd his intended Order, a Garter offering it ſelf for its chief Enſign, might add to the Conjecture; but that it was the principal Cauſe, is a groundleſs Imagination. And tho' King *Edward* advanc'd the Honour of the Garter, as to denominate the Order, yet was it not to enhance Reputation to, or perpetuate an effeminate Occaſion, but to adorn Martial Proweſs, with Honours, Rewards and Splendor; to increaſe Vertue and Valour in the Hearts of his Nobility, that ſo true Worth, after long and hazardous Exploits, ſhould not

enviouſly

enviouſly be depriv'd of that Glory which it hath intrinſically deſerv'd, and that active and hardy Youths might not want a Spur in their Progreſſion in the Paths of Vertue, which is to be eſteem'd glorious and eternal.

It is further obſervable, that the *French* King, *Philip de Valoys*, in Emulation of this Seminary at *Windſor*, ſet up a *Round Table* at his Court, and invited Knights and valiant Men of Arms out of *Italy* and *Almaine* thither, leſt they ſhould repair to our King *Edward* III. which meeting with Succeſs, prov'd a Countermine to his main Deſign; who perceiving that his Hoſpitality towards ſtrange Knights, upon Account of reviving King *Arthur*'s *Round Table* was too general, nor did ſufficiently ingratiate them to his Perſon, but being unconſtrain'd and at Liberty, did after their Departure take what Side they pleas'd in the enſuing Wars, he at length reſolv'd upon a Projection more particular and ſelect, and ſuch as might oblige thoſe whom he thought fit to make his Aſſociates, in a laſting Bond of Friendſhip and Honour: And having iſſu'd forth his own Garter for the Signal of a Battle, that was crown'd with Succeſs, (which is conceiv'd to be the Battle of *Creſſy*, fought about Three Years after his erecting the *Round Table*;) upon ſo remarkable a Victory, he thence took Occaſion to inſtitute this Order, and gave the Garter Preheminence among the Enſigns of it, whence that ſelect Number, whom he incorporated into a Fraternity, are ſtyl'd *Equites Aureæ Periſcelidis*, and vulgarly *Knights of the Garter*. By this Symbol he deſign'd to bind the Knights and Fellows of it mutually unto one another, and all of them joyntly to himſelf, as Sovereign of the Order; nor was his Expectation fruſtrated, for it did not ſerve only as a vehement Spur and Incentive to Honour and martial Vertue, but alſo as a golden Bond of Unity and internal Society; and for this Conſideration *Cambden* aptly calls it a Badge of Unity and Concord.

By the Symbols of this Garter the Knights are reminded, with all Religiouſneſs, Sincerity, Friendlineſs, Faithfulneſs and Dexterity, not to leave the Purſuit of whatſoever they take in hand, nor to enterprize any Thing

Thing contrary to the Statutes of the Order; neither to fruſtrate the Rights of Peace and Friendſhip, nor vilify the Law of Arms, or proceed in any Thing farther than Faith and Compact, or the Bond of Friendſhip will admit. Moreover, in the binding of the Leg with this enobled Enſign, there was given this Caveat and Exhortation, that the Knights ſhould not puſillanimouſly (by running away from Battle) betray the Valour and Renown which is ingrafted in Conſtancy and Magnanimity. Nay, ſo exactly did the Founder contrive the whole Habit into the Signification of the Garter, that he ordain'd his and the Knights-Companions Robes and Ornaments to be all alike, both for Materials and Faſhion, intimating thereby, That they ought to conſerve brotherly Affection among themſelves. The great Collar of the Order was made of equal Weight, and like Number of Knots and Links, in Token of the like Bond of Faith, Peace and Amity inviolably to be obſerv'd and retain'd amongſt them: In fine, all Things were ſo deſign'd, that every one might plainly perceive how much theſe Things tended to the Maintenance of Amity and Concord.

In further reference to the eſtabliſhing this Order, the aforeſaid King calling together the Earls, Barons, and principal Knights of his Kingdom, *Freely*, ſays *Froiſſart*, *and obligingly declar'd his Mind to them concerning this Affair:* To which *all of them being well inclin'd, entertain'd the Motion with equal Joy and Applauſe, deeming it would prove a very great Advancement to Piety, Nobility and Vertue, and likewiſe an excellent Expedient for the uniting not only his Subjects one with another, but all Foreigners conjunctively with them, in the Bonds of Amity and Peace.* And 'tis very improbable the prudent Founder ſhould ſummon his Nobles to conſult about the Grandeur of an Order, that had taken its Riſe from ſo ſlight an Occaſion as the dropping of a Garter from a Lady's Leg. Now, to draw the Tye of Friendſhip more cloſe, the King cauſed thoſe who were (or ſhould be) of the Order, to be call'd *Fellows*, *Aſſociates*, *Colleagues*, *Brethren*, and *Knights-Companions*, and the Order it ſelf a *Society*, *Fellowſhip*, *College of Knights*, and *Knight-Companionſhip*; and their Habits to be all alike, to repreſent how they ought

ought to be united in all Chances and various Turns of Fortune; Co-partners both in Peace and War, assistant to one another in all serious and dangerous Exploits; and thro' the whole Course of their Lives to shew Fidelity and Friendliness one towards another. There are other Reasons assign'd, much to the same Effect, That the Order was instituted *to fortifie the Confidence of the King, the Kingdom and Martial Vertue*; that is to say, *to strengthen the Faith of the Subjects towards them, and for their greater Security*, and *because the Garter carries with it a Bond or Tye of Fellowship, and is a Symbol of Amity between Princes, being Companions of the same Order.*

In the last Place, if we look upon the Statutes of its Institution, we shall find the Injunctions wholly Military, and so are the Words of Admonition pronounc'd at the putting on the Ensigns of the Order: And the Ground of the Institution (in the Preamble to King *Henry* VIII's *Exemplar*) is said to be *for the Honour of God and Exaltation of the Catholick Faith, joyn'd both with Piety and Charity, in establishing a College of religious Men to pray for the Prosperity of the Sovereign of the Order and the Knights-Companions, and to perform other holy Duties*; as also *ordaining a Maintenance for a Company of Alms-Knights, who have not otherwise wherewith to support themselves*; but not one Word relating to the Engagement on behalf of the feminine Sex.

And whereas King *Edw.* III. had laid Claim by his Title to the Kingdom of *France*, and in Right thereof assum'd its Arms, he from the Colour of them, 'tis said, caus'd the Garter to be made Blue, and the Circumscription Gold: And it may, without straining, be inferr'd from the Motto, *Honi soit qui mal y pense*, that he retorted Shame and Defiance upon him that should dare to think amiss of so just an Enterprize, as he had undertaken for recovering of his lawful Right to that Crown; and that the Magnanimity and Bravery of those Knights, whom he had elected into this Order, was such as would impower and enable them to maintain the Quarrel against all who thought ill of it. Consonant to this is the Conjecture of *Harpsfield*, that this Apophthegm was design'd to put the Knights-Companions

panions in mind, *Not to admit any Thing in their Actions, or among their Thoughts, derogatory to themſelves and their Honour.*

That Age did exceedingly abound with Impreſſes, Motto's and Devices, and particularly King *Edw.* III. was ſo exceſſively given up to them, that his Apparel, Plate, Bed, Houſhold-Furniture, Shields, and even the Harneſs of his Horſes, and the like, were not without them, many of which now to deſcant upon would be a fruitleſs Attempt, ſeeing the Occaſion of the Invention, and the Circumſtances are loſt, that ſhould illuſtrate them; and others, by reaſon of their Brevity, ſeem'd inſignificant, in regard ſomething was deſignedly omitted, and left to be underſtood, which cannot now be rightly ſupply'd, ſo as to arrive at the Mind of the Inventor. Of this Number may be this Motto, *It is as it is*, which was embroider'd upon a Doublet of that King; tho' there are others which ſeem more eaſy to be decypher'd; as that daring Motto wrought upon his Surcoat and Shield provided to be uſed at a Turnament,

Hay, Hay, the Wythe Swan;
By God's Soul I am the Man.

§ 3. The Time when the Order was inſtituted, Hiſtorians differ widely about; *Selden*, *Cowper*, and others, from *Froiſſart* (who wrote *temp. Rich.* II.) would have it in the 18th of King *Edw.* III. But ſince *Froiſſart* errs, in making the Number of Knights-Companions no fewer than Forty, which is a grand Miſtake, Why might not he trip in Point of Time, and confound the Year of its Erection, with that wherein the Founder renew'd the Order of *The Round Table*, *Windſor* being the Place for both. For ſhould we admit, that during ſome Part of the Solemnity held in this King's 18th Year, when the Accident of the Lady's Garter ſlipping off happen'd, what other Inference can be made, but that he had only an Intention to put in Execution ſomewhat afterwards? Not that an Order was actually erected at that Time: Beſides, the Jollity of the Seaſon, the Greatneſs of the Concourſe, and the

the Splendidneſs of the Feſtivity, it was too buſy a Time to ſuffer much Conſultation tending thereunto; or at leaſt to mould and model a Deſign ſo compleat and ſubſtantial, as it appears to have been even at firſt. If we joyn *Fabian*, he is plain, that tho' the King deſign'd the Inſtitution at the End of the Feſtival, (which he places between *Candlemas* and *Lent*, in the 19th, and not 18th Year of that King) *Yet was it not then*, ſaith he, *but afterwards eſtabliſh'd by him.* Nevertheleſs, Mr. *Selden* elſewhere obſerves, it had its Original in the 24th Year of the ſaid King. And our induſtrious *Stow* (with whom *Lily*, *Speed*, and *Segar* agree) tells us, *That the firſt Feaſt of the Order was celebrated* A. D. 1350. which exactly agrees to the 24th of *Edward* III. But *Polydore Virgil* places it after the 25th of *Edward* III. We muſt therefore have recourſe to ſome other Proofs for elucidating this Point, ſince this Chronological *Æra* of the true Time of its Inſtitution hath wonderfully ſlipp'd the Pens of all Writers.

Admitting then that the erecting this Order was firſt thought of by King *Edward*, at ſome of thoſe grand Aſſemblies of *The Round Table*, held after the *French* King had ſet up the like; yet was it not mature, or brought to any Perfection, till after his glorious Victories and Triumphs over the *French* and *Scots* in the Battles of *Creſſy* and *Nevil's* Croſs, (in the laſt of which the *Scotch* King, *David*, was taken Priſoner) and until King *Edward* had *Calais* ſurrendred to him, as will appear very conſpicuous.

Among the Rolls of the Great Wardrobe, is one containing the Account of all the King's Liveries, from *Michaelmas Anno* 21, to the 31ſt of *Jan.* 23 *Edw.* III. In the ſame are divers Things mention'd to be adorn'd with Garters, which were provided againſt the firſt grand Feaſt of St. *George*; and among the reſt, the Royal Robes, *viz.* his Mantle, Surcoat and Hood; likewiſe a Bed of Blue Taffaty was bedeck'd with Garters, containing the Motto, *Honi ſoit qui mal y penſe.* There were made for the Sovereign Three Harneſſes, whereof Two were of White Velvet, wrought over with Garters *de blu & diaſpris per totum compedmein cum Woodhouſes*; and the Third *de Velvetto Ynde cont. Lappekin*

pekin quiſſeux & caligas, wrought over likewiſe with Garters. Had the Roll been divided into Years, or had diſtinguiſhing Marks of Time upon it, we might have been guided with more Certainty as to the true Year of the Inſtitution. However, we may thence conclude it was not founded in the 18th of *Edw.* III. becauſe that the Sovereign's Robes were not made until the 22d Year of his Reign at ſooneſt; perhaps not till the Beginning of the 23d. But to put the Matter beyond diſpute, the Founder's Statutes fix the Time of Inſtitution to his 23d Year; ſo do the Statutes of King *Henry* V. and the Preface to the *Black Book*, *Leland*, *Mills* and Dr. *Heylin*. To conclude, when he had fix'd upon the Day and Place for celebrating the firſt grand Feaſt of this Order, he ſent his Heralds into *Germany*, *France*, *Scotland*, *Burgundy*, *Hainault*, *Flanders* and *Brabant*, to invite all Knights and Eſquires, (with Aſſurance of Safe-Conduct and Liberty for Fifteen Days, both before and after the grand Solemnity) to ſhew their military Proweſs and other publick Exerciſes there to be perform'd, proper to the Place and Occaſion; agreeable to which Invitation, ſundry Knights and Gallant Men came over to ſignalize their Valour; and what made the Solemnity more glorious, King *Edward*'s Queen was there preſent, attended with Three Hundred of the faireſt Ladies, in all imaginable Splendor and Gaity.

§ 4. The Patrons of the Order were ſeveral, under whoſe Protection (according to the Cuſtom of the Age) King *Edw.* III. put himſelf and all the Knights-Companions, that the Affairs of the Order might be defended, preſerved and govern'd.

The *firſt* and chiefeſt which he elected, was the *Holy Trinity*, which in a more eſpecial Manner was invocated to the Aid and Aſſiſtance of this Order.

Secondly, King *Edward* III. intitled peculiarly the *bleſſed Virgin* Mary, accounted then the general Mediatrix and Protectreſs of all Men; unto whom King *Edward* IV. was ſo ſtrictly devoted, that he thought ſome additional Ceremonies requiſite to her farther Honour, and thereupon ordain'd, that on her Five Solemnities

the Knights Companions ſhould annually (as accuſtom'd on the Feaſt of St. *George*) wear the Habit of the Order as long as Divine Service was celebrating, (unleſs they had ſufficient Cauſe of excuſe) bearing on the right Shoulders of their Robes a golden Figure of the Virgin *Mary*; and that they ſhould go in the ſame Manner and Habit upon all *Sundays* throughout the Year; and laſtly, that on the ſame Days for ever they ſhould ſay Five *Pater Noſters*, with as many *Ave Maria's*.

Thirdly, St. *George* of *Cappadocia*, a moſt choice Champion of Chriſt and famous Martyr, was alſo elected one of the Patrons to this Order by King *Edward* III. not ſo much as he was a Profeſſor of the Chriſtian Faith, or for that he was an armed Soldier or Knight of Chriſt, but ſo much the more becauſe in thoſe Wars, which were waged by the Chriſtians againſt the Infidels, he by ſeveral Appearances manifeſted his Preſence as a moſt certain Encourager and Aſſiſtant to the Chriſtians; the Relations whereof may be ſeen in Dr. *Heylin*'s Hiſtory, who hath laborioufly and judicioufly maintain'd the Hiſtory of this Saint, againſt thoſe that will not allow him a Place in Heaven, or a Being in the Church. In like manner the learned *Selden* hath avouch'd him to be the ſpecial Patron, Protector, Defender, and Advocate of this Realm of *England*; and has made it plainly appear in what Veneration he hath been honour'd abroad, eſpecially among the Eaſtern Nations. To whoſe corroborating Teſtimonies we ſhall add, That this Title of Patron to our Nation, as given to St. *George* by the Founder of this Order, in a Patent granted to the Dean and Canons of the Chapel of St. *Stephen* at *Weſtminſter*, and St. *George* at *Windſor*, which diſchargeth them from Payment of Tythes; as alſo by King *Henry* VIII. in the Preamble of his Statutes. And tho' in general he is ſtyl'd the Principal Patron of the Affairs of *Chriſtendom*, and a tutelar Guardian of military Men, yet among all Chriſtians the *Engliſh* did excel; and in this Nation the Founder of this Order, in making choice of ſuch an approv'd expert Captain and Patron, in particular Reſpect of whom the Knights had the Title of *Equites Georgiani*, St. *George*'s Knights, and the Order it ſelf came to be call'd

call'd the *Ordo Divi Sancti Georgii*, The Order of St. *George*.

It is remarkable, that *Du Cheſne*, a noted *French* Hiſtorian, acknowledges it was by the ſpecial Invocation of St. *George* that King *Edward* III. gain'd the Battle of *Creſſy*, which afterwards bringing to his Remembrance, *He founded*, ſays he, *a Chapel within the Caſtle of* Windſor. But if we may aſcend a ſtep higher, and give credit to *Harding*, it's recorded King *Arthur* paid St. *George* particular Honours, for he advanc'd his Picture in one of his Banners, which was about Two Hundred Years after his Martyrdom, and very early for a Country ſo remote from *Cappadocia* to have him in Reverence and Eſteem.

Laſtly, The Founder added a fourth Patron, whoſe Name himſelf bore, *viz.* St. *Edward the Confeſſor*, his Predeceſſor, King of *England*; and we find he was wont to be invocated by this Founder, as well as St. *George*, in any great Difficulties and Streights. *Walſingham* gives an Inſtance at the Skirmiſh of *Calais*, *A. D.* 1349. when King *Edward*, in great Anger and Grief, drew out his Sword, and moſt paſſionately cry'd out, *Ha St.* Edward, *Ha St.* George; which his Soldiers hearing, ran preſently to him, and ruſhing violently upon the Enemy, put many of them to the Sword. Theſe Four Patrons we find recorded together in the Preamble of the Foundation of *Windſor* College by King *Edward* III. tho' in the Preamble to his Statutes of the Order, and to King *Henry* V's Statutes, St. *Edward the Confeſſor* is omitted; nevertheleſs he is enumerated with the reſt in the Preamble to King *Henry* VIII's.

§ 5. As to the Honour and Reputation of this Noble Order, either in Compariſon with others, or in Reference to it ſelf, it challenges the Precedency of Antiquity, before the eldeſt Rank of Honour of that Kind any where eſtabliſh'd.

Secondly, The Statutes of the Foundation were ſo exquiſitely and judiciouſly deviſed and compacted, upon ſuch ſolid Foundations of Honour and Nobleneſs, that they afterwards became a Precedent to other Orders; and gave the Plan to thoſe Two of *The Golden Fleece* and

of Monſieur St. *Michael*, as is manifeſt by comparing their Statutes.

Thirdly, It is no ſmall Honour that accrues to this Order, that the Number of theſe Knights-Companions were never encreas'd, but as they were Twenty Six with the Sovereign, ſo they now thus continue, *ut Pretium faciat raritas*; for the infringing this Article hath ſplit ſeveral other military Orders into Contempt and Ruin, as nothing more tarniſhing, or throwing a ſully on the Worth of Glory and Honour, than when render'd ſo vulgar, and indifferently diſpoſed without Diſtinction and Merit, as is exemplify'd in *The Order of the* Star, and the now declining *Order of St.* Michael.

Fourthly, It has receiv'd more additional Luſtre by being honour'd with the Companionſhip of divers Emperors, Kings and Sovereign Princes, who eſteem'd it the Summit of their Glory, and the higheſt Trophy of additional Honour, to be enroll'd in the Number. Inſomuch that ſome of them with Impatience courted the Election. For we find recorded in the Regiſter, *A. D.* 1672. Eight Emperors of *Germany*, Three Kings of *Spain*, Five *French* Kings, Two Kings of *Scotland*, Five Kings of *Denmark*, Five Kings of *Portugal*, Two Kings of *Sweden*, One King of *Poland*, One King of *Arragon*, Two Kings of *Naples*, beſides divers Dukes and other free Princes; as One Duke of *Guelderland*, One Duke of *Holland*, Two Dukes of *Burgundy*, Two Dukes of *Brunſwick*, One Duke of *Milan*, Two Dukes of *Urbin*, One Duke of *Ferrara*, One Duke of *Savoy*, Two Dukes of *Holſtein*, One Duke of *Saxony*, and One Duke of *Wertemberg*, Seven Count Palatines of the *Rhine*, Four Princes of *Orange*, and One Marquis of *Brandenburg*.

Fifthly, It entitles thoſe Knights and Noblemen, whoſe Vertue hath rais'd them to this Pitch of Greatneſs, to be Companions and Aſſociates with Emperors and Kings, a Prerogative of an high Nature, and a ſufficient Recompence for the greateſt Merit. We ſhall cloſe up all with the high Elogy beſtow'd on it by the learned *Selden*, *That it exceeds in Majeſty, Honour and Fame, all Chivalrous Orders of the World.*

CAP.

CAP. VI.

The Statutes and Annals of the Order.

ORDER and Regularity is not only the Beauty and Symmetry of Government and Societies, but alſo greatly contributes to their Eſtabliſhment and Perpetuity. Statutes and Rules are as well the Bounds to determine, as Bonds to unite Fellowſhip and Societies together; and if either fall into diſuſe, or be unadviſedly broken, they open a Field to Diſſolution and Ruin.

SUCH like Conſiderations mov'd and excited the victorious King *Edward* III. (after he had determin'd the Erection of this moſt renown'd *Order of the Garter*) to *deviſe and inſtitute ſeveral laudable Statutes and Ordinances, to be duly obſerv'd and kept within the ſaid Order*; which being collected into one Body, are call'd *The Statutes of Inſtitution.*

THE Original of theſe was ordain'd to be kept within the Treaſury of the College of *Windſor*, but hath long ſince wholly periſh'd; yet a Tranſcript of them is recorded in the Reign of King *Henry* V. in an old Book call'd *Regiſtrum Ordinis Chartaceum.* Two more ancient *Exemplars* of this Body of Statutes are alſo in being; the one in the Library of the Lord *Hatton*, and the other in the *Black Book* of the Order; and comparing them together, I ſhall here give from the *Latin* the Heads they conſiſt of.

1. THE King of *England*, his Heirs and Succeſſors, are to be Sovereigns or Superiors of this Order.

2. NONE are to be admitted, unleſs he be a Gentleman of Blood, and that he be a Knight and without Reproach.

3. THE Knights-Companions were to be Twenty Six, each to have at *Windſor* a Mantle and Garter for the better Splendor of the Order; to wear the ſaid

Habit whenſoever they go to the Chapel of St. *George* or Chapter-Houſe, to hold a Chapter, or do any thing relating to their Order. In like manner they are to wear the Habit upon the Vigils of St. *George*, in their Proceſſion from the King's Lodgings to the Chapel or Chapter-Houſe, and returning back, and during Supper, continue ſo habited till it be over, and likewiſe on the Morrow of St. *George*'s Day, at Chapel, Dinner-time, Supper-time, and afterwards all the ſaid Day, until the Sovereign or his Deputy ſhall depoſite the Enſigns of the Order, and decree their Departure.

4. THERE were to be Thirteen Canons Secular, who at the Time of their Inſtitution, or within a Year, were to be Prieſts, and as many Vicars already Prieſts, or to be made ſo at the next Ordination, anſwerable to the number of the Knights-Companions; theſe religious Perſons to be preſented by the ſeveral Founders each one, and upon the Death or Vacancy of ſuch preſented, the Sovereign of the Order ever afterwards to have the Nomination of them, who were bound to pray for the good Eſtate of the Sovereign and his Kingdom, and particularly for this Order.

5. THE Canons were to wear a Purple Mantle, with the Arms of St. *George* in a Roundle upon their right Shoulder.

6. THERE were to be Twenty Six poor veterane Knights, each to have a competent Subſiſtence, their Election to be after the manner of the Canons aforeſaid.

7. THESE Knights were to have a Red Mantle, with the Arms of St. *George*; but without any Circle of the Garter about it.

8. IF the Sovereign could not be preſent at the ſolemn Feſtival of St. *George*, his Deputy was to ſupply his Place at the Charge of the Sovereign; but ſuch Deputy was not to make any new Ordinances, tho' he has Licenſe to correct or amend the old Ones.

9. EVERY Year, upon the Vigils of St. *George*, the Knights-Companions within the Realm, or elſewhere, if conveniently, are to aſſemble, at *Windſor* Caſtle, and be preſent there at the Celebration of Divine Service, in the Habit of the Order, where placed regularly in their

their Stalls or Seats, directly over their Heads their Helmets and Swords, &c. are to be hung up, and remain as long as ſuch Knights live, in Honour of them, and to ſignify the Defence of the Church, to which they are obliged as a Military Order; but in caſe the Feaſt of St. *George* happens to fall within the Quindene or Fifteen Days after the Feaſt of *Eaſter*, then it was to be prorogued to the *Sunday* next following, accounting Fifteen Days from *Eaſter* Day, that every Knight-Companion might have reaſonable time to come, nor be forced to ride upon any of the Three *Eaſter* Holy-days.

10. That they meet in St. *George*'s Chapel yearly, on the Eve of St. *George*, at the Hour of Three in the Afternoon; and if they come not at the Time aſſigned, without a juſt Excuſe, which the Sovereign or his Deputy allows, their Penalty is to be according to the Ordinance of the Chapter; which is, That they ſhall not enter into the Chapter Door for that time, but ſtay without, and ſhall have no Voice in any thing that is done in the ſaid Chapter; and if they come not before the Beginning of Veſpers, they ſhall not enter into their Stalls, but ſhall tarry below before the ſaid Stalls in the Choiriſters Places during Veſpers. The like Penalty is ordain'd for not coming to the Maſs or Morning-Service betime, and at Veſpers, on St. *George*'s Day; and whoſoever ſhall abſent himſelf wholly from this Solemnity, without ſufficient Excuſe and Leave from the Sovereign or Deputy, he is not to enter within his Stall the next Feaſt after, but ſhall ſtay below, and before his Stall, as it is ſaid at Veſpers, and in the Morrows Proceſſion muſt walk before the Three proceſſional Croſſes, [now the Choriſters,] and at Maſs [Service] ſhall ſit below until the Offering, and he to offer laſt. After which he is to come before the Sovereign, or his Deputy's Stall, and ask Pardon, which re-inſtates him in his Stall. Abſenting the next ſecond Time upon the Feaſt, without Leave, he has no Stall allowed him until he hath given and offered a Jewel upon St. *George*'s Altar, to the Value of Twenty Marks, which is to be double every Year until a Reconciliation.

11. Wheresoever they be, they muſt wear their Blue Robes from the Beginning of the firſt Veſpers, on the Eve of St. *George*'s Day, to the ſecond Veſpers on the Morrow incluſive, *&c.*

12. If any Knight-Companion appears publickly without his dignifying Garter, upon challenging the ſame, is to pay half a Mark to the Cuſtos and College.

13. At the Times of Offering, each aſſociated with the other who holds the oppoſite Stall, are to march in Proceſſion together to make their Offerings; but alone, when his Conſort is abſent, and ſo that in all Proceſſions the Sovereign goes laſt.

14. In the Morrow after the Solemnity of St. *George*'s Feaſt is over, before their ſeparating, a Maſs *de Requie* or Office *de Defunctis* was to be uſed, at which the Knights-Companions were all entirely to be preſent, without neceſſary Impediment ſhown to the Sovereign or Deputy for Liberty to depart.

15. They were to leave their Robes at *Windſor* always, to be ready for them there upon any ſudden Occaſions that might evene.

16. Journying near *Windſor*, in Honour of the Place, unleſs lawful Cauſe obſtructs, they muſt take it in their Way, and aſſuming the Habit of the Order the Canons wore, devoutly to meet and conduct them into the Chapel; where, if it happens to be time of Divine Service, they are to hear the ſame; if not, they are to be detained no longer than while the Canons ſhall ſay the Pſalm *de profundis* for the Defunct, and during their own Offering: But if any had riden thro' the Town, without viſiting the Chapel and offering there, for every Neglect he muſt go one Mile on Foot from the ſaid Chapel, to ſhew his Obedience, and offer an Half-Penny in Honour of St. *George*.

17. Upon firſt Notice of the Death of any of the Order, the Sovereign ſhall ordain a Thouſand Maſſes, every Foreign Prince ſhall cauſe Eight Hundred, a Prince of Wales Seven Hundred, a Duke Six Hundred, an Earl Three Hundred, every Baron Two Hundred, and every Knight Batchellor One Hundred Maſſes to be celebrated for the Good of the Soul departed;

parted; which neglected for a Quarter of a Year after notice of ſuch Death, the Maſſes are to be doubled; upon half a Year's Neglect, again doubled; and ſo from Time to Time in like Form till the End of the Year, and then the Year's to be doubled.

18. Upon ſure Notice of the Death of a Knight-Companion, the Sovereign, or his Deputy, is to converſe by Letters, the Remainder [not Strangers] that are within the Kingdom, to meet him within Six Weeks in ſome convenient Place, and elect another; which aſſembled, at leaſt Six, with the Sovereign or Deputy, every of them preſent is to name Nine of the worthieſt and ſufficienteſt Knights without Reproof that he knows, whether native Subjects or Foreigners, ſobeit they hold no contrary Party, or be againſt the Sovereign, *viz.* Three Earls, or of ſublimer Title; Three Barons, and Three Knights Batchellors, which Names the Biſhop of *Windſor*, for the Time being, was to write, or, in his Abſence, the Dean or Regiſter, and, in their Abſence, the oldeſt Reſidencer in the College, and after ſhew them to the Sovereign, who is to chuſe out of them him that has the moſt Voices, and whom he eſteems the moſt beneficial to the Crown and Kingdom. Every Knight failing to appear at an Election, without an approved Cauſe, was to pay to the Cuſtos and College the Penalty of a Mark, and at his next coming to the Chapter ſhall kneel upon the Ground, in the midſt of the Chapter, before the Sovereign or Deputy, until Reconciliation.

19. Soon after Election, the Knight-Companion elect is to have a Garter, in token of his Election, and that he is a Fellow of the Order; and as ſoon as decreed to take Poſſeſſion of his Stall, but not before, is to have a Mantle, which, if he dies before he receiv'd, he was not to be accounted as one of the Order, becauſe he wanted Poſſeſſion; nevertheleſs he was to have one half of the Maſſes aboveſaid, becauſe he had the Garter deliver'd to him and nothing beſide. If he was not inſtalled within a Year after his receiving the Garter, and eſpecially if within the Realm, and without reaſonable Excuſe to be allowed of by the Sovereign or Deputy, his Election became void, and they might proceed

ceed to a new one: Moreover, neither the Sword nor Helmet was to be put upon his Stall within the Caſtle, before his coming; to the End, that if the Knight elect came not, his Atchievements might not be unhandſomly taken down and abuſed, but honourably removed into the Choir for the publick Uſe and Profit of the ſaid College.

20. Every Foreigner elected was to have Certification of ſuch his Election from the Sovereign, at the Sovereign's Charge, who was to ſend him the Garter and the Mantle, and a Copy of the Statutes of the Order, under the Common Seal of the ſaid Order, within Four Months after the Election, the better for him to adviſe on; which being accepted, of whatſoever Condition he be, he was obliged within Eight Months after to ſend a ſufficient Proxy, according to his State and Dignity, a Knight irreprehenſible to be inſtalled in his Room, and who was to bring with him a Silk Mantle of the Blue Colour of the Order, alſo a Sword and Helmet to remain at *Windſor*, which Mantle was be put upon the right Shoulder of the Proxy, by the Sovereign or Deputy at the time of Inſtallment, when he is introduced to take the Stall in the Name of his Lord and Maſter; neither was he to depoſite the ſame till the End of Divine Service; after which he was not to wear it, nor be admitted in the Chapter-Houſe, or have any Suffrage, by virtue of any Powers veſted in him; but this Favour Foreigners elected by Proxy were to have, that could not perſonally come themſelves, they were to be Partakers of the whole Maſſes and Oriſons of the Order; whereas, if they died before the Inſtallation, they were to have but a Moity of them.

21. Upon the Death of any Earl, [or of Superior Dignity] Baron, or Knight Batchellor, his Succeſſor, whether Earl, [or of Superior Dignity] Baron, or Knight, was to have a vacant Stall of his Predeceſſor, without any changing of Places, except the Prince of *Wales* alone, who was to have always the next Stall, and oppoſite to the Sovereign; ſo that it may happen for a Knight to have an Earl's Place, or an Earl a Knight's Place; and this becauſe the firſt Founders might be known.

22.

22. Every Knight-Companion at his first Entrance, was to give a certain Alms, according to their Eminence and Degree, for the perpetual Maintenance of the Canons and Poor Knights, *viz.* the Sovereign Forty Marks, a Foreign King Twenty Pounds, a Prince of *Wales* Twenty Marks, a Duke Ten Pounds, an Earl Ten Marks, a Baron a Hundred Shillings, and a Knight Batchellor Five Marks, that by these pious Donations they might justly entitle themselves to the Name and Privileges of the Order; wherefore, before these Payments were rightly performed, their Sword and Helmet [Atchievements] were not to be hung up, and for Foreigners the Sovereign was obliged to pay himself.

23. Upon the Death of any of the Founders his Arms, in a Plate of Metal, was to be fixed upon the Back of his Stall, and their Successors were to have the like, but to be placed underneath their Predecessors, and not to be so great as those of the first Founders.

24. At Admission every Knight-Companion must promise and swear personally, or by Proxy, faithfully to observe the Statutes of the Order, and none are to be installed by Proxy but Foreigners only, which cannot conveniently come in Person.

25. If the Sovereign be out of *England* at the Installation of any Knight-Companion, or could not attend himself to do what appertains to him in that Point, he might impower and authorize any of the Fellows to officiate for him.

26. That there be a Common Seal or Signet Keeper, whom the Sovereign was to assign.

27. Every Knight-Companion was to have a Copy of the Statutes under the Seal of the Order, the Original sealed likewise with the said Seal, to remain for evermore within the Treasury of the College, and upon the Death of any Knight-Companion, his Executors were to send back such Copy to be deliver'd to the Custos or Warden.

28. No Knight-Companion was to go out of the Realm and Dominion of *England*, without the Knowledge and Licence of the Sovereign, who of Grace and Favour is bound to grant it upon a Military Expedition, or other notable Act appertaining to the Honour of Knight-

Knighthood, in Preference and Advancement of this Order of St. *George*.

29. They were not to arm themſelves againſt each other, but in the Wars of their Sovereign Lord, in his right and juſt Quarrel; and if it happen'd that any of the Order ſhould be retain'd in the Cauſe and Quarrel of any Lord, and the adverſe Party deſir'd another Knight-Companion on his Side, that latter Knight is by no means to agree but to excuſe himſelf in all Things, becauſe his Fellow was armed on the other Side, and was retain'd before him. And every Knight was bound to except and agree, at his being retain'd, that he may have his Diſcharge from the Wars, upon any of the Order's being engaged in Arms before him for the contrary Party; and if the ſecond retained knows not of it, upon notice that any of his Fellows were retained before him, and armed on the contrary Side, the ſecond retained Knight was to excuſe himſelf to his Maſter, and relinquiſh the Quarrel.

30. All Licences given to the Knight-Companions to travel in queſt of Honour by Military Exploits; alſo all Certificates, mandatous Letters, Certificates, and other Writings whatſoever relating to the Order, were to be iſſued out by the Sovereign, under the Seal of the Order, to remain in the keeping of one of the Order, during the Sovereign's Pleaſure. And if the Keeper of the Seal abſent himſelf upon reaſonable Cauſe, he was to leave the Seal with another of the Fellowſhip that the Sovereign ſhould appoint, to the Intent that the Seal at no time be out of the Preſence of the Sovereign, he being within his Dominion. And in like manner concerning the Seal in the Abſence of the Sovereign or the Deputy.

31. If any Knight-Companion for Devotion ſake ſhould deſire to dwell at *Windſor*, he was to maintain himſelf at his own, and not at the College Charge.

32. Any other Knight, not of the Order, upon the Account of Devotion, that would reſide there, was to be provided for at the Appointment of the Sovereign, and the Fellowſhip alſo. Any Knight or other Perſon giving 10 *l.* yearly Rents or Lands, or more, to the College, to participate of their Prayers and Suffrages,

he

he was to be regiſtred in the Calendar of Benefactors, and continually be pray'd for by the Canons and Poor Knights.

33. Upon the Death of any Canon, the Cuſtos or Warden is to certify the ſame by Letters to the Sovereign, if beyond Sea, to know whom he pleaſes to preſent to the Canonſhip.

34. There was to be a Regiſter appointed by the Sovereign and Fellowſhip, the moſt intelligent Perſon of the College, who was to be preſent at the Chapters, to record their Elections and the Electors, their Puniſhments, and Cauſes of them, with their Reconciliations, all Acts whatſoever adminiſtred in their Council, from Chapter to Chapter yearly; for the faithful Execution of which Office he was to be ſworn at his Admiſſion therein; and whatſoever had been regiſter'd was in the Beginning of the following Chapter, on the Vigils of St. *George*, to be publickly recited before the Sovereign and the whole Fellowſhip, that what was amiſs and incorrect might be mended and reduced to due Form.

§ 2. Besides theſe Statutes there are Two other Bodies, or Exemplars eſtabliſh'd ſince, the one by King *Henry* V. the other by King *Hen.* VIII. King *Henry* V. finding the Glory of the Order declining, removed the Grand Feſtival and other Solemnities, and commanded a ſtrict Obſervation of all the Founder's Statutes, and brought many more to like Perfection, which he ſubjoined to ſuch of them, where they might be properly and are as follow:

To Article 4

3. That the Knights ſhould mark their Obeiſance in the Choir firſt to the Altar, and next to the Sovereign, or in his Abſence to his Stall.

8. That the Deputy ſhould elect, if the Sovereign (when abroad) had not Six Knights with him.

9. That the Feaſt of St. *George* ſhould not be kept upon St. *Mark*'s Day, nor the Days of St. *Philip* and *Jacob*, nor of the Holy

Holy Croſs, neither upon any Days which ſhould happen in the Feſtivals of the Aſcenſion or Pentecoſt, or other ſolemn Feaſts ordained by the Church to the interrupting their Divine Service.

12. That when a Knight ſhould ride out he might wear a Blue Silk Ribbon inſtead of his Garter.

14. That the Order and Manner of Offering up the Atchievements ſhould be as is there preſcribed, *viz.* before they offer their Money, their Swords ſhould be firſt offered by Two Companions, which the Sovereign or his Deputy ſhould appoint, and afterwards their Helmets with their Creſts, by Two others of the Order.

To Article 4.

20. That Knights abſent in the Sovereign's Service might be inſtall'd by Deputy.

31. That the Sovereign ſhould take a Signet of the Order abroad with him, to be fixed to all the Acts he does in Foreign Parts relating to this Order, in Diſtinction to thoſe done at home.

34. That no Charge ſhould be admitted upon the College by the Cuſtos or Canons, without the Sovereign's Conſent likewiſe.

The Statutes with theſe Additions (as the Statutes of Inſtitution) this King cauſed to be tranſlated into *French*, and tranſcribed into a Roll, which was ordered to be preſented to every Knight-Companion under the common Seal of the Order. In after Times it was tranſcribed into Books; and by a Decree, *Anno* 3 *Hen.* VII. an Original Book of theſe Statutes and Inſtitutions, fair written, was to be repoſed in the College of St. *George*, and the Scribe or Regiſter to have Tranſcripts of them in Readineſs, to preſent the elected Knights withal.

The laſt and largeſt Body was firſt began, and received the finiſhing Stroke by King *Hen.* VIII. chiefly in regard ſome of the former Statutes wanted Explication

and

and others Contraction. And for the compleating of which Purpoſe, on St. *George*'s Day, *Anno 9 Regni ſui* he ſummoned all the Knights-Companions to convene next Year at the Time of the Solemnity, about the Abrogation of what tended to darken the Honour of this Order (if any ſuch were) and for the Advancement of what might promote the Grandeur and Luſtre of it. But theſe Reſolves came to no Perfection till *May* 28. *Anno* 11 *Regni ſui*, when he entred upon this Reformation with all magnificent Ceremony imaginable, for being accompanied with Nineteen Knights-Companions of the Order proceeding in Cavalcade to the Chapter-Houſe, and taking into Conſideration their former Statutes of Knights-Companions, with all due Reverence implor'd the Sovereign to reform and explain them as he ſhould think convenient, which he brought to a ſucceſsful Period, by the Advice and Conſent of the Society aſſembled: That done, all preſent entreated the Sovereign, kneeling, that where any of them had been peccant againſt the Order, he would pleaſe to remit, and iſſue out a general Pardon, which he granted and ratify'd in Chapter next Day. This was a Task of Three Years compleat before it roſe to Perfection, *viz.* *April* 23. *Anno* 14 *Hen.* VIII. for then the Sovereign, out of right ſingular Love, well-temper'd Zeal, and entire Affection to this moſt noble Order, to the Eſtate of Chivalry, and the Continuance and Encreaſe thereof; as alſo at the humble Requeſt and inſtant Importunity of the then Knights-Companions, and by their Advice, Counſel and Conſent, did interpret and elucidate all the Obſcurities, Doubts and Ambiguities of the former Statutes and Ordinances. Divers Affairs contain'd in Fifty of them being explain'd and amended; he made likewiſe neceſſary Additions, the Original whereof being ſign'd and ſeal'd, were commanded to be carefully laid up in the Treaſury of *Windſor* College, to remain as a Standard to ſucceeding Times; yet they have not been ſeen there theſe many Years paſt.

The Articles and Clauſes added to the former Statutes, in this laſt Body, are theſe:

To

To Article

1. That the Interpretation of the Statutes, *&c.* belongeth to the Sovereign.

2. The Three Points of Reproach declar'd, and what is meant by a Gentleman of Blood.

4. Of the Prerogative of the Feaſt.

5. How the Feaſt is to be obſerved by abſent Knights.

6. Attendance on the Sovereign, if he be not at the Feaſt.

7. That the Sovereign's Deputy may correct Things in Chapter.

12. The offering up of Atchievements, and a Taper arm'd with an Eſcutcheon.

13. Canons to ſit in the lower Stalls, when any Knights are preſent.

14. That Six Knights make a Chapter.

20. The Manner of Inſtallation ſet down.

21. Clause for a Foreign Knight's Deputy to be conducted from the Chapter-Houſe to the Stall; and for making an Election void, if the Knight ſend not his Proxy within Seven Months.

23. For advancing and tranſlating of Stalls.

25. Plates not to be larger than the firſt Founders, except Strangers.

27. The Time Three Months prefix'd for the Executor of a deceas'd Knight-Companion to ſend back the Copy of the Orders deliver'd to him at his Admiſſion, which might be alſo ſent to one of the principal Officers of the Order.

38. Concerning the Collar of the Order.

This Body of Statutes was compil'd in *Latin*, and is recorded in the *Black Book* of the Order. It was tranſlated into *French* and *Engliſh* by Sir *Thomas Wriotheſley*, Kt.

Kt. then Garter King of Arms. The *Engliſh* Verſion annex'd here to this Treatiſe, is what hath ſince been deliver'd (inſtead of the former Statutes) to all ſucceeding Knights-Companions, according to the Injunction; but of late Times appointed to be ſent to Foreign Princes and other elect Knights abroad, ſealed with the Great Seal of the Order, affix'd to a Label of Blue Silk and Gold.

§ 3. THERE have been ſeveral Endeavours ſince the Reign of King *Henry* VIII. for reforming the Statutes. As firſt, King *Edward* VI. who as Sovereign, by the Orders themſelves, had an undoubted Prerogative ſet him to alter and reform many Things which ſeem'd inconſiſtent with the Religion he eſtabliſh'd. To which Purpoſe, at a Chapter at *Greenwich*, held *April* 23. in the Third Year of his Reign, the Lord *St. John*, the Earl of *Arundel*, and Sir *William Paget*, were to peruſe and make them agreeable to the King's other Proceedings, by the Aſſiſtance and Advice of the Protector, the Duke of *Somerſet*, and other Companions. This was follow'd by a ſubſequent Order paſs'd in the Chapter at *Greenwich* the Year after, that the Statutes ſhould be reform'd and corrected as they thought expedient: And for the better Accompliſhment of their Deſign, at the next Feaſt, *April* 24. 5 *Edw.* VI. another Order commenc'd, impowering the Duke of *Somerſet*, the Marqueſs of *Northampton*, the Earls of *Warwick*, *Arundel*, *Bedford* and *Wilts*, to peruſe and amend the Statutes and other Books of the Order, which were brought to ſome tolerable Degree of Perfection; for thereupon a new Body was collected (in general very much altering the Laws of the Order) and publiſh'd *March* 17. *Anno* 7 *Edw.* VI. But this King within Four Months after expiring, Queen *Mary*, his Siſter and Succeſſor, the very firſt Thing ſhe tranſacted was to abrogate and make them void; wherefore we need not mention them, as never in uſe and unrevived. For the Execution of which Purpoſe, ſhe conven'd a Chapter at St. *James*'s, the 27th of *September* following; and it was then decreed, that the ſaid Laws and Ordinances, as inconvenient, impertinent, and tending to Novelty,

ſhould be diſannulled, and no Account to be made of them for the future; and for the quicker Execution, Sir *William Petre* (that Day admitted Chancellor) had Orders to ſee them ſpeedily expung'd out of the Book of Statutes, and forthwith defac'd, leſt any Memory of them ſhould remain to Poſterity; and only thoſe of her Father, *Hen.* VIII. and his Royal Predeceſſors, ſhould be retain'd.

In this Affair King *Philip*, her Husband, appear'd no leſs zealous; for on the 5th of *Auguſt*, 1 and 2 *Philip* and *Mary*, (which was the 3d Day after he had been inveſted with the Habit) himſelf being preſent at a Chapter at *Windſor*, it was ordain'd, That all Acts and Decrees in the Great Book, [*i. e.* the *Black Book* aforeſaid] which were repugnant and diſagreeable, either with the ancient and receiv'd Statutes of the Order, or elſe with the Laws of the Realm, ſhould clearly be aboliſh'd and eraſed, by the Marquis of *Wincheſter*, the Earls of *Arundel*, *Pembroke*, and the Lord *Paget*.

No ſooner was Queen *Elizabeth* fix'd on the Throne, but ſoon after, *viz.* on St. *George*'s Day, in the ſecond Year of her Reign, a View of the Statutes was committed, by Commiſſion, to Four of the Knights-Companions, *viz.* the Marquis of *Northampton*, the Earls of *Arundel* and *Pembroke*, and the Lord *Howard* of *Effingham*, who were thereby impower'd to peruſe and conſider thoſe Statutes with the utmoſt Care and regard, if any of them were repugnant to the Religion, Laws and Statutes of the Realm; and if any ſuch were recorded, to repreſent them faithfully to the Sovereign, that ſhe, in Conjunction with the Knights-Companions, might eſtabliſh ſuch Decrees concerning them as ſhe ſhould think fit; but that any thing was done in purſuance hereunto, doth not appear; for the Tranſcripts of her Father's Body of the Statutes, throughout the Time of her Reign, were preſented to the Knights-Companions at their Inſtallations; and the Practice of her Time was purſuant to the Direction therein, except in ſome few Things now and then added or alter'd at future Chapters, when there aroſe freſh Matters for ſuch Expedients.

KING *James* I. her Succeſſor, revolv'd ſomething towards a new Regulation; and in order to put it in Execution, the 14th of *May*, in the 9th Year of his Reign, decreed, That Commiſſionary Letters ſhould be granted to the Earls of *Nottingham*, *Worceſter*, *Pembroke* and *Northampton*, to empower them to examine the Regiſters and other Monuments which pertained to that Order; and where any Paſſage ſhould be found obſolete or obſcure, to make it conſpicuous and clear; where Contrariety appear'd, fitly to reconcile it; yet with no Deſign of innovating any Thing, but an Intention of renewing all, as near as might be, to the firſt Standard and moſt ancient Inſtitution of the Order; ſaving always Power to himſelf, as Sovereign of the Order, to add or diminiſh any Matter (according to the Occaſion) as it ſhould ſeem agreeable to his Prudence for the Honour of this Moſt Noble Order. What Progreſs they made in this Commiſſion, the Memoirs of that Time are ſilent in; but ſome few Years after, this Affair was reviv'd, and another was iſſu'd forth, to the Earls of *Nottingham*, *Worceſter*, *Southampton*, *Arundel* and *Montgomery*, and the Viſcount *Liſle*, all Knights-Companions, dated *April* 26. in the 16th Year of his Reign; which Six, or any Four of them, were thereby conſtituted to take an exact Survey of all the ancient Statutes and Articles of the ſaid Order; and authoriz'd to call before them all ſuch Perſons, whether Officers of the ſaid Order, or others, as could give any Light or Information concerning that Affair; and after a ſerious Deliberation, to pen down what in them they conceiv'd meet to be explain'd, and what to be added, whereby to render the Order more illuſtrious, that the ſame being preſented to the Sovereign and the Society, at a Chapter holden, might be reſolv'd on in part, or in all, to be put in Execution, if it ſeem'd ſo good to that King.

THIS Affair mov'd very ſlowly; but towards the latter End of his Reign, the Earls of *Worceſter*, *Montgomery*, *Arundel*, *Surry* and *Leiceſter*, Five of the Six Commiſſioners above-nam'd, having held divers Conferences, and debated ſeveral Matters repreſented to them, and at a Chapter convened at *Whitehall* the 19th

of *May*, *Anno* 20 *Jac.* I. did preſent to the Sovereign certain Articles, ſubſcribed with their Hands, which, for the Honour of the Order, they thought requiſite to be duly obſerv'd.

By the firſt of which they made Proviſion for a further Progreſſion and Advancement of the illuſtrious Inſtitution, in propoſing, that every Year a Commiſſion from the Sovereign ſhould be granted, or continu'd to ſuch Knights of the Order as the Chapter ſhould pitch on, to deliberate and weigh all Affairs that fell under the Order, and that the Year after, an Eſtimate, by the Knights in Chapter, ſhould be exhibited, of their Reſolutions and Proceedings by Virtue of the ſaid Commiſſion. This, with Eight other Articles, were confirm'd by the Sovereign and Twelve of the Knights-Companions, the 22d of *May* following, in a Chapter held at *Whitehall*; and ſo proſperouſly their Endeavours ſucceeded, that on the Feaſt-day of St. *George*, at *Windſor* in the enſuing Year, the Earl of *Worceſter*, (being then the Sovereign-Deputy) with Ten Knights-Companions more, gave their aſſent to Eight other Articles (moſt of them concerning the Alms-Knights) which the Morning after had the Approbation of the Sovereign; and before the Celebration of Divine Service, by his Deputy and Companions aſſembled in the Chapter-Houſe, the Obſervation thereof was duly decreed.

King *Charles* I. deſign'd and endeavour'd the moſt compleat and abſolute Reformation of any of his Predeceſſors; and at the Solemnity of St. *George*, held at *Windſor* the 6th of *October*, in the 6th Year of his Reign, He commiſſion'd Nine Knights-Companions, *viz.* the Earls of *Mulgrave*, *Pembroke*, *Montgomery*, *Arundel*, *Surry*, *Salisbury*, *Carliſle*, *Dorſet*, *Holland*, *Berkſhire* and *Suffolk*, with command to aſſemble Four Times in a Year, to take into their Conſideration the Affairs of the Order; all which, but the Earls of *Mulgrave* and *Dorſet*, met at *Whitehall* the 2d of *January* following, where ſome few Matters fell under their Conſultation. This Commiſſion was ſeconded by one of a larger extent about Three Months after, and directed to the ſaid Knights-Companions, or to any Eight, Seven, Six, Five or Four of them, empowering them to meet and deviſe,

and

and exactly preponderate all the Statutes and Ordinances of the Order, as well ſuch as were eſtabliſhed at the Foundation, as thoſe that had been ſince made, by Explanation or Addition, and to weigh adviſedly whether any Thing had been enacted, that had cauſed Doubt or Ambiguity, or ſtood in need of any Change or Amendment; and if upon mature Deliberation by them thus conven'd, there ſhould appear any Contrariety or Defect, for want of plain Expreſſion, or other Omiſſion, fit to be ſupplied, tending to the Honour of the Order, That then the Sovereign might, upon Return of their Proceedings, reſolve upon ſome general Declaration in Chapter, to reform and reduce into one Body all the Statutes and Ordinances thereof, that the ſame being compil'd and ſettled in one perfect Model, might be ſo conſign'd to Poſterity, free from all future Queſtions and Doubts.

Nevertheless not any thing was done upon this Commiſſion, tho' it ſtood in force even from the 6th to the 13th Year of this King's Reign; but where the Neglect lay Hiſtory does not fully inform us, tho' it may be conjectur'd by what follows.

At the Feaſt of St. *George*, celebrated by Prorogation at *White-hall*, for the Year 1636. upon the 17th, 18th, and 19th Days of *April*, 1637. divers Petitions for Reformation, and reducing of Matters to their priſtine Conſtitution, were preſented to the Sovereign by the Chancellor, and read; ſome of which, more eſpecially, tending to ſet off and encreaſe the Honour of the Order, were received and decreed by the Sovereign, and the reſt referr'd to the ſaid Knights-Commiſſioners. The firſt of thoſe Decrees which at that time had its Sanction, was to revive and renew the Powers given in the former Commiſſion; and thereupon a new one, dated the 7th of *May* following, was iſſued under the Great Seal of the Order, and directed to the Earls of *Mulgrave*, *Darby*, *Pembroke*, and *Montgomery*, *Arundel*, and *Surry*, *Kelly*, *Salisbury*, *Dorſet*, *Holland*, *Barkſhire*, *Suffolk*, *Lyndſey*, *Exeter*, Marquiſs *Hamilton*, Duke of *Lenox*, the Earls of *Darby*, *Moreton*, and *Northumberland*, or to Three or more of them, to meet and conſult of any Matters contain'd in the Statutes, or for Honour of

the Order. Theſe Knights-Commiſſioners were endow'd with all the plenary Powers given in the foreſaid Commiſſion, dated *6 Car.* I. unto which was granted a further Addition, for the better effecting the Sovereign's Care: That Three or more of them ſhould meet at the Sovereign's Court, and begin to put the ſaid Commiſſion in execution in *Whitſon* Week next enſuing, attended and aſſiſted by the Chancellor of the Order, and all, or any other Officers, or ſuch of them as they ſhould fix on, or find ſerviceable. And being aſſembled, to have free Liberty to hear, propound, and debate of whatſoever ſhall fall under their Cogniſance, or that they ſhould conceive conducible to the Honour and perfect Eſtabliſhment of ſo Illuſtrious and Noble a Body. And to prepare all Matters of ſuch their Reſolutions and Debates to be laid before the Sovereign at the next Feaſt of St. *George*, and ſo ſucceſſively at every Chapter ſo appointed by him, to receive his full Determination, Approbation, and Royal Aſſent, with further Power to adjourn from time to time, after the firſt Opening and Reading of the ſaid Commiſſion; their Meetings to be in ſuch Places, and on ſuch Days as ſhould ſeem moſt convenient to them.

Now who wou'd ſuppoſe, that after ſo Noble an Intention of the Sovereign, and his earneſt Solicitude to iſſue forth a ſecond Commiſſion, his hearty recommending and exciting their Deligence for a ſpeedy Diſpatch, and laſtly, his expecting an Account of their Tranſactions the next Feaſt, theſe honourable Perſons, Companions of the Order, ſhould need a Spur to accompliſh ſo laudable a Deſign; but it was ſo.

For altho' the Commiſſion was opened at *White-hall* the 30th of *May* following, in the Preſence of the Earls of *Pembroke* and *Montgomery*, *Salisbury*, *Holland*, Marquiſs of *Hamilton*, and Duke of *Lenox*, Commiſſioners; yet Sir *Thomas Row* Chancellor, in his Letter to Dr. *Chriſtopher Wren*, dated the 4th of *June*, 1637. ſadly complained, That it was much as he could do to draw together Five of the Knights-Companions, to open and read the Commiſſion, and this *quaſi in tranſitu*, was in Confuſion and Hurry, and all that was tranſacted was to appoint another Convention at Court in *Mid-*

ſummer

ſummer Week then next enſuing, and charge the Chancellor to prepare Matter (for Propoſitions and Obſervations upon the Statutes) fit for their Conſultations againſt that Appointment, according to the Tenor of the Commiſſion. And in another Place writes, That he found ſuch Difficulty to procure Meetings, and as certain *non Chalance* in every one, as if it were but a ceremonious Affair, and ſo few hearty in it, that he feared he and the Officers ſhould wait to little Purpoſe: And ſo indeed it fell out; for albeit he attended in *Midſummer* Week, according to their Direction, yet there was nothing diſpatch'd, ſave only the adjourning of their Meeting to *London*.

Some little Progreſs was afterwards made in this Affair at *White-hall* the 8th of *February* following, where Three of them were preſent, *viz.* the Earls of *Berkſhire*, *Lindſey*, and *Northumberland*, who order'd the Chancellor, Regiſter, and Garter, to prepare an Abbreviation of the Statutes, and reduce every thing of one Head into an Act, to keep up to Method, and avoid Confuſion.

The 1ſt of *February* after, another Aſſembly of Seven of the Knights-Commiſſioners was held at *White-hall*, in whoſe Preſence a few Points were debated; but little or nothing concluded.

§ 4. As concerning the Annals of the Order, or the Books wherein the ſeveral Reſolutions and Decrees occaſionally made in Chapters, and wherein other hiſtorical and ceremonial Matters relating to it are recorded, it will not be amiſs to give ſome Account of them in this Place.

The firſt, in Order of time, is an old Paper Book written in *French*, call'd *Regiſtrum Chartaceum*, hitherto fortunately preſerv'd in the Paper Office at *White-hall*, which probably was begun by *John Coningham*; for we find him, 1414. (a little before the Annals commenced) made Canon of *Windſor*, and Regiſter of the Order, and in regard the ſame Hand-Writing is carry'd on from the Beginning of the Book down to 16 *Hen.* VI. incluſive, where follows an *Hiatus* till *Anno* 23 *Hen.* VI. that the Annals began to be ſet down with another

Hand; and that he ſhortly after died in 1445. Henceforward theſe Annals are entred with promiſcuous Hands, which may be preſumed the proper Hand-Writings of the Regiſters of this Noble Order, as they ſucceeded each other in the Office.

After we find *Richard Sidnor* mention'd in the Regiſter *Anno* 16 *Hen.* VIII. (who ſubſcribed his Name at the foot of every Leaf) the Annals were pen'd in one Hand until *Anno* 26 *Hen.* VIII. that *Robert Aldrydge*, D. D. and one of the Canons of *Windſor* ſucceeded him; and then 'tis evident the Writing alſo was changed to an old ſet *Roman* Hand, which ran on to the End of 29 *Hen.* VIII. in which Year he was advanced to the Biſhoprick of *Carliſle*; and this Book breaks off in the 31ſt of his Reign.

Besides this there is another Book that goes by the Name of the *Black Book*, wherein the Annals of the Order are tranſcribed in *Latin*, concerning which there paſs'd a Decree, *Anno* 3 *Hen.* VII. that it ſhould be fairly copy'd out, and afterwards that the Sovereign ſhould be put in Remembrance of it; but neither of theſe Decrees was put in execution, nor was this confirm'd till towards the End of the Reign of King *Henry* VIII. This Book differs very little from the *Regiſtrum Chartaceum*, for therein is nothing enrolled relating to the Order (except one of the Exemplars of the Founders Statutes, and a Catalogue of the firſt Twenty-five Knights-Companions) before the 4th Year of King *Henry* V. the Annals of the Order, until that time, being entirely loſt. It hath the ſame Hiatus or Intervals from 16 to 23 *Hen.* VI. from 7 to 10 of *Edw.* 4. from 4 to 7 *Hen.* VII. and from 10 to 14 *Hen.* 7. It alſo runs parallel therewith for the moſt part, and that it was compil'd by Dr. *Aldrydge*, whilſt he continu'd Regiſter, is collected from ſome Paſſages in the Preface of all the Sovereigns, ending with King *Henry* VIII. The Tranſcription of this Book was finiſh'd *Anno* 13 *Hen.* VIII. for ſo far is written, as alſo the Appendix, with one and the ſame Hand; (in a middle-ſiz'd Text) but *Anno* 32 *Hen.* VIII. another Hand appears, which, with ſome Variation, is continu'd to the End of 5 *Edw.* VI. where this Book breaks off.

The

The Regiſter of the Order was oblig'd to provide Two Books, and therein to enter the Ordinances, Statutes, and Acts of this Noble Corporation, one to be lodg'd at the Chapter Houſe at *Windſor*, and call'd, *Index Windeſorienſis*, and the other being a Duplicate of the former, to remain in his own Cuſtody, ready to expoſe to the View of the Sovereign, whenſoever he ſhould demand it; this latter was called *Aulæ Regiſtrum*.

As to the general Directions for Compiling theſe Books, and the Particulars they are to conſiſt of, we are inform'd from the ſaid Statutes and Conſtitutions; for beſides the Entry of all the Scrutinies taken in Chapter and Elections made thereupon, it is his Office to record the Penalties inflicted on Knights-Companions, and the Reconciliation of all Delinquents with other Acts, and their Cauſes appertaining to the Order, all which are decreed to be recited before the Sovereign and Knights-Companions at the Beginning of the Chapter yearly, if Occaſion be, to correct and reduce into Method. Moreover he is to record all the Policies in War, Exploits, Tranſactions, and memorable Atchievements, both of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions, according as he can beſt attain the Knowledge of them, by his own diligent Search, or the Aſſiſtance of Mr. Garter, which having conſign'd to Writing from Year to Year, is to be peruſed at the next Chapter by the Knights-Companions, for their Approbation and Correction; and being reiterated the ſecond time in the Chapter, he is to ſee that they be fairly engroſſed in the ſaid Book, for a perpetual Remembrance.

And becauſe the time perfix'd for Rehearſal of theſe Particulars in Chapter, had in ſucceeding Years been imploy'd in other Affairs. In one of thoſe Articles which the Knights-Companions exhibited to King *Jac.* I. the 19th of *May*, *Anno Jac.* R. 20. and ratified the 22d of *May* following, it was decreed that nothing of this Nature, or any other Act in Chapter, ſhould be regiſtred before it had been perus'd and paſs'd the Conſideration of the then Knights-Companions, or at leaſt Four of them, who when they ſhould ſet Times apart to conſult of the Affairs of this Order (for which they

they were chiefly commiſſion'd) might then alſo make Uſe of ſuch Opportunities as ſhould give this Buſineſs Diſpatch with more Conveniency. Upon mature Conſideration had of thoſe Injunctions, the then Regiſter at a Chapter held 19 *Nov.* 22 *Car.* II. preſented the Continuation of the Annals of this Order, which he had ranged in order to regiſter in the *Liber Carolinus*, and ſubmitted them to the Approbation of the Knights-Companions, whom the Sovereign had commiſſion'd to inſpect the Affairs of the Order; which Tender, when they declin'd, he propos'd that it might paſs the Examination of the Prelate; but they not giving their Aſſent to it, in regard the Regiſter himſelf was under the Obligation of an Oath, to deal with the utmoſt Fidelity in his Reports, it was decreed, That the ſaid Annals ſhould be fairly recorded in the Book, without any further Inſpection.

Besides the abovemention'd Particulars, there were Materials of another Nature, decreed to be collected by the Chancellor of the Order and Garter King of Arms, to be digeſted firſt, and after entred by the Regiſter; for whereas one part of the Chancellor's Duty was to make a Narration every Year in Chapter, at the Feaſt of St. *George*, of the illuſtrious Exploits of the Knights-Companions, as well as the Actions that tend to eclipſe their Glory; ſo the Regiſter was to note theſe, and record them from a perpetual Æra or Memorial of their Honour or Diſgrace.

And it is part of Garter's Duty diligently to enquire after the Valiant, Fortunate, and Renown'd Acts, both of the Sovereign and the reſt of the Knights-Companions, and relate them with all Exactneſs to the Regiſter, for his Engroſſing: But how ſparingly theſe are put in execution, the Annals themſelves bear witneſs. However, Sir *Edward Walker* Garter-King has drawn up an Account of the ſhining Actions and Characters of the Knights-Companions, beginning with *Thomas* Earl of *Strafford*, and continuing it down to his Son, which he deliver'd Dr. *Ryves* the Regiſter, for the Uſe aforedirected.

Among the Articles eſtabliſh'd at the Feaſt of St. *George*, 21 *Jac.* I. the laſt is, That the then Regiſter ſhould

ſhould compoſe a Book, wherein ſhould be orderly tranſcribed the Form and Manner of all the Solemnities, Ceremonies, and Proceſſions, at the Celebration of the Order; as alſo of taking down and offering the defunct Knight's Atchievements, that the Knights-Companions might have free Recourſe to it; but ſuch Book never was extant.

For the Safety and Preſervation of the *Annals*, the Knights-Commiſſioners determined the 22d of *May*, *An. Jac.* I. 20. That a ſecure and convenient Place within the Caſtle of *Windſor* ſhould be appointed, in which all Acts concerning the Order ſhould be repoſed, and to which every Knight-Companion at all times might have acceſs. And upon the Remove or Deceaſe of the Regiſter of the Order, the Book, containing the Account of all ſuch Tranſactions, ſhould be committed to one of the Knights of the Order.

The ſecond of theſe Books is called the *Blue Book*, ſo call'd, being bound in Blue Velvet; it begins with the firſt Year of Queen *Mary*, and ends at the 18th of King *Jac.* I.

The third being bound in Red Velvet, is denominated the *Red Book*; it commences where the *Blue Book* leaves off, and treats of the like Acts and Entries, and is carry'd down to 14 *Car.* I: having firſt given a full Account of the Inſtallation of the Prince, afterwards King *Charles* II. And as to great part of this Work, it was perform'd by the elegant and judicious Dr. *Matthew Wren*, Biſhop of *Ely*, and Regiſter of the Order, whoſe excellent Pattern his Brother and Succeſſor Dr. *Chriſtopher Wren* hath copy'd in its following Tract. This Biſhop compiled a MS. *A. D.* 1631. wherein, by way of Comment upon King *Henry* VIII's Statutes, he hath compendiouſly ſhewn what Alteration there hath paſſed in the Law of the Garter, a Work performed with great Judgment, and exceedingly uſeful to the Curious.

The fourth and laſt Book is, *Liber Carolinus*, and commences 1640. wherein the *Annals* are brought down to the beginning of 1670. by *Ryves*, then Regiſter. And in a Chapter conven'd at *Windſor* the 16th of *April*, *Anno* 13 *Car.* II. it was decreed, That there ſhould be Two of theſe Books compiled, the one printed in *Latin*, in the Cuſtos of the Regiſter at *Windſor*; and the other in

Engliſh,

English, to be reserv'd at *Whitehall*, and call'd, *Registrum Aulicum*.

CAP. VII.

The Habit *and* Ensigns *of the Order.*

THE Habit and Ensigns of this most Noble Order are most eminently distinguishable and magnificent, and consist of these Particulars, *viz.* Garter, Mantle, Surcoat, Hood, George, and Collar; for as the *Romans* were very exact and particular in assigning each Degree a peculiar Habit and Vesture, by which the Quality and Rank of their Citizens might be discernable, the Distinction of Apparel was afterwards taken up by divers other Nations, whence every Military, as well as Ecclesiastick Order of Knighthood, did appropriate to it self a peculiar Dress, Ensign, or Badge, as a Mark of Distinction one from another, to set off the Lustre and Honour of their several Societies.

The four first, *viz.* the Garter, Mantle, Surcoat, and Hood, were assigned the Knights Companions, by the Founder, and the George and Collar by King *Henry* VIII. and all these together are called the whole Habit or Ensigns of the Order, which we shall treat of succinctly, beginning with the Garter.

The Royal Garter challengeth the Preheminence, for from it this famous Order receiv'd its Denomination: It is the first part of the Habit presented to Foreign Princes and Absent Knights, and that wherewith they, and all other elect Knights, are first adorn'd; and of so great Honour and Grandeur, that by the bare Investiture with this Noble Ensign, the Knights are esteem'd Companions of the greatest Military Order in the World.

The Materials whereof it was compos'd at first, is an *Arcanum*; nor is it described by any before *Polydore Virgil*, and he but in general: As to the ornamental Part of it, it was adorn'd with Gold and precious Stones, and had a Buckle of Gold at the End, to fasten it about th

The Garter

The Sovereigns Mantle,







The Collar and Great George



Ribbond George



Mantle, Hood, Surcoat.



Ribbond & George



A Knight Companions Mantle.

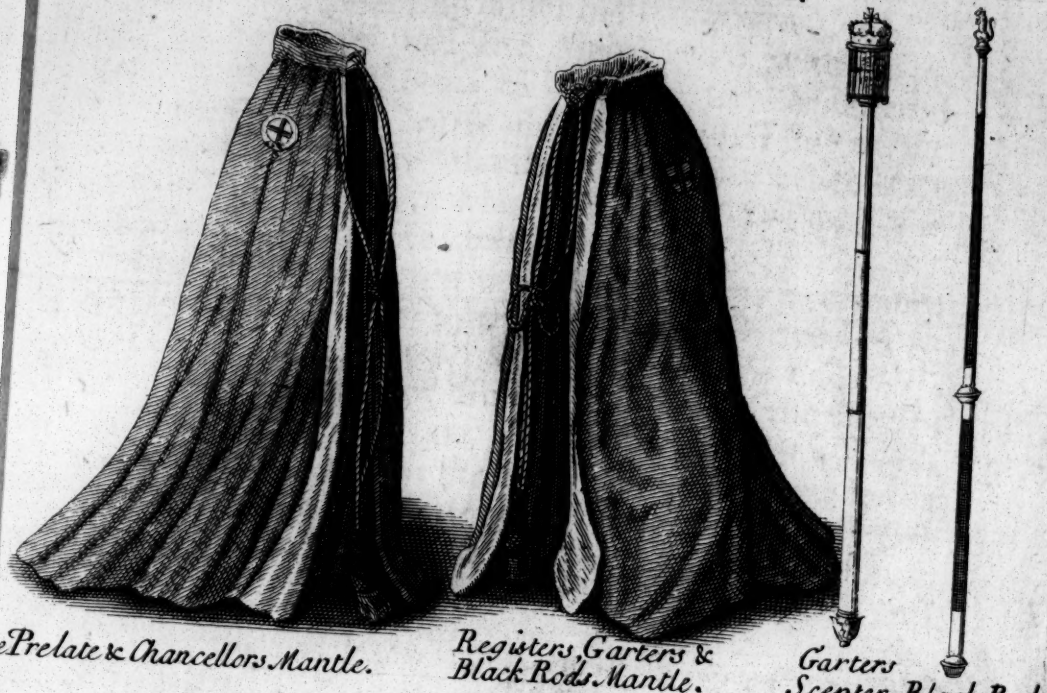


Cap and Feather.

M.r de Gucht Scul.



The present Habits, Ensigns and Badges, belonging to the Officers of the Garter.



The Prelate & Chancellors Mantle.

Registers, Garters & Black Rods Mantle.

Garters Scepter.

Black Rod



Chancellors Badge

Garters Badge

Black Rods Badge

M. 1st Gucht. Sculp.

BRITISH MUSEUM
28
46
AUG

the Leg; but there's no doubt but it was wrought with rich Embroidery, and the Motto rais'd with Gold, Pearl, and ſundry Sorts of Silk, as may be gueſs'd from the Garters anciently plac'd on the left ſide of the Knights-Companions Mantles, and thoſe other little embroider'd Garters, wherewith their Surcoats and Hoods were heretofore embelliſh'd.

But of thoſe wrought in the laſt Age, we have more particular Satisfaction; for we find the Garter ſent to *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, *Anno* 1 and 2 *Philip* and *Mary*, was ſet with Letters of Goldſmith's Work, the Buckle and Pendant of the ſame, and on the Pendant a Ruby, and a Pearl hanging at the End. The Garter made for *Francis* II. *Anno* 6 *Elizabeth*, was richly wrought with Letters of Gold, ſet off and garniſh'd with Stones, the Buckle and Pendant weighing Three Ounces and an half-quarter, was richly ſet with Rubies and Diamonds. The *French* King *Henry* IV. had a Garter of Purple Velvet embroider'd with Letters of Gold, and deck'd out with Diamonds and Rubies. And the Garter of *Chriſtian* IV. King of *Denmark*, was embroider'd with Gold and Pearls: But that Garter ſent to *Guſtavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, outvied all others conferr'd by former Sovereigns, each Letter of the Motto being compos'd of ſmall Diamonds; and for every Stop, a Diamond within a Range of Diamonds, above and below, on the ſides of the Garter, and beſides other Diamonds on the Buckle, and about the ſame, to the Number in all of 411.

The Garter which King *Charles* I. wore upon his Leg at the Time of his Martyrdom, had the Letters of the Motto compos'd likewiſe of Diamonds, which amounted to the Number of 412. It came to the Hands of Captain *Preſton* (one of the Uſurper's Captains) from whom the Truſtees, for Sale of the King's Goods, receiv'd it, and ſold it to *Ireton*, ſometimes Lord Mayor of *London*, for 205 *l.* But after the Reſtoration, the King's Attorney-General proceeding upon an Action of *Trover* and *Converſion*, Verdict was given for the King againſt him for 205 *l.* and 10 *l.* coſts of Suits, in *Trinity* Term, 16 *Car.* II.

The Motto of King *Charles* II. was ſet with Diamonds upon Blue Velvet, and the Borders wrought with fine Gold Wire; the Diamonds which framed the Letters of the Motto, were Roſe Diamonds, much of a Size or Proportion; but thoſe which framed the Stops, Table-Diamonds; the Total which ſet each Letter, compos'd the Stops, Ilot Holes, and adorn'd the Buckle; the Table was Two Hundred and Fifty; the Hinge of the Buckle was pure Gold, and on it the Sovereign's Picture to the Breaſt, curiouſly cut in Flat-ſtitch, crown'd with a Laurel and the military Garb of the firſt *Roman* Emperors; the Table or Pendant was Gold, and on the back-ſide thereof engrav'd St. *George* on Horſe-back encountring the Dragon.

This noble Enſign, the Garter, was at the Erection of the Order appointed to be wore on the left Leg, a little beneath the Knee, which Uſage ſtill preſides: And the placing it thus, on the Sepulchral Portraictures of Knights-Companions, was an early Cuſtom; for on the Alabaſter Monument of Sir *William Fitz-warin*, who was interr'd in the North-ſide of the Chancel at *Wantage* in *Com. Berks*, 35 *Edw.* III. he lies there with his Surcoat of Arms upon his Breaſt, and the Repreſentation of a Garter (but without Motto) carv'd upon his left Leg. In the ſame Poſture lies Sir *Richard Pembridge*, elected a Knight-Companion, *temp. Edw.* III. and is portraicted on his Monument in the South-ſide of the Cathedral of *Hereford*, below the Pulpit, and encompaſs'd with a Rail of Iron-Spikes.

The next Monument whereon the Garter was depicted, was that erected for Sir *Simon Burley*, (beheaded *A. D.* 1388.) and rear'd in the North-Wall near the Choir of St. *Paul's*, *London*. Thence-forward the Practice became more frequent, and then the Motto began to be cut thereon; inſomuch that it is now the conſtant and juſt Practice to do it, whenſoever the Knights-Companions are exhibited in Effigies.

And altho' this Enſign was firſt deſign'd in Ornament to the left Leg, yet it was not confin'd ſo ſolely thereto, but was anciently us'd to incircle the Eſcutcheon of St. *George*'s Arms, worn by the Sovereign and Knights-Companions on their Mantles, who within a

ſmall

ſmall ſpace after us'd it to ſurround their own proper Coat of Arms, which their Succeſſors have retain'd as their peculiar Privilege, permitting it to none but to their principal Officer, the Prelate of the Order.

The firſt Example that occurs, is the before-menti-on'd of Sir *Francis Burley*, where, on the Front, towards the Head, is his own Arms empaling his firſt Wife's, ſet within a Garter, (wanting the Impreſs;) but another having the ſame Empalement, (plac'd below the Feet) is ſurrounded with a Collar of SS. of the ſame Form with that about his Neck.

The Monument alſo of *Joan*, Wife of *Ralph Nevil*, Earl of *Weſtmoreland*, on the South-ſide of the Choir, in the Cathedral of *Lincoln*, bears the Arms of *Nevil*, empaling thoſe of *Joan*, his Wife, (who dy'd *A. D.* 1410.) Incircled within a Garter, and fix'd on this Lady's Monument, Daughter to *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaſter*, is there ſuch a Collar of SS. placed about a Square; but the Paint being faded, was render'd unintelligible.

Another antique Inſtance is that Eſcutcheon, *Sable, Three Oſtrich Feathers Argent*, ſurrounded with the Garter, affix'd in the Glaſs-Windows of *Greenwich*-Church in *Kent*, by *Humfrey*, Duke of *Gloceſter*, and ſupported with a Greyhound and an Antelope. It is reported, theſe Three Feathers were the Enſign of King *Henry* IV. which were conferr'd by *John* of *Gaunt*, his Father, who bore them for his Device, and placed in a *Field Sable*, as here, but the Pens were powder'd with *Ermin*, for a difference from the Black Prince's Feather, which were *Argent*, as the King's Pen was *Or*, and the Duke of *Somerſet*'s Compony *Argent* and *Azure*.

The Arms of Sir *Lewis Robeſſart*, Lord *Bourchier*, Knight-Companion, *temp. Hen.* V. we find encompaſs'd with a Garter on each ſide his Monument, in *Weſtminſter-Abbey*.

At the Interment of *Richard* Duke of *York*, Father to King *Edw.* IV. at every Corner of the Majeſty-Eſcutcheon (ſet over the Image of the Defunct) was an Eſcutcheon of the Arms of *France* and *England quarterly*, and *Four Angels Gold*, holding the ſame within a Garter. And ſo ſome of the Funeral Eſcutcheons of *John* Viſcount

ſcount *Wells*, (who dy'd 14 *Hen.* VII.) were ſurrounded with the Garter, as others bearing his Lady's Arms.

At the Interment of *Thomas* Duke of *Norfolk*, in *Thetford-Abbey*, (who dy'd 16 *Hen.* VIII.) there was provided a Shield of his Arms within a Garter, and a Coronet affix'd over it; a Target alſo of the Arms of *George*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*, within a Garter, was born at his Funural, *Anno* 33 *Hen.* VIII.

It was the Cuſtom, (begun about the Reign of *Hen.* VII.) when the Obſequies of any Foreign Prince were celebrated in *England*, to paint an Eſcutcheon of ſuch Prince's Arms within the Collar of the Order, whereof he was Sovereign or a Fellow-Companion; as thoſe of the *French* King, *Charles* VIII. celebrated at St. *Paul's*, *London*, had Eſcutcheons of the Arms of *France*, within the Collar of the Order of St. *Michael*, at each End of the Hearſe; and when the Obſequies of *John* King of *Portugal* were ſolemniz'd at St. *Paul's*, there was, among others, one large Eſcutcheon of his Arms within the Collar of the *Golden Fleece*. The Funeral Rites of the Emperor *Charles* V. being perform'd in *Weſtminſter-Abbey*, 22 and 23 *Dec.* 1558. there were Ten great Eſcutcheons compaſs'd with Garters, to ſhew he was a Fellow of this Order: And upon the ſame Account, where Princes were Sovereigns of one, and Companions of another Order, their Hearſes were hung with Eſcutcheons of their Arms, ſurrounded with the Collars or principal Badges of both thoſe Orders; as at the Interment of *Francis* I. the *French* King, celebrated at St. *Paul's*, *London*, 1 *Edw.* VI. the Eſcutcheons were the Arms of *France*, encompaſs'd within the Garter of St. *George*, and Collar of St. *Michael*. At the Obſequies of *Hen.* II. of *France*, *Anno* 1 *Eliz.* at St. *Paul's* alſo, there were ſome Eſcutcheons of his Arms, incircled both with the Garter and Collar of the *Golden Fleece*, having been a Knight-Companion of both theſe Orders: Under the Joyſts was a Majeſty Eſcutcheon of Black Taffaty of this King's Arms, within a Garter crown'd with an Imperial Crown, and in ſeveral Places of the Hearſe were faſten'd other Eſcutcheons of his Arms within this principal Enſign of the Garter.

KING *Hen.* VIII. was the firſt that introduc'd into his Great Seal the Eſchutcheon of his Arms incircled within a Garter, as may be ſeen placed on either ſide his Portraicture ſitting on his Royal Throne; ſince him, all ſucceeding Sovereigns have born their Arms after that Manner, not only in their great and Privy-Seals, but in thoſe other appertaining to their Courts of Juſtice, and generally in all Matters where their Arms were viſible (except Coins); in Imitation of whom, the Knight-Companions have done the like.

BUT there were *An.* 21 *Car.* 1. certain Half Crowns ſtamp'd in the Weſt of *England*, containing the Sovereigns Arms, ſo encompaſſed, regally crowned and ſupported; and this was the firſt Money whereon the Royal Garter appeared. After him King *Charles* II. having an Eye to the Advancement of the Honour of this Order, cauſed the irradicated Croſs of St. *George* encompaſs'd about with the Royal Garter to be publickly ſtamp'd in the Center of his Silver Coin, ſtruck upon the Recoinage of it, *Anno* 14. *Car.* 2.

THERE were other Medals heretofore ſtamp'd upon ſeveral Occaſions, wherein the Garter was deſignedly expreſs'd, and encloſing Shields of their Arms; as that in the Year 1619. *Frederick* Prince *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, was crowned King of *Bohemia*, and *Robert Cecil* Earl of *Salisbury* created Lord Treaſurer, both Knights Companions of this Noble Order: Moreover, Gold Rings have been caſt into the Figures of Garters; the Ground on the outſide enamell'd with a deep Blue, through which the golden Letters of the Motto appearing, ſet them off with an admirable Beauty. And it ſeems ſuch Rings were in vogue ſince the Preface to the black Book of the Order makes mention of wearing the Garter on the Leg and Shoulder, and ſometimes likewiſe ſubcoins the Thumb, *interdum Pollice geſtare*; by which we may naturally conjecture, that Gold Rings were formed into the Faſhion of Garters, and beſtowed by ſome new inſtalled Knights upon their Relations and Friends to wear in Memorial of ſo great an Honour conferred upon them.

AMONG the Officers belonging to the Order the Prelate is permitted to bear his proper Arms (impaled with

those of his See) within the Garter, and the rest only to wear the Badges of their Offices, surrounded with the same to express their peculiar Relation.

Besides the Manner of bearing Arms, within the Garter of this Order, the Garter either in whole or part, hath been by Way of Armory, but without the Motto; as in the Seal belonging to the Office of Garter King of Arms, where the Garter (enclosing a Crown) is placed on a Chief, between a *Lyon* of *England* and a *Flower de Lys* of *France*. And to instance in Family, we find Argent Three *Demy-Garters Azure*, buckled and garnished, *Or*, granted by King *Hen.* VII. to his Servant *Peter Nerborne*, and sable a Garter, *Or*, between Three Buckles of the Second, to be born by *Buckland* or *Bowland in Com. Northampton.*

§. 2. The second Ensign of the Order is the *Mantle*, which is the Chief of those Vestments which the Sovereign and Knights-Companions make use of upon all solemn Occasions relating to the Order. That this Pattern was derived to us from the ancient *Greeks* and *Romans*, is not at all to be disputed, since it so little varies in Fashion from their *Pallium* or *Toga*; for the *Grecian* Pallium was a sort of long Cloak, which only wanted a Collar or Cape, and the *Roman Toga* as proper to them, as the *Pallium* to the *Grecians*, and the Custom as Antique as *Romulus* himself; for he is recited by *Plutarch* to have worn it. The Pallium is more fully described to be a kind of upper Robe that covered the whole Body, made fast on the right Shoulder with a Fibula or Clasp. It was usually worn over the Tunica or short Coat, whence the Proverb *Tunica Pallio propior*, and is more particularly observed to have been a Garment fashioned without Sleeves, that reached down to the Ancles.

In describing this upper Robe, called the *Mantle*, (the Sovereigns being distinguished from the Knights-Companions, only by a long Train) we shall first set down its various Appellations it is mentioned by in the Records of the Order; Secondly, the Materials whereof it consists; Thirdly, the Colour; Fourthly, the Quantity; and last of all the Ornamental Trimmings, that nothing be omitted to satisfy any curious Enquirer.

NAME.

NAME.

In the Founder's Statutes it is called *Mantellum*, and in *Hen.* V. *Manteau*, both which we render *Mantle*. But the Exemplar of the Founder's Statutes entred in the black Book, and the Statutes of King *Henry* VIII. call it *Trabea*, which *Roſinus* reckons among the different Kinds of *Mantles* or *Gowns*. And in 20 *Art.* of King *Hen.* VIIIth's Statutes, it is applied both to the *Mantle* and *Surcoat*; ſometime it is ſtiled *Chlamyda*; ſometime *Stola*; but in other Places more pertinently, *Pallium* and *Toga*.

MATERIALS.

That Mantle prepared for the Founder againſt the firſt Feaſt of this Order, appears to be fine Woollen Cloth, and it is not improbable this Material was choſen, rather than any other richer, to the Intent the Founder might give the Preference to our native Commodity, altho' there's permitted in the Statutes of Inſtitution a permiſſion for the Proxies of Foreign Princes to bring over with them Mantles of Silk and Velvet when they came to receive poſſeſſion of their Principal Stalls, either becauſe other Countries were better ſtored with ſuch Commodities than our *Engliſh* Cloth, or that it might be more agreeable to repreſent the State and Grandeur of Foreign Princes, as accounting Silk or Velvet the nobler Repreſentation.

What Duration the wearing Cloth had, is not directly ſet down, but the firſt time we diſcover their Mantles to be of Velvet, is about the beginning of the Reign of King *Hen.* VI. which Sort of Silk hath thence remained until this Day. About this Period, 'tis obſerved, that the Mantles of Foreign Princes were made here of Velvet, for ſo was that tranſmitted to the King of *Portugal*, elected *Anno* 1346. Concerning the Mantles of the Knights-Companions, there is no doubt but they were of the ſame Materials with thoſe made for the Sovereign, *viz.* at firſt of fine Woollen Cloth, and when the Sovereign exchanged it for Velvet, they followed his Example; but we cannot meet with equal Satisfaction in this Point, becauſe the Knights-Companions provided this Robe at their own Expence; and

their private Accounts herein paſſing thro' ſo many Contingences, were of no great Durability. But their Surcoats were of the Sovereigns Donation, and conſequently the Particulars of them remain on Record in the Rolls and Accounts of the great Wardrobe.

The Colour of theſe Mantles is appointed by the Statutes to be Blue, and of this Colour was the Founders; by which, as by the Ground-work of the Royal Garter, it is not improbable he alluded to the Colour of the Field in the *French* Arms, which a few Years before he began to Quarter with thoſe of *England*. But the Colour of the Surcoat was changed every Year, as will appear by and by. Of the ſame Colour were the Velvet Mantles, made *temp. Hen.* VI. who tho' he altered the Stuff, did not vary the Dye. It is apparent, that the blue Colour was retained to King *Edw.* IVth's Reign, for when this Sovereign tranſmitted the Habit and Enſigns of the Order to *Julian de Medicis*, the Mantle was of blue Velvet.

But in King *Hen.* VIIIth's Statutes there's no mention at all of the Colour of this upper Robe, ſave only of the *Mantle*, which the Proxy of a Foreign Prince was enjoined to bring with him when he came to aſſume the Stall of his Principal; which, tho' it does not come directly up to thePoint,yet it is to be obſerved to be of blue Velvet. And it's highly probable that the blue Colour remained ſtill to be uſed; for within a few Months after the compiling the ſaid Statutes, it's plain, the Mantle ſent to *James* King of *Scotland*, was of blue Velvet, and in the ancient Form of Admonition and Signification appointed to be ſpoke at the Inveſtiture of Foreign Princes, and then in Plea it is called *the Mantle of celeſtial Colour*. Likewiſe the Mantle ſent to *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, 1 and 2 *Ph.* and *Mar.* was of the ſame Compoſure.

In Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, upon what Ground Hiſtory is ſilent, the Colour of Foreign Prince's Mantles was changed from Blue to Purple, for of that Colour were the Mantles ſent to the *French* Kings, *Charles* IX. *Anno. 6 Eliz.* and *Hen.* III. *Ann.* 27 *Eliz.* So alſo to the Emperor *Maximilian* 9 *Elizabeth*, to *Fredrick* II. King of *Denmark*, *An.* 24 *Eliz.* to *Joh. Caſimire* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, *Anno* 21 *Eliz.* to *Chriſtiern* IV.

King

King of *Denmark*, *An.* J. R. IV. But that ſent to *Frederick* Duke of *Wirtemberg* in the ſame Year, was a mix'd Colour of Purple and Violet.

THUS the Purple Colour came in Requeſt, and continued till about the 12 of King *Charles* I. when he determining to reſtore the Colour of the Mantle to the primitive Inſtitution, gave Directions to Mr. *Peter Richaut*, Merchant, to provide himſelf with a Quantity of rich blue Velvets from *Genoa*; and upon their arrival into *England*, ſignify'd his Pleaſure by Sir *Thomas Rowe* the Chancellor, That all Knights-Companions ſhould purchaſe as much of the ſaid Velvet as would furniſh them with new Robes againſt St. *George*'s-Day next enſuing; compliance to whoſe Will, all the Knights paid Obedience, at the Rate of Thirty ſeven Shillings a Yard, being the Price the Sovereign paid to Mr. *Richaut* for the Velvet of his own Robes. And the firſt Eſſay of theſe Mantles was to honour the Inſtallation of the Prince, afterwards King *Charles* II.

AND becauſe there were many Knights-elect to be inſtalled after the Reſtoration, it was ordained at the Chapter held at *Whitehall* the 14*th* of *Jan. Anno* 12. *Car.* 2. (called to conſider of the Preparations of the grand Feaſt then at hand), That Directions ſhould be given to the Maſter of the Wardrobe to negotiate Abroad for excellent Velvets of Skie Colour, and Crimſon, and other Materials agreeable for the Mantles and Surcoats, both of the old Knights-Companions, and thoſe that were then to be inſtalled; which was accordingly effected, and they were tranſmitted in time to accommodate them at the ſaid Feaſt.

THO' the juſt Number of Ells of Cloth for the Sovereigns Mantle at the firſt Inſtitution are not ſet down, yet in the Total for his Mantle, Hood, and Surcoat, there was allowed ten Ells of long Cloth. The Mantle of King *Henry* VI. took up one Piece, five Ells and three Quarters of blue Velvet; and thoſe ſent to *Frederick* II. and *Chriſtian* IV. Kings of *Denmark*; and to the *French* King, *Henry* III. contained each twenty Yards of Velvet.

THIS we find to be the Allowance for Foreign Princes, and are the more full and extenſive, by reaſon of their

long Train, which being more ſcanty in the Mantles of Knights-Subjects, eighteen Yards was ſufficient to make one of them. The full Length of King *Charles* II. from the Collar behind to the end of the Train, was three Yards the Length of the foreſide, one Yard and three Quarters from the Foot along the bottom to the fixing on of the Train, was two Yards, and from thence the Length or Compaſs of the Train, two Yards.

THE left Shoulder of each of theſe Mantles have from the Inſtitution been adorned with a large fair Garter, containing this Motto, *Honi ſoit qui mal y penſe.* Theſe were diſtinguiſhed from the leſſer Garters, anciently embroider'd upon the Surcoats and Hoods of the Sovereigns and Knights-Companions, by the Name of *Garters Groſs.*

WITHIN this Garter was the Arms of St. *George*, *viz.* Argent a *Croſs Gules*, and was heretofore wrought in Sattin, with Gold, Silver and Silk; but in deſcending Times greater Expence and Magnificence became the Practice of the Order, for it was embordered upon Velvet with Damask, Gold, and ſundry Sorts of Purls, Plates, *Venice* Twiſts and Silks, and the Letters of the Motto and Borders of the Garter compoſed of fair Oriental Pearl. The Garter fix'd upon the Mantle of King *Charles* II. was encircled with large Oriental Pearl, ſo were the Letters of the Motto and the Croſs within the Garter, the Diameter of which was ſeven Inches, but the Depth from the upper Part to the end of the Pendant, ten Inches.

Temp. Hen. VI. it ſeems to have been the Mode to embelliſh the Mantle with three or four Velts drawn down the ſides, and round the bottom, as it appears by the Monument of *John Talbot* Earl of *Shrewsbury* in the South-wall of the Chancel of *Whitechurch in Com. Salop.*

ABOUT that Time the Lining of this Robe was white Damask, and afterwards white Sattin; but of later Date it was lined with white Taffaty, which continues yet in vogue.

FOR exemplary Ornament, the Mantle had fixed to its Collar a pair of long Strings, anciently woven of blue Silk only (called *Cordons*, Robe-ſtrings or Laces); but

of

of later Days, twiſted round and made of *Venice* Gold and Silk of the Colour of the Robe, at each end of which hung a great Knob or Button, wrought over and raiſed with a rich Caul of Gold, and Taſſels thereunto of like Silk and Gold.

And at the Collar was uſually fixed an Hook and Eye of Gold for its firmer affixing of it to the Shoulders.

§. 3. The Third Enſign of the Order is the *Surcoat* or *Kirtle*, which altho' we find no Place for it in the Founder's Statutes, is nevertheleſs as ancient as the Mantle or upper Robe, that is only taken Notice of there, for ſuch a Veſture King *Edward* III. then made, together with his Mantle and a Hood to celebrate the firſt Feaſt of the Order in.

Its Original it owes to the *Greeks* and *Romans*; amongſt whom this Garment had its determinated *Tunica*, and was worn next under the *Toga*, but amongſt them was both narrower and ſhorter; it was girt cloſe to the Body with a Girdle, and ſo fitted, that the Hem of it reached a little below the Knee, or to the middle of the Ham. It was the proper Mode of the *Roman* Citizens, and by its trimming were the three Degrees among them known; for the Senators Tunicks were embroidered or purfled over with broad purple Studs, the Knights with narrow ones, and the Plebeians plain.

In ſetting forth the Surcoat, which was heretofore annually beſtowed by the Sovereign or the Knights-Companions, and therefore called his *Livery*, we ſhall, as in the Deſcription of the Mantle, treat ſomewhat of the Name, Materials, Colour, Quantity and Garniſhing of it.

As to the Name in the old Rolls of the great Wardrobe, it is ſtiled *Roba*, but more properly as the Founder's firſt Surcoat is called *Tunica*, which Name it bears in the red Book of the Order. In *Engliſh* it is rendred *Gown*, *Kirtle*, *Surcoat*, *Undercoat* and *Robe*. The Appellation of *Gown* is attributed to *Surcoats* of the Sovereigns and Foreign Princes, *Temp. Hen.* VI. *Edw.* IV. and *Hen.* VII. But ſince, and very lately, it hath been beſtowed alſo on the Surcoats of Knights-Companions; and that of *Kirtle* ſometimes given to thoſe ſent to Foreign

reign Princes, as appears by the Books of Warrants in the great Wardrobe, but the reſt are Terms of a later Date: As the firſt Mantles, ſo the firſt Surcoats were compoſed of Woollen Cloth, and tho' the Cloth of the Mantles was in ſome ſpace after changed for Velvet, yet the Surcoats continued afterwards to be of Cloth, at leaſt till after the Office of Chancellor of the Garter was erected by King *Edward* IV. as is manifeſt by the Precedent of this Livery in the Sovereigns great Wardrobe; but in proceſs of Time they became Velvet, which ſort of Silk is yet retained.

The Colour of this Veſture was anciently changed every Year, commonly into Blue, Scarlet, Sanguine in Grain, or White. But the Colour of the Mantles remained the ſame as at the Inſtitution, until Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, and then it commenced Blue: And 'tis remarkable, that the Surcoats of the Knights-Companions, were always of the ſame Colour with the Sovereigns.

The Founder's firſt Surcoat was of the ſame Cloth and Colour with the Mantle, *viz.* Blue, but in the 34th Year of his Reign he altered it to Black, and of the ſame Colour were thoſe he conferred that Year upon theſe following Knights-Companions, *viz.* the Black Prince, the Earls of *Ulſter*, *Richmond* and *Salisbury*, *Edmund* of *Langly*, Sir *Richard la Vache*, Sir *Hugh Wroteſly*, Sir *Reginald Cobham*, Sir *Bartholomew Burgheſt*, the Lord *Mohun*, Sir *Walter Manney*, Sir *Nele Loring*, Sir *Walter Paveley*, Sir *William Fitz Warin*, Sir *Miles Stapleton*, the Earls of *Stafford*, *Warwick* and *Suffolk*, and Sir *Thomas Ughtred*: The Motive that induced him to pitch upon this ſable Colour, was conceived to be a kind of Humiliation, becauſe the Peſtilence began again to ſpread its Malevolence, which had furiouſly raged Eleven Years before. The Surcoats which the Sovereign gave the Dukes of *Lancaſter* and *Clarence*, and Fourteen other Knights, *Anno* 37. *Edward* III. were of Cloth, Sanguine in Grain. Thoſe Twenty four provided for the Feaſt of St. *George*, *Anno* 7 *Richard* II. were Violet in Grain, whereof one was for the Sovereign, the other Twenty three for the Knights-Companions, following *John* King of *Caſtile*, and *Leonard* Duke of *Lancaſter*, the Earls of *Cambridge*,

Cambridge, *Buckingham*, *Derby*, *Kent*, *Warwick*, *Stafford*, *Salisbury*, *Northumberland* and *Nottingham*, the Lords *Nevil*, *Baſſet*, and *John Holland*, Sir *Guy Bryan*, Sir *William Beauchamp*, Sir *Thomas Percy*, Sir *Nele Loring*, Sir *John Sulby*, Sir *Lodowick Clifford*, Sir *Simon Burley*, Sir *Richard Burley*, Sir *Bryan Stapleton* and Sir *Soldan de la Trane*.

Anno 11 *Richard* II. there were ordered againſt St. *George*'s Feaſt Twenty three Surcoats of white Cloth for the Sovereign, and Twenty two Knights-Companions; and the 12 and 19 Year of the ſame King, the Sovereign beſtowed on the ſame Perſons Surcoats of long blue Cloth, after the Original Model. The Twenty two Surcoats made up for the Feaſt of St. *George*, *Anno* 1 *Henry* V. were of white Cloth; *Anno* --- *Henry* VI. the Sovereigns Gown or Surcoat was of Scarlet, as was that ſent to the King of *Portugal* in the 13th Year of the ſame King. *Anno* --- *Henry* VI. the Sovereign had white Cloth; and ſo were the Surcoats given to Twenty Knights-Companions more in the ---- Year of his Reign. Afterwards the beforementioned Four Colours began to be diſuſed, for the Surcoat preſented to *Julian de Medicis*, *temp. Edward* IV. was purple Velvet, and towards the latter end of the Reign of King *Henry* VIII. and ſince, it is upon Record, the Surcoats of the Sovereign and all the Knights-Companions were Crimſon Velvet, nor did the Colour ſuffer a Mutation in the Surcoat, tho' King *Charles* I. reſtored the Mantle to its firſt primitive Colour, *Anno* 12 *Regni ſui*.

THERE has been ſome diſproportion in the Quantity of the Cloth allowed in the Proviſion againſt one and the ſame Feaſt, for *Anno* 34 *Edward* III. the Earls of *Stafford*, *Warwick* and *Suffolk*, as alſo Sir *Thomas Ughtred* had then for each of their Surcoats ſix Ells of Cloth (perhaps the tallneſs of their Stature required it) when the other Fifteen Knights were allowed but five Ells, being the ſame Quantity the Sovereign's Surcoat had contained in it at the ſame time.

THE Dukes of *Holland* and *Clarence*, *Anno* 1 *Henry* V. with the Earls of *Arundel*, were allowed Eight Ells apiece, the Dukes of *Bedford*, *Glouceſter* and *York*, the Earls of *Weſtmorland* and *Warwick*, the Lords *Grey*,

Fitz

Fitz Hugh and *Roos*, ſix Ells apiece; the Earls of *Dorſet*, with ſix Barons and five Knights Batchelors, but five Ells apiece. Afterwards, when the Number of Ells of Cloth, Garters and Furrs came to be aſcertained for each Degree, all the Knights-Companions (even the Prince of *Wales*) were not to exceed five Ells: But ſince Velvet came in Plea, the Allowance for Surcoat and Hood hath been eighteen Yards, when the Surcoat reached down to the Feet; but now it being the Faſhion to wear it ſhorter, the Allowance is ſtinted to Ten. The Length of King *Charles* II's Surcoat was one Yard and an half, and of the Sleeve one Yard wanting a Nail.

The Ornamental Trimmings of theſe Garments are next worthy of Note, eſpecially at the Time of Inſtituting this Order, for they were then, and a long time after, powdered all over with little Garters, embroidered with Silk and Gold-Plate, in each of which was neatly wrought the Motto, *Honi ſoit, &c.* Beſides, the Buckles and Pendants to thoſe ſmall Garters, were Silver gilt; of theſe Garters there were no leſs than 160 upon the firſt Surcoat and Hood made for the Founder.

In King *Richard* II's Reign, the little Garters that adorned the Surcoats of the Sovereign, and the other Knights were wrought in Embroidery upon blue Taffaty with Cyprus, and Soldat Gold and Silk of divers Colours, and the Letters Gold. And as the Sovereign was not limited in the Proportion of Cloth or Velvet for his Surcoat, no more was he confined to the Number of Garters, wherewith to adorn it; nor do I find that any of the Knights-Companions were, until the Precedent of the Livery of the Garter was ſettled, for *Anno* 1 *Henry* V. the Dukes of *Holland* and *Clarence*, the Earl of *Arundel*, the Dukes of *Bedford* and *Glouceſter* had each of their Surcoats adorned with 120 Garters, but the Duke of *York* and the reſt wore but 100. The Settlement in the Precedent of the Livery was, in relation to Degrees of Honour, a greater or leſs Number of Garters: Thus,

A Duke - - - - -	120	Garters.
A Marquis - - - -	110	
An Earl - - - - -	100	
A Viſcount - - - -	90	
A Baron - - - - -	80	
A Baronet - - - -	70	
A Knight-Batchelor-	60	

About the Reign of King *Henry* VI. the Sovereigns Number of Garters did not much exceed thoſe which the Founder allow'd to himſelf at the Inſtitution; for the Surcoat and Hood of the ſaid King conſiſted of 173; and the King of *Portugal*, *Anno* 13 *Henry* VI. 120 Garters. But this Drapery of their Robes became at length quite obſolete, perhaps when Cloth was altered to Velvet, and the plain Surcoat hath to this Day continued in Uſe.

While theſe Surcoats remained of Cloth, they were lined with Bellies of pure Minever Fur, only the Sovereigns was purfled with Ermin; and of theſe, it ſeems, a like Proportion was at firſt ſtated to all the Knights-Companions, *viz.* 200 Bellies. Yet in the Reign of King *Richard* II. ſome Difference began in the Allowance to the Knights-Companions, for a Baron, and all Degrees upward had 200 Bellies; but under a Baron 120 only. However, *Anno* 1. *Henry* V. the Barons were tantamount to the Knights-Batchelors, for all Degrees above a Baron were allow'd, a Fur of 200 Bellies. But the Barons and Knights-Batchelors Furs were only 120 Bellies.

Afterwards, by the Precedent of the Garter, there was another Proportion limited, the Prince, a Duke, a Marquis, an Earl, had each of them Five Timber of pure Minever allowed to a Surcoat; but the Viſcount, Baron, Baronet and Batchelor-Knights but Three Timber apiece. In time theſe Furs were diſuſed, and the Surcoats came to be lined with white Sarcenet, to which, *temp. Eliz.* white Taffaty ſuccceded, and that ſtill continues.

What became of the old Surcoats, ſince the Knights-Companions had new ones every Year, the Black Book of the Order informs us, That on the Eve of the Feaſt

of

of St. *George*, the Knights wore to Veſpers, the Sovereigns Livery or Surcoats, uſed by them the preceding Year, which after that Night they threw off, (for the new Surcoats were worn on the Feaſt-Day) ; but the Enſigns and Ornaments of this Kind were diſpoſed of to the Uſe of the Colledge.

The Hood and Cap comes in the next Place to be ſpoken of, which Hood in King, *Henry* VIII's Statutes, and the Black Book of the Order is called *Humerale* ; but in the Rolls of the Great Wardrobe, *Capucium*. In the *French* it is *Chaperon*, a Word uſed in the Statute, *Anno* 1. *Richard* II. *C.* 7. and alſo retained in the Old *Engliſh* Copy of *Henry* VIII's Statutes made of his Reign, and annexed to this Treatiſe. They were anciently wore for Defence of the Head againſt the Inclemencies of Weather, but of later Times Caps and Hats have ſupplied their place. How they ſat upon the Head, may be obſerved in the Portraitures of the firſt Founders ; as alſo with ſome Variety of Faſhion in ſucceeding Ages: Yet is not the Hood quite thrown by, ſince 'tis ſtill kept reclining upon the Back, almoſt like a Pilgrim's Hat.

This Hood was ordained, and is yet retained as part of the Habit of this moſt Noble Order. And tho' neither it nor the Surcoat is mentioned in the Statutes of Inſtitution, or in either its Exemplars, nor doth King *Henry* V. lay any Streſs upon it, yet it is of equal Antiquity with the reſt, as appears from the Rolls of the great Wardrobe, and *Henry* VIII's Statutes have made remarkable Obſervation of it, for the Mantle, Surcoat, Hood, and Collar are called the Habit of the Order: And in the Black Book, *Anno* 22. *Henry* VII. at the Inveſtiture of *Philip* King of *Caſtile*, the Mantle, Kirtle, Hood and Collar are expreſly called *Whole Habit*.

It was heretofore, and now is generally made of the ſame Materials as the Surcoat, and was anciently trimmed and ſet off with a ſmall Proportion of Garters lined with Cloth of a different Colour, and ſuch as would beſt ſtrike the Sight ; but now with Taffaty, as is the Lining of the Surcoat.

As to the Cap, which was inſtituted to ſucceed the Hood ; it hath been, and yet is, faſhioned of black Velvet,

Velvet lin'd with Taffaty; but the Figure hath ſeveral Times varied; for *Temp. Henry* VIII. it was flat, in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign it was a little raiſed in the Head; but in King *James*'s Time they were much more high-crown'd. This Cap hath been uſually adorn'd with Plumes of White Feathers, and Spriggs, and bound about with a Band ſet thick with Diamonds; ſo was the Cap for the Inſtallation of King *Charles* II. and ſometimes the Brims have been tack'd up with a large and coſtly Jewel.

This Cuſtom of wearing Caps and Feathers at the Grand Solemnities of the Order, had, for ſome Time, about the Beginning of King *James* I. Reign, been omitted, and thereupon, in a Chapter held the 13th of *April*, *Anno* 10. *Jac.* I. this commendable Cuſtom was re-eſtabliſh'd.

To theſe may be added the Croſs of the Order encompaſs'd with a Garter, which by the Sovereign was ordain'd the 27th of *April*, 2 *Car.* I. to be worn upon the Left Side of the Cloaks, Coats, and riding Caſſocks of the Sovereigns and Knights-Companions, of the Prelate and Chancellor at all Times, when they were not adorn'd with their Robes, and in all Places and Aſſemblies (but not embelliſh'd with Pearls and Stones) that the wearing thereof might be a ſufficient Indication to the World, of that Height of Honour they arriv'd to from the ſaid moſt Noble Order, inſtituted for Perſons of the greateſt Merit and Worth.

And it was not long after e'er the Glory or Star, as it was uſually call'd, having certain Beams of Silver, that ſhot out in Form of a Croſs, was introduc'd and annex'd to it, in Imitation (as thought) of the *French*, who after the ſame manner wore the chief Enſign of the Order of the *Holy Ghoſt*, being the Repreſentation of a Dove irradiated with ſuch like Beams.

And whereas ſome Painters affirm the Symbol of the Holy Ghoſt to be thus adorn'd congruous enough, yet cenſure it improper for a Garter, let them conſider that King *Edw.* IV. erected his White Roſe with the like Glory, whereof both the Stone Work and Wood Work of St. *George*'s Chapel in *Windſor*, manifeſtly illuſtrate, whoſe Antiquity makes a Precedent for it long before the

the Inſtitution of the Order of the *Holy Ghoſt*; but this King aſſum'd this Device upon appearance of three Suns, which ſuddenly united together into one immediately, before his ſucceſsful Victory at *Mortimer's-Croſs*, a happy *Æra* he thought himſelf oblig'd to perpetuate. And they miſtake who ſuppoſe it to be the Garter that is thus irradiated, whereas it is ſomething elſe more worthy of the Glory, for from it, not the Garter, do the Rays diffuſe, *viz.* the inclos'd Croſs of the Order, celebrated as glorious, ſince it darted its bright Beams from Heaven, when it appear'd to *Conſtantine the Great*; as the ſame is repreſented on a Silver Medal: On the one Side whereof was a *Buſt in profile*, or ſide Face of King *Charles* I. and on the Reverſe, this Badge of the Order, within a Garter, inſcrib'd, *Honi*, &c. a Croſs irradiated, diſperſing its Beams in a Rhombular Form of Eight Angles, beyond the Orbit or bounding Lines of the ſaid Garter, having for Circumſcription, *Priſci decus Ordinis Auctum*, 1629.

§ 5. HAVING finiſh'd our Diſcourſe concerning the Robes of the Order, we ſhall ſpeak of the Robes and Hoods aſſign'd to the Queen, Knights-Companions Wives, and other great Ladies, by the Donation of the Sovereigns, ſet off and embelliſhed with Minute Garters, and lin'd with Rich Furs, which Robes they were adorn'd with during the Solemnity of the Feaſt of St. *George*, a Cuſtom almoſt as ancient as its Inſtitution. The firſt Mention we find recorded of the Feminine Habit occurs, *Anno* 7. R. II. when the Queen, the Sovereign's Mother, the Dutcheſs of *Lancaſter*, the Counteſſes of *Cambridge*, *Buckingham*, *Pembroke*, *Oxford*, and *Salisbury*, the Ladies *Philippa* and *Catherine*, Daughters to the Duke of *Lancaſter*, and the Lady *Mohun* had ſuch kind of Robes and Hoods provided for them. They were made of Cloth, Violet in Grain, like as the Sovereign and Knights-Companions that Year, the Robes lin'd with Fur, but the Hoods with Scarlet, and both embroidered over with little Garters, and the Proportion of Cloth, Furs, and Garters, were ſtated according to their ſeveral Ranks and Degrees; for the Queen had Eight Ells, and Half an Ell of Scarlet

Scarlet for the Lining of her Hood. The Sovereign's Mother had allow'd her one whole Piece, and a double Proportion of Scarlet; but from the large Quantity it is conceiv'd ſhe had Two Robes and Hoods made at this time: Beſides, the particular Number are but Eleven Perſons, and cannot elſe reach the Total of the Robes that were made up and expreſly ſet down to be Twelve. The Dutcheſs of *Lancaſter* had the Allowance of Half a Piece, and Half an Ell of Scarlet; the Counteſs of *Cambridge* Seven Ells of Cloth and Half an Ell of Scarlet, and the reſt of the Ladies the ſame Proportion of Cloth with the Knights-Companions, *i. e.* each Five Ells a-piece, and Half an Ell of Scarlet. According to their Cloth was alſo their Proportion of Minever; the Queen's Allowance was Two Furs, each containing Three Hundred Bellies of pure Minever; the Sovereign's Mother had twice that Proportion, the Dutcheſs of *Lancaſter*, and Counteſs of *Cambridge* had the ſame Allowance as the Queen; but all the reſt of the Ladies had only one Fur of Two Hundred Bellies. Beſides the embroidered Garters to deck out the Twenty-four Surcoats of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions, and the Twelve Robes for the Queen, and other Ladies, amounted to the Number of 2900.

AGAINST the Feaſt of St. *George*, *Anno.* 11. *R.* II. there were prepared Fifteen Robes and Hoods for the Queen and other Ladies, of the ſame Livery and ſuit with the Sovereign and Knights-Companions, *viz.* White long Cloth, and Blue Cloth for the Lining of their Hoods, bearing the ſame Proportion in all Things as the former, *Anno* 13. *Rich.* II. the Ladies Robes and Hoods were Sanguine Cloth, and the Lining of their Hoods Cloth in Grain. And in the 19th *Rich.* II. they were Blue Cloth, and long Cloth in Grain for Lining their Hoods. In both theſe Years we find the Dutcheſs of *Aquitaine* had double the Proportion of Cloth allow'd her (as had alſo the Dutcheſs of *York*) *viz.* Fourteen Ells, (the Queen having then but the former Allowance of Eight Ells) and yet her Proportion of Lining, both for the Robe and Hood, was no more than allow'd the Queen.

But *Anno* 1 *Henry* V. the ſame Quantities of Cloth, Minevers, and Garters, were the ſame to Ladies of all Degrees, and that was to each Five Ells of White Woollen Cloth, only the Queen-Mother had Eight Ells of White Cloth and Eight Ells of Black Cloth, a Fee containing Two Hundred Bellies of Minever, and an Hundred embroidered Garters, and 12 *Henry* VI. the Maſter of the great Wardrobe was commanded to make ready the like Livery, both for Colour of Cloth, number of Ells, Bellies of Minever, and Garters, for the Counteſs of *Suffolk*, againſt the approaching Feaſt of St. *George*.

A plainer Narrative is made of theſe Liveries, *Anno* 16 *Edw.* IV. when at the Feaſt of St. *George* at *Windeſor*, the Queen, the Lady *Elizabeth*, the King's Daughter, and Dutcheſs of *Suffolk*, the King's Siſter, had for their Livery Murrey Gowns embroidered with Garters.

Beſides theſe Robes worn by the Ladies at the Feſtivals of the Order, there ſeems to be ſome Imitation of wearing a Garter alſo on their Left Arms, as the Knights did on their Left Leg, as it is obſerv'd on the Counteſs of *Tankerville*'s Monument, where ſhe is ſo pourtray'd.

After a long Diſuſe of theſe Robes, *Anno* 14 *Car.* I. there was an endeavour to reſtore it; for the Deputy Chancellor ſollicited the Sovereign in Chapter, That the Ladies of the Knights-Companions might be granted the Privilege to wear a Garter of the Order about their Arms, and an upper Robe at Feſtival Times, according to ancient Uſage, upon which Motion the Sovereign gave Order that the Queen's Pleaſure ſhould be known herein, and the Affair left to the Ladies particular Requeſt, and the Year enſuing, upon the Deputy Chancellor's Report at another Chapter at *Windeſor*, it was then left to a Chapter to be called by the Knights-Companions, to preponderate of every Circumſtance, how it were fitteſt to be effected for the Honour and Luſtre of the Order; which was appointed to be held at *London* about *All-hollantide* next; But the unhappy War breaking out, this Matter entirely broke off.

§. 6.

§ 6. THERE remains now the Collar and *George*, brought in by King *Henry* VIII. And firſt, of Collars in general, which is an Ornament not of late, but ancient Invention, and the wonderful Conſent of moſt Nations plead for it: Sacred Writ ſets down the Collar of Gold for one of the Ornaments *Pharaoh* conferr'd upon *Joſeph*. The Images of *Iſis* and *Oſiris* were repreſented with ſuch like Collars, in a manner, extending to their Shoulders, as *Kircher* informs us. Their Workmanſhip ſeems wonderfully curious, being interſected with various Lines, and divided with Tablets and precious Stones. The Collar was of an illuſtrious Original among the *Romans*, and gave Denomination to the Family of *Torquati*, deſcended from *L. Manlius*, whom the Soldiers ſurnam'd *Torquatus*, becauſe he fought with a Champion of the *Gauls*, *Anno V. C.* 392. and, having foil'd him in fight, cut off his Head, and then pluck'd off his Collar, bloody as it was, and put it about his own Neck. In further Memory of which Action were found ſeveral *Roman* Coins referring to *L. Torquatus*, Conſul with *L. Cotta*, *Anno V. C.* 688. And it's remarkable that when one of another Tribe was adopted into this Family, he did alſo aſſume this Badge of Honour, as in the Coin of *D. Junius Silanus*, tho' the Faſhion of the Work ſomewhat differ'd from the former.

IN priſtine Times none but Kings and Princes wore Collars, and therefore their Uſe ſeems of Dignity and Power, as is evident from *Daniel*, where the *Aſſyrian* Kings uſed this Ornament. Afterwards Men famous for Wiſdom and Council, had them as a diſtinguiſhing Badge, as in the Example of *Joſeph*, and from the Proclamation of *Belſhazzar* King of *Babylon*, who propoſed it as a Præmium to him that could interpret the Hand-Writing upon the Wall. And Men famous for Military Atchievements had it conferr'd upon them, in Recompence of their Merits; thus Collars were of the Number of the *Dona & Præmia Militaria* among the the *Romans*, and the Honour of receiving them thought worthy to be conſign'd to Poſterity in Marble Inſcriptions. From them the later Emperors receiv'd it, and we read of inveſting a Knight of the *Holy Sepulchre* with a

Collar at his Creation; where, as ſoon as the Ceremony of his Ordination is over, the Padre Guardian Kiſſes the new Made Knight, and puts about his Neck (according to the mode of the Ancients) a Golden Collar, with a Croſs hanging at it.

Most aptly therefore have the Sovereigns of Military Orders annex'd this Ornament of the Collar to their Habit, and conferr'd it on the Fellows and Companions, many of whom have meritoriouſly deſerv'd it for their great Wiſdom and valorous Exploits, and for this reaſon it was inſtituted in additional Glory to the Enſigns of the Garter, compos'd in a peculiar manner, in Relation to the Name and Title; to the wearing of which the Sovereign oblig'd both himſelf and Knights-Companions, and his and their Succeſſors.

This Collar was ordain'd to be of Gold Thirty Ounces Troy weight, but not to exceed it; howbeit that Collar ſent to *Guſtavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, weigh'd Thirty-four Ounces and a Quarter, and that of King *Charles* I. 35 Ounces and an Half; which, after his Sufferings, fell into the Hands of *Thomas Harriſon*, one of *Oliver's* Major-Generals, and was by him delivered to the Truſtees for Sale of the King's Goods: They, 1649. ſent it to the *Mint*, with divers of the *Regalia*, to ſet the Stamp on work for the firſt Gold that the upſtart Common-wealth coin'd.

It was appointed by King *Henry* VIII's Statutes, that this Collar ſhould be compos'd of Pieces of Gold in Faſhion of Garters, the Ground enamelled Blue, and the Letters of the Motto Gold; in the midſt of each Garter, Two Roſes plac'd, the innermoſt enamelled Red, and the outermoſt White, contrarily in the next Garter, the innermoſt Roſe enamelled White, and the outermoſt Red, and ſo alternately; but of later Times theſe Roſes are wholly Red.

The Number of theſe Garters are ſo many as be the ordain'd Number of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions; at the Inſtitution they were Twenty-ſix, being faſten'd together with as many Knots of Gold, and this Mode hitherto has continu'd invariable; nor ought the Collar to be adorn'd or enrich'd with precious Stones, (as the *George* may be) ſuch being prohibited by the Law of the Order.

At

At the Middle of the Collar before pendant, at the Table of one of the Garters in the Collar is to be fix'd the Image of St. *George* arm'd ſitting on Horſeback, who having thrown the Dragon on his Back encounters him with a Tilting-Spear. This Jewel is not encompaſs'd with a Garter or Row of Diamonds, as in the leſſer *George*; but in round Relief. It is allow'd to be beautified and ſett off with Diamonds and other Enrichments, at the Pleaſure of the Knight-Companion who poſſeſſed it, and upon that Score it hath been frequently adorn'd with Variety of coſtly Work, whereon the Diamonds, and other precious Stones, being ſet to that Advantage as might, upon its Motion and Agitation, dart forth a reſplendent Luſtre.

Before the Eſtabliſhment of this Article by King *Henry* VIII. it appears that the Knights-Companions were inveſted with Collars at their Inſtallations, for the Black Book makes mention of a Collar among the Enſigns of the Garter, wherewith *Philip* King of *Caſtile* was inveſted, *Anno* 22 *Henry* VII. but whether a Collar of SS's, or of another Model, is not ſpecifi'd: Nevertheleſs this Scruple is in part clear'd up by an old Memorial of the Ceremonies, at the Creating *Henry* Lord *Stafford* Earl of *Wiltſhire*, 1 *Henry* VIII. where it is ſaid in the Annals, that after he was inveſted with the Robes of his State and Dignity, the Collar of the Garter was put about his Neck at conſtituting him a Knight of the Order. And to make it more conſpicuous in a Vellum Book of the Statutes ſent to *Maximilian* the Emperor, ſign'd 1508. by the Regiſter *T. Rowthale*, and in another of *Edward Stanley* Lord *Monteagle*, elected *ann.* 6. *Hen.* VIII. the Forty Firſt Article, enjoins a Collar to be worn by each Knight-Companion expreſly called the Collar of the Order, which tho' it be not in all Reſpects conſentient to that preſcribed by King *Henry* VIII's Statutes, yet there is not much Variation, and 'tis reported to be a *Gold Collar coupled together by ſeveral Pieces of Links, in Faſhion of Garters, with a Vermilion Roſe, and the Image of St.* George *hung thereat.* The Reaſon of the Knights-Companions wearing it at the Times appointed, the Licenſe for putting it to mending, the Command not

to enrich the Collar, but the *George* only; and under a Penalty not to ſell, pawn or alienate it upon any Neceſſity whatſoever, are wholly the ſame as was afterwards enjoyn'd by King *Henry* VIII. So that he did but only annex to his Body of Statutes a Decree, which for the greateſt part had been put in practiſe before. In the 11th *Hen.* VIII. upon Interpretation of the Eleventh Article of the Statutes, the Collar is there enumerated as part of the entire Robes that a Knight-Companion is oblig'd to wear, for a more convincing Proof, That the Collar of Garters was uſed before King *Henry* VIII's Reign, the Monument of Sir *Giles Daubeny* plainly Delineates (who departed 22 *Henry* VII.) in *Weſtminſter-Abbey*, where his Portraicture in the Robes of the Order is adorned with ſuch a Collar as King *Henry* VIII's Statutes do afterwards deſcribe.

As the Garter ſent to *Guſtavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, ſo the great *George* (pendant at his Collar weighing Seven Ounces) was ſet with large and reſplendent Diamonds, to the Number of Eighty-Four.

In what Regard this Noble Enſign of Honour the Collar, hath been with the Sovereigns and Knights-Companions, not only of the Order of the *Garter*, but other Military Orders, may be collected from the Pictures of ſome of them, as well as from their Seals, Coins, and Medals, for in theſe they have been pleaſed to exhibit their Effigies and Eſcutcheons of Arms; and omitting Foreign Examples, the Collars, both of the *Garter* and *Thiſtle*, were expreſs'd in the Coronation Medal of King *Charles* I. in *Scotland*, 1633. tho' in that of his Coronation at *Weſtminſter*, and afterwards in that of King *Charles* II. 1661. the Collar of the Order of the *Garter* are only put over their Royal Robes.

These Ornaments of the Collars, have been affix'd ſometimes encircling the Shields of their Arms; and in a Seal of *Charles the Bold*, Duke of *Burgundy*, Sovereign of the Order of the *Golden Fleece*, plac'd to an Inſtrument dated, 1470. it is worthy of Remark, that Collar adorns the Neck of the Lyon of *Flanders*; but the Sovereigns of the *Garter* uſually encompaſs'd their Arms, not within the Collar of the Order, but the Royal Garter, that being its principal Enſign; and

ſome-

ſometimes, having no Shield of Arms, the void Space within the Garter, exhibits their Arms.

OBSERVABLE is the Seal of *Charles* Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, wherein is a Shield quarterly of the *Palatinate* and *Bavaria*, obſcuring the Lyon Guardant its Supporter, his Four SS's only appearing quadrangularly, and his Head a top enſign'd with an Electoral Crown; this Shield is encircled both within the Garter and Collar of the Order, and is the firſt Example wherein both theſe Enſigns are jointly together. It is very frequent to expreſs the Collars of different Orders together: Thus I have ſeen the Arms of *Robert Dudley* Earl of *Leiceſter*, entour'd within the Garter, and a Collar of the Order of St. *Michael*, having been Knight of theſe Orders, and the Funeral Atchievement of the late *James Hamilton Douglas* Duke of *Hamilton*, had the Garter and a Collar of the Thiſtle about it. And in a Plate under the Effigies of the Duke of *Aſpernons*, a Shield of his Arms quarter'd, is encompaſs'd with the chiefeſt Enſigns of thoſe Three Orders, whereof he was a Brother and Companion, *viz.* with the Garter and the Collars of St. *Michael* and the *Holy Ghoſt*. And the older the Order is in the Roll of Antiquity, whoſe chief Enſign is there repreſented, the nearer ought it to be plac'd to the Eſcutcheon of Arms, being the more Honourable Poſt. A Miſtake was committed in the marſhalling theſe Collars, when the Duke of *Chevereux* affixed it over his Stall at *Windſor*, the Collars of St. *Michael* and the *Holy Ghoſt* are plac'd nearer to his Eſcutcheon than that of the Garter.

§ 8. AND whereas we have ſpoke of another kind of Collar, call'd a Collar of SS's, worn as Badges of lower and inferior Honour, it will not be amiſs to inform our Judgment in other Affairs concerning them. *Wicelius* informs us from a Book in the Library of *Fulda*, where (in the Life of the Two Brothers *Simplicius* and *Fauſtinus*, both Senators, and ſuffer'd Martyrdom under *Dioclesian*) there is a Deſcription of the Society of St. *Simplicius*, conſiſting of Noble Perſonages in their own Families, and deſcribing the Collar wore as the Badge of it ſays, thus: *It was the Cuſtom of thoſe Perſons to wear about*

their Necks Silver Collars, compos'd of double SS's, which denote the Name of Saint Simplicius, *between theſe double SS's. The Collar conſiſted of Twelve ſmall Plates of Silver, in which were engraven the Twelve Articles of the Creed, together with a ſingle Trefoil: The Image of St.* Simplicius *hung at the Collar, and from it Seven Plates, repreſenting the Seven Gifts of the Holy Ghoſt. As to the manner of their Martyrdom, they were bound together by the Neck to a Stone, and thrown over the Bridge into the River* Tyber.

At what Time the Collar of SS's came into *England* is not fully determin'd, but it will appear at leaſt Three Hundred Years ſince, and worn as an Ornament for Women, as well as Men; for on a Monument in the Collegiate Church of *Warwick*, the Figure of *Margaret*, Wife to Sir *William Peito* (ſaid to be interr'd *Temp. Edw.* III.) hath a Collar of SS's drawn about, and ſet cloſe to her Neck, which the Sculpture in *The Antiquities of* Warwickſhire, by miſtake, repreſented like a Ruff. There was alſo a Collar of SS's about the Neck of Sir *Simon Burley*'s Statue in St. *Paul*'s *London*.

In the ancient Creation of an Eſquire in *England*, part of the Ceremony was the King's putting about his Neck a Silver Collar of SS's. And *Selden*, in his Titles of Honour contemns not the old Ballad, *The Tanner of* Tamworth, to prove the Creation of Eſquires in King *Edw.* IV's Reign, by conferring ſuch Collars on them. But that the Golden one was the undoubted Badge of a Knight, as may be inſtanc'd by many undeniable Examples, deduc'd from the Monuments of ſuch Perſons, *Temp. Hen.* VI. *Ed.* IV. *Hen.* VII. *Hen.* VIII. and ſince, and ſo legally appropriate thereto, that in the Act 24 *H.* VIII. made for Reformation of Apparel, there is a Proviſo entred, That Knights, notwithſtanding, might publickly wear a Gold Collar of SS's, tho' ſince it is grown obſolete and uſeleſs. *Favin* tells us that our *Hen.* V. inſtituted an Order ſurnam'd Knights of the SS's, on the Day of the Martyrs St. *Criſpine* and *Criſpianus*; which tho' he found nothing of it in our *Engliſh* Hiſtorians, yet from the Chronicle of *Juvenal des Urſins*, where he treats of the Battle of *Agincourt*, he collected this following Relation.

" The King of *England* exhorted his Men, and " commanded, That if any had treſpaſs'd againſt ano- " ther, they ſhould be reconcil'd and confeſs'd to the " Prieſts, otherwiſe no good Succeſs wou'd accrew to " them in their Attempts. He advis'd them to be " civil in their March, and to do their Duty well, and " agreed upon theſe Conditions, That thoſe of their " Company who were not of gentle Extraction he " wou'd make ſo from the Fountain of Honour, and " give them Warrants, that for the future they ſhould " enjoy the Privileges the Gentlemen of *England* had; " and to the End they might be diſtinguiſh'd from o- " thers, he granted them leave to wear a Collar " powder'd with the Letter S."

Among the Variety of Collars of SS's now in vogue, there are theſe following: The Lord Mayor of *London*'s Collar is compos'd of Gold, having a Knot (like one of thoſe that tye the Garters together in the great Collar of the Order) inſerted between Two SS*s*, and they again ſituated between Two Roſes, *viz.* a White Roſe within a Red, and in the Middle before the Breaſt is a large Portcullis, whereat hangs a moſt rich Jewel ſett with large Diamonds.

The Collars of the Lords Chief Juſtices of both the Benches, and the chief Baron of the *Exchequer*, are (in Memory of the ſaid St. *Simplicius*, a Senator, and conſequently a Gownman) form'd of the Letter S, and a Knot alternately, having a Roſe ſet in that part of it which falls out to be in the Middle of their Breaſts, and another on their Backs; the Five Flowers of theſe Roſes are conſtituted of Five large Pearls.

Thoſe Collars, which appertain to the Kings and Heralds of Arms, as well as to Serjeants at Arms, having been beſtow'd by former Kings, and renew'd to them by King *Charles* II. to be worn upon Days of ſolemn Attendance, are compos'd of SS's link'd together. In the Middle of the Breaſt is a Roſe, at each of which hangs Three ſmall Drops of Silver; but the SS's in the Collars worn by the Kings of Arms are made ſomewhat larger than the other, and in that part lying on either Shoulder, is a Portcullis taken in between the SS's, which are wanting in the reſt.

The general difference of the Collars appropriate to the before-named Degrees, is this; Knights have allow'd them Collars of Silver gilt, but Eſquires only Silver; and therefore in the Creating of an Herald, in part of that Ceremony, he is made an Eſquire, by putting on him a Collar of SS's of Silver; and ſo is a Serjeant at Arms.

The Kings of *England* have ſometimes been pictured with a Collar of SS's about their Arms, in like manner as the Garter doth ſurround them, as appears from an Impreſſion of King *Henry* VIII's Privy Signet; whereon his Royal Arms crown'd are encircled with a Collar of SS's, to the lower End of which are affix'd Two Portcullisſes.

§ 9. We come now to the leſſer *George* of the Order; and we do not find that the Effigies of St. *George* was at any time worn by the Sovereign or Knights-Companions, before the Breaſt or under the Arm, as now uſed till the 13th of *Henry* VIII. But then that King decreed in a Chapter held at *Greenwich*, the Morrow after St. *George*'s Day, That every Knight ſhould wear looſely before his Breaſt the Image of St. *George* in a Gold Chain, or otherwiſe, in a Ribband, the ſame to be faſten'd within the ennobled Garter, for a manifeſt Diſtinction between the Knights-Companions, and others of the Nobility and Knights, who, according to the Mode of thoſe Times, wore large Gold Chains, the ordinary Enſigns of Knighthood. And thus the wearing the Medal or Jewel, uſually call'd the leſſer *George*, to diſtinguiſh it from the other Work at the Collar of the Order, firſt receiv'd the Injunction, and hath ſince been frequently uſed.

This *George* was, for the moſt part, pure Gold curiouſly wrought, but divers of them were exquiſitely graved in Onyx's and Agats, and with ſuch a happy Collection of the Stones, that heightned and received their Beauty by the Skill of the Artificer, in contriving the Figures and Hiſtory, the natural Tincture of the Stones have ſo fitted them with Colours for Fleſh, Hair, and every thing elſe, even to Surprize and Admiration. In this Jewel is St. *George* repreſented in a Riding Poſture

Poſture encountring the Dragon with his drawn Sword.

By the laſt Article of King *Henry* VIII's. Statutes, it was allowed to be enriched at the Pleaſure of the Poſſeſſor, (as is the great George) which for the moſt Part hath been curiouſly enamell'd, and the Garter about it ſett with Diamonds. And of what weight and bigneſs theſe leſſer *George*'s were, may be gather'd from that ſent to the French King *Charles* IX. being an Ounce and an half and half quarter Weight. The Variety of Workmanſhip in thoſe Gold Chains whereat this Jewel hung, was uſually great, according to the Fancy and Pleaſure of the Perſons for whom they were wrought. But within a ſhort Space, wearing the leſſer George in Silk-Ribbands, as well as Gold-Chains, was promiſcuouſly us'd and *ad Libitum*. (So were the Symbols of Foreign Orders, as divers Coins and Medals declare.) But the Colour of theſe Ribbands when they came firſt to be wore, was black. *John Dudley* Viſcount *Liſle*, the Lords St. *John* and *Parr*, ſo uſed them at their Inveſtiture, 35 *Henry* VIII. and ſeveral Pictures of other Knights-Companions about that time confirm the ſame. That ſmall Chain whereat hung the leſſer *George* tranſmitted to *Emanuel* of *Savoy*, *Ann.* 1 & 2 *Ph.* & *Mar.* was formed of twelve Pieces of Gold, in every of which was ſett three ſmall Diamonds, and of twelve other like Pieces, wherein were three Rubies and twenty four Pearls.

It appears by a Letter of Sir *Richard* St. *George*, Kt. *Clarencieux*, dated *July* 10th, 1627. that the blue Ribband had ſome Years before been additional to the Ornament of the Order; and 'tis reported, that *Robert* Earl of *Eſſex* obſerving in *France* the Jewels of the Order of St. *Michael* and St. *Eſprit* worn in blue Ribbands, upon his return was the principal motive thoſe Ribbands whereat the *George* hung, were exchanged into that Colour. And in a Picture of Queen *Elizabeth*, drawn towards the Declenſion of her Reign, her leſſer George is repreſented hanging before her Breaſt in a blue Ribband. And this Colour was more careſſed, and grew in great repute, by reaſon it was the Ground of the Garter, and neareſt the Colour of the Mantle of the Order: So that toward the latter End of the Reign of King

James

James I. becauſe the dye of the Ribband had not been peculiarly expreſs'd in any Statute, and the blue and azure accuſtomed for ſome Years paſt, it was decreed, That for the future it ſhould be always of blue, and no other; nor in time of Mourning it ſelf, ſhould be changed.

THE Manner of wearing this Ribband in time of Peace, was of later Times pendant about the Neck, down to the Middle of the Breaſt, where the leſſer George hung; but ſince, for the more Conveniency of Riding or Action, the ſame is ſpread over the left Shoulder, and brought under the right Arm where the Jewel hangs.

BUT where the Pictures of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions are drawn in Armour, there even to this Day the George is repreſented as fix'd to a Gold Chain inſtead of a blue Ribband, and worn about the Neck, not brought under the right Arm, as exhibited on the three Pound Pieces of Gold ſtamped at *Oxford* by King *Charles* I. 1643. and a Medal of *Charles* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, dated 1645.

AMONG the invaluable Jewels and other Curioſities of King *Charles* I. which came to the Hands of the Truſtees appointed for Sale of his Goods, were theſe,

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
A George containing 161 Diamonds, Sold for	71	2	0
A George cut in Onyx, with 41 Diamonds in the Garniſh,	37	0	0
A ſmall George with a few Diamonds	9	0	0
A George with 5 Rubies and 3 Diamonds, and 11 Diamonds in a Box	11	0	0
A George cut in a Garnet	8	0	0
Total	136	2	0

THE George King *Charles* I. had at his Martyrdom, was curiouſly Engraved in an Onyx ſet about with twenty One large Table-Diamonds in the Faſhion of a Garter. On the reverſe of the ſaid George was the Picture of the Queen ſet in a Caſe of Gold, the Lid neatly enamell'd with Goldſmith's Work, and ſurrounded with another Garter adorned with an equal Number of Diamonds, as

was

was that of King *Charles* II. alſo ſett with fair Diamonds; and after the Defeat given to the *Scotch* Forces at *Worceſter*, 4 *Car.* II. was ſtrangely preſerved by Colonel *Blague*, one of that King's diſperſed Attendants, who reſigned it for ſafety to the Wife of Mr. *Barlow* of *Blare-Pipe-Houſe* in *Stafford-ſhire*, where he took Sanctuary; from whom *Robert Milward* Eſq; receiv'd and gave it into the Hands of Mr. *Iſaac Walton*, (all Loyaliſts.) It came again to *Blague*'s Poſſeſſion, then Priſoner in the Tower; whence making his eſcape, he reſtor'd it to King *Charles* II.

It is worthy of Remark, that beſides the Sovereign of the moſt Noble Order of the Garter, other Princes of Chriſtendom have aſſumed the bearing St. *George* encountring the Dragon in like Poſture, tho' not ſo anciently, nor upon the ſame Grounds and Foundation as they; probably having elected him Patron and Guardian of their Countries or Families; ſuch as the Emperors of *Ruſſia*, the Dukes of *Mantua*, and the Counts *Mansfield* in *Germany*, as their Seals and Coins plainly demonſtrate.

In the Great Seal of *Borice Feodorwicke*, Emperour of *Ruſſia* affixed to his Letter ſent to Queen *Elizabeth*, dated at *Moſco*, *June* 12th, 1602, was a double Headed Eagle diſplaid, having each Head crowned, and bearing an Eſchutcheon with the Repreſentation of St. *George* upon its Breaſt. There is another of this Emperour's Great Seals, fixed to his Letter, dated *May* 31ſt. 1594. which he alſo ſent to Queen *Elizabeth*. On one ſide is the above-ſaid Eagle, having on his Breaſt an Eſcutcheon charged with an Horſe currant; the Reverſe the Figure of St. *George* encountring the Dragon with his Spear. The Great Seal of *Alexie Michaelowich*, Emperour of *Ruſſia*, affixed to his Letters ſent King *Charles* II. 1660. hath a like Eagle with a third Crown ſituated between the two Heads, and bearing in a Cartouch-Compartment upon his Breaſt, the Figure of St. *George*: Which Repreſentation of St. *George* and the Dragon, we find aſſigned for Arms, to *Anne de Ruſſie*, Daughter to *Jariſlaus* King of *Ruſſia* and *Muſcovia*, given in Eſpouſal to *Henry* I. King of *France*, 1051. and thus Blazon'd, *D'in St.* Marthe *de Gueules, a un homme a Cheval, d'argent, tenant*

une

une Lance en la main, qu'il darde en la gueule d'un Dragon renverſe.

The Counts of *Mansfield* have frequently ſtamp'd it on their Coin. On one ſide is St. *George* encountring the Dragon with his Sword, with this Circumſcription, *Sanct. Geo. Co. do. de Man.* on the reverſe, his Arms circumſcribed, *Mon. de Arc. Co. do. de Man.* Of thoſe of the Dukes of *Mantua*, we may ſee one of *Vincentius* Duke of *Mantua* and *Montferat*, a Knight of the Order of the *Golden Fleece*, wherein is his Effigies to the Breaſt, *Vinc. D. G. Dux MANT. III. MONTFERU.* on the Reverſe St. *George* and the Dragon, Motto, *Protector noſtra aſpic.* 1591. and *Caſal* at the Bottom.

§ 10. *When the Habit or part of it ought to be worn is the next thing we ſhall ſpeak of.*

The more ſolemn Days and Occaſions which require a fuller conformity, and the wearing the whole Habit, *i. e.* the Garter, Mantle, Surcoat, Hood, Collar, Great George, and Cap, are firſt, The High Feſtival of the Order, commonly called St. *George*'s Feaſt, whether it be ſolemnized on the 22d, 23d or 24th of *April*, annually, or any other Days within the Year by Prorogation, as is apparent by all the Bodies of the Statutes.

For, Firſt it is ordained, That the Knights-Companions ſhould be Arrayed in the whole Habit on the Eve of St. *George*, before the Sovereign proceeded to the Chapter to hear Divine Service, and being ſo Robed, ſhould attend on the Sovereign to the Chapter-Houſe, thence to the Chapel, and return with him back in the ſame manner, until after Supper, as well thoſe that minded to Sup, as thoſe that ſhould not Sup; nor might they diſrobe, until the Sovereign or his Deputy had put off his, or declar'd it ſeaſonable for his or their doing ſo.

By the ſame Statute they were enjoined to wear the whole Habit on the Feaſt of St. *George*, both at their Progreſſion in the Morning to the Chapter-Houſe or Chapel, at their return to Dinner from thence to the Second Veſpers, and back to Supper, as alſo till Supper was over, and until the Sovereign or his Lieutenant took leave of the reſt of the Knights-Companions.

Secondly,

Secondly, It is manifeſt from King *Henry* VIII's Statutes, That the Eve, the Day of St. *George*, and Morrow following, were to be obſerved with ſolemn Service, and holding of Chapters whereſoever the Sovereign was reſident; tho' the Grand Feaſt were Prorogued to a longer Duration; and when by reaſon of ſuch Prorogation, they ſhould convene in any Place beſides *Windſor* to attend the Sovereign for the Solemnization of St. *George*'s Day, they then muſt Adorn themſelves with the whole Habit from beginning of the firſt Veſpers, until the laſt Evening Service of the ſame Day.

Thirdly, On ſuch other Days of the Year whereon the Grand Feaſt is held by Prorogation, and during ſuch Part of the Eve and Day of the Feaſt, as is before appointed when it is held on its proper Day.

Fourthly, By abſent Knights, whenſoever the Grand Feaſt of St. *George* ſhould be celebrated, and whereſoever they ſhould happen at that time to reſide, (if at Liberty, and not under reſtraint) to keep it in like manner as if then preſent with the Sovereign, or his Deputy in the Place where he ſhould Celebrate the Feaſt. The time of wearing the whole Habit in this Point extends but to the End of the ſecond Veſpers, as in the ſecond Inſtance above.

Fifthly, The Knights-Companions are to wear the entire Habit at the Feaſts of Inſtallation when they aſſiſt at that Ceremony; where, if it commence in the Evening, they are not to diſrobe themſelves till after Supper; and being the next Morning habited as before, then to proceed to the Chapter-Houſe or Chapel, and not to deveſt themſelves till Dinner is ended.

The leſs ſolemn Occaſions are thoſe, which require the wearing the Mantle or Collar of the Order only.

And they are firſt, upon the Morrow after the Grand Feaſt-Day, when the Sovereign and Knights-Companions proceed to the Chapel, and make their Offering; then it ſufficeth, that they barely put on the Mantle, which, Service being Finiſhed, they were wont to leave it at the Chapter-Houſe-Door as they retired out of the Chapel.

Secondly, As often as Chapters are called, and in what Place ſoever aſſembled, either for Elections, or other Cauſes, as it ſhall pleaſe the Sovereign to nominate;

And

And as often as it is requiſite for the Sovereign, or any of the Knights-Companions to enter into the Chapel of St. *George* at *Windſor*; and in reference hereunto, is the Article 15 *E.* 3. was that their Mantles ſhould remain in the Veſtry at *Windſor*, that upon any ſudden emergency, they might be in readineſs: for in the Inventory of the Chapel taken 8 *R.* 2. we find remaining at that time in the Veſtry, a Mantle appertaining to the Sovereign, another to *John* Duke of *Britain*, a third to *John Holland* Earl of *Huntington*, another to *Edmund Langley* Earl of *Cambridge*, and one to *Thomas Holland*, Earl of *Kent*, all of them then ſurviving: And by a Decree paſt at the Grand Feaſt 1 *H.* 6. the Mantle of the young Sovereign was appointed to be left at *Windſor*, as the Statutes required; and this Article was confirmed by King *Henry* VIII. by Virtue whereof, the Mantles of the Emperor *Charles* V. and *Anna* Duke of *Montmorency*, were left in the Cuſtody of the Dean and Canons of *Windſor*. And heretofore in the Bill of drawing up Matters neceſſary for the Inſtallation of a Knight-Companion, there were uſually two Mantles ſet down; one expreſſed to be left in the College, and the other for all other Occaſions that might intervene.

These Mantles thus ordered to be repoſed in the College upon emergent Occaſions, were anciently committed to the Cuſtody of the Black-Rod, as granted by Letters Patent with the Office 1 *H.* 5. And after the Death of the Owners, devolved to the Dean and Canons of *Windſor*, either for the publick Uſe of the Knights-Companions when they caſually came to *Windſor*, or elſe ſold ſometimes to the Heirs of the Deceaſed, or others who ſucceeded in the Order, as that of *Charles* V. was to the Earl of *Bedford*, and that of the Conſtable of *France* lent to the Earl of *Warwick*, *Ann.* 7 *Eliz.* which appears from the Accounts of the Chanter of the College, *temp.* *H.* 4. *H.* 5. *H.* 8. Q. *Eliz.* and *Jac.* 1. who in all times anſwered the full Benefit thereof to the College, as being a certain Perquiſite to the Dean and Canons, which they accordingly had and enjoyed.

And yet we find ſome of the College made overbold with the Robe of *Sigiſmond* the Emperour, and ſold it while he ſurviv'd. But the Archbiſhop of *York*, who,

as Chancellor of *England*, viſited the College, 1431. ſecured the Money from being diſtributed among thoſe that ſold it, and reſerved the Dividend to the Dean and Chapter that ſhould chance to be living at that Emperour's Expiration; and commanded for the Future under Pain of Excommunication, That no Dean and Canon ſhould imbezil or aliene any Knights-Companion's Mantle while he was alive, but the ſame ſhould be decently and faithfully kept and preſerved. But we are informed, that this Statute was altered, *Ann.* 9 *Eliz.* and one drawn up to this effect, *That the Knights-Companions ſhould be bound by Oath to take care by their Wills, that after their Deceaſe, all the Ornaments which they had received ſhould be reſtored, the Robes to the College, and the Jewels to the Sovereign that gave them.*

In the laſt Place, the Times of wearing the Collar of the Order, with the Great *George* appendant, which is not only enjoined to be worn (as part of the Habit) at the grand Feaſts and Feaſts of Inſtallation, but alſo at other times when not any of the reſt of the Habit is ordered (ſaving the Garter) is to be worn, as in ſpecial, *at the principal and ſolemn Feaſts of the Year*, and other Feaſt-Days: To which a particular Order in Chapter, *Ann.* 4 *Eliz.* thus directs,

The Holy-days and Sundays within the twelve Days.	St. *James*'s Day.
St. *Matthias* Day.	St. *Bartholomew.*
Holydays in *Eaſter*-Week.	St. *Matthew.*
St. *Mark*'s Day.	St. *Luke.*
St. *Philip* and *Jacob*'s Day.	St. *Simon* and *Jude.*
Holy-days in *Whitſun*-Week.	St. *Andrew.*
St. *Peter*'s Day.	St. *Thomas.*

Beſides theſe, the Sovereigns and Knights-Companions have been accuſtomed to wear this Enſign upon the Anniverſary of the Sovereign's Coronation, of the *Gun-Powder Treaſon*, and, of later Times, on the Sovereign's Birth-day: So formerly upon ſome occaſional Ceremonies not relative to the Order; as when a Knight-Companion hath been created into Titles of Dignity and Honour, he had the Collar of the Garter added to his In-

Inveſtiture, as appears in the Caſe of *Henry Stafford*, created Earl of *Wiltſhire*, *Ann.* 1 *Hen.* 8. And at a Chapter held *May* 22d. 1622. That ſuch Knights-Companions as ſhould afterwards aſſiſt at the Funeral of any Knight-Companion, ſhould wear the Collar *apert* at the ſaid Funeral. And it was ſo obſerved by the Dukes of *Ormond* and *Richmond*, the Earls of *Mancheſter* and *Sandwich*, at the Obſequies of *George Monk* Duke of *Albemarle*.

Howbeit, the Cuſtom is otherwiſe as to wearing the Garter, the principal Enſign of the Order; for tho' it be injoyned to be wore at the grand Feſtivals, *&c.* yet it does not imply that it might be left off: For indeed it ought daily to be worn both by the Sovereign and Knights Companions. And therefore was it decreed even in its Inſtitution, That if any Knight-Companion ſhould in publick be found without one buckled about his Leg, upon Challenge he ſhould be mulct a Noble to the Dean and College of *Windſor*. By King *Henry* VIII. the Fine was raiſed a Mark, payable as before to any of the five Officers of the Order, or to the Dean; beſides which Fine, the Knight lies liable to a Check. But to alleviate the Strictneſs, and obviating other Inconveniencies, King *Henry* V. admitted of a Qualification; and in caſe of riding with Boots, ordained, That it might ſuffice if the Knight-Companion wore ſome Ribband or Silk-Lace to repreſent the Garter; tho' in this very Article there is a Proviſo, That no Knight-Companion ſhould enter into Chapter, without his Garter buckled about the Leg.

In ſhort, King *Henry* VIII. ordained, That the Gold-Chain whereat the leſſer *George* (in that Age) hung, ſhould be worn all other days in the Year, except the Principal and Solemn Feaſts, whereon the great Collar was ordained to be worn, and except in time of War, Sickneſs, or long Voyage, in any of which Caſes, a Silk-Lace or Ribband, with the Image of St. *George* thereat, was ſufficient; and the blue Ribband having ſince ſucceeded in Place of the Cold Chain, the Injunction of this Statute extends to it in all particulars.

CAP.

CAP. VIII.

§ 1. CONCERNING the Officers appointed for the ſervice of the Order, to give it a greater degree and augmentation of Honour, the Founder conſtituted a *Prelate*, *Regiſter* and *Uſher*, aſſigning them ſeveral Duties. Some of his Succeſſors added the *Chanchellor* and *Garter*, and all of them Sworn to be of the Council of the Order; among theſe the *Prelate* and *Chanchellor* are uſually nominated the Principal, the other three the inferiour Officers of the Order.

In this Chapter we ſhall give ſome account of their Inſtitution, Oath, Habit, Enſigns, Privileges and Penſions; for as to the nature of their Offices and their Duties, they are for the general, Recorded in the Black Book, under the Title *Conſtutiones ad Officiales Ordinis [Garterij] peculiariter attinentes*, &c. Upon the Eſtabliſhment, *Anno* 13. *Hen.* VIII. 1521. and annex'd to his Statutes, and more particularly their Duties, will occur in ſeveral places of the enſuing Diſcourſe, where they properly fall in to be Treated of, as follows;

The Prelate is the firſt and primier Officer, and in the Founders Statutes, call'd *Prælatus Ordinis*; and that the then Biſhop of *Wincheſter*, *William de Edyngton* was the firſt Prelate is very obious from thence; he is an Officer of Honour only, and hath neither Penſion nor Fees allowed him by the ſaid Conſtitutions; this Office is veſted in the Biſhop of *Wincheſter*, for the time being; and from the Annals of the Order it's manifeſt his Succeſſors have continued Prelates to this Day, except the interruption only of a few Months, *Anno* 7. *Ed.* 6. immediately after the Publiſhing this King's Statutes; wherein the other Four Officers were conſtituted anew, to attend the Order, but the Prelate wholly laid by.

What high reputation this See hath been favour'd with, may be collected from an Act of Parliament, 31. *Hen.* VIII. concerning the Placing of the Lords in Parliament Chamber, and other Aſſemblies and Conferences of Council, whereby this Biſhop had Place aſſigned

him next to the Biſhop of *Durham*, who hath place by that Act, next the Archbiſhop of *York*; tho' before in reſpect of the prehemenence of this noble Order, he had precedence and Place granted above all Biſhops, and next unto the Arch-Biſhops. At that Officers admittance he is oblig'd to take an Oath in the preſence of the Soveraign or his Lieutenant, which conſiſts of theſe particulars.

1. *To be preſent in all Chapters, whereunto he is Summoned.*

2. *To report all things truly without Favour or Fear.*

3. *To take the Scrutiny faithfully, and preſent it to the Sovereign.*

4. *To keep ſecret, and not diſcloſe the Councils of the Order.*

5. *To promote and maintain the Honour of it.*

6. *To withſtand and reveal what is deſigned to the contrary.*

This Oath is read in Chapter, by the Regiſter of the Order, the Gentleman-Uſher of the Black-Rod, holding the Book, whilſt the Prelate Kneels between the Sovereign's Knees.

Of the R O B E.

As the Knights-Companions had their Surcoats beſtowed on them, at the Sovereigns charge, and therefore called the Kings Livery, ſo had the Officers of the Order their Liveries or Robes out of the Sovereign's Wardrobe, and in particular the Prelate of the Order: For in the Rolls of the great Wardrobe, we find that *William de Edyngton* had allow'd him for his Robe of the Sovereign's Livery, againſt the Feaſt of St. *George*, Anno 37. *Ed.* III. one Cloth of Sanguine grain, and a large quantity of Furs for trimming it up: And we find this Robe ſo aſſigned the Prelate to be of the ſute or colour of the Knights-Companions Surcoats the ſame Year, *viz.* Sanguine in grain, and that he had a great allowance of Furr; for his being a Mantle was larger than any of the Knights Surcoats, tho' they are both call'd by the ſame name *Roba* in the Rolls of the Wardrobe. *Anno* 7. *Rich.* II. *William de Wyckham* then

then Prelate had the ſame allowance, one Cloth of Violet in grain and other Materials. But the Diſcrimination was in the Bellies of Minevers, whoſe Number was now much encreaſed, and that the ſame allowance was beſtowed on him in the 11th and 19th Years of the ſaid King. But in theſe three Inſtances the Colour of the Cloth was different, and ſuitable to the Knights-Companions Surcoats, thoſe very Years, *viz.* Violet in grain, White and Blue, and *Anno* 12. *Hen.* VI. the Robe of *Henry Beaufort*, Cardinal and Prelate was White, as then were the Surcoats of the Knights-Companions, whence it is evident the Livery formerly allowed the Prelate annually varied in Colour, as did the Knights-Companions Surcoats.

In that ancient Precedent of the Liveries of the Garter, remaining in the great Wardrobe, wherein the Surcoats of the Knights-Companions are reduced to a Stated proportion in the meaſure of the Cloth, number of Furs and Garters, modeled out according to their ſtate degrees, there the Prelate hath the following allowance for his Livery,

24 Yards of Woollen Cloth.
18 Timber pur } Minever.
18 Timber groſs. }
3 Timber de Biſs.

By all which it is manifeſt what Materials and colour the Prelate's Robe was of at the inſtitution of the Order, and for a long time after, nor do we find any variation until the Reign of King *Hen.* VIII. and then this Habit was ordained to be Crimſon Velvet, lin'd with white Taffaty, faced with blue, and thereon down the opening before upon the bordures, ſundry Royal cognizances on the right ſide, the Roſe of *England* Crowned, on the left ſide oppoſite one of King *Edw.* IV's. Badges, *viz.* a Roſe within the Sun Beams Crowned; and then the aforeſaid Badges again *vice verſa*, with more Damaskings; on the right ſide the Flower de luce of *France* Crowned, and on the left ſide King *Edw.* III's. peculiar Badge, *viz.* The Sun Beams iſſuing out of a Cloud, and thoſe Badges repeated in alternate ſituations; every Badge interpolated,

polated with an Area of Embroidered Damasking; Forty of these Clouds wrought of Gold, Silver and Silk, having in the middle the *Saxon* Letter *E* of Gold, were provided to him several Garments made for that King 21 *Edw.* III. and Embellished with Stars. As the left Shoulder of a Knight Companions Mantle, so the right Shoulder of the Prelates Robe is injoyned to be Embroidred with a Scutcheon of St. *George*'s Arms, encompassed with a Garter, and adorned with Cordons of blue Silk mingled with Gold. After a while the colour of this Robe became changed to Murray. The allowance of Velvet 16 Yards, of white Sarcenet for Lining 12 Yards, and a Garter for the Shoulder, Embroidred with Purls of Damask Gold. But 23 *Eliz.* for the Livery of Bishop *Watson* then newly admitted, the quantity of Velvet was encreased to 18 Yards; but the Lining and Garter remained as it was, so also the Cordon, having Buttons and Tassels of blue Silk, and *Venice* Gold; the like Robe in all particulars were made for Bishop *Cooper*, and Bishop *Bilson*, his Successars, *Temp. Eliz.*

About 12 *Car.* I. the Prelate and Chancellor Petition'd the Sovereign to restore them their ancient Rights and Privileges of Honour, in relation to their Ensigns and Robes upon their outward Garments, whereupon 13 *Car.* I. it was Ordered in Chapter, that the Knights-Commissioners (newly Established by that Chapter) should take into their consideration the Robes the Prelate and Chancellor were to be invested with, and certify the Sovereign the ancient Colour and Fashion; but nothing was effected untill after the Restoration, and then by Warrant under the Signet of the Order, Dated *February* 19. 13. *Car.* II. the Prelate had assigned him for his Livery of the Order, one Robe of Purple Velvet, containing 18 Yards, and 10 Yards of white Taffaty for Lining, as also the Arms of St. *George* within a Garter, wrought with Letters, and Purls of Damask, Gold and Pearls, having Laces, Buttons and Tassels of purple Silk, and *Venice* Gold; but what inducements the Sovereign had for so changing the Murray Colour for Purple, has not reached our Intelligence. The time he is obliged to Wear this Robe, is in expres text

of

of the Conſtitutions, to be Yearly on the Vigil and Day of St. *George*, whereſoever he is at liberty, whether it be in Parliament, or any other ſolemn Occaſion, or Feſtival whatſoever.

The Honours conferred on this Officer, are, that his Poſt in all Proceedings and Ceremonies of the Order, is on the right Hand of the Chancellor; that he hath the Privilege of Marſhalling his Arms within the ennobled Garter, and accordingly hath it been cuſtomary to ſurround them, impaling his See. He hath allotted him convenient Appartments within the Caſtle of *Windſor*, in a Tower Situated on the North-ſide, called *Wincheſter* Tower; and as often as he ſhall Arrive thither, or to any other Place at the Sovereign's Command, upon the Affairs of the Order, he ought to have allowed him of the Court Livery for Himſelf and Retinue, according to the Stipends, that Earls reſident in Court do poſſeſs. 2 *Car.* I. This Officer (ſo well as the Chancellor) had the Honour allowed him, to Wear upon the left Part of his Cloak, Coat, and riding Caſſock, at all ſeaſons, when he ſhould not be Inveſted with his Robe, and in all Places, and Aſſemblies, a Scutcheon of the Arms of St. *George*, but not inriched with Pearls and Stones. But not long after there was ſome reſtraint upon this Act, tho' I do not find it repealed.

§ 2. The inſtitution of the Chancellors Office, his Oath, Robe, Badge, and Penſion, next follows to be handled. At the Erecting this Noble Order, the common Seal was ordained to remain in the cuſtody of whomſoever the Sovereign ſhould pleaſe to lodge it, but expreſly to be one of the Knights-Companions; among whom in after-times, Sir *John Robertſack* is Stiled *Cuſtos Sigilli Ordinis*, having the cuſtody of it by Decree, 1. *Hen.* VI. by a Prolepſis of Speech, Styled Chancellor in the Black Book. But King *Edw.* IV. finding it requiſite to fix the Office of Chancellor of the Garter, in a Perſon diſtinct from the Knights-Companions, and ſubſervient to them, Decreed in a Chapter at *Weſtminiſter*, 16 *Regni ſui*, That the Seal of the Order ſhould be reſigned to *Richard Beauchamp*, then Biſhop of *Salisbury* to keep

during pleaſure, and he to be called Chancellor of this moſt noble Order; not long after by Letters Patent, under the Great Seal of *England*, Dated the 10th of *Oct.* 15. *Edw.* IV. this King declared, that tho' this Office was not expreſſed by the Founder's Statutes, yet was it nevertheleſs very uſeful, and therefore for the Advancement, and good of the Order, he conſtituted an Officer named Chancellor: And foraſmuch as this Office was of great Import and Concern, and required an expert and able Perſon, it was His further Pleaſure, that none but a Biſhop ſhould Execute it; moreover conſidering the Chapel of St. *George* at *Windſor*, was Founded within the Dioceſs of *Salisbury*, and having regard to the prudence and diligence of the ſaid *Beauchamp*, who out of meer love to the Order, attended daily the progreſs of the Work, wherewith the King was then in hand for enlarging the Chapel at *Windſor*; he did therefore Ordain the ſaid Biſhop for the Term of his Life, Chancellor of the Order, and after his deceaſe, his Succeſſors, Biſhops of *Salisbury*, ſhould always have and hold the ſaid Chancellor-ſhip; Nevertheleſs, provided that the King's Conceſſion ſhould be put in execution, by the Advice of the Knights-Companions, and without prejudice to the Biſhop of *Wincheſter*, in thoſe things which ought by the Statutes of Inſtitution to belong unto him.

THIS Office thus conferred upon *Beauchamp* perſonally for Life, and perpetually to his Succeſſors, Biſhops of *Salisbury*, by vertue of this Grant continued Chancellors, nor doth it appear that any other Perſon had been inveſted therein, until [*Ann.* 7. *E.* VI. that Sir *William Cecil*, then principal Secretary of State, was made Chancellor.

FOR upon Reformation of the Order by that King, his Statutes wholly excluded the Eccleſiaſticks, and appointed that the Chancellors-Office ſhould be executed by a Knight qualified, with Honour and Reputation to manage a Poſt of that Care and Fidelity; he thereupon appointed Sir *William Cecil*, Chancellor; And here firſt entred a ſecular Perſon, notwithſtanding which in a Charter to the Biſhop of *Salisbury*, 4 *Eliz.* (containing the Charters of Queen *Mary*, *H.* VIII. and *H.* VII.

H. VII. and in another 4. *Car.* I. the forementioned Letters Patents, made to *Beanchamp*, by King *Edw.* IV. are therein recited *totidem verbis*, and confirmed as a Tacit Reſervation of the Right and Title of thoſe Biſhops, whenſoever the Sovereign ſhould have a benign and propitious Aſpect towards that See. The firſt of theſe Biſhops who concerned himſelf for recovering this high Station to that See, was Biſhop *Cotton*, who upon the Death of Sir *Edward Dyer*, ſometime Chancellor, Petitioned the Sovereign, 6. *Jac.* I. and prayed Reſtitution thereof to the Church of *Salisbury*; but before any determination, the two chief Juſtices, and chief Baron was adviſed withal, who were of Opinion, that this Office was not compleatly or ſufficiently annexed to the Biſhoprick of *Salisbury* by King *Edw.* IV. But *Cook* in his Inſtitutes, reports the point Void, upon the incertainty of the Grant, for that a new Office was Erected, and not defined what Juriſdiction or Authority the Officer ſhould Exerciſe; and there's aſſigned a third Reaſon, That the Grant was in the Sovereign's diſpoſal, becauſe the Patent was obtained without Fee; with one or more of theſe Opinions, the Sovereign's judgment being ſwayed, He forthwith nominated Sir *John Herbert*, one of His privy Council to the Chancellorſhip, and ſo this affair remained Silent, until *Anno* 12. *Car.* I. when *John Davenant*, Biſhop of *Salisbury*, upon Sir *Francis Cranes* deceaſe, remonſtrated to the Sovereign his Claim to this Office, whereupon at a Chapter held at *Windſor*, 5th of *Dec.* that Year, the Sovereign propos'd to the Knights-Companions preſent, that tho' he had made Election of Sir *Thomas Rowe* for his Chancellor that time, yet underſtanding a Claim made by the Biſhop of *Salisbury*, that the Place was annexed to that See, he commanded the Lords-Companions to take the pretence of right into their conſiderations; to which propoſition of the King's, they anſwered that they thought it not their duty to ſearch for the Title of any Perſon, but that if the Biſhop did produce his Evidence and Proofs, he might preſent it in Chapter to be conſidered.

Upon this Encouragement, the Biſhop preſented a Petition, which was read in the Chapter at *Windſor*,

the 18th of *April* enſuing, to this effect, That King *Edw.* IV, by Letters Patent, had Erected this Office of Chancellor, and did then grant the ſame to *Richard Beauchamp*, Biſhop of *Salisbury*, and his Succeſſors for ever, in conſideration that the Chapel of St. *George* was within their Dioceſs; that thoſe Biſhops had enjoyed the ſame, according to the Charter, which Charter had been confirmed under the Great Seal of *England*, by ſome other Kings and Queens, and laſtly by the King himſelf. But that the uſe and exerciſe of that Office had for many Years been diſcontinued from them, praying therefore an Hearing, and Examination, that the right of the ſaid Church might be preſerved and reſtored. To the ſubſtance of which it was objected.

Firſt, THAT the Great Seals of *England* did not work within, or upon the Statutes and Rules of the Order of the Garter.

Second, THAT no Grant could preſcribe the preſent Sovereign, it being a Law Fundamental within the Order, *Suprema Lex* was *Suprema Voluntas*.

Third, THAT it did not appear by the Records of the Order, that the Office of the Chancellor was any otherwiſe conferred upon *Richard Beauchamp*, Biſhop of *Salisbury*, than *quam diu Regiæ celſitudini complaceret*.

To the *Firſt*, It was anſwered by way of Exception, as to the Grant of Offices, foraſmuch as the Great Seal of *England* was took into, and became legal within the Order in like caſes; and not any Patent for an Office, had paſt under the Seal of the Order, but under the Great Seal of *England*, and in particular the Office of the Chancellor-ſhip, which had not been tranſacted, if any legal defect had been therein.

To the *Second*, granting it was ſo as was Objected, it appeared that the Sovereign was as much at liberty to reſtore this Office to the See of *Salisbury*, as continue it to ſecular Dignities.

To the *Third*, what was alledged out of the Records of the Order, related only to the time of delivering the Seals to Biſhop *Beauchamp*: But afterwards when the Office was Erected by Letters Patent, it was then granted to him during Life. Something was replied from the Judges Opinions, even in this caſe, *Ann. Jac.* R. VI.

R. VI. But the Sovereign thought it was not then well canvaſs'd and weighed, to permit the Chapter Acts of this Order, wholly independant from other Laws, to receive conſtruction and determination from the common Law, and therefore declared that the Biſhop ought to be heard; and to that purpoſe, gave him Orders to prepare the Vouchers and Proofs of his pretenſions in vindication of his Petition, and to ſend them to be delivered to the Knights-Commiſſioners, elected for the affairs of the Order, for their conſideration at the next Chapter, which was accordingly put in execution, and then refierred to them again to be conſidered, prepared and abbreviated, to be peruſed by the Sovereign, for his final determination. But the *Scotch* War ſhortly after breaking forth, and troubles running high at Home, the further Proſecution was laid aſide, and not revived until the 19th of *Nov. Anno* 21. *Car.* II. When *Seth Ward*, Biſhop of *Salisbury*, took encouragement upon the former grounds, and the Sovereign's favour, to ſet on foot this Claim, by a Petition preſented to the Chapter then held at *Whitehall*, where, after a full debate and mature deliberation had of its equity and juſt Foundation, he obtained a Decree for Re-eſtabliſhment of this Office on the Biſhops of that See, upon the firſt vacancy, Dated the 19th of *Nov.* 1669. and preſent his Majeſty the Sovereign, the Dukes of *York*, and *Ormond*, Earls of *Oxford* and *Mancheſter*, Prince *Rupert*, Earls of *Briſtol* and *Sandwich*, and the Duke of *Monmouth*.

Of the O A T H.

The Oath the *Chancellor* takes at his Admiſſion which we find to be the ſame with the Prelates, and in the like humble Poſture upon the Knee, and uſually Adminiſtred by the Regiſter of the Order. As to his Robe, it was at firſt the ſame with the Prelates, both for Cloth and Colour, but his proportion of Cloth far leſs, having allowed him but 5 Yards, when the Prelate had 24, nor but 3 Timber of Minever groſs, where the Prelate had 19, beſide a large quantity of other Furs; nor was the Colour confined to one kind, until the conſtitutions of this Office appointed it to be Crimſon

Crimſon, as was the Prelates, for no doubt it was before annually changed, as his was to the Colour of the Knights-Companions Surcoats; however by the Picture of the ancient Habits of the Officers, it is conſpicuous, it was debared the Royal Badges, wherewith the Prelates Roſe was Embroidred; when the Colour of the Prelates Robe was changed to Murray, the Chancellors had the ſame Alteration and was Trim'd alike in all other particulars. The proportion allowed to Sir *Thomas Smith* for his Livery, *Anno* 14. *Eliz.* was 18 Yards of Murray Velvet, 12 Yards of Sarcenet for the Lining, one Garter wrought with Pearls of Damask Gold for the Shoulder, one Lace (or Cordon) with Buttons, and Taſſels of blue Silk and *Venice* Gold, and the ſame Materials and Quantities were afterwards diſtributed out of the Sovereigns great Wardrobe, to the ſucceeding Chancellors.

But *Anno* 13. *Car.* I. The Prelate and Chancellor endeavouring a Reformation in this Habit, the Dye both of the Prelates and this Officers Robe was changed into Purple.

Beſides this Robe, the Chancellor of the Order hath an honourable Badge of Diſtinction aſſigned him to wear, firſt granted to Sir *William Peters* and his Succeſſors, the 9th of *October*, 1 and 2 *Ph.* and *Mar. viz.* a golden Roſe encloſed within a Garter, which he and his Succeſſors, Chancellors of the Order, have ever ſince worn daily about their Necks; at firſt it was Pendant in a Gold-Chain, but ſince in a Purple Ribband. It ſeems ſomething of this Deſign had been in Agitation a little before, ſo ſoon as the Chancellorſhip became veſted in a Layman; for King *Edward* VI's Statutes did Ordain, *That the Chancellor ſhould wear about his Neck a Croſs of the Order, with a red Roſe, in a white, of Gold, all compaſſed within a Garland of red and white Roſes.*

And becauſe it was ſuggeſted to King *Charles* I. That there were different Accounts and Uncertainties contained in ſome Books concerning the Wearing of this Badge, He, by Warrant dated at *Oxford* the 16th of *December* in the 21ſt Year of his Reign, 1645. ordained Sir *James Palmer* Kt. and Bart. Chancellor of the ſaid Order, (and his Succeſſors) *ſhould wear about his Neck at all*

all times in Honour of his ſaid Place, (that thereby he may be known to be of that Office and Dignity, as hath been accuſtomed) a Medal or Jewel of Gold enamelled with a red Roſe, (within a Garter of Blue enamel, with this Sentence inſcribed, Hony ſoit qui mal y penſe) *or ſuch an one as we or the reſt of the Knights-Companions of the ſaid Moſt Noble Order of the Garter do or ſhall from time to time hereafter wear in our Collars of the ſaid Order in particular Reference to us or them. And in the Reverſe thereof, he ſhall bear the Eſcutcheon of St.* George *enamelled within a Garter alſo in reference to the Order it ſelf, which he only ſhall wear hanging by a light purple Ribband, or in a gold Chain, as hath been accuſtomed.*

Among the Officers of the Order, the Chancellor is ſeated next beneath the Prelate, and in all Proceedings and Seſſions, goeth, and ſitteth, on his left Hand: And as it was ordered by the Conſtitutions of the Officers, That if the Chancellor hapned to be a Layman, he ſhould be alſo a Knight, and have other perſonal Endowments. So did King *Charles* I. conceive it requiſite to confer ſome further Mark of Diſtinction upon this Officer, in relation to Place and Precedence without the Order; to which effect, there paſſed a Decree in a Chapter aſſembled by the Sovereign at *Whitehall*, the 23d of *April*, 1623. preſent, the Earls of *Mulgrave*, *Montgomery*, *Rutland*, *Carliſle*, *Holland*, *Suffolk*, *Pembroke*, *Arundel* and *Surrey*, *Salisbury*, *Dorſet*, *Bark-ſhire* and *Northampton*, *That Sir* Francis Crane, *the preſent Chancellor, and all others that ſhould ſucceed him in that Place hereafter, ſhall, in right of that Place, in all Aſſemblies, and upon all Occaſions, be ranked and placed immediately after Knights-Privy-Councellors, and before the Chancellor of the Exchequer, the Perſons holding both Places, being in* Pari gradu, *and conſequently before all others, whom the ſaid Chancellor is to precede,* &c.

And to the intent the Chancellor of the Exchequer's Place may be certainly known, *May* the 20th, 21 *Jac.* I. it was thus eſtabliſhed, *That the Knights of the Moſt Noble Order of the Garter, the Privy-Councellors, the Maſter of the Courts of* Wards *and* Liveries, *the Chancellor and Under Treaſurer of the* Exchequer, *Chancellor of the* Dutchy, *the Chief Juſtice of the Court of* King's Bench, *the Maſter of the* Rolls, *the Chief Juſtice of the Court of* Common-Pleas, *the Chief Baron of the* Exchequer, *and all other Judges and Barons*

rons of the Degree of the Coif, ſhould have Place and Precedency in all Places, and upon all Occaſions before the younger Sons of Viſcounts and Barons, and before all Baronets, &c.

The aforeſaid Conſtitutions provide the Chancellor of the Order an Habitation within the Caſtle of *Windſor*, as well as the Prelate, which is the South-Weſt Tower in the lower Ward of the Caſtle, call'd the *Chancellor's Tower*. The Poſſeſſion thereof had been for ſome time in the Power of others; and therefore by a Chapter convened at *White-hall*, *Nov.* 5th, 5 *Car.* I. it was reſtored unto Sir *Francis Crane*, then Chancellor of the Order, and after his Deceaſe, to deſcend to his Succeſſors. Theſe Conſtitutions alſo ordained him the like Liveries at the Table and Court of the Sovereign, as were allowed to the Prelate.

At the firſt Erection of this Office, the Chancellor had no Penſion awarded him, until the Conſtitutions in reference to the Officers were Eſtabliſhed. At that time there was conferr'd on him a Penſion of 100*l*. *per Annum*, in conſideration of his Employment, or elſe an allowance proportionate in Fees, Offices or other Promotions, over and above his Lodgings in the Caſtle, and Liveries at Court. But as to Fees and Perquiſites, there are none to be Claimed by this Officer; and for that Reaſon, he not only poſſeſſes the ſaid Penſion, but all his diſburſements allowed him, even to Paper, Wax, and Wafers; and indeed thoſe who enjoyed the Office eſteem'd it as a degradation of their Poſt, to receive either fee, or gratuity for any affair Tranſacted within the Order; and Sir *Thomas Rowe*, ſometime Chancellor, affirmed *That his Office was an Office of Honour, and not of Fees, and that he had always excepted againſt Fees, for the diſburſement of the Sovereign's Money*: Tho' he acknowledged ſome had beſtowed on his Clerk a ſmall gratuity, for the bare Ingroſſing of an Alms Knights Patent, but nothing farther.

And becauſe the Cuſtody of the Seals of the Order, appertains to this Officer; it will be here the fitteſt Place to mention ſomething of them. By the Statutes of *Edw.* III. they were to have a Common Seal. This is confirmed by the Statutes of King *Hen.* V. and ſince named the Great Seal of the Order. The uſe of this is

not

not only to Seal the Original Statutes, appointed to remain perpetually within the Treaſury of *Windſor* College, as alſo thoſe Copies of which each Knight-Companion is obliged to conſerve one, but likewiſe all Letters of Licence to any of the Knights-Companions deſirous of winning Honour abroad, and all Mandates and Certificates, relating to the Order.

After what Model the firſt Seal was compos'd, we have no exact Relation. *Polydore Virgil* tells us, That when the Founder of the Order had fixed Choice of St. *George* for its Patron, he repreſented him Armed, and Mounted on an Horſe, bearing a Silver Shield, and thereon a Red Croſs, but whether St. *George* thus deſigned, was on the firſt Seal, or only a Scutcheon of his Arms, as in latter times, is uncertain. But his Author obſerves that the Founder Habited his Soldiers in white Jackets or Coats, and on their Breaſts and Backs ſowed Red Croſſes, parallel to the Arms aſſigned to St. *George*, as well as to the Kingdom of *England*, put under his Patronage, which Arms the Sovereigns of the Order, have ever ſince exhibied in their Standards. But beſides this Common Seal King *Hen.* V. in the 9th Year of his Reign, Inſtituted a privy Signet, in caſe the Sovereign ſhould be called out of this Kingdom upon weighty Affairs. The intent thereof was to affix it to all Acts paſſed by the Sovereign beyond Sea, to diſtinguiſh them from thoſe of his Deputies in *England*. King *Hen.* VIII's Statutes, Ordain the making both of a Common Seal and Signet, and direct that the Arms of the Order ſhould be Engraven upon each of them. The Common Seal uſed in his Reign was a Garter, within it a Shield having the Croſs of St. *George*, impaling the National Arms, the ſaid Shield encompaſſed with two Branches hanging from the Regal Crown, which debruſes part of the Garter; the Signet being deſigned after the ſame manner, but leſs: *Temp. Jac.* I. it ſuffered no other alteration, but only in the National Arms, by admitting the Quarterings of *Scotland* and *Ireland*, and new-faſhioning the Crown, omitting the ſuſpenſion of the Shield.

There was a Seal made at the beginning of the Reign of King *Cha.* I. which being eſteemed too little for the Grandure and Honour of the Sovereigns Commiſſions,

miſſions, it was afterwards Decreed in Chapter, held 18th of *April.* 13. Car. I. *That a new one ſhould be made of a larger Size, with the accuſtomed Arms and Motto, and the care thereof commited to Sir* Thomas Rowe, *Chancellor*; which Command he Executed with all due care and regard, as is manifeſtly evident by the nobleneſs of the deſign: One Repreſentation being St. *George*, in Armour, adorned with a waveing Mantle, his Bever open, his Helmet plumed, holding a Shield of his Arms in his left Hand, and ſtriking with a Sword in his right, his Body mounted on a bold Horſe, Trampling over a Dragon, which Aſſails the Champion, the whole Figure is well contracted, and the Sun, a Rock, the Bones of devoured Men, and a Mountain in *Lointon*, in it is Circumſcribed, *Magnum ſigillum Nobilis Ordinis Garterij*; having the enrichments of feſtons between every Word placed pentagonally: The other Repreſentation, is the Royal Garter imperially Crowned, encloſing a Shield of the Arms of St. *George*, impaling the Sovereign's Arms, the ſame Bordered with Fret-work, and other Ornaments in Cartouche. In the ſame decree, direction was given alſo for a new Signet, the former being thought too big for Letters, and this was an Oval ſhaped ſo from its Impreſſion, which was the Garter Crowned, wherein was St. *George*, and the Sovereigns Arms impaled.

It was at the ſame Chapter further decreed; "That "all Legations to deliver this Order to Foreign "Princes, all other Acts, bearing the Stile of Com- "miſſions, all Patents of Offices and Fees, all Grants "or Licences ſent out of the Kingdom, ſhould be Sealed "with this Seal, which ſhould be henceforward called "the Great Seal of the Order; ſo alſo the Book of "Statutes, ſent to Elect Knights or Foreign Princes, "being fixed to a Label of Blue Silk, and held ac- "cording to antient Cuſtom; and that all Letters con- "cerning the Order, whether of ſignification of Electi- "on, or Lieutenancy, or Summons upon prorogation, "or other Directions from the Sovereign, ſhould only "be Sealed with the Signet: Moreover, theſe Seals "were appointed to be thenceforth Born before the "Sovereign in all Publick Aſſemblies, during the

"Celebration

" Celebration of St. *George*'s Feaſt, or in other its So-
" lemnities by the Chancellor of the Order, in a Purſe
" of blue Velvet," and Command given to Sir *Thomas Rowe*, to provid one accordingly; on the foreſide of which Purſe was richly Embroidred (by a Gold-Smith) with *Venice* Gold and Silver, Gold and Silver Purls and Plates, and variety of *Naples* Silks, the Arms of St. *George* impaling the Sovereign, ſurrounded with a Garter Crowned, having a very fair Running Work, or Compartment round about it, the charge of which amounted to 13 *l.* 16 *s.* 10 *d.*

By the Statutes of Inſtitution, it was ordained, That in caſe the Knights-Companions, to whoſe care the Sovereign did commit the Seal of the Order, ſhould upon lawful Occaſions, be abſent from Court, it behoves him to leave it behind him, with ſome other Knight-Companion to preſent, to the Sovereign, to the intent it might be always in readineſs; but if the Sovereign be out of His Kingdom, then the diſpoſal of it, was commited to the Deputies, and the Signet of the Order ſhould have a Warrant for all ſuch Acts and Decrees as ſhould be confirmed there.

The diſtance from Court was by the Conſtitutions, reſtricted to 10 Miles, and by the Statutes of King *Hen.* VIII. to 20. upon conſideration whereof we find Sir *Thomas Rowe* Chancellor, having ſome occaſions, *Anno* 13 *Car.* I. to be abſent above 20 Miles, tendred the Seals to the Sovereign, who was pleaſed to diſpence with the Statutes, and permitted him to keep them nevertheleſs.

§ 3. The Regiſters Oath, Mantle, Badge, Privileges and Penſion, fall next under our conſideration; he was one of the three, Conſtituted at the Inſtitution of the Order, under the Title of *Regiſtrator* and *Regiſtrarius*, and ſo is called in the Statutes of King *Hen.* V. elſewhere in the Books of the Order, *Scriba* and *Actuarius*. What were the firſt Regiſters, names we cannot diſcover, till the Reign of King *Hen.* V. But it may be preſumed, they were Canons of *Windſor*; becauſe this Office was at firſt aſſigned to one of that College; beſides the Regiſters from the Reign of King *Henry* V. to the beginning of King *Henry* VIIIth Reign, were alſo Canons of this College, among whom

whom was *John Coningham*, (and the first found called so) as the Fragments of a Glass Inscription in *Clare* Church near *Windsor*, where he was Rector, attests. The first Dean of *Windsor*, Constituted Register of the Order was *John Vesey*, Anno 8. *Hen.* VIII. many of whose Successors in this Deanry, have since been admitted; nevertheless, as they were Canons not Deans of *Windsor*, and tis not improbable the Deans were Elected to this Office, as being enabled to support the Reputation of the Registership, with the Revenue of his Deanry, better than any of the Canons, with the addition of the Pension. But at a Chapter held at *Whitehall*, the 22d of *April*, 11 *Car.* I. The Sovereign thought it convenient that the Office of Dean and Register should concenter in one and the same Person, as formerly, and therefore commanded this his Pleasuer to be Enrolled among the Annals of the Order, that so it might pass in the future Times, from Example into Rule.

By the Constitutions of the Office, a secular Person is made capable of it, no less than an Ecclesiastick, how be it, *He is to be a Man of singular integrity*, eminent quality, a Knight, and signalized for Experience and Learning; but if an Ecclesiastick, then must he be a Person of consummate Erudition, *a professor of Divinity or Law, either Canon, or Civil*, and a Dignitarian in some Cathedral Church, or else a Canon at *Windsor*.

The substance of his Oath in the Statute of the Institutions was, *That he should enter upon the Registry, with all Fidelity, the Scrutinies, Elections, Penalties, Reconciliations, and all other Acts relating to the Order*, to which was added, that he shall faithfully Discharge his Duty in all things. But in King *Hen.* VIIIth Days, the Oath enjoyned him, differs nothing from that of the Prelates and Chancellors.

At his Admission, he takes this Oath Kneeling, while the Prelate used to pronounce the Words as *Anno* 1 *Mar.* 5. and 6. *Ph.* and *Mar.* but in his absence, as *Anno* 3 *Eliz.* the Chancellor administred it. *Anno* 4. *Car.* I. the Prelate, Chancellor, and Register, took their Oaths at one time, and then it was thus Ordered; first the Register took itKneeling between the Sovereign's Knees, the Black Rod holding the Evangelists, and the *Garter*

read

read the Words out of the black Book; this done, the Regiſter read the Words of the Prelates Oath, when he was Sworn; and in the laſt place, did the like to the Chancellor; after this manner did Garter read the Words to the Regiſters, admitted 11 *Car.* I. and 12 *Car.* II. We cannot trace the Habit this Officer had aſſigned him at the Erection of the Order; but it afterwards appears, that his Allowance was the ſame with the Chancellors, conſiſting of 5 Yards of Woollen Cloth, and 3 Timber of Minever groſs, equalent to what thoſe Knights-Companions had allotted, who were under the degree of an Earl: The Habit he is pourtrayed in, at a proceeding of King *Hen.* VIIIth Reign, ſhews it to be Eccleſiaſtical, a black Gown, a Surplice over that, reaching to his Ancles, and thereon a Mantle of Furs; but the Conſtitutions of his Office reſtricted him to none, wherein there ſeems a defect, ſince they have aſſignd Habits to the Garter, and black Rod. Notwithſtanding by a Draught of the Officers in their ancient Dreſs, it is plainly demonſtrable to be a Mantle, ſomewhat of a Ruſſel colour, Faced with a Pane of blue, whereon is Embroidred a Flower-deluce Crowned Gold, then another Pane red, thereon a Lyon Paſſant gardant Crowned Gold, and ſo they are alternately placed to the bottom; to this Mantle belong Cordons of Silk, blue and yellow.

Since that time, not only the Regiſters, but alſo Garters and Black Rods, Robes, underwent ſome Alterations; for by a Decree in Chapter, called at St. *James*, *Jun.* 1. 4 and 5. *Ph.* and *Mar.* theſe Officers were aſſigned Mantles of crimſon Satin, Lined with Taffaty, and a Scutcheon of St. *George*'s Arms, Embroidred on the left Shoulder, but not encircled with a Garter, having the ſame Buttons and Taſſels as wereappointed to the Prelate and Chancellor; the proportion of Satin aſſigned to each Mantle, was 14 Yards, and as many Yards of white Taffaty.

And tho' the Regiſters Mantle was *Ann.* 27 *Eliz.* compoſed of the preceeding Materials, and had like Trimming, yet they agree not in their Proportions, here being allowed 18 Yards of crimſon Satin, and but 12 of Taffaty; from hence theſe Mantles continued immuta-

ble until the 20th of *Feb.* 13 *Car.* II. when there Iſſued a Warrant to the Maſter of the great Wardrobe, to prepare for this Officer, as alſo for Garter, and the Black Rod, for their Liveries Mantles of ſcarlet Satin, each containing 18, and 10 Yards of white Taffaty for Lining, but conſonant in all other Punctilio's with the former; yet why the colour was altered, is not expreſſed.

The Regiſter ſeems to have been repreſented with a Scrowle in his Hand, for his Badge, and by the proceedings in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, Pictured with a Book, both proper Symbols of his Office. In Dr. *Chriſtopher Wren*'s Regiſterſhip, the Sovereign Commanded him to cover the red Book of the Order with crimſon Velvet, and aſſigned for the Garter, two Pens in Saltire, interlacing the Garter above with theſe two Letters *C R* Crowned, all being richly Embroidred, (as alſo the Border) with *Venice* Gold and Silver, and various colours of *Naples* Silk, by *Harriſon* the Sovereign's Embroiderer, with a Claſp, in Imitation of the Garter, ſurrounding the Repreſentation of St. *George*, which coſt 12 *l.* 17 *s.* 6 *d.* This Book he was Ordered to bear before his Breaſt, on all Solemn Occaſions when he wore his Mantle, and for his better Convenience, he made a Belt and an Ouch to hang it by.

So high a Regard had the Sovereigns of this Order, not only to this Officer, but likewiſe to Garter and Black Rod, that they took them into a particular Protection, and by the Conſtitutions of their Offices granted them, "That they, their Goods and Servants "ſhould ſeverally remain under the Safe-guard of the "Sovereign; and if any Injury or Violence ſhould "chance to be offered them either by Subjects or For-"reigners, whenſoever they ſhould exhibit their Com-"plaint to the Sovereign, either himſelf or the "Knights-Companions ſhould afford them Juſtice; but "if the adverſe Party ſhould refuſe to ſubmit his Cauſe "to the Sovereign, then the Sovereign and Knights-"Companions ſhould ſhew themſelves ſo far inclinable "towards theſe Officers, as to be ready to allow them "all favour, countenance, *&c.*" conſiſtent with Juſtice and Equity.

Upon

Upon the ſtrength and Security of this ancient Privilege, to avoid the prolongation of a Law-Suit, Dr. *Chriſtopher Wren* Regiſter, Petitioned the Sovereign in Chapter, held at *Whitehall*, the 19th of *April*, 13 *Car.* I. againſt one *Thornhill*, who under Pretence of Digging for Salt-Peter, had ſo Undermined his Pigeon-houſe, Built on the Rectory of *Knoil Magna* in *Wiltſh.* that it fell down; and upon reading of the Petition, it was reſolved by the Sovereign, and Knights-Companions, "That they would conſider the Grant in the Con-"ſtitutions, and, until it was farther declared, the Chan-"cellor of the Order ſhould have Power upon Infor-"mation of any rigour upon Controverſe begun in "any other Court, to write Letters under the Signet "of the Order, that all vexation againſt them ſhould "be ſuperſeded until Information of the cauſe were gi-"ven to and determination in the Cauſe reſumed by the "Sovereign, or leave of him obtained to Proceed." After this it is ſet down, that *Thornhill* was Summoned before the Lords Commiſſioners of the Navy, and his negative Anſwer given in, and repreſented to the Sovereign in another Chapter, conven'd the 4th of *October* enſuing; whereupon it was ordered, "That the Chancellor "ſhould write to the ſame Lords Commiſſioners, and "another to the Earls of *Pembroke*, *Arundel* and *Dorſet*, "three of the Knights-Companions, to Empower "them, that they or any three of them, ſhould cauſe "the ſaid *Thornhill* to be brought before them, and like-"wiſe write to any of the Inhahitants of *Knoil*, to view "and teſtifie the Truth, to hear any further proof on "the behalf of either Party, and to give Sentence ac-"cording to Juſtice, that ſo a tedious Suit of Law might "be prevented, and the Dignity of this moſt noble Or-"der protected." Theſe Commands of the Chancellor being Executed, and Certificates returned from the Country, the Knights Companions, in a Chapter held the 23th of *May*, 14 *Car.* I. were moved to peruſe them; but before they could meet, *Thornhill* fled, and the Proſecution of this buſineſs ceaſed. Upon the ſame footing was it, that the ſaid Dr. *Wren* obtained from King *Cha.* I. His Gracious Protection for himſelf, Servants, and Eſtate, literally expreſſed in the late War, *as the*

Violaters of that Order would anſwer this our contrary at their Peril, Dated at Oxford, *under the Signet of this our Order the* 12th *Day of* Dec. *in the* 19th *Year of our Reign.*

THIS Officer by the Conſtitutions hath a Penſion of 50 l. *per Annum*, or proportionable in Fees, Offices, or other Emoluments; and *Ann.* 1. and 2 *Ph.* and *Mar.* the ſame numerical Penſion was conferred on *Owen Oglethorp*, Dean of *Windſor*, out of the Exchequer, until ſome Eccleſiaſtical Preferment of like value ſhould devolve on him. The ſame was confirmed to Dr. *Maxey*, by Decree in Chapter, 16 *Jac.* I. and afterwards to Dr. *Beaumont*, by Letters Patent, under the Great Seal of *England*, 20 *Jac.* I. but there needed no Allotment of Lodgings at *Windſor* to this Officer, as there was to the reſt, ſince both the Canons and Dean were provided of Houſes belonging to their Eccleſiaſtical Dignities within the College, at the Erection of the Order.

§ 4. THE *fourth Officer of the Order is Garter.* He was ordained by King *Henry* V. with the advice and conſent of all the Knights-Companions, who for the Honour of the Order, was pleaſed he ſhould be the principal Officer within the College of Arms, and chief of the Heralds. The Services enjoyned him, relating to the Order, were in preceding Times, performed by the *Windſor* Herald of Arms, an Officer created with that Title by K. *Edward* III. much about the time of his Erecting this Order, and an Annual Penſion of 20 Marks, payable out of the Exchequer, by Letters Patent for Life, which was confirmed by King *R.* II.

SIR *William Brugges* was the Perſon firſt created Garter, and called in the Inſtitution of his Office, *Jartier Roy d'armys des Anglois*, but elſewhere ſtiled *Willielmus Brugges, alias Dictus, Gartier Rex Armorum.* This Sir *William* became a great Benefactor to St. *George*'s Church at *Stamford*, and in the Windows of the Chancel cauſed to be Repreſented King *Edward* III. with his twenty five Knights-Companions kneeling, Habited in their Mantles and Surcoats of Arms, but now much ſhattered and defaced; *John Smert* his Succeſſor had this Office conferred on him by Letters Patents, under this Title *Rex Armorum de Garteria*, and *John Wrythe* was ſtiled

Principalis

Principalis Heraldus, & Officiarius inclyti Ordinis Garterij, Armorumq; Rex Anglicorum, but Sir *Gilbert Dethick* leaving out *Heraldus* joyned *Principalis Rex*, which ſtill continues.

In the Conſtitutions of his Office he is called *Garterus, Rex Armorum Angliæ*, whom the Sovereign and Knights-Companions have decreed to be a Gentleman of Blood and Arms, of unſpotted Reputation, and Born within the Kingdom of *England*; beſides as King *Hen.* V. did before, ſo doth King *Hen.* VIII. declare that he ſhall be chief of all the Officers of Arms, dependant upon the Crown of *England*.

The ſubſtance of his Oath adminiſtred by the Regiſter at his admiſſion, whilſt he humbly kneeleth at the Sovereign's Feet, in the Chapter Houſe; is,

1. *To yield Obedience to the Sovereign, and Knights-Companions.*

2. *To keep Silence, and not diſcloſe the Secrets of the Order.*

3. *To make ſignification of the Death of each Knight-Companion.*

4. *To execute all things faithfully committed to his Care.*

5. *To enquire diligently after all the noble Acts of the Knights-Companions, and certifie them to the Regiſter.*

6. *To be faithful in the exerciſe of his Office.*

And ſuch an Oath Sir *Chriſtopher Barker* took at a Chapter held at *Greenwich* 28 *Hen.* VIII. when he was made Garter.

As for a particular Habit, we do not find any inſerted in the Great Wardrobe, whence it is preſumed, he was at firſt diſtinguiſhed from the reſt of the Officers of the Order, by his Coat Embroidred with the Sovereign's Arms, like as the Provincial King's then wore. But after the Conſtitutions of the Officers were Eſtabliſhed, there was aſſigned him a Habit or Mantle in all reſpects, reſembling the Regiſter, (ſaving that the Ground whereon the Lyons and flower-de-luces were Embroidred, was entirely Red) and this to be wore only at the publick Solemnities of the Order. Queen *Mary* Commanded it to be made of crimſon Satin, and ſo it remained till the Reſtoration, when the Colour was altered to ſcarlet.

THIS Officer is appointed to bear a white Rod or Scepter at every Feaſt of St. *George*, the Sovereign being preſent, gilded at both ends, and at the top the Arms of the Order impaling the Sovereign's Arms pourtray'd on an oblong Cube Crowned, but no directions are given in the Conſtitutions for this Crown, nor for that Ducal one on his Head wherewith his Effigies has been repreſented, and yet at all great Solemnities is never uſed that we can diſcover. There was aſſigned him by Queen *Eliz.* a Badge of Gold to be worn daily by him and his Succeſſors, before the Breaſt, in a gold Chain or Ribband, and thereon Ennamelled the Sovereign's Arms, Crowned with an Imperial Crown, and both ſurrounded with the Garter: But Sir *Edward Walker* when made Garter, obtained the Sovereign's leave to Impale therein St. *Georges*'s Arms, with thoſe of the Sovereign's, which Badge is alike on both ſides.

THERE is an Houſe appointed for his Habitation within *Windſor* Caſtle, called Garters Tower. It was by Chapter annexed for ever to the Office of Garter, and reſtored to Sir *William Segar*'s Poſſeſſion, 2d of *May*, 1630. By the Conſtitution of his Office, he is to be allowed Barons Service in the Sovereign's Court, and his Table Served next after the Dean of the Chapel, with ſuch Liveries as of old were accuſtomed.

IT appears that King *Hen.* V. after his erecting this Office, died before he had ſettled a Penſion upon Sir *William Brugges*, for ſupportation of his little Eſtate, which the Knights-Companions taking into conſideration, and that he might more honourably comport himſelf to the Service of the Order, till the young King ſhould come to Age, they being aſſembled in a Chapter, with the conſent of the Prelate, decreed the ſaid Sir *William* to receive of each of them at every Feaſt of St. *George*, as is ſet down, *viz.*

Of the Biſhop of *Wincheſter* Prelate		5	Marks.
Dukes	— — —	5	
Of every	Earl — —	6	Nobles.
	Baron or Baronet	4	
	Knight Batchelor	2	

THE

The first payment was agreed to be pay'd down, and so to remain in force annually with requeſt to the abſent Knights, that for the Honour of the Order, and cauſes in the Inſtrument expreſs'd, they would approve of their Ordinance which paſſed under the Seal of the Order, Dated at *Windſor*, 1422. Afterwards King *Hen.* VI. in conſideration of his Services to his Father and himſelf, with conſent of his Council, granted to the ſaid *Brugges*, by Letters Patent, a Penſion of 20 l. *per Annum*, out of the Fee Farm of the City of *Wincheſter* during his pleaſure, which Penſion upon the ſurrender of his Patent he granted anew to him and *Agnes* his Wife, for their Lives and the longer liver of them; and when this Office upon Sir *William Brugges* death, was devolved on *John Smert*, *Guyenne* herald (3 *April* 28 *Hen.* VI.) he had the yearly Sum of 20 *l.* granted him therewith for Life out of the Exchequer: But his Succeſſor *John Wrythe*, *Norroy*, obtained an increaſe of Penſion to 40 l. *per Annum*, made payable out of the ſmall Cuſtoms of the City of *London*; this annual Sum was afterwards confirmed to Garter by the Conſtitution of his Office, and an Augmentation from the then Knights-Companions additional to the Penſions granted by their Predeceſſors, upon the Death of King *Hen.* V.

Of	A Duke — —	4	Pounds.
	A Marqueſs —	5	Marks.
	An Earl — —	4	
	A Baron —	6	Nobles.
	A Knight Batchelor	4	

In ſucceeding times the Sovereign thought fit to augment this Penſion to 50 l. *per Annum*, (now payable out of the Revenue ſettled upon the Order,) and the Knights-Companions yet to enlarge their Sallery, which they did, (the Sovereign aſſenting) by the decree made in a Chapter held at *Windſor* 13, 14, and 15. *Sept. An.* 1617. wherein it was ordained, *That their Officer Sir* William Segar *Garter Knight, King of Arms of that Order ſhould then, and from thenceforth have renew'd and paid unto him certain annual Fees and Penſions, anciently enjoyed by his Predeceſſors, with a ſurplus of* 10 *l.* per Annum, *which his Majeſty's Act of Royal Bounty, hath given to*

his ſaid Servant for his better ſupport and maintenance, as alſo of Prince Charles, *Prince of* Wales, *the Sum of* 8 l. *and of every Duke of the Blood* 6 l. *all other Eſtates,* viz. *a Duke not of the Blood* 4 l. *a Marqueſs* 5 *Marks, an Earl* 4 *Marks, a Viſcount* 7 *Nobles, a Baron* 40 s. *and a Knight Batchelor that ſhall be of the Order,* 26 s. 8 d. *all which ſaid Sums of Money, according to the ſeveral degrees of their Eſtates, are to be paid, (continues the Decree) unto the ſaid Garter or his aſſigns yearly at St.* Georges's *Feaſt, or immediately after, as well by the Knights then preſent, as by thoſe that ſhall be abſent, or hereafter are to ſucceed in the ſaid Order; and after the deceaſe of the ſaid Garter, to his Succeſſors for ever.*

At St. *Georges*'s Feaſt, Celebrated at *Windſor*, 22, 23, and 24 of *April*, *Anno* 15 *Car.* II. Sir *Edward Walker* then Garter, repreſenting by Petition, that the annual Penſion of the inſtalled Knights then in Arrear for one Year, amounted to 94 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* according to their proper proportion, the Sovereigns Share, (he being to pay for all ſtranger Knights) amounted at that time, to 32 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* and humbly praying that his Majeſty would grant to him and his Succeſſors an 100 l. *per Annum*, out of the Revenue ſettled to the uſe of the Order, in lieu not only of thoſe ſaid Penſions, payable from the Sovereign and Knights-Companions, both Strangers and Subjects; but for reſigning his Claim to his annual Penſion of 50 *l.* in conſideration for preparing Scutcheons and removal of Atchievements. This Petition the Sovereign was pleaſed to refer to a Committe of the Knights-Companions, who, namely the Duke of *Albemarl*, the Earls of *Lindſey*, *Mancheſter*, *Sandwich*, and *Stafford*, who being attended by Garter, and weighing the event of the Petition, offered their opinions to the Sovereign, to grant him the ſaid 100 l. *per Annum* in lieu of what he offered to quit, whereby the intereſt of this Office might be preſerved in a more compendious Method than it was, his Majeſty exempted from thoſe ſmall payments for Strangers, and the Knights-Subjects themſelves were diſcharged from their annual Penſion, and his Majeſty ratifying the ſame ſhortly after, Sir *Henry de Vic*, the Chancellor, was ordered to pay unto Garter, and his Succeſſors the ſaid annual Penſion of 100 *l.* which was accordingly

accordingly put in Execution, as an Equivalent for all Fees and Salaries relating to the Order of the Garter.

The Duty of this Officer in general is, to perform, or cauſe to be effected all Tranſactions whatſoever, the Sovereign, or Prelate, or Chancellor ſhall enjoyn him, in relation to this Moſt Noble Order.

§. 5. The fifth and laſt Officer is the *Black-Rod*. This Officer was inſtituted by the Founder, King *Ed.* III. but whether at the firſt Erection of the Order doth not appear. Howbeit, within a few Years after, 35 *E.* III. the King conferr'd to *William Whitehorſe*, Eſq; for Life, *Officium Hoſtiarii Capellæ Regis infra Caſtrum de* Windeſore, with a Fee of 12 *d.* a Day out of his Exchequer.

Anno 3 *Hen.* IV. this Office is called *Officium Virgarij comitivæ de la Garter infra Caſtrum Regis de Windeſore*; and under that Denomination was confirmed to *Thomas Sye*, with the Fees and Emoluments thereunto expreſſed. In the Patent to his Succeſſor, *John Athilbrigg*, *Ann.* 1 *H.* 5. it is ſtiled, *Officium Virgarij ſive Oſtiarij*, &c. Afterwards it hath the Title, *Officium Virgæ-bajuli coram Rege ad feſtum Sancti* Georgii *infra Caſtrum Regis de* Windeſore. And ever ſince it runs in the Patents by the Appellation of *Virgæ-Bajulus*, *Virgarius*, or *Nigri-vergifer*. But in the Conſtitutions of his Office, he hath the Title of *Hoſtiarius*; and under the reſtriction of theſe Qualifications, that he be a Gentleman of Blood and Arms, born within the Sovereigns Dominions; and if he be not a Knight at his admiſſion into the Office, he ought then to be Knighted. As *Garter* was Entituled the Principal Officer of Arms, ſo was the *Black-Rod*, for the Honour of the Order, appointed the Chief Uſher in the Kingdom. And as he is ſo, and frequently called Gentleman-Uſher of the *Black-Rod*, ſo we ſhall wave, as we did in *Garter*, all things appertaining to his Employments, otherwiſe than what directly is included in this Moſt Noble Order.

In a Chapter held at *Whitehall*, the 13th of *February*, 6 *Car.* I. It was decreed, *That the Office of the Black-Rod ſhould from thenceforth ſucceſſively, as ſoon as the ſame ſhould become void* (*James Maxwell*, Eſq; then enjoying it) *be annexed to ſome one of the Gentlemen-Uſhers, Daily-waiters, whom the Sovereign ſhould appoint.*

This

This was carried upon the Petition of the Gentlemen-Ushers, Daily-waiters, seconded by the Lord Chamberlain, the Earl-Marshal, and others, Knights-Companions; as is evident from another Petition of theirs to the Sovereign in Chapter, assembled at *Oxford*, the 17th of *January*, 20 *Car.* I. But some Years after this, 1642. the Lord *Lanrick*, Secretary for *Scotland*, had on Mr. *Maxwell*'s behalf, obtained the Sovereign's Warrant for Letters-Patent under the Great-Seal, for two Lives, *Maxwell*'s and Mr. *Alexander Thayn*, the longest Liver of them; whereby the said Decree was frustrate to the Gentlemen-Ushers; of which making Complaint in the last mentioned Chapter, the Sovereign and Knights-Companions (in regard this latter Grant was not only repugnant to the preceding Decree, and the Great-Seal surreptitiously gained, but ought likewise to have passed the Seals of the Order) order'd *Peter Newton*, Esq; to be presently sworn into this Office. Nevertheless, after the Restoration, *A. D.* 1660. *Newton* being then dead, the Gentlemen-Ushers, Daily-waiters, Petition'd again, and *Thayne* was demanded to put in his Answer; and the result of the whole was, after mature Deliberation in a Chapter held at *Whitehall*, the 20th of *February*, 13 *Car* II. the Decree which fix'd this Office to one of the Gentlemen-Ushers Daily-waiters, was confirmed, and *John Ayton*, one of the Petitioners, was sworn Gentleman-Usher of the Black-Rod, which was performed by the Register in the Presence of the Sovereign, the Chapter sitting.

The Form of the Oath given to this Officer, *temp. Hen.* VIII. was, *Truly and Faithfully to observe and keep all the Points of the Statutes of the Order as to him belonged and appertained.*

He hath the like Habit with the Register and Garter before described, but his Ensign and Badge is somewhat different from Garter's; for first, it was ordained, *That he or his Deputy should carry a Black-Rod* (whence he hath his Title) *before the Sovereign, or his Deputy, at the Feast of St.* George, *within the Castle of* Windsor, *and at other Solemnities and Chapters of the Order.* On the Top of which there ought to be set a Lyon of *England.* This Rod serves instead of a Mace, and has the same Authority to

ap-

apprehend Delinquents, and ſuch have offended againſt the Statutes of this Moſt Noble Order. And where he apprehends any one of the Order, as Guilty of ſome Crime for which he is to be expell'd the Order, the manner of it is by touching them with this Black-Rod, and his Fee for it, is 5 *l.*

He has aſſigned him a Golden Badge to be openly worn in a Gold Chain, or Ribband, before his Breaſt, compoſed of one of the Knots in the Collar of the Order which tye the Roſes together, and encompaſſed with a Garter, being alike on both ſides; which was conferred on him and his Succeſſors, by Decree in Chapter, held the 24th of *April*, 8 *Eliz.*

'Tis as ancient as *Hen.* Vth's Reign, for there's a Houſe in *Windſor* Caſtle granted to this Officer by Letters-Patent, during Life. And the ſame Proviſion is made for him by the Conſtitutions of his Office. It is ſituate on the South-ſide of the Caſtle in the middle Ward. The ſaid Conſtitutions give him Baron-Service at Court, and Livery thereto appertaining; and beſides theſe, the keeping of the ſaid Caſtle, and the two Parks adjacent.

King *Charles* I. having taken into his Hands the little Park of *Windſor*, and beſtow'd it upon *James Maxwell*, then Uſher of the Black-Rod, He, at a Chapter held at *Whitehall*, the 5th of *November*, 1629. decreed, That as the Cuſtody of the ſaid Park was conferr'd on *Maxwell* in right of his Office; ſo the ſame ſhould for ever after be annex'd thereto, and not to be diſpoſed of but under the Great Seal of the Order, and that only to the Uſher of the Order for the time being.

Lastly, this Officer had anciently a Fee of 12 *d. per diem*, which we find continu'd down in the Letters-Patents, whereby this Office was granted. Beſides which, the Conſtitutions of his Office allow him an annual-Penſion of 30 *l.* heretofore paid him out of the Exchequer, but by King *Charles* I. aſſigned him out of 1200 *l. per Ann.* ſettled upon the Order; touching which, and the Payment of the Officers Penſions upon the new Eſtabliſhment, is the next Section.

§. 6. King

§. 6. King *James* I. taking into his Royal Breaſt, the Conſtitution of this Moſt Noble Order, that it was in the Nature of a Diſtinct Sovereignty, govern'd by Laws and Conventions proper to the Body, and himſelf as Sovereign in Matters immediately relating thereunto, had the ſole and uncontroulable Authority of reviſing, adding, or explaining; and finding that the Penſions paid to the Officers of the Order (as thoſe to the Alms-Knights) and ſome other Expences, had been anciently made payable out of his Exchequer by vertue of the Great Seals of *England*, or otherwiſe by Privy-Seals; and conceiving it incongruous, that the Officers ſhould claim their Penſions by vertue of any other Seal than that of the Order, for it is in ſome kind derogatory to the Honour of the Order, to permit other Seals to be uſed within the ſame: He thereupon with twelve Knights-Companions in a Chapter held at *Whitehall*, the 22d of *May*, 20 *Jac.* I. paſſed a Decree, *That all things concerning the Order ſhould hereafter be ratify'd under the Seal of the Order only, and in particular, that the Grants of poor Knights Places, after their being Signed by the Sovereign, ſhould be paſſed under the Seal of the Order only, and none other.* And the Year following, the Chancellor was ordered, *That he ſhould take Advice of the Sovereign's* Attorney-General *how by Vertue of the Seal of the Order, the Penſions,* (given to the Poor Knights) *might be paid and receiv'd,* His Majeſty's further Pleaſure being, *That all Grants and Payments concerning the Order, ſhould afterwards be confirmed under the Seal of the Order only, and by Vertue thereof.*

As to the Alms-Knights Patents, this Decree was of Force and Validity, but in the other Generals, how far it was purſu'd we know not; for in ſome of them it grew obſolete and uſeleſs. But in a Chapter called at *Windſor*, the 22d of *April*, 10 *Car.* I. a Debate aroſe about ſetting a Part of the Annual Summ of 1000 *l.* out of the Receipts of his Majeſty's Exchequer, to be employ'd particularly in diſcharge of Expences towards the Feaſts of the Order, Legations to Foreign Princes, Payment of the Officers Penſions, *&c.* diſburſed for the Neceſſity and Reputation of this Noble Order. Afterwards at a

Chap-

Chapter held the 18th of *April*, 13 *Car.* I. that Sovereign ratify'd his Royal Aſſignation, and increaſed his Bounty to 1200 *l. per Ann.* ſetling it for thoſe deſigns in a Perpetuity for ever, and making it payable out of the Cuſtoms in the Port of *London*, but to be received by the Chancellor of the Order for the time being, as Treaſurer of this Money, of which he was to give up an Account to the Sovereign and Knights-Companions yearly at St. *George*'s Feaſt. And in purſuance of this Ratification, the Attorney-General had Inſtructions to draw up a Book for his Royal Signature to Warrant its paſſing under the Great Seal of *England*, which was diſpatch'd, the Letters-Patent bearing *teſte* at *Weſtminſter*, the 23d of *January*, 13 *Car.* I. Immediately after, Sir *Thomas Rowe*, the Chancellor of the Order, preſented a Liſt of the ordinary Fees and Charges of the Order, upon which it was agreed to, *That there ſhould iſſue out a ſtanding Commiſſion to the Chancellor under the Great Seal of the Order to warrant the Yearly Payments, and he to be diſcharged according as the ſaid Patent had provided.* This Commiſſion paſſing the Great Seal the 3d of *May*, 14 *Car.* I. the Sovereign thereby impower'd the Chancellor to make payable out of the yearly Revenue of 1200 *l.* all and every the yearly Fees, Penſions, Salaries, and other Payments due and payable to the Officers of the Order, Alms-Knights, or others, appertaining to the Order, either by Charter, Grant, or Aſſignation under the Seal and Signet of the Order, or by any other Lawful way whatſoever, and in particular,

		l.	*s.*	
To	Himſelf as Chancellor	100	0	*per Ann.*
	Regiſter of the Order	50	0	
	Garter Principal King of Arms	50	0	
	Uſher of the Black-Rod	30	0	
	Thirteen Alms-Knights	237	5	
	Total	467	5	

And Sir *Thomas Rowe*, and in his Abſence beyond Sea, Sir *James Palmer*, Deputy-Chancellor receiv'd out of the Sovereigns Receipts of Subſidies, Cuſtoms and Impoſts, the

the 1200 *l. per Ann.* out of which they paid the Annual Penſions above-named, under the Title of *certain* and *ordinary Charges*, as alſo ſuch as come within the Denomination of Accidental and Extraordinary Expences; of which kind in their time, were,

Mantles, when the Sovereigns pleas'd to beſtow them on the Knights-Compa nions.

Plate for the Altar in St. George's Chappel *at* Windſor.

Embroidery of the Purſe for holding the Seals.

Removal of Atchievements and Plates againſt Inſtallations.

Eſcutcheons ſet up at St. George's Feaſt.

Privy Seals and Fees disburſt for receiving the 1200 *l.* per Annum.

Fees for Inſtallation of Foreign Princes and Stranger-Knights.

Parchment uſed in Diſpenſations and Prorogations.

Blue Wax for the Seals of the Order.

By which we are eaſily inform'd, what ought to be accounted extraordinary Expences, towards the Diſcharge whereof this Sum was to be employ'd as far as it would reach, to mitigate the Coſt the great Wardrobe formerly ſtood taxed with, Proviſions of the Order, both for foreign Embaſſies and Expences at Home.

The Manner of the Chancellor's paſſing his Account, as directed by the ſaid Commiſſion, was thus done by Sir *James Palmer*, He humbly moved the Sovereign in Chapter held the 10th of *October*, 15 *Car.* I. That it would pleaſe him to view the Diſburſements made for the Expences of the Order, which thereupon being Examined by the Knights in the Sovereign's Preſence, the ſame were found agreeable to the Directions of the Commiſſion, and the Payments juſtify'd by the Acquittance of every Officer to whom any Fee was due, no Payment having been made without the Sovereign's Hand firſt to Authorize it: Allwhich being ſeen and allow'd, the Account (wherein his Diſburſements exceeded his Receipts 37 *l.* 13 *s.* 10 *s.*) was eſteemed Equitable and Juſt, and paſſed by the Subſcription of *Charles* then Prince of *Wales*, the Earls of *Pembroke* and *Montgomery*, *Salisbury*, *Holland* *Berk-ſhire*, Duke *Hamilton*, and the Earl of *Northumberland*.

§. 7. The

§. 7. The Executions of these Offices is the last thing here to be described: For tho' all the Officers are strictly obliged to give personal Attendance to their Offices; yet, in case of Sickness, Absence out of the Kingdom, or other emergent Reasons, the Sovereign is pleased to dispence with them, and constitute others to Officiate in their stead, who on such Occasions wear the Robe of that Officer whom they represent, so in case of Vacancy, the Absence of the Prelate at the Grand Feast celebrated at *Windsor*, 31 *Hen.* VI. is noted in the *Black Book* to have been upon just Cause, and the Bishop of *Bangor* officiated Divine Service, and next Morning celebrated the Mass *pro defunctis*. The following Year, his Place in these religious Duties was supply'd by the Bishop of *Salisbury*, as *Ann.* 36 and 37 *Hen.* VI. and at all times of the Prelates absence, the Sovereign hath made known his Will what Bishop should supply for him. The Office of Chancellor hath been executed by Proxies, and to this may first be referred a Passage in the *Black Book*, where Dr. *Taylor* hath the Title of *Vice-Chancellor*. Of later times, when Sir *Thomas Rowe* was employ'd in an Embassy into *Germany*, Sir *James Palmer*, Kt. (one of the Gentlemen-Ushers of the Privy-Chamber) was deputed by the Sovereign to the Chancellor-ship during his Absence, having the Purse with the Seals deliver'd to him the 4th of *May*, 14 *Car.* I. being sworn by the Register of the Order *durante deputatione & beneplacito Regis*, which Clause was likewise annex'd in the Deputy *Chancellor*'s Oath, 12 *Car.* II. Upon Sir *Thomas Rowe*'s return, and indisposition, 16 *Car.* I. Sir *James* was again deputed *Chancellor*, and a third time, 18 *Car.* I. continu'd Deputy *Chancellor* unto the Death of Sir *Thomas Rowe*, of which the Sovereign being inform'd at *Oxford*, 1644. reserved the disposal of this Office 'till Sir *James*'s return to Court, and then commanded him to wear the Badge and Ribband about his Neck, 'till a Chapter of the *Order* compleated his admittance.

In the Vacancy of the Register-ship, *Ann.* 2 H. VIII. *Thomas Ruthall* Bishop of *Durham*, supply'd it: And *Ann.* 18 and 19 *Eliz.* Dr. *Day*, Dean of *Windsor*, executed the Office, and attended at the Feasts of St. *George*,

as

as Deputy-Regiſter; Dr. *George Carew* then Regiſter, having Licence by his Patent to execute it by himſelf or Deputy, being diſpenc'd with by the Queen in caſe of Sickneſs, or other Impediment. After his Deceaſe, Dean *Day* was commanded to execute the Office during its Vacancy (being 14 Years) which he effected 'till he was advanced to the Biſhoprick of *Wincheſter*, *An.* 38 *Eliz.* upon which, Dr. *Robert Bennet* (who ſucceeded him in his Deanry) was the ſame Year admitted Regiſter. Afterwards, Dr. *Beaumont*, being much broken with Age, and other Diſeaſes, Dr. *John King*, the junior Canon, ſupplied his Place.

The Office of Garter hath been ſupplied by Deputation: For in thoſe Embaſſies with the Enſigns of the Order to Foreign Princes, where ſpecial Occaſions detained Garter at home, ſome of the Kings or Heralds of Arms, have been order'd upon thoſe Employments, upon the Recommendation of Garter to the Sovereign; whereof there are ſeveral Inſtances; the laſt of *Gregory King*, Eſq. *Lancaſter*-Herald, who lately carried over the Habit to the Elector of *Hanover*. So alſo in caſe of Vacancy; for we find that *Clarencieux*, King of Arms, executed this Office after Sir *Gilbert Dethick*'s Death, in *January*, 27 *Eliz.* being then ſent with the Earl of *Darby* to the *French* King *Henry* III. As alſo in Reference to the Preparations the 15th of *April* following, and Service performed thereat, and at the Feaſt of St. *George* enſuing.

The Conſtitution of the Office of Black-Rod admit of a Deputy to bear the Rod before the Sovereign, where a lawful Occaſion impedes his perſonal Service. And Sir *Peter Young*, (Chief Gentleman-Uſher,) performed this Office at the Feaſt of St. *George* held at *Windſor*, *Ann.* 6 *Car.* I. *James Maxwell*, Eſq. Black-Rod, was in *France* upon the Sovereign's Service; and after, being Miſſion'd by the King into *Scotland*, *Peter Newton*, Eſq; ſupplied his Place at the Feaſt at *Windſor*, 8th, 9th, and 10th of *October*, *Anno* 15 *Car.* I.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

§. 1. WE come now to treat of the Election of a Knight into the Order, according to the Statutes of Inſtitution, which Ordains, That whenſoever any Knight-Companion happens to depart this Life, *The Sovereign (or his Deputy) after certain Notice had thereof, ſhould forthwith by his Letters, Summon all the Knights-Companions then within the Realm (who were able to come) to meet him within ſix Weeks after ſuch Notice, in what convenient Place ſoever he pleaſed to aſſign for the Electing a new Companion into the Society.* Thus did the Law of this Moſt Noble Order, in caſe of Death, and to prevent Vacancies, at firſt provide; wherewith we evidently find the Practice of elder Times did punctually concur: For as ſoon as Garter, in Diſcharge of his Duty, had made Certificate to the Sovereign of a Knight-Companion's Deceaſe, or otherwiſe to the Regiſter of the Order, all fitting Diligence was uſed to fill up the vacant Stall, within the Space limited by this Statute, or immediately after, and for the quicker Diſpatch, Letters of Summons were iſſued to the Knights-Companions, to give perſonal Attendance at the Election. In an ancient one upon the Death of Sir *Henry Fitz Hugh*, Knight-Companion, *Temp. Henry* V. theſe particulars were no leſs purſuant to the Statutes, than worthy Obſervation.

" I. The Day whereon the defunct Knight-Compa-
" nion died is therein ſet down.
" II. Direction is given for celebrating Maſſes, ac-
" cording to the Tenor of the Statutes.
" III. Intimation that a Stall is become void by the
" Knight's Deceaſe.
" IV. The Law of the Order vouched, which ap-
" points an Election of another Knight within ſix
" Weeks after Certificate made of the Death of the
" former, to avoid as much as may be an interval in
" Succeſſion.

" V. The Sovereign's Power asserted where he sees " Cause to Prorogue the Election.

" VI. An Injunction to attend personally at the Election, under a Penalty expres's'd in the Statutes.

" VII. The Day, Place, and Hour for Appearance is " with certainty appointed, to the End all might Ac- " commodate themselves to be present.

" VIII. The End of coming is mention'd with full " Disposition and Preparation *to perform what the Sta-* " *tutes in this Case requir'd.*

" IX. Lastly, Direction is there given to the Knight " summoned, that in case his coming to the Chapter was " impeded, he should certifie the Reason of his Default " against the time of his Appearance, of the Validity " whereof the Sovereign was to be sole Umpire.

And generally of these Topicks, and to this Purport were the Letters of Summons in succeeding times composed.

The before-mention'd Branch of the Statutes of Institution hath been sufficiently enforced by Incorporating it into the Statutes, *temp. H.* V. and *H.* VIII. nor hath it since undergone any Alteration; howbeit some further Addition and Explanation were annexed to them, 21 *Jac.* I. at a Chapter held at *Windsor* the 24th of *April* that year, where it was decreed, *That the Sovereign being advertised of the Death of a Knight-Companion, the Knights-Companions remaining at Court should move him to declare his Pleasure whether he would that Letters should be sent to all the Knights-Companions within the Realm to attend his Person for the Choice of a new Knight, at a Day by the said Sovereign appointed, according to the ancient Statutes of the Order, or be pleas'd to defer the Election until the Feast of St.* George, *at what time Elections have been most usually made; and according as he resolv'd in what Place it should be, so it ought* (by Letters directed to the Knights-Companions within the Realm) *to be made known unto them.*

This Deferring, or Prorogation of the Election, was no new thing, tho' not indulged by the Statutes, or declared Law, before this 21 *Jac.* 1. as is evident by the Letter of Summons sent after the Death of Sir *Robert D'Umfreville*, Knight Companion, *temp. H.* 4. wherein Notice

tice is taken of the Limitation given by the Statutes, after Certificate of Death, *viz.* Six Weeks, within the Space whereof a new Election was to commence; yet where a Chapter for Election could not conveniently be ſummoned within that limited Time, it was ſufficient if the Soveraign declared as he did in the ſaid Placart and entered in the Black Book, *That being then involved in other Buſineſs, he could not well attend this Affair, and therefore deferr'd the time for Election, unto the Eve of St.* George *next following.*

But of later Date, this formal Way of Summons by Letter, hath been diſcontinued, and only remained to ſuch as are remote, and warned only by a verbal Meſſage. For the Chancellor of the Order having conſulted the Soveraign's Pleaſure, as to the Day and Place, uſually acquaints Garter therewith, who thereupon goes immediately to the Knights Companions then at Court, and deſires their Attendance at the Chapter, according to the Soveraign's Deſignation.

And here it is to be remarked, that no Knight Elect ought to be ſummoned to a Chapter of Election, or are rendered ſufficient of giving their Votes therein, until they be compleatly inſtalled, either in Perſon, or by Proxy. Nor indeed did any Neceſſity intervene, or require it till the late rebellious times, when the Caſtle of *Windſor* being Garriſon'd by the Parliament's Forces, it was not poſſible for the Duke of *York* and Prince *Rupert*, to take Poſſeſſion of their Stalls, as the Law of the Order enjoined. Therefore the then Soveraign, whoſe Right it is, did, 17 *Jan.* 1644, diſpenſe with their Inſtallations in St. *George*'s Chapel, for the preſent, and inveſted them with the Privileges of the Order, among which the Power of voting in Chapter, was one: Provided thoſe Princes ſhould firſt take the Oath given at Inſtallations, and afterwards perform the accuſtomed Ceremonies, ſo ſoon as it ſhould be thought convenient, and the Caſtle was reſtored to the Poſſeſſion of his Majeſty. In compliance to which Proviſo they both then took the Oath, and on the Eve of the firſt Feaſt of St. *George* after the Reſtoration, the Duke was inſtalled; and on the Eve of the ſecond Feaſt, 15 *Car.* 2. by the

Earls of *Northumberland* and *Berk-ſhire*; and the Prince by the Duke of *Albemarle* and Earl of *Lindſey*.

§. 2. *The Place of Election.*] But at what time ſoever the Ceremony of Election is purpoſed, the ſame ought to be Celebrated in Chapter, (for ſo is the Aſſembly of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions call'd, where or whenſoever conven'd) whether at the Solemnity of St. *George*'s Feaſt, the ordinary or moſt accuſtom'd Time, or on other Days ſpecially ſet apart by the Sovereign; and when the Sovereign thinks fitting in the Interval of Feaſts, to elect any Foreign Prince or other Perſon, Stranger or Subject, he often tranſacts it in peculiar Chapters called to that purpoſe, and then appoints both Day and Place, having that Prerogative. Some few Examples both of priſtine, and of late Time, make it manifeſt and apparent.

Place.	Day and Year.	Knights elected.
1. Sign of the *Lion* in *Brentford*	*July* 11. 24 *H.* 6.	*Alb. de Vaſques Dalmadea*, E. of *Averentia*. Lord *Beauchamp*. Lord *Hoo*.
2. Sov. Bed-Chamber at *Weſtminſter*	*Nov.* 27. 25 *H.* 6.	Sir *Francis Surreyne*.
3. *London*, within the Biſhops Palace.	*Feb.* 8th. 39 *H.* 6.	*Richard* E. of *Warwick*. Lord *Bonvile*. Sir *Thomas Kyriel*. Sir *John Wenlock*.
4. Tower of *London*.	*Auguſt* 8. 14 *Ed.* 4.	*G. Ubaldus*, D. of *Urbin*. *H. Percy*, E. of *North*.
5. Star-Chamber.	*May* 15th. 15 *Ed.* 4.	*Edward* Pr. of *Wales*. *Richard* Duke of *York*. *T. Grey*, Mar. of *Dorſet*.
6. Sovereign's Bed-Chamber in the Wardrobe, *London*.	*Febr.* 10. 19 *E.* 4.	*Ferdinand*, K. of *Spain*. *Hercules*, D. of *Ferrara*.
7. *Greenwich*,	*July* 14. 15 *H.* 8.	Lord *Ferrers*.

Place.

Place.	Day and Year.	Knights elected.
8. *Calais.*	*Oct.* 27th. 24 *H.* 8.	*A. Montmor.* E. *Beamon.* *P. Chabot*, E. of *Newbl.*
9. *Hampton-Court.*	*Jan.* 9th. 32 *H.* 8.	*Edward Seymour*, Earl of *Hertford.*
10. *Windſor.*	*Aug.* 6. 1 & 2 *Ph.* & *Mar.*	*Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy.*
11. *Whitehall.*	*Feb.* 8th. 20 *Eliz.*	*John Caſimire*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine.*
12. *York.*	*Sept.* 12. 16 *Car.* I.	*Thomas* Earl of *Strafford.*

But for the moſt Part ſince the Beginning of Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, *Whitehall*, the Sovereign's almoſt conſtant Court and Abode, hath been the uſual Place whereunto all the Knights Companions have been ſpecially Summon'd, and peculiar Chapters aſſembl'd for Election in the Intervals between the Vacancy and St. *George*'s Feaſt. However, while King *Charles* II. was in Exile, and wanted the compleat Number of Knights to conſtitute a full Chapter, he was neceſſitated not only to diſpence with the Ceremony of Election in Chapter, but alſo in ſupplying the Defect of a Scrutiny, by making his own Election; yet after his Reſtoration, *Whitehall* recover'd her wonted Honour, and *April* the 1ſt. 13 *Car.* II. at a Chapter call'd and held in the *Bed-Chamber* there, the Duke of *Richmond*, the Earls of *Lindſey*, *Mancheſter*, and *Strafford* were elected.

§. 3. In the next Place we are to conſider what Number of Knights-Companions ought to be aſſembl'd to make up a compleat Chapter of Election.

By the Statutes, there ſhould be Six in Number at the leaſt, beſides the Sovereign or his Deputy; the due obſervance of which hath been ſo ſtrict formerly, that Elections have been deferr'd where Chapters have been deficient in that Number; for Proof of which, the Duke of *Glouceſter*, *Ann.* 9 *Hen.* VI. then Deputy to the Sovereign (at that Time in *France*) for Celebrating the Feaſt of St. *George* at *Windſor*, forbore to proceed to E-

lection, *becauſe the Number of Knights-Companions there aſſembled was leſs than the Statutes requir'd.* And *Ann.* 10 *Hen.* V. no Election was Solemniz'd, tho' one Stall was void by the Death of the Lord *Clifford*, and probably for that reaſon; for the Earl of *Bedford*, then the Sovereign's Deputy, had but three Knights preſent with him. *Ann.* 22, or rather 23. *Humphry* Duke of *Bucks* being deputed to celebrate the Feaſt of St. *George* at *Windſor*, altho' there was at that Time four Stalls vacant, yet did no Nomination paſs; one reaſon, *becauſe there was not preſent a ſufficient Number to compleat the Election.* So when the ſame King celebrated the Grand Feaſt perſonally at *Windſor*, *Anno* 31. *Regni ſui*, having but three Knights attending him thereat, the Election was Prorogu'd for the very ſame Reaſon; in like manner 32, 33 and 34 *Hen.* VI. the Elections were retarded, for at the firſt of them there were preſent but two Knights-Companions, beſides the Sovereign's Deputy; and at the Two laſt but four, beſides the Sovereign, tho' the *Regiſtrum Cartaceum*, *Ann.* 33. names five by adding the Duke of *Somerſet*. At the Feaſt of St. *George* celebrated at *Windſor*, *A. D.* 1471. *Temp. Edw.* IV. the Sovereign fully reſolving to Conſtitute an Election, and having but five Knights-Companions preſent, *Calys*, Purſuivant at Arms, was diſpatch'd to *London* for Sir *John Aſtley* to repair thither and compleat the Chapter, rather than violate the Laws of the Order. *January* the 31ſt. 21 *Car.* II. being deſign'd for the Election of *Chriſtopher* Duke of *Albemarle*, and there being Conven'd but five Knights at the Chapter, the Election was put off 'till the Third of *February* following, at which Time a proportionable Number of Knights being preſent, his Election receiv'd their Approbation.

§. 4. Yet in caſes of Neceſſity only, and to illuſtrate the Power and Prerogative of the Sovereigns, where the Exigency requires it, tho' not to be made uſe of where there is a poſſibility to perform the Rules and Injunctions of the Statutes, the Sovereigns for divers Reaſons, have been induced to diſpence with this Branch of the Statute for want of a plenary Number to compleat a Chapter. And the firſt Liberty obſerv'd herein

herein, was made uſe of by King *Henry* VIII. *Ann.* 26. *Regni ſui*, who upon the Death of the Lord *Montjoy*, very ſpeedily aſſembl'd a Chapter at *Whitehall*, where no more than five Knights-Companions being preſent, the Abſence of the reſt were excus'd by ſpecial Grace and Favour, and the *Injunction of the Statute* (as the *Annals* ſubjoin) *concerning the Number of Nominators*, were by the ſame Clemency diſpenc'd with, becauſe of the Exigency of the Time and Place, and immediately upon taking a Scrutiny, *James* V. King of *Scotland* was elected into the Fellowſhip of this illuſtrious Order, but from that Time to the Rebellion, there occurs not any thing of this Nature; but the Wickedneſs of thoſe Days created new Exigencies and Projections, which occaſion'd, or rather inforc'd the Sovereign, King *Charles* I. moſt unwillingly to awaken and rouſe up this dormant Prerogative, which he put in Execution at a Chapter purpoſely aſſembl'd for the Election of *Thomas* Earl of *Strafford*, held at the City of *York* the 12th of *September*, 16 *Car.* I. where at that Time and Place he diſpenc'd with the Defect of Number of Six Knights-Companions, having then with him Four only, ſome of the reſt being engag'd in his Service againſt the *Scots*.

AFTERWARDS when ſeveral of the Knights-Companions ſo much adhered to the *Long Parliament*, that all Summons were ineffectual to draw them to their Attendance upon their Sovereign, tho' but to celebrate the Grand Feſtival of their Patron (much leſs to the compleating Chapters of Election) to which they were obliged by the Oath taken at their Inſtallment, the Sovereign was conſtrain'd to extend further his Supreme Authority; and thereupon at the Feaſt of St. *George*, celebrated at *York*, the 18th, 19th and 20th of *April*, *Ann.* 18. *Regni ſui*, in a Chapter held on the Eve of the ſaid Feaſt by himſelf and but four other Knights Companions, It was Order'd, *That Letters of Diſpenſation ſhould be drawn up for the inſufficient Number* (as wanting Six Knights) *to hold a Chapter of Election, and for Authorizing the Knights then preſent to deliver in their Votes according to Cuſtom in other Scrutinies, that ſo the Sovereign might proceed to the Election deſign'd.* By vertue of which Diſpenſation, the Duke

of *York* and Prince *Rupert* were elected Fellows of this noble Society.

The like Diſpenſation was made at *Oxford* upon the 2d of *March*, *Anno* 20. *Car.* I. there being but five Knights-Companions preſent with the Sovereign; at which Chapter, *William* Prince of *Orange*, and *Bernard de Foix*, Duke of *Eſpernon*, were elected.

Last of all, in reference to the holding three ſeveral Chapters preparatory to the Feaſt of St. *George*, and grand Inſtallation celebrated at *Windſor* the 15th, 16th, and 17th of *April*, 13. *Car.* II (one of which Chapters was held for the Election of Four Knights, and to deliberate with the ſurviving Knights-Companions) the Sovereign was pleas'd the 29th of *March* preceeding, to paſs the like Diſpenſation under the Signet of the Order, and his own Sign Manual, for this defect; and thereby made thoſe three Chapters as legal as if the Number of Knights-Companions had been compleat.

§. 5. We are now arriv'd at opening the Chapter, whereinto neither the Sovereign, nor any of the Knights-Companions are to be admitted without the Ornament, both their Mantles and Garters, as the Statutes ordain, and the Law is ſtill in force, tho' the Chapter hath been aſſembl'd elſewhere than at *Windſor*. As for inſtance, one call'd at *Whitehall* for the Election of *John* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, *Anno* 20. *Eliz.* the Earl of *Huntingdon*, and the Lord *Grey* of *Wilton*, not having their Mantles then at Court, were not permitted to enter into the Chapter to give their Votes.

King *Charles* I. determining to call a Chapter for electing the foreſaid *Thomas* Earl of *Strafford* at *York*, where neither he nor any of the Knights-Companions then attending his Perſon, had the Robes of the Order with them; and taking into his Royal Conſideration, the Statutes now mention'd, did by his Authority, as Sovereign of the Order, diſpence with thoſe Knights then preſent for coming into the Chapter without their Mantles.

Afterward, upon other Emergencies that ow'd their Origin to the late Rebellion, the Sovereign did the like in ſome ſubſequent Chapters held at *Oxford*.

After

After the Reſtoration, a Diſpenſation paſſed the Signet of the Order, dated the 10th of *January*, 12 *Car.* II. (the Great Seal being under the Hand of the Graver but not finiſh'd) He was neceſſitated to make uſe of his Supreme Authority for holding a Chapter the 14th of *January* following, in regard the Knights-Companions then in being were not as yet provided of new Robes.

Presuming then, that a full Number of Knights, (in Obedience to their Summons) are attending their Sovereign habited in their Mantles and Garters, and entred into the Chapter-Houſe at *Windſor*, or other Place appointed for this Aſſembly, the Sovereign having taken his Seat at the upper End of the Table, and given leave to the Knights-Companions to ſit, the Occaſion of their being call'd together is firſt declar'd either by the Sovereign himſelf, or the Chancellor of the Order by his Command.

The next thing in Courſe, is to exhibit to the Sovereign Information of all the vacant Stalls; and if the Sovereign chance to be in Foreign Parts, an Information ought to be tranſmitted to him by his Deputy or Lieutenant; but if in *England*, and preſent in the Chapter, then to be preſented him by the Chancellor, or in his Abſence by the Regiſter, or other Officer of the Order.

After this they ſingly debate how the Place of the defunct Knight ſhall be ſupply'd, and ſometimes (where two or more Stalls are found void) whether they ſhall be all fill'd up at that time, or if not, how many Knights ſhall be elected *pro hac vice*.

But when the Scrutiny is intended to be taken in the Choir of St. *George*'s Chapel at *Windſor*, theſe or the like particulars (referring to Election) are commonly conſider'd of on the Feaſt-Day in the Chapter held immediately before Veſpers, wherein it is moſt uſually order'd, That the Scrutiny ſhall be taken in the Chapel that following Afternoon. And ſo it was decreed on St. *George*'s Day, *Anno* 5. *Edw.* VI. *viz. That the Elections of Knights ſhould be taken that Even-ſong in the Chapel.*

This being effected, the Chancellor begins to collect the Knights-Companions Votes, and this is frequently term'd the taking the Scrutiny: For the ampler

View

View of the Nature of which Action and Ceremony, we ſhall proceed to certain Conſiderations preparatory thereunto, beginning with what concerns the Nomination of the Perſons to be propoſed to the Election.

§. 6. And firſt, That Knights-Companions only preſent in Chapter, have the ſole Right inherent in themſelves, to nominate and propoſe Perſons to the Sovereign's Election, conſentaneous to the Bodies of the Statutes, that even from the Inſtitution of this Moſt Noble Order, it hath not ever ſuffer'd any deviations.

It is worthy of Remark, that *Anno* 26. *Eliz.* the Feaſt of St. *George* being Celebrated at *Greenwich*, the Earl of *Warwick*, and Lord *Burleigh* were ſeized with a Fit of the Gout, upon the Feaſt Day, which retarded them from Evening Prayer, whilſt the Scrutiny was taken; whereupon we find their Indiſpoſition of Body, and Abſence, noted in that Scrutiny, where their Nominations ſhould elſe have been ſet down, had they been preſent. And upon the ſame Occaſion was what *Robert Cook*, Eſq; *Clarenceux*, King at Arms, informs us, *That as for thoſe Knights Companions who happen to be abſent* when the Scrutiny is taken, altho' this Abſence is *occaſioned* by Accident of Sickneſs, or with the Soveraign's Licence, nevertheleſs, *in regard of this their Abſence at that very time, their Votes may not be received.*

Thoſe Knights Companions that come late to the Chapter, forfeit likewiſe the Privilege of giving their Votes for that time, which ſo happened to Prince *Rupert*, and the Earl of *Strafford*, at the Chapter held for the Election of *James* Duke of *Monmouth*, in the Privy Chamber at *Whitehall*, 29 *Mar.* 1663.

Altho' none of the abſent Knights-Companions can give a Proxy to vote, or otherwiſe ſend their Suffrages into the Chapter or Chapel, there to paſs in Nomination; yet formerly, *circa temp. H.* 5. *&* *H.* 6. when divers of the Knights Companions were frequently employed in the Wars of *France*, and conſequently ſo fixed to their Commands, that they could not perſonally attend the Feaſt of St. *George* at *Windſor*, it was uſual for the Commander there in Chief, with Conſent of thoſe Knights Companions, to make a formal Certificate, or Preſent-

ment

ment (but not to paſs it by way of Nomination or Vote, for that the Law of the Order did not permit) to the Soveraign, or his Lieutenant and Knights Companions aſſembled at the Feaſt, of ſuch Perſons famous for martial Valour and Virtue, with an Account of their gallant Acts and Atchievements, (atteſted by other Perſons of Honour) as were at that time, and in that Kingdom, in the Sovereign's Service, and ſeemed worthy Candidates for the Honour of the Election, to the intent victorious and brave Perſons might be preferr'd to ſo noble and ſublime a Poſt; an Example whereof we find preſerved by the Induſtrious and Learned *Dugdale*.

" MY Lord the Duc of *Bedford* remembreth, as by the Statutes of the Order of the Gartre, the Election " of the Stalls voyde. He ſaith in the Voyc of the Brethren, " and of the Fellowſhip, beyng at the tyme of the Feſt, " in the Preſence of the Soverain or hys Deputy; that " thinkyth to my ſaid Lord, that for hys Acquital to " Knighthood, that fytteth hym to give in Knowledge " to the Kyng Soverain of the Ordre, and to his Fel- " lowſhip of the ſame Ordre, the great Honours of the " notable Knights, that from tyme to tyme exercyſeth, " and have exercyſed in Knighthood; and eſpecially " in the Service of their Soverain Lord. And of ſuch " notable Knyghts as my Lord of *Bedford*, for the tyme " remembreth him of, he hath by the Advyce of them " of the Fellowſhip of the Ordre, being now in *France*, " in the Kyngs Service, and givyng in charge to the " ſaid Garter Kyng of Arms, of the Ordre, to ſhew " theyr Names to the Kyng, and to expound Part of " theyr Deeds, Acts, and of theyr Worthyneſs. Firſt " to expoſe the Honour of Sir *John Radeclyff* that hath " contynowed all the tyme of the victorious Kyng that " laſt dyed, whom Chriſte abſolve, at the firſt lan- " ding of hym, at *Quies de Caux*, where the ſayd *Radeclyff* " receyved the Order of a Knyght, and after contynowed " the Siege of *Hareflew*. And after with my Lord of *Ex-* " *ceſter* at the Battaile of *Vallemont*, and of *Quies de Caux*. " And alſo ſithen the deth of the ſayd victorious Kyng, " *Radeclyff* being Seneſchall of *Guyen*, hath brought by " hys Labour in Knyghthood to hys Soveraign Lord's " obeyſance,

" obeyſance within the Duchie of *Guyen* many dyverſe " Cities, Towns and Fortreſſes. And in eſpecial de- " ſerved great and notable merits at the Siege of the " City of *Bazates*, whych Siege was accorded, appointed, " and ſet day of Battaile and of Reſcous, the whych day " was kept and houlden with great power on both Sydes, " and under Banners diſplayed, the Enemyes doubtyng " to fyght wyth *Radeclyff* required hym of apoyntment " they to depart under ſaufe conduct from the ſaid " Field, the whych ſaufe conduct he graunted them " for the term of eight days, like as they required the " honour and empruſe reſted in the ſaid *Radeclyff*, and " to hys hygh meryte, for incontynent followyng was " delyvered to hym, the reddyſſion and poſſeſſion of " the ſayd Cytty of *Bazates*. And alſo the ſayd *Rade-* " *clyff* was at the Battaile of *Aſſincouert*, and hath con- " tynowed and exercyſed the Armys the Space of " xxviij Wynters unreproched. And in the tyme of his " Eſquierhood was at the Battaile of *Shrewsbury* and at " the Journey of *Husks* wyth the Lord *Grey* at the diſ- " comfiture and taking of *Owenſon*.

Syr *Thomas Ramſton*,
Syr *Rauff Butler*,
Syr *William Oldegall*,
Syr *Robert Harlyng*,
Syr *Gilbert Halſall*.

" *Item*, My Lord the Duc of *Bedford* beſeecheth the " Kyng Soveraign of the Order to have alſo for re- " commendyd to his good grace and highneſſe other " of his Subjects and Servants now being in hys Ser- " vice in the Realme of *France*, whych hath done " and yet doth take great payne by their knyghtly " labour dayly to ſerve the merite of worthyneſs " and proweſs, as Syr *Robert Hungerford*, Syr " *Thomas Beamont*, Syr *John Popeham*, Syr *Nicholas Bur-* " *det*, Syr *Rauff Nevell*, Syr *Edward Wyver*, Syr *John* " *Robeſart*, Syr *Tyre Robeſart*, Syr *William Bretton*, Syr " *Thomas Kyngſton*, Syr *Richard Hankford*, and dyverſe " other.

But leſt it may be ſuppos'd by ſome, that the Knights-Companions preſent in Chapter, can at their Pleaſures

pleaſures nominate or propoſe to elect ſuch Perſons as they deem meet, ſo they be qualify'd according to the Statutes, this Privilege is to be underſtood of Knights Subjects only: For in all Caſes concerning Strangers, the Sovereign doth but barely grant them Sufferance, and may direct and confine the Knights-Companions to the Nomination of ſuch as he at any time intends to Honour with Election, which Prerogative was particularly Aſſerted, 31 *Eliz.* and 3 *Car.* I.

In the Firſt of theſe Inſtances, the *Blue Book* of the Order recordeth, That at a Chapter held immediately before Veſpers on St. *George*'s Day, the Earl of *Huntingdon*, then Lieutenant for the Sovereign, made known to the Knights-Companions, *That the Sovereign did permit them, or leave it to their Pleaſure to chuſe into the Order whatſoever Foreign Prince they ſhould by their Votes approve of.*

Here we have two Points that offer themſelves to our Conſideration. *Firſt*, That the Knights-Companions have not the Liberty to nominate what Foreign Prince they pleaſe, but the ſame is derivative from the Sovereign, and only by his Permiſſion. *Secondly*, To weigh the Paragraph well, that *Nominare* ought to be render'd or underſtood here by the Word *Eligere*, and that the Power delegated to the Knights-Companions from the Sovereign, was only to nominate, not elect; For it immediately follows, *That the Knights-Companions went from the Chapter to the Second Veſpers; and while the Divine Offices were celebrating, the Prelate receiv'd their Nominations, and that very Evening the Lieutenant preſented them to the Sovereign for her to conſider of*; which had been inſignificant and uſeleſs, if the Knights-Companions had been impower'd by her Licence to have made the Choice themſelves. But the contrary is evident; for the next Morning, all the Knights-Companions attending the Sovereign in Chapter, ſhe herſelf confirm'd there the Election not of any Foreign Prince, but of the Earl of *Suſſex*, and the Lord *Buckhurſt*.

In the other Inſtance, *Anno* 3 *Car.* I. the Sovereign in a Chapter held before Veſpers on St. *George*'s Day, ſignify'd it to be his Pleaſure (Three Stalls being then vacant) that *out of Foreign Princes, the Nomination of whom,* (ſaith the Annals in that very Place) *belongs only to the Sovereign,*

Sovereign, i. e. The Sovereign has the Prerogative to direct the Knights-Companions to name, or impose upon them the Nomination of such Foreign Prince he pleaseth they, the Knights-Companions, should pitch upon; which must undoubtedly be understood to Nominate, or enter down into the Scrutiny, (not elect) *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, and *Henry* Prince of *Orange*. For a little after, it is evident, when the Scrutiny was presented to the Sovereign, that himself, not the Knights-Companions, made Election of them.

And it is further manifest, by the Scrutiny there inserted, that both those Princes were named by every of the Knights-Companions then present, according to the Sovereign's signification (which has been usually done at all other Times upon the like Occasions.) But concerning the third Person then to be Elected, the Sovereign, (intending him to be a Knight-Subject) left it entirely to their Pleasure to Nominate whomsoever they thought worthy of their Votes. Since this Time, the Nominations in like Cases, have been sufficiently acknowledg'd by the Knights-Companions themselves, to be a Prerogative belonging solely to the Sovereign. For to the End they might more expeditiously and clearly shew their Compliance, it was moved in a Chapter held at *Oxford*, *March* the 2d. 19 *Car.* I. *That it might become a Custom for the Sovereign to declare before-hand, whether he would elect any Foreign Prince, and whom, that so the Knights-Companions might be there to name him in the Scrutiny.*

§. 7. Another Consideration in our Progress towards the Act of Election, is appertaining to the Number, Qualifications and Dignities of the Persons nominated, which may be more conspicuously resolved from another Branch of the before-mention'd Article, *viz.* That every one of the Knights-Companions present at the Election should nominate for himself nine very sufficient Persons, whom he should judge free from all Reproach and Scandal, whether Subjects to the Sovereign, or Foreigners, Provided they are known not to Favour or Abet any Party at enmity with him; that is to say, three Earls, or others of higher Degree, three Barons,

and

and three Knights. Wherein the Things chiefly obſervable, we rank under five Heads.

For the Firſt of theſe, their Number. Every Knight-Companion aſſembl'd in Chapter, is injoin'd to name Nine, neither more nor leſs. So alſo ſaith King *Henry* V's Statutes. Nor are King *Henry* VIIIth's. any ways diſſonant. And in this particular, the Statutes have been hitherto inviolably obſerved, except in one Caſe. As to Numbers, and the Myſteries wrapt up in them, we ſhall not further inſiſt upon. But why our Royal Founder ſelected this particular Number above all other, unleſs he had ſome Eye, and tacit Reflection on the Nine Worthies, or a treble threefold Cord and Symbol of perfect Stability and ſolid Amity, the Number Nine is accounted to ſignifie, can with no great Facility or Certainty be decypher'd.

As to the Second Point, they ought to be of unſpotted Character. The Injunction in the Statutes of Inſtitution takes Order, that the Perſons deſigned for Election, ſhould be *free from all Reproach, and of untainted Reputation*; and according to thoſe of King *Henry* V. are to be *the beſt and moſt ſufficient Knights, and freeſt from Reproach.* To the ſame purpoſe the Exemplar in the Black-Book, *Such as are fitteſt*, and whom they who Nominate *believe to be free from Ignominy and Diſhonour.* And to this Act of Nomination belongs part of the Second Article in *Henry* VIIIth's Statutes, *That no Knight-Companion ſhould name any Perſon whom he thinks or eſteems in his Conſcience to have upon him any Spot of Reproach.* But on the Contrary in another Place of the ſame Statutes it is Provided, That they be nominated and propoſed *out of the Number of the moſt worthy and ſelect Knights.*

How tender the Knights-Companions were in priſtine Times of infringing this particular, is proved from a notable Paſſage which happen'd *Ann.* 39 *Hen.* VI. at a Scrutiny taken the 8th of *February*, in the Biſhop of *London*'s Palace, where *John de Foix* Earl of *Kendal*, a *Gaſcoigner* by birth, (which makes the Example more eminent, that a Stranger ſhould have ſo great Regard to the Honour of the Order) not being acquainted with the Quality and Merit of Knights and Honourable Perſons

ſons amongſt us ſo well and demonſtrably as to nominate ſuch whom he was confident were irreprehenſible, forbore to mention any Perſons at all. And certainly, ſeeing the Statutes put very conſiderable Qualifications upon the Deputies and Proxies, made choice for the Inſtallation of Strangers (as elſewhere ſhown) much more Caution and Regard ought to be uſed both in the Nomination and Election of Knights into this radiant and illuſtrious Society.

The third Head the Statutes render indifferently capable of being nominated or elected, either Knights Subjects, or Strangers, [Free Princes or their Subjects.] And it was ſo even at the Election upon the firſt Choice, where among the Twenty five Elected Knights, Twenty three of them were Subjects. And this was the conſtant Cuſtom not only in the remaining Part of the Founders Reign, and during thoſe of his three Succeſſors, but has continued ever ſince, as appears from the Scrutinies taken and entred throughout the Annals of the Order.

Of thoſe who have gain'd admiſſion into this Noble Order by Election, we ſhall in the laſt Chapter give an Account in a compleat Catalogue of them, and likewiſe inſert the Names of ſuch as have miſſed their Election, yet are not to be buried in Oblivion, out of this very reſpect, that by their ſtanding Candidates, have the Fame of being enrolled in the Principal Regiſter of Honour now in the Chriſtian World. It cannot be ſuppoſed we ſhould give a Liſt of all, (for that were a Task too laborious, and wou'd prove too numerous) but only of thoſe of eminent Quality in foreign Parts, with the Æra when the Scrutinies were taken.

A CATALOGUE *of ſome* STRANGERS *who have been nominated, but not elected.*

Rambrith de Walſey *Johannes de Voynada*	25 *Hen.* 6.
Franciſcus Sforza, Dux *Mediolani*	28 *Hen.* 6.
Franciſcus ſecundus, Dux *Britanniæ*	13, 14, 15, 22 *E.* 4.
Henricus quartus, Rex *Legionis* & *Caſtil.*	14 *Ed.* 4.
Matthias Corvinus, Rex *Hungariæ*	19, 22 *Ed.* 4.
Fredericus ſecundus, Dux *Auſtriæ*	22 *E.* 4. 1 *R.* 3.

Phi-

Philippus quartus, Dux *Burgundiæ*	14 *Hen.* 7.
Franciſcus Maria, Dux *Urbini*	1, 2 *Hen.* 8.
Uladiſlaus ſecundus, Rex *Hungariæ*	1, 2, 6 *Hen.* 8.
Chriſtianus ſecundus, Rex *Daniæ*	6, 8 *Hen.* 8.
Dux *Barryæ* / Comes *Galaciæ*	8 *Hen.* 8.
Alphonſus Dux *Ferrariæ*	13, 15 *Hen.* 8.
Ludovicus ſecundus, Rex *Hungariæ*	13, 14, 15 *H.* 8.
Maximilianus Sforza, Dux *Mediolani*	14, 15, 16 *H.* 8.
Marchio Peſcaræ	17 *Hen.* 8.
Johannes tertius, Rex *Portugalliæ*	17, 18, 26, 28 *H.* 8.
------*Marchio Mantuæ*	18 *Hen.* 8.
Carolus Burbonus, Dux *Vandoſme*	24 *Hen.* 8.
Gulielmus Dux *Clivenſis* / --------Dux *Bavariæ*	32 *Hen.* 8.
Dux *Alvæ* / Dux *Medinæ Cæli* / Comes *Fereæ*	1 & 2 *Ph.* and *M.*
Franciſcus ſecundus, Rex *Galliæ*	
Franciſcus tertius, Comes *Palatinus*	
Auguſtus Dux *Saxoniæ*	
Alphonſus ſecundus, Dux *Ferrariæ*	
--------Dux *Andegavenſis*	
Dominus *Grabazenby* / Dominus *Humers* / Dominus *Johannes Mounte* / Dominus *Harmibolt* / Dominus *Boyſy*	24 *Hen.* 8.

Those Perſons were render'd incapable of Nomination who were known to Act in contrary Intereſt to the Sovereign; as the *Exemplar* in the *Black-Book* expreſſeth more copiouſly, *Such as are not his Adverſaries, or Abettors, or willing Defenders of his Adverſaries.* Sometimes the Knights-Companions being more wary and diſcreet in Nominating them, to put either diſreſpect upon the Sovereign, or offer Violation to the Statutes.

In the laſt Place, concerning the Degree, Rank and Dignity of the Nine Knights propoſed to be Elected, the Statutes of the Inſtitution ſet forth, That they be, *Firſt*, Three *Earls*, or Perſons of great Dignity. *Secondly*, Three *Barons*. And, *Third'y*, Three *Knights*: Or, as it

is in *Henry* V's Statutes, *Trois Contes ou de greegnear eſtat, trois Baneretz, & trois Batchelers.* Theſe Degrees are to be ranked in Three Claſſes, and they diſtinguiſh'd by Three Diviſions, all including the Three Degrees aforeſaid.

WHEREAS all other Bodies and Exemplars of the Statutes make poſitive mention of Earls only, yet the Statutes of *Hen.* VIII. in this Point are more ample, by expreſſing the firſt Claſs, *Dukes*, *Marqueſſes*, and *Earls*, or *Perſons ſuperior* to theſe in Degree, wherein the higheſt Dignity is comprehended.

WE may obſerve the different Title, *viz. Baneret* that *Henry* V's Statutes hath given us inſtead of *Baron*; and not only in this Article, but in all other where there is Occaſion to treat of Barons; and yet the Record intends by it no other than the Perſon it mentions: For tho' a Banneret had its Denomination *à vexillo*, it uſually ſignify'd a Degree of Honour next below a Baron, both in a later and a modern Date; yet formerly among our Records, it is expreſſedly Synonymous to Baron, as is ſufficiently clear'd up by our moſt Learned *Selden*; and in this Senſe is to be taken here, and not as a diſtinct Title of lower Degree, becauſe we obſerve the Bannerets rank'd in all Scrutinies before King *Henry* VIII. eſtabliſh'd his Statutes (except one) with the Knights-Batchelors, not with Barons.

THE Title of the third and loweſt Rank in this Claſſis in the Statutes of their Inſtitution, are called *Milites Bachalauri*, and in thoſe of King *Henry* V. *Batchelors*, and elſewhere *Bachalauri & Bachelauri Equites*, which in common Acceptation are the ſame with *Milites*, tho' thus render'd to evince their difference from Knights-Bannerets, who are of a ſuperior Degree of Honour. And here we may obſerve, that there is no Place in a Scrutiny for any under the Degree of a Knight-Batchelor. And tho' Three of the Nine mentioned are ſet down to be Barons, and Three other Earls, or of higher Degree, yet muſt theſe Six be ſuch as have had conferred on them the Order of Knighthood, elſe their Names are rejected, and neither given or taken in Nomination; for the Words of the Statute expreſly are, *That each of the Knights aſſembl'd at the Election ſhall name nine Knights.*

THUS

THUS King *Charles* I. *Anno 6 Regni ſui*, deſigning to inveſt *James* Marqueſs of *Hamilton* with this Order, conferr'd the Honour of Knighthood upon him immediately before his Nomination: And the Annals in that Place put this commentary Remark thereupon, *Becauſe by the Statutes it is provided, that none ſhould be elected into the Order that have not been dignify'd with the Title of Knight.*

YET the Ceremony of Knighting the Perſon deſigned to be elected, was not ſo ſtrictly regarded, but ſometimes this Branch of the Statute was either wholly paſſed, or elſe confounded with the ſecond Article throughout the ſeveral Bodies of the Statutes, which prohibits the Choice or Election of any Perſon into the Society, as this doth the Propoſal or Nomination. And thereupon perhaps it was conceiv'd, that altho' the Nomination, Election, and ſometimes Delivery of the Enſigns of the Order was firſt diſpatch'd and paſt, yet it was ſufficient if the Honour of Knighthood was conferr'd afterwards; as in the Caſes of *William* Earl of *Derby* and *Thomas* Lord *Burleigh*, *Anno* 43. *Eliz.* where the Regiſter obſerves, That as ſoon as their Election was over, and they Uſher'd into the Chapter, the Earl of *Derby*, (who it ſeems had not been Knighted before) was dubbed Knight with a drawn Sword, according to Cuſtom, after which they had the Garter and George put on by the Sovereign her ſelf.

IN like manner, *Ulrick* Duke of *Holſtein*, and *Henry* Earl of *Northampton*, immediately after their Election, (the laſt Day of St. *George*'s Feaſt, *Ann.* 3. *Jac.* I.) and before they receiv'd the Enſigns of the Order, had the Dignity of Knighthood conferr'd on them by the Sovereign; and in like manner the Earl of *Suſſex*, *Ann.* 3 *C.* I. which the *Red-Book* of the Order recites, *That as ſoon as it was underſtood that the Earl had not receiv'd the Order of Knighthood before, the Sovereign immediately drawing his Sword, Knighted him*; which was not done till after his Election and Inveſtiture with both the George and Garter.

THUS did the Ceremony of Knighthood ſucceed the Election of *Charles* Prince of *Wales*, the 21ſt of *May*, *Ann.* 14 *Car.* I. for after he had been elected, and inveſted with the Enſigns of the Order by the two Senior

Knights (the Earls of *Pembroke* and *Montgomery*, and of *Arundel* and *Surry*) were intreated by the reſt of the Knights-Companions, to preſent his Highneſs to the Sovereign in the Name of all the reſt, to be initiated a Knight-Batchelor. He was conducted by the ſaid Earls (his Supporters) into the Preſence-Chamber in *Windſor-Caſtle*, where before the Chair of State, he moſt Solemnly receiv'd the Order of Knighthood from his Father King *Charles* I.

To Honour which Knighthood, and the Memory thereof, Four of the chief Nobility then preſent were Knighted, *viz.* the Earls of *Eſſex*, *St. Alban's* and *Elgin*, and Viſcount *Grandiſon*, being conducted from the Great Chamber to the Sovereign's State, each between two Batchelor-Knights.

AFTERWARDS the Law in this Point began again to be more rightly underſtood; and by that Time *James* Duke of *York* came to be elected (which was the 20th of *April*, 18 *Car.* I. at the Feaſt of St. *George* celebrated at *York*) the Sovereign appointed, and accordingly conferr'd Knighthood upon him the Day before, which he receiv'd upon his Knees, being conducted into the Preſence-Chamber between two of the Nobility, who were alſo Knights, the Marqueſs of *Hertford* and Viſcount *Grandiſon*. In Honour and Commemoration whereof, Four other Noblemen receiv'd the Honour of Knighthood at that time, the Earl of *Carnarvan*, the Lords *George D'Aubignie*, *John Stewart*, and *Bernard Stewart*, each ſupported by two Knights.

AND thus Prince *Edward* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, and *George* Duke of *Buckingham*, being deſigned by King *Charles* II. to be admitted into this Noble Order, were both firſt Knighted at St. *Germains* in *France*, 1649. and afterwards had the Enſigns of the Order ſent unto them, by the Hands of Sir *Edward Walker*, Kt. Garter, who, in right of his Office, inveſted them therewith.

YET in the Caſe of Prince *Rupert*, who was elected with *James* Duke of *York*, *Ann.* 18. *Car.* I. His want of Knighthood became no impediment, becauſe he was a Prince in another Country, *viz.* Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, and might therefore juſtly challenge a Privilege to come within the Rule of foreign Princes.

BUT

But the Sovereign, to arrive as near to the Intention and Obſervance of the Statute as he could, (where there was a poſſibility to do it, and the Honour would be well accepted by the Prince) thought it requiſite by Commiſſion under the Great Seal of *England*, to impower *Thomas* Earl of *Arundel* and *Surry*, and *George* Lord *Goring*, both being then in *Holland*, or either of them, to Knight the ſaid Prince before putting on the Garter (ſeeing it could not poſſibly be done before his Election) which was intended to be ſent by him by the Hands of Sir *John Burrough*, Garter. But Death intervening, the Sovereign's Intention was fruſtrated; altho' the Prince, upon his coming afterwards into *England*, receiv'd both the Garter and the George from the Sovereign himſelf at *Nottingham* nevertheleſs without Knighthood, which to excuſe, it may well be alledg'd, that the Sovereign might not recollect this Part of the Ceremony, it being a Time of ſo great Turmoil and Fatigue, occaſion'd by the then ſetting up of his Standard.

However, upon the 17th of *January*, 1644. when a Decree paſt in Chapter then aſſembl'd at *Oxford*, That both the Duke of *York* and the Prince, ſhould enjoy all Emoluments and Privileges of the Order, tho' they were not as yet Inſtall'd (which Ceremony was to be compleated aſſoon as *Windſor* was out of the Power of the Rebels.) The Prince, before he receiv'd his Oath, was conducted by the Earl of *Berk-ſhire* and Duke of *Richmond* and *Lenox*, unto the Sovereign, and had conferr'd on him the Honour of Knighthood, there being at the ſame Time two of the Nobility Knighted in Memorial of that Solemnity, the Lord *Henry Seymour*, Second Son to the Marqueſs of *Hertford*, and the Lord *Capell*, conducted each between two Knights.

§. 8. We are now come to ſpeak of the Scrutiny it ſelf, in reference to which, we ſhall conſider by whom it ought, or hath been uſually taken, and the Manner and Form thereof.

By the Statutes of the Inſtitution, the Collecting the Knights-Companions Votes, and entring them in the Scrutiny, ſolely appertains to the Prelate of the Order; and upon him is this Office devolved, not only by the

other Bodies of the Statutes, but by the Conſtitutions of his Poſt, and the Obligation of his Oath, whoſe right we find duly aſſerted upon this Perſons taking a Scrutiny, *Anno* 29 *Eliz.*

The Statutes likewiſe provided, That if the Prelate was at any Time abſent, then the Dean of *Windſor*, or the Regiſter, or the Senior Reſidentiary of the College, or the Secretary, or Scribe of the Order, ſhould undertake the Employment; and elſewhere it is mention'd expreſſly, *In the abſence of the Prelate, whoſe particular Duty otherwiſe it was.* And among the various Examples enroll'd in the Annals of the Order, theſe Examples abundantly confirm it. The Prelate of the Order collected the Suffrages from the Knights-Companions, *Anno* 9 *Hen.* V. when *John* Earl-Marſhal, and Four other Knights were elected. The like did *Henry Beaufort*, Lord-Cardinal, Prelate of the Order, upon the Election of *John* King of *Portugal*, *Anno* 13 *Hen.* VI. And when the Duke of *Suffolk* was choſe, *Anno* 26 *Hen.* VI. the Prelate then alſo gather'd the Suffrages; which he likewiſe did upon the Feaſts of St. *George*, Celebrated in the 12th, 13th, 14th, 27th, 28th, 30th, 31th, 34th and 35th Years of Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign. Sometimes the Scrutinies have been gathered both by the Dean of *Windſor*, and the Regiſter of the Order jointly; as we find by the Election of *John* Lord *Talbot*, *Ann.* 2 *Hen.* VI. of Sir *John Falſtaff*, *Ann.* 6 *Hen.* VI. and the Duke of *Quinbery*, *Ann.* 5 *Hen.* VI. all receiv'd at the Feaſts of St. *George*, celebrated at *Windſor*.

It is more than a bare Conjecture, that the Dean at thoſe Times receiv'd the Votes from the Knights-Companions on the Sovereign's ſide, while the Regiſter collected thoſe on the Prince's; for 'tis obſerv'd, that in King *Henry* Vth's Reign, in Poſts of different Natures, one whereof was to ſignifie the Sovereign's Pleaſure to the Knights-Companions about their paying due Reverence, firſt to God, and afterwards to himſelf; and the other in a Ceremonial, which directs the Manner and Order of Mulcting the Knights-Companions; in both which, the Dean perform'd the Service on the right Hand the Choir (the Sovereign's ſide) and the Regiſter on the left.

Sometimes the Regiſter of the Order took them alone, as at the Election of *John* Earl of *Arundel*, *Anno* 10 *Hen.* VI. and thoſe of the Earl of *Morteyn* and Sir *John Grey*, *Ann.* 14 *Hen.* VI. Moreover it's plain, that when the Office of Regiſter was not fill'd, and *Thomas Ruthall*, Biſhop of *Dureſme*, executed it during its Vacancy, the Biſhop himſelf, *Ann.* 2 *Hen.* VIII. collected the Suffrages. The like did *William Day*, Dean of *Windſor*, in the Abſence of *George Carew*, Dean of the Chapel and Regiſter of the Order, at the Feaſts of St. *George* held at *Whitehall*, *Anno* 18 and 19 *Eliz.*

This Duty was executed by the Regiſter from the 15th Year of King *Henry* VIII. to the Period of his and his Son's Reign, as the *Black-Book* of the Order fully evinces; as alſo on St. *George*'s Day, *Ann.* 1. *Eliz.* by *John Boxhall*; and at the Feaſt of St. *George* held *Ann.* 1 *Jac.* I. by *Giles Thompſon*, who in the ſeveral Times were Regiſters, yet we muſt not miſtake that what they officiated was on their own behalf, but ſupply'd the Place of the Prelate.

In the Beginning of Queen *Mary*'s Reign, we find the Chancellor of the Order began to perform this Service, being by King *Henry* VIIIth's Statutes adjoined to thoſe other Offices before deſcrib'd, to collect the Scrutinies in abſence of the Prelate, and thereby made capable of the Employment, which afterwards is tacitly remark'd to be perform'd as if in his own right, when the Regiſter has only effected it in the Chancellor's abſence, tho' in reality it was no other, than as in the Inſtance of the Biſhop of *Dureſme* and Dr. *Day* aforeſaid, who took the Scrutiny in the Vacancy of the Office, and abſence of the Regiſter.

Anno 4 *Eliz.* the Regiſter in the Abſence of the Chancellor (who was ſick,) upon the Feaſt Day of St. *George*, collected the Suffrages. And *Ann.* 8. *Eliz.* *George Carew*, then Regiſter of the Order, *took the Votes of the Knights-Companions in abſence of Sir* William Petre, *Chancellor of the Order.* So alſo *Ann.* 4. *Jac.* I. where the Cauſe of the Chancellor's Abſence is noted to be Sickneſs, and *Ann.* 6. *Jac.* I. to be Death.

In the firſt of theſe Inſtances, we find the Prelate expreſſly ſet down to be there; in the two following, his

preſence is implyed, for it is ſaid, that the Four Officers of the Order did attend both Feaſts, whereof, (the Chancellor being wanting) the Prelate muſt needs be one.

Now all theſe Paſſages ſeem to relate to the Right of the Chancellors rather than the Prelates by this Remark, That every of the Scrutinies were taken in the Abſence of the Chancellor, which looks ſomething like a cautionary Remark that denoted the Right of Execuing this Office to the Chancellor, rather than the Prelate.

When a Deputy-Chancellor hath been admitted to Officiate in the Chancellor's abſence, he, and not the Prelate, hath taken the Scrutiny, (tho' preſent) as at the Election of *Charles* Prince of *Wales*, the 20th of *May*, 14 *Car.* I. and at another taken the 22d of *May* following, and the ſame when the Suffrages were collected for the Election of the Duke of *York* and Prince *Rupert* at *York*, *Anno* 17 *Car.* I.

But there is one Paſſage more (upon taking a Scrutiny *Anno* 22 *Jac.* I.) which ſeems Advantageous to the Chancellor in this Point, where it is ſaid, *That when the Knights-Companions had given their Votes* (as ſay the *Annals*) *THE CHANCELLOR WHO, ACCORDING TO HIS OFFICE, was to receive them, preſented them to the Sovereign.* Howbeit, in truth there is no ſufficient Foundation for the Regiſter to inſert this as done by the Chancellor, *by Virtue of his Office*, or any one Act or Chapter that hath ſuſpended or made void, the Right of the Prelate, which is reſerved by him, even by the Patent, for erecting the Office of Chancellor; eſpecially in thoſe Affairs, which, reſpecting the Order, ought by the Statute of the Inſtitution to appertain to him. But ſince the ſtated Time of performing this Ceremony in the Chapel, the Prelate (if preſent) is preſumed to be Officiating at the Altar, in diſcharge of another part of his Duty, upon this conſideration hath the Service been then impoſed upon the Chancellor, and others.

Laſtly, We find the Scrutiny to be once taken by Garter, *Ann.* 16 *Car.* I. at the Election of *Thomas* Earl of *Strafford*. But this was at a Time, when not only the Prelate, but all the other Officers of the Order, excepting Sir *John Burrough*, Garter, were abſent, and conſequently

ſequently this Service ſo executed, ought rather to be judged to have been done in the Prelate's than Chancellor's Right.

§. 9. But whoſoever gather'd the Suffrages, the Time when they enter'd upon this Duty (in the Intervals of Feaſts, where the Occaſion requir'd a peculiar Chapter for an Election) was uſually after the Chapter had been open'd, and the Matter of Election propoſed by the Sovereign; after which he proceeded with all poſſible Reverence and Reſpect.

Howbeit upon an extraordinary Occaſion (in the Interval of the Grand Feaſts) the Sovereign hath ſometimes called an Aſſembly of the Knights, Companions, to be convened at the Caſtle of *Windſor*, who in the Choire of St. *George*'s Chapel (not Chapter-Houſe) after the more ſolemn Manner, have deliver'd in their Nominations, and returning thence into the Chapter-Houſe, he there continu'd the Election. Thus did King *Henry* VIII. upon the 7th of *June* in the 17th Year of his Reign, in reference to the Election of the Lord *Henry Fitz Roy*, (ſo ſtil'd in the Scrutiny, and rank'd among the Barons; for as yet he was not created Duke of *Somerſet* and *Richmond*) and *Ralph Nevil*, Earl of *Weſtmorland*.

On the 20th of *May*, *Anno* 14 *Car.* I. being *Trinity-Sunday*, the Sovereign caus'd a Chapter to be held that Afternoon in the Chapter-Houſe at *Windſor*, for the Nomination and Election of *Charles* Prince of *Wales*; at the Breaking up whereof, the Sovereign and Knights-Companions proceeded immediately to St. *Georges*'s Chapel, where at Evening-Prayer, (which was not within the Compaſs of the Feaſt, for that began not 'till next Day) the Scrutiny was taken.

And beſides thoſe Examples which ſhew the Nominations have been collected (upon peculiar Occaſions) in the Choire at *Windſor*, there are one or two Inſtances they have been alſo taken in the Chapel at *Whitehall*, as on the 15th of *May*, *Ann.* 1 *Car.* I. at the Choice of *Edmund* Earl of *Dorſet*, *Henry* Earl of *Holland*, and *Thomas* Viſcount *Andover*, as on the 4th of *July* the ſame Year, whereat the Duke of *Chevereux* was pitch'd upon.

The

THE Suffrages have commonly been collected at the Second Veſpers, or in the Time of Evening-Prayer on St. *George*'s Day, or on that Day whereon the Feaſt of St. *George* hath been celebrated by Prorogation; and with this Diſtinction of Time, the taking of divers Scrutinies are mark'd.

HOWEVER there occurs one Scrutiny gather'd in the Chapter-Houſe at *Windſor* on the Eve of the Grand-Feaſt, at which the perſon immediately elected, was ſent for in, and had the Enſigns of the Order conferr'd upon him, when immediately the Sovereign made his Progreſſion to the Chapel, and after ſome ſmall Interval, the Elect proceeded to his Inſtallation. And this was the Caſe of *James* Marqueſs *Hamilton*, *Ann.* 6 *Car.* I. who lying under an Obligation to commence his Voyage next Morning towards *Germany* (whither he had the Commiſſion of General of 6000 Foot in Aſſiſtance of the King of *Sweden*) occaſion'd this his Sovereign's Indulgence, and quick diſpatch.

WHEN the Scrutiny firſt began to be collected in the Chapel, is treated of ſomewhat general and indefinite. *Ann.* 2, 3, 4, 5, 8, 9 *Eliz.* it was during the time of *Evening-Prayer*. And in like manner, *Ann.* 4 *Jac.* I. and 13 *Car.* I. And when the Feaſt of St. *George* was ſolemniz'd at *Whitehall*, the 18th of *April*, 13 *Car.* I. the *Annals* ſay, *That the Sovereign recreated himſelf with the Melody of Evenſong, during which the Chancellor collected the Votes of the Knights-Companions.*

BUT in ſome other Places, the Time when this Matter was tranſacted is reſtricted to a preciſe Time, or ſome particular Part of Evening Prayer, as *Anno* 26 and 27 Eliz. *whilſt the Choire ſung the Service*, and the like *Anno* 14 *Jac.* I. but 4 *Car.* I. *while the Anthem was ſung after the ſecond Leſſon*, but more frequently after the firſt Leſſon, as in the 2 and 9 *Car.* I. *while the Anthem was ſinging*, or whilſt they were hymning the Anthem of the bleſſed *Virgin called the Magnificat*, and which is all one with that, *Anno* 14 *Car.* I. viz. *aſſoon as the firſt Leſſon was read*, or *at the firſt Leſſon*, which is remembred to be *the uſual Part of the Service, in which the nomination ought to begin.*

§. 10. THE

§. 10. The manner of the Order the Knight-Companions Votes ought to be collected when the *Scrutiny is taken in the Choire*, when the Regiſter informs us, upon the Celebration of St. *Georges*'s Feaſt at *Greenwich*, 28 *Hen.* VIII. as entred into the Black Book; "That he "uſed his Diligence in going to and fro from one Side to "the other, to demand and redemand the Suffrages from "the Knights-Companions, according to the Variety "and Diſpoſition of their Stalls," which ſame Methods *in eiſdem terminis* the Chancellor obſerved, *Anno* 24 *Eliz.* and without queſtion was generally performed at other Seaſons, for the annals deſcribe it to be perform'd *de more* 5 Eliz. or *juxta Ordines Conſtitutionis* Anno 26 *Eliz.*

That the Officer who collects the Scrutiny, is obliged to begin at the youngeſt Knight-Companion, and ſo proceed upward towards the Eldeſt, is evident from the Order mentioned to be in Vogue, *An.* 2 and 20 *Eliz.* as alſo 15 *Car.* I. But to give a more particular Account of this Ceremony, as it ſtood *temp. Car.* I. and doubtleſs long before, tho' not Recorded *in Scriptis*, is as follows.

Firſt, The Officer aroſe and went into the Middle of the Choire; directly over againſt his own Seat, he made two Reverences, firſt towards the high Altar, and next to the Sovereign, then he proceeded up to the Choire near the *hault pace* againſt the Stall of the junior Knight-Companion, and there made like Reverence; this done he went up to the Stall of the ſaid junior Knight, and with a ſingular Reverence to him, only demanded whom he pleaſed to nominate, which having taken, (making to him a ſecond Reverence,) he deſcended into the Choire, and thence paſſed to the next ſenior Knight on the other Side, (unleſs by reaſon of the vacancy of the Stall he Sits on the ſame Side with the junior) and having received his nomination from the ſecond Knight-Companion, he again croſſed the Choire to the Third, and in like mannner he aſcended according to the Seniority of the Knights-Companions preſent, (always croſſing the Choire where there was occaſion) until he arrived at the ſenior Knight-Companion; and having

having thus received all their Nominations, he returned into the Middle of the Choire, and after accuſtomed Reverences, took his Seat.

This Method in collecting the Votes as to the general, and in the Choire, ought likewiſe to be obſerved when they are taken from the Knights-Companions in Chapter, they being ranked in due order on either Side of the Table, according to the Seniority of their Elections and ſituations of Stalls in the Choire; the Officer beginning with the junior and thence gradually aſcending to the ſenior Knight.

And that we may rightly apprehend after what form every Knight-Companion Ranketh the Names of thoſe Perſons he propoſeth, and how each Claſſis is diſtinguiſhed and divided, the following Scrutiny will manifeſt which was taken off, *May*, *Anno* 13 *Hen.* VI. upon the Vacancy of one Stall hapning by the death of Sir *Henry Tanke Clux* a *German*, and the firſt Scrutiny found Marſhalled among the Annals of this moſt noble Order.

NOMINABANT.

	Principes.	Barones.	Equites.
Dux *Exoniæ.*	Duc. *Norfolciæ*	Dom. *Lovell*	Dom. *S. Stanley*
	Duc. *Warwici*	Dom. *Audley*	Dom. *J. Holland*
	Com. *Oxoniæ*	Dom. *Dudley*	Dom. *J. Steward*
Marc. *Suffolc.*	Duc. *Norfolciæ*	Dom. *Lovell*	Dom. *J. Fengo*
	Com. *Devoniæ*	Dom. *Audley*	D. *R. Woodvyle*
	Com. *Oxoniæ*	Dom. *Foix.*	Dom. *A. Ogard*
Com. *Salopiæ.*	Duc. *Warwici*	Dom. *Audley*	Dom. *R. Fengs*
	Duc. *Norfolciæ*	Dom. *Dudley*	Dom. *T. Stanley*
	Com. *Oxoniæ*	Dom. *Foix*	Dom. *T. Kiriell*
Dom. *Sudeley.*	Duc. *Norfolciæ*	Dom. *Foix*	Dom. *R. Fengs*
	Duc. *Warwici*	Dom. *Lovell*	Dom. *J. Fengs*
	Com. *Devoniæ*	Dom. *Audley*	Dom. *G. Bonevile*
Dom. *Wil-loughby.*	Duc. *Warwici*	Dom. *Wells*	Dom. *T. Kiriell*
	Duc. *Norfolciæ*	Dom. *Lovell*	D. *J. Montgomery*
	Com. *Oxoniæ*	Dom. *Laware*	D. *R. Shotesbroke*

Dom.

Dom. *Scales.*	Duc. *Warwici*	Dom. *Foix*	D. *E. Hungerford*
	Com. *Oxoniæ*	Dom. *Clyfford*	D. *G. Beauchamp*
	Com. *Devoniæ*	Dom. *Laware*	Dom. *A. Ogard*
Dom. *Johannes Falſtaff.*	Duc. *Warwici*	Dom. *Boucer*	D. *R. Hungerford*
	Duc. *Norfolciæ*	Dom. *Audley*	Dom. *R. Roos.*
	Com. *Oxoniæ*	D. *Gray Ruffyn*	Dom. *A. Ogard*
Dom. *J. Beauchamp.*	Duc. *Warwici*	Dom. *Foix*	Dom. *R. Fengs*
	Com. *Devoniæ*	Dom. *Lovell*	Dom. *J. Fengs*
	Com. *Oxoniæ*	Dom. *Audley*	Dom. *R. Roos.*

In the firſt Column each Knight-Companion hath his own Name perfixt to thoſe Perſons for whom he condeſcends his Vote, to the intent it may appear by whom the Knights candidates are nominated, and theſe are Ranked in three ſeveral Diviſions.

The firſt contains, The Degrees of Earls, Marqueſſes, Dukes, Princes, Kings and Emperors; yet at a Scrutiny taken *Anno* 24 *Hen.* VI. in a Chapter held at *Brainford*, *Albro Vaſquez d'almadea*, (who immediately following, is Stiled *Comes Averentiæ*) is by a miſtake Ranked; but in the ſecond Diviſion among the Barons, and twice among the Knights Votes of the Marqueſs of *Suffolk*, and Earl of *Shrewsbury*, but this Error perhaps owes its original for want of due knowledge, either of the Law in the Statutes or his Degree, the latter of which is the moſt feaſible to conjecture; for being a Stranger, his Title might not be ſo generally divulged, nor is it taken notice of in the Scrutiny it ſelf, tho' in the annals immediately after it was rectified.

And to ſhew the probability of this Point, the Earls of *Oxford*, *Devonſhire*, and *Arundel*, (whoſe degrees were ſufficiently known) at a Scrutiny taken *Anno* 24 *Hen.* VI. are ranked in the ſecond Diviſion among the Barons, and *Anno* 1 *Hen.* VIII. the Earl of *Darby* is three Times ſo placed, and again 13 *Hen.* VI. the Earl of *Devonſhire* twice; but this happened not thro overſight or neglect of the Statutes, but becauſe at theſe Nominations wherein they are ſo Ranked, the firſt Diviſion to which they appertained, happened to be fill'd up with thoſe other higher Dignities belonging to the ſame Claſs, *viz.*

Kings

Kings or Dukes, as when the beforementioned Earls of *Oxford*, *Devonſhire*, and *Arundel*, were ſet down in the Place of Barons; the King of *Portugal*, the Dukes of *Warwick* and *Norfolk*, were put in the Claſs of Princes, and ſo it happened in many other inſtances.

On the contrary, *Anno* 15 and 16 *Eliz.* IV. the Lord *Rich. Grey* one of the Queen's Sons, by her former Husband, Sir *John Grey* of *Groby* Knight; in reſpect of his Alliance to the Royal Family, is Ranked in the firſt Diviſion among the Princes, under the Title *Dominus Richardus filius Reginæ*, and afterwards *Anno* 19 *Edw.* IV. ſet only among the Barons, as well with the former Title as this *Richardus Dominus Grey*, but *Anno* 22 *Edw.* IV. he is thrice regiſter'd among the Princes, and as often with the Barons, whence it is obſervable that to be Enrolled in the Rank of Princes, may be afforded of courteſie to Perſons of high Eminency and Blood; but then as they can lay no claim to it by their Merit, ſo ſuch of the Knights-Companions as Rank them lower, ſuffer no diminution in their Honour.

Wherein the ſecond Diviſion are Ranked the Barons and Viſcounts, for Viſcounts in all Scrutinies, after the firſt Erection of that Dignity, were on the ſame level with the Barons, until the 3 of *Jac.* I. (excepting only *John Dudley* Viſcount *Liſle*, *Anno* 35 *Hen.* VIII. who by every Knight, the Duke of *Norfolk* excepted, is Ranked in the firſt Diviſion of Princes) and in a Scrutiny then taken, *Robt. Cecil* Viſcount *Craneborne* is the ſecond Viſcount in the Liſt that has been Ranked with Princes, whence it became the frequent Practice in ſucceeding Scrutinies, until *Anno* 14 *Car.* I. And then (upon a Queſtion put in Chapter convened at *Weſtminſter* 23 *May* 14 *Car.* I.) whether Earls Sons and Viſcounts were eligible with Barons, it paſſed in the affirmative, and that by general uſage except in the two caſes juſt mentioned; and about the ſame time we find it reiterated near that Time, for in two Scrutinies taken the 19th and 21ſt of that Inſtant *May*, the Viſcounts are therein reduced to the ſecond Diviſion, and Ranked with the Barons.

The Knights-Batchelors and Bannerets held the ſame Rank

Rank in King *Hen.* VIII's Statutes, in all Scrutinies with Barons.

But tho' the word in King *Hen.* VIIIth's late Statutes is *Baronettus* inſtead of *Banerettus*, yet is this frequently obvious in ſome ancient Books and Records, as well as in thoſe ancient Writers, long before the Title of Baronet was conceived or brought into uſe.

In the laſt place he who demands thoſe Suffrages) the Knights-Companions preſent) is by the Statutes of Inſtitution to receive them in writing; for in a Scrutiny taken *Anno* 2 *Hen.* VI. at the Election of *John* Lord *Talbote* and *Turnival*, the Dean of *Windſor*, and the Regiſter of the Order, *wrote down the Votes and Nominations of every ſingular Knight preſent at the Day of Election.*

And at another Scrutiny *Anno* 4 *Hen.* VI. to fill up that which by an Error in the Black Book is ſet down Sir *Henry Fitzhugh*, 'tis inſerted, *That the Dean and Regiſter wrote down in Order*, (according to their Seniority) *the Votes of the Knights-Companions.* And after the Scrutinies began to be entred in the Annals, it is evident the general Practice kept pace with the Injunction of the Statutes; only there are two inſtances of an Election confirmed without taking a Scrutiny in writing, one in the caſe of the Princes *Henry* and *Chriſtiern* IV. King of *Denmark*, where the Knights-Companions in a Chapter convened at *Whitehall*, 14 of *July* 1 *Jac.* I. gavein their Votes *viva voce*, and immediately the Sovereign admitted them both into the Illuſtrious Society; the other was the Caſe of *James* Marquis *Hamilton*, Elected the 2d of *Feb.* 20 *Jac.* I. with the vocal conſent of all the Knights-Companions.

It is worthy obſervation, that this Method, and the omiſſion of taking theScrutiny in writing, is not only contrary to the Law of the Order expreſſly ſet down for a more ſtable conſignation of the Action, and more faithful tranſmiſſion of it to Poſterity, but exceeding prejudicial to Perſons of Honour, and Diſtinction, whoſe Names would otherwiſe ſurvive with great veneration among the candidates of this Illuſtrious Order, and of which Honour many deſerving Perſons will be hereafter deprived, if the Injunctions of the Statutes be not obſerved in this particular reſpect.

SECT.

SECT. XI.

The Preſentation of it to the Sovereign.

THE Knights-Companions, having delivered their Suffrages, the Officer by whom they are Collected, humbly preſents to the Sovereign the Nominations, for ſo it is recorded the Prelate of the Order acted in the 9th of *Hen.* the Vth. If theſe Votes were taken in Chapter, the Paper uſually was immediately preſented to the Sovereign who made his Election, before the Chapter broke up; but if gathered in the Chapel, tho' it was given to the Sovereign, yet the choice was not made then, but the Morning after, and this was the manner in the 2d and 5th Years of Queen *Eliz.* Another time it hath not been preſented till the Veſpers were finiſhed, but in the Practice of latter Days the Scrutiny hath not been given up to the Sovereign till the next Day at the opening of the Chapel before Morning-Prayer, as in the 13, 15, 20, 30 Years of Queen *Eliz.* demonſtrates, and was the accuſtomed Practice of the 17th Year of King *Charles* the firſt of ever ſacred Memory; the laſt preſentation was tranſcribed in a little Book, and with all due Reverence offered upon the Knee, before any other Affair was tranſacted in the Chapter.

THIS has been the general Uſe as we are aſcertain'd, *Anno* 2 *Hen.* VI. the Dean of *Windſor*, and the Regiſter of the Order, having Collected the Vote of every Knight, they were immediately given into the Hands of the Sovereign's Deputy; and in the ſame nature were they preſented on the 4th *Hen.* VI. when *John* Duke of *Bedford* was Lieutenant, in the 20th of Queen *Eliz.*; when the Suffrages were Collected by Sir *Francis Walſingham* the Chancellor, he gave them up to the Earl of *Suſſex*, then Lieutenant to the Sovereign.

BUT it's evident from ſeveral Paſſages in the Blue Book of the Order, that the Lieutenant afterward delivered them to the Sovereign, as is apparent from the Records of the 30th, 34th, 38th, and the 40th Year of Queen *Eliz.*

IN

In the 12th Year of K. *James* I. ſome Exceptions aroſe upon the Chancellor's not preſenting the Scrutiny to the Prince, (who at that time was the Sovereign's Lieutenant) but to the Sovereign himſelf, which was an Error he fell into, as well as ſome of his Predeceſſor's; as the 2d, 3d, and 25th of *Eliz.* demonſtrate.

The Sovereign's Conſiderations upon the Qualifications of thoſe to be elected.

§ 12. As the Knights-Companions are under an Obligation, by the Statutes, to nominate no Perſon, but who can bear the Teſt of the afore-mention'd Qualifications, there's a Standard of Honour provided for the Sovereign, to meaſure the Extraction, Quality, and Merit of the Perſon propoſed to be elected, leaſt it might chance, thro' the Indulgence of the Sovereign, this Fountain of Honour might be mudded by the Choice of inferior and undeſerving Perſons, for the Statutes run---becauſe this *Order conſiſts of Goodneſs, and honourable Virtue, doth not admit Unworthineſs and Villany,* and ſo by Conſequence ſecludes all Perſons of mean Extraction and Merit.

The Qualifications for *Election* are exhibited in the 2d Article, as in the 18th are included thoſe of *Nomination*: The Words of the *Inſtitution* are, *That none ſhall be elected into the Order*; and refer only to the Act of Election: For if we conſult the reſt of the Statutes, and compare them with this Paſſage, they run according to this Tenor, *That none ſhall be elected and choſen a Companion of this Order.* Theſe refer more principally to the Time of the Election, and not to the *Inveſtiture* with *Garter*, and *George*, and *Inſtallation*, from the Expreſſions of *admitting* and *receiving* Knights into this *Order*, as the *Examplars* of the *Statutes* of *Inſtitution* ſet forth. And this is farther illuſtrated, from another Paſſage in the 2d Article of *Henry* the VIII's Statutes, where the Word *Reproach* is mentioned, ſaith, *The Guilt thereof ſo incapacitates a Man's Election, that for the future it's a Bar, and utterly diſqualifies him for that Honour.*

There are Two Points requiſite for *Qualifications and Endowments*; firſt, to be a *Gentleman of Blood*; and, 2dly, a *Knight* without *Reproach.* By the Statutes of *Henry* the Vth's *Inſtitutions*, no Man ought to be elected, *unleſs he*

be a Gentleman born. The *Examplar* in the *Black Book* ſaith, *Unleſs he be worthy upon the Account of Birth and Arms:* And in another Paſſage, *That he be one eminent for his Demeanour and good Report*; which intimates the Conjunction of Blood and Virtue, which make up the nobleſt Compoſition. The Statutes of King *Henry* VIII. are more extenſive than thoſe, and ſay, *He muſt be a Gentleman by Name, Arms, and Blood*; and leaſt this Character might ſeem intricate and perplex'd, *A Gentleman of Blood* is defin'd to be, *One deſcended of three Deſcents of Nobles*, viz. *of Name and Arms, both by his Father and Mother's ſide.*

It's certain *Gentility* does not receive its Perfection in the Perſon it was firſt devolv'd on, but is rather compleated by Succeſſion: For, among the *Romans*, tho' the Father was Free-born, and of the *Equeſtrian Cenſe*; yet it was farther requiſite, that the Grand-father ſhould be the ſame, or elſe they could not obtain the Ring, one of the *Symbols* of the *Equeſtrian Order*, as *Pliny* informs us. *Gentility* hath its beginning in the Grand-father, its increaſe in the Father, and full ripeneſs in the Son; and conſequently in the Conſtitution of *Gentility*, the Father and Grand-father conveying a Luſtre to the Son, make it entire and compleat; for its incongruous to ſuppoſe a ripeneſs in the Son, unleſs there had been a former encreaſe in the Father, and a longer Series from the Grand-father.

The memorable Inſtance of the Lord *William Paget*, who was diveſted of the *Garter* five Years after his Election, upon Pretence of his not being a Gentleman of Blood by either Father or Mother, proceeded not wholly from the defect in Point of Extraction, as *Haward* relates, but rather from the Prevalence and Practice of *John Dudley*, Duke of *Northumberland*, by whoſe means he was moſt unjuſtly deprived of the *Garter*; repenting, perhaps, at the great Honours he had done this Lord, by his fair Character of him to King *Edward* VI. when he procured him a new Grant of thoſe Arms, under the Great Seal of *England*, when he was *Earl Marſhal*, which he had ſome time before received from the Garter Principal King of Arms.

But, admit the defect of *Blood* and *Arms*, for three Deſcents, were the true Cauſe of the recalling his *Garter*, that

that it might be conferred upon the Earl of *Warwick*, eldeſt Son of the ſaid Duke, who, out of courteſie, is called ſo, in which Relation both *Haward* and *Stow* have miſtaken, for they were beſtowed upon Sir *Andrew Dudley*, Brother to the Duke; for tho' he was put in the Scrutiny enter'd among the *Annals* of *Edward* VI. in the Sixth Year of his Reign, upon St. *George*'s Day, yet was the Earl neither then, nor at any other time, elected.

The Enſigns of this moſt Noble Order, as ſoon as Queen *Mary* aſcended the Throne, were with as much Honour reſtored to the Lord *Paget*, and with as great and abſolute an Authority, as they were diſgracefully taken from him. And in Confirmation of this Lord's Reſtauration, he had the *Garter* buckled on his Leg, and the *Collar* and the *Order* put about his Shoulders, with the *George* depending, by two of the Knights-Companions preſent; and the Garter King at Arms was order'd, That he ſhould take Care his *Atchievements* ſhould be replaced over his *Stall* at *Windſor*, which is the 9th on the Sovereign's ſide. It is obſervable, that the very Records of the Order brand his Degradation as Injuſtice; as if it were inferable, That when Honour is conferred, upon the Account of Virtue and exquiſite Endowments, the Conſideration of theſe ſupplies the defect and obſcurity of Extraction. The Sovereign, whoſe Prerogative it was to declare and interpret the Statutes, being preſent in Chapter, thought fit to qualifie the Law, and gave him this honourable Commendation, *That he had highly deſerved of the Nation, by his Prudence and Counſel.*

And though there's only inſerted in the *Examplar* of the *Black Book*, *Virtue* and *good Report* for a Qualification, yet the ſame was obſerved by the Sovereigns and Lieutenants in foregoing Times, with great Circumſpection; and that the *Magnanimity*, *Fortitude*, *Prudence*, *Generoſity*, *Fame*, *Reputation*, and other Virtues and Excellencies, whether innate or acquired, of the Perſon propoſed to Election, have by prudent Inquiſition been inſpected, and brought to the Touchſtone, before they have been admitted into ſo noble and illuſtrious a Body.

Thoſe Qualities were chiefly conſider'd and eſteemed by *Henry* V. for which Reaſon, at an Election in the 9th Year of his Reign, he gave the Preference, before others that were nominated and preſented unto him, to

John, Earl Marſhal, *William*, Earl of *Suffolk*, *John*, Lord *Clifford*, Sir *Lewis Robertſack*, and Sir *Heer Tank Clux*.

Humphry, Duke of *Glouceſter*, Deputy to K. *Hen.* VI. trod in the ſame Steps, and did weigh, by the ſtrict Rules of Fortitude and Prudence, the gallant and noble Actions and Deſerts of *John*, Lord *Talbot*, before the Election, and gave in an Approbation worthy of his own Judgment, and that Candidate's Merit. And for this Reaſon it's expreſſed in the *Annals* of the Order, that ſuch noble and heroick Qualifications ſhould have the favour of Election preferrable to others, as is evident in the Matter of Choice of Sir *Nicholas Carew*, in the 28th of *Hen.* VIII. *That he was a very fit Perſon, upon the Eminency of his Extraction and Fame, and the many noble and worthy Actions he had performed; ſo as that all preſent did, without any delay, unanimouſly approve of his Election.* And after this Tenure run the Commendation of *Henry*, Earl of *Cumberland*, at his Election, *viz. The many famous and loyal Atchievements performed by him, both at ſeveral other times, and then more eſpecially, when the Tumult of Rebellion began to break forth in thoſe Borders where he had his Habitation.*

The 2d Point to treat on is, That no one is qualified for Election, unleſs he be a *Knight*; or as it is expreſſed in one of the *Examplars* in the *Hatton Library*, *Unleſs girded with the unſtained Girdle of Knighthood*; ſo ſingular a regard the Law of the Order hath to this particular Qualification above the reſt: And leaſt Chance or Inadvertency might let ſlip a Perſon not Knighted into the Scrutiny, were the Words inſerted *ut minimum*, that he be at leaſt a *Knight* before he be elected, when the Sovereign comes to make his Choice. It is evident from the 2d Article in the Statutes, that it hath long ſince received this Conſtruction, as appears by an eminent Inſtance. In the 17th of *Hen.* VIII. The Feaſt of St. *George* being celebrated at *Greenwich*, and the Sovereign being preſent, having elected the Lord *Roos*, afterwards Earl of *Rutland*, into the Society of this moſt noble Order; and being adverti ſed on the Morrow after St. *George*'s Day, while the Maſs of *Requiem* was celebrating, *That he had not before received the Dignity of Knighthood, according to the Statutes*, which poſitively enjoin, *That whoſoever is elected into this Society, ſhould be in Degree at leaſt a Knight*; that is, actually *Knighted* before-hand. And tho' the Lord *Roos* was,

at

at the Time of his Election a Baron of this Realm, which is a higher degree of Honour than a *Knight*; The Sovereign after Mass re-assembled the *Knights-Companions*, and annulled the Election, and commanded the *Garter* and *George*, so lately conferred, to be taken off, and in the same Place dubbed him a Knight; and then he was Elected again, with an unanimous Consent, and so declared by the Sovereign's own Mouth; and was restored to his *Ensigns* and *Ornaments*, by the Dukes of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk*. Agreeable to this, it's recorded in the *Red Book* of the Order; that none of the *English*, *Scotch*, or *Welsh Nation*, *how considerable soever otherwise, in the Prerogative of Blood or Virtue, can be Elected into this most honourable Society; but that he ought to be first ennobled and rendered capable, by this first degree of Knightly Honour.*

But this Law does not bind Foreign Princes; for by a Decree at *White-Hall*, in 13 *Charles* I. these Words, *ut minimum*, are explained to relate to all Subjects, of what Degree soever, within the Sovereign's Dominions; but Foreign Princes ought not to be *Knighted*, as the Basis and first Degree of *Chivalry*. The *Statutes of Institution*, as to those before-mentioned, not only enjoyn them to be *Knights*, but to be free of all *Infamy and Reproach*. In *Henry* V's. Statutes, it stands, *Chivalier sans reproche*, which Answers in the Latin, *Eques irreprehensus*; and the Argument used by the Duke of *Bedford*, for promoting the Election of Sir *John Radcliff*, was, that he had continued and exercised the Armies, the space of twenty eight Years, without *Reproach*. King *Henry* VIII. determined this Word *Reproach* into three Species; first, *when a Knight hath been convicted of Heresy, against the Catholick Faith*; or *suffered any publick Punishment for such Offence*: Here Heresy is reckoned among those defects, that deprive Men of Honour; because it bends its Force against the Catholick Church, which not only renders a Man, in the ballance of *Honour*, of no *Weight* and *Esteem*, but more than all other Sins, makes him *Infamous*. And therefore when by *Tongue*, *Pen*, or *Actions*, a Man endeavours to trample under Foot the *sacred Law*, he scandalizeth Government, and seduceth others.

The second Point is, when any Knight hath been *arraigned, convicted, and attainted of Treason*; however Q. *Elizabeth* qualified this Point by a Decree, made in

the first Year of her Reign; *that in case any Persons so convicted, were pardoned by the Sovereign, and restored in Blood; every such Gentleman in Name, Arms, and Blood, and descended as aforesaid, being otherwise qualified, according to the ancient Statutes of the Order, should be thenceforth accounted Eligible, and might be Chosen a Companion.* This Decree, it's presumed, owes its Original, upon the occasion of restoring in *Blood William* Marquiss of *Northampton*, and the Lord *Robert Dudley*, after Earl of *Leicester*, who had been attainted of High Treason in the first of Q. *Mary*: And we find that in the next Feast of St. *George*, they recovered their Privileges of Honour, and were preferred in *Nomination*, and on the last Day of the Feast, were Elected into this most illustrious Society.

Though the Marquess of *Northampton* had been formerly Elected in the 35 *H.* 8. and was restored in Blood, as I said before; it's very remarkable, that it was thought fit to descend to a new Nomination and Election, as appears from the Decree it self, as it was performed upon the third of *June Anno primo Eliz.*

The last Point of Reproach, is, *where a Knight Companion hath fled from Battle*; in which the *Sovereign*, or his *Lieutenant*, or other *Captain*, (having the King's Authority) were present; when Banners were displayed, and both Sides proceed to Fight. Now for a Person to behave himself cowardly in the Fight, abandon his Colours, leave his Prince, Friends, and Companions, in hazard of Life, are undoubtedly Concerns of a very high and reproachful Nature, and draw down Dishonour upon the Order, the Sovereign, and Knights Companions, and a sufficient indication of a pusilanimous Mind; that prefers to drag an infamous Life, and makes his Honour a Sacrifice to a reproachful Safety; for the Resolution of a right *Martial Spirit*, ought either to return decked with Victory, or die upon the Bed of Honour.

By the Laws of King *Edward* the Confessor, the *Soldier* that runs from his *Colours*, either in Land or Sea Service, his *Life* and *Estate* were made liable to answer the Offence; and our Acts of Parliaments have made it *Felony*, without *Benefit of Clergy*; for as much as such desertion endangers the Estate of the *King*, *Nobility*, and *Commonwealth.*

But

But the danger is of a far more dismal hue, when Officers, or he that Commands in Chief, or who has any Post of Trust assigned him, either quit it, or is found defective in his Duty, as was *Thomas Earl of Lancaster*, who quitted the Army at the Siege of *Berwick*, the consequence of which proved an abortion to the whole Design; and for which he was proclaimed *Traytor*, *Anno* 12 *E.* 2. And therefore whoever is culpable of any of these three Points of *Reproach*, is disqualified from being Elected into this most *noble Order*. Before we proceed any farther, it may not be improper to take notice of an Error which *Polydore Virgil* hath interwove with one, and which *Erhardus Celius*, in his History of *England*, hath copyed from that Author, but refuted by the learned Pen of Dr. *Heylein*, *viz.* that the *Knights-Companions* have certain *Laws* belonging to their Order, whereby they are *obliged to help one another, and in Time of Battle never to betake themselves to shameful Flight*: The *Statute Law* of the *Order* is silent upon the first Clause, nor is the latter otherwise to be taken, than one of those Points of Reproach spoke of in the second *Statute of K. Henry* VIII. which nulls the *Election* of the Person nominated, if he be peccant in that Point: Now that which gives some Umbrage to the *Knights* mutual Assistance and Defence, is founded upon an Article in their *Statutes*, which prohibits the arming themselves one against another, to create a mutual Affection, and to extinguish Feuds, which is the Life and Soul of Society, and which the Founder, to prevent Inconveniencies, had a great Regard to; and therefore he Ordained, which has been confirmed since by other Statutes; That none of the Knights-Companions should Arm themselves against any of their *Fellows*, unless either in the Cause of his Sovereign, or his own just Quarrel: And this Clause it was, that gave the Handle to both Parties, that sided with the Houses of *York* and *Lancaster*; some firmly adhering to *Henry* VI. whom they accounted *Sovereign* of the Order; and others taking Part with *Edward* IV. as esteeming him Sovereign *de Jure*, though not *de Facto*.

But more firmly to tye this Knot of Amity among this noble *Fraternity*, least they should unhappily engage in Factions one against another, and proceed so violently as might commence into Actions of Blood and Slaughter;

it was ordained, That if a Knight-Companion ſhould happen to be retained in the Service of a Foreign Prince, to take up Arms in his Quarrel; and after his Adverſary deſired to entertain another *Knight-Companion* on his Side alſo; he that was laſt invited, was bound to wave this Offer, and in no wiſe to give his Conſent. And upon this, the *Knights-Companions* were obliged to make ſpecial Precautions in that their Engagements; that if any of his Fellows were retained on the other Side, and that if he knew not that another of his *Fellows* had been engaged with the Adverſary, ſo ſoon as it came to his Knowlege, he was obliged to relinquiſh the Service he before had undertaken.

To theſe three Points of *Reproach* we have ſet down, we find in a Manuſcript, that belonged to *Heny Grey*, third Marquiſs of *Suffolk*, a fourth added to theſe other three *Points* of *Reproach*; in theſe Words:

That if any Knight of the Order, from henceforth, by Prodigality or Ryot, wilfully or negligently, Diſpend, Sell, Aliens, or do away his Patrimony or Livelihood, by reaſon whereof, he ſhall not be able Honourably to maintain himſelf, and his Eſtate, in ſuch Honourable Manner, as may Conſerve the Honour of the ſaid Order, and of himſelf; in this Caſe he ſhall be Summoned by the Uſher of Arms of the Order, called the black Rod, by Commandment of the Soveraign, his Lieutenant, or Deputy; to appear before his Majeſty, or his Commiſſioners, and the Knights of the Order, at the nert Chapter enſuing; there to be examined before the Soveraign, or his ſaid Commiſſioners, and the Knights and Companions of the ſaid Order; and if he be found in ſuch great default of Prodigality, inſolent Riot, or wilful Negligence; that then the Soveraign, with the advice of the Company of

the

the ſaid Dyer, may depriue and degrade him of the ſaid Dyer, at the ſaid Chapter, if it be their Pleaſure.

Though this fourth Point is not inſerted into King *Henry* VIII's Statutes, yet the Subſtance thereof ſeems to be approved of before; for we find among ſome *Orders*, prepared by the Marquiſs of *Exeter*, and other Knights-Companions, at a Chapter at *Windſor*, the twenty fifth and twenty ſixth Days of *May*, *Anno* 8 *Henry* VIII. one of them was ſomething to this Purpoſe.

§. 13. Amongſt the Number of theſe Candidates, the Sovereign is chiefly to regard thoſe who have *moſt Voices*, or whom he conceives moſt requiſite to contribute to the *Honour of the Garter*, and moſt Beneficial to himſelf, and of moſt Advantage to his Crown and Kingdom. We find the Law hath not always reſerved the greateſt Number of Voices, as will appear from the Annals; yet it has ſometimes confirmed the Election, as in the Caſe of the Duke of *Queenberry An.* 5 *Henry* VI. where, after a due and ſufficient Examination taken of the *Scrutiny*, the Duke, by the conſent of moſt Voices, was Elected into the Stall of *Thomas* Duke of *Exeter*; and ſo was the Election of Sir *Nicholas Carew*, the twenty fourth of *April*, in the 28 *Henry* VIII.

It is remarkable in a ſingular Inſtance, that when two Knights had on either Side equal *Voices*; which was the Caſe of Sir *John Faſtolf*, and Sir *John Radcliff*; the firſt being eſteemed more Worthy, by the Sovereign's Lieutenant, obtained the Election.

The ſecond Inducement relates to ſuch as, in all Appearance, may bring moſt Renown to the *Order*, and advance it to a higher pitch of Greatneſs; and theſe have in a great Meaſure been effected, by enrolling Foreign Princes into this *illuſtrious Society*, whoſe Valour and great Merit have proclaimed them deſerving both of *Nomination and Election*. And upon this Conſideration, K. *Charles* I. of bleſſed Memory, *upon Conſideration had of the glorious Atchievements, and high Renown, of* Guſtavus Adolphus *King of* Sweden; *judged it a Part of his Reſpect, not only to render him all Offices of Kindneſs and Friend-*

Friendſhip, as to a Prince nearly allied, and his moſt ſpecial Friend; but alſo to impart to him, as far as in him lay, the greateſt and higheſt Honour that might be, and eſpecially ſuch, wherewith the military Virtue of ſo great a Captain was wont to be adorned.

But the principal Motive thought requiſite to Elect Foreign Princes into this Society of Honour, hath been expreſſed in the *Commiſſions* of *Legations, to be in Reſpect of their glorious Merits, ennobled by the luſtre and grace of their Heroick Virtues, their eminent Nobleneſs, Grandeur, Proweſs, and Magnificence; the renown of which, Fame had divulged and ſpread Abroad throughout the World.*

Where the Advantage of the Sovereign's Service was thrown into the Ballance, no Conſideration could outvie its Pretenſions, as in 2 *H.* 6. juſtifies; whoſe eminent Service for his King and Country, was the ſole Motive that crowned his Election: And the great Zeal and Affection, which *John Jaſpar Ferdinand de Marchin* ſhewed for the Cauſe and Service, and the recovery of the juſt Rights of King *Charles* II. was the ſtrongeſt Inducement that ſwayed that Sovereign to chuſe him, in the tenth Year of his Reign, a Knight-Companion of this moſt noble Order. But the laſt inducement is of the greateſt Latitude, for the *Sovereign* has a Power to reject whoſoever he pleaſes, though they do exceed in multiplicity of *Voices*, and in other *Qualifications*; and even to Elect a Perſon that's but once mentioned, as was ſhewn in the Perſon of *Caſimire*, the fourth King of *Poland*, *An.* 28 *Henry* VI. who having only the ſingle Vote of the Lord *Scales*; yet upon reſpect to the *Sovereign*, how advantageous he might be for his, and his Kingdom's Intereſt, obtained the Election.

And of later Date, (as the Preambles for the carrying the Enſigns to Foreign Princes ſet forth) the Advantages the Sovereign has conceived to poſſeſs himſelf of, in the improving, confirming, and eſtabliſhing, of a moſt ſtrict and *inviolable Bond of* Friendſhip, and fair Correſpondence, between him and Foreign Princes, their Realms and Subjects, hath been a grand Inducement to Elect ſuch Princes into this moſt noble Order.

§ 14. Upon the vacancy of any of the *Knights-Companions* Stalls, the *Election* of others to ſupply thoſe, is a Prero-

Prerogative of the *Sovereign*, and in ſome Caſes to his Lieutenant; for it's recorded in the *Black Book of the Order*, in *Henry* VIII's Statutes: That *if any Stalls fall Vacant, it ſhould belong to the Sovereign, to Elect new Knights, whereſoever he was Reſident*; upon Condition, the Chapter conſiſted of ſix compleat *Knights-Companions*; but if he chanced to be out of his Realms, and the Number was deficient, and that his Lieutenant held the *Feaſt of St. George* at *Windſor*; in ſuch a Caſe the *Election* belongs to the *Lieutenant*, who is firſt to be certified of his *Sovereign's* Pleaſure, and what Eſteem *he* has for the Candidates, to the intent ſuch Information may guide, or direct his Election.

This Power of *Election* is fully acknowledged, by the *Knights-Companions* themſelves, to be in the Sovereign; as the fragment of a Letter demonſtrates, ſent from *the Chapter*, convened at *Windſor*, upon the *Feaſt of St. George*, to *Henry* V. then in *France*; viz. *That the Sovereign, in what Place ſoever reſiding, may, as is moſt fitting, Elect into a vacant Stall, (there being a ſufficient Number of Knights called to this Election) ſuch as he ſhall judge ſerviceable to his Crown, or do exceed others in deſerts, and nobleneſs of deſcent*: And at publiſhing the *Election* of *Duke Emanuel* of *Savoy*, in the Reign of *Philip* and *Mary*, who were *joint Sovereigns* of the *Order*; it's ſtyled, The Election of the *King and the Queen.*

This grand Prerogative of the *Sovereign* being not duly weighed by *Polydore Virgil*, occaſioned his tripping in this Affair, and drew in *Claudius Coteræus* into the ſame palpable miſtake; for writing of this *Order*, and the Succeſſion of new Knights, reports in his Hiſtory of *England*, That *one Knight is received in the room of another deceaſed, by the Choice and Election of all the reſt*; and *Erhard Celly* in his *Anglo-Wirtemb.* does as falſely affirm, *That no Perſon may be received into this Order, not ſo much as by the Sovereign, unleſs with the common Conſent and Suffrage of all the Knights-Companions.*

But theſe Paſſages are altogether erroneous, the *Knights-Companions* only *nominate* the *Perſons*, but the right of *Election* remains ſolely in the *Sovereign* of the Order; for whoſoever is honoured with his Choice, is immediately admitted; and pronouncing barely the Name of the Perſon in Chapter, conſtitutes the Election. After the Scru-

tiny

tiny hath been taken, and presented to the Sovereign, he peruseth it himself, or the *Chancellor*, or some other Officer of the *Order* that gathered it, reads it over to him; afterwards the Sovereign resolves forthwith, upon some one or more of the Knights, contained in the Scrutiny; and then publickly declareth the *Name* of him, or them, he does *Elect*; and by the bare Act of his *Pronunciation*, they Commence Elected Knights; except now and then the Sovereign is pleased to give his Reasons, why the Knight is Elected by him.

But though this Act of *Election* be solely in the *Sovereign*, yet the Consent of the *Knights-Companions* is frequently recorded in the *Annals*, and sometimes mentioned in the *Commissions* of *Legations* to *Foreign Princes*; not that the single Act of *Election* is, in truth, the Act of the whole Chapter, or is made invalid, without the joynt Consent of the *Knights-Companions*, present at the Election; but their Consent so expressed, is to be taken as an honorary Respect given them by the Register, intimating rather an Applause, or Commendation of their *Sovereign's Choice*, as being in their Opinions Just and Right, according to the Merit of the Elected, than a material Circumstance, tending to the Ratification of the Election made by the Sovereign, as if defective without it.

§. 15. Among other Duties incumbent on the *Register*, and expressed in the Statutes of the *Order*, this is one: That the Register's *Office is to set down, and record for a Memorial, the Elections (or Scrutinies,) and Names of the Knights Elected*: But in succeeding Times a Scruple arose, if this was not needless, when the *Scrutiny* should be taken, yet no *Election* made; to clear up which doubt, in a Chapter held in 5 *Elizabeth*, on St. *George's-Day*, it's recorded as the Sovereign's Will and Pleasure, that thenceforward it should be Enacted, and received as the Sanction of a *Law*, within this Order; *That if any Nominations were taken from the Knights-Companions, the same should be entered into the Annals, though there were no Election made of any Person into the Order at that Time*: Which we presume was so Decreed, out of great deference to those Princes and noble Personages, who, in descending Times, should, by the glory of their Exploits, appear but worthy of a *bare Nomination* into so resplendent

dent and illuſtrious an Order. And in purſuance of this *Decree*, there is frequent mention made of the delivery of the *Scrutiny* into the Hands of the Regiſter, in order to be Recorded.

The Blue Book ſays, *Anno* 22 *Elizabeth*; *That the Chancellor himſelf* delivered the *Knights-Companions Votes to the Regiſter, to be committed to Writing, for a perpetual Memorial; and accordingly the Regiſter, as his Duty obliged him, tranſcribed them, and put them in their proper Place, with all Care and Fidelity.* *Anno* 34 of the ſame Queen, 'tis ſaid, *the Votes were delivered to the Regiſter, who took care to Record them, according to uſual Order.* Yet maugre this Law, the Entry of Scrutinies hath been ſometimes omitted, either by the *Regiſter*'s forgetfulneſs of the Decree, or ſome accidental Miſcarriages. In ſome Places of the Annals, in the room of *Scrutinies*, we find Excuſes entered, as it's ſaid, *Anno* 28 *Elizabeth*; that the *Prelate*, immediately after *Veſpers*, preſented the Scrutiny to the Sovereign; but becauſe there was no Election made of any new *Knights*, in regard of hurry, or weighty and preſſing Affairs, it was laid aſide, and *through Neglect loſt*, or at leaſt came not into the *Regiſter*'s Hands, to be inſerted in its proper Place. And when the Dean of *Windſor* collected the Scrutiny at *Veſpers*, *Anno* 18 *Elizabeth*, it's ſaid, *No Election was made, nor any thing elſe done*: The like Excuſe is made, *Anno* 5 *Charles* I. but the Fault is thrown upon the Chancellor; for though the Scrutiny had been taken by him, during the *Veſpers of the Feaſt-Day, yet would he not ſuffer it to be entered.* In ſome Places we find, *Anno* 31 *Elizabeth*, the *Votes* being preſented, *they were left with her.* And *Anno* 11 *Charles* I. the Scrutiny of *Algernoon* Earl of *Northumberland* never came to the Regiſter's Hands.

But the Law yet remains in force, that all *Nominations* and *Votes* of the *Knights-Companions* ought to be enter'd among the *Annals*, whether Election be made or not, unleſs it ſhall pleaſe the *Sovereign*, upon ſome Emergency, to forbid it: As appears but by one Example of ſuch a Prohibition, *viz.* *Anno* 40 *Eliz.* where, by the Queen's ſpecial Command, the *Scrutiny then taken was not recorded among the Acts of this moſt Noble Order.* But then it is declared, That *the Regiſter took care to ſet down all the Paſſages as they happened, the Names only excepted.* And

why

why the *Scrutiny* is not inſerted in the *Regiſtry*, *An.* 44 of *Eliz.* gives this Account: That upon aſſembling the *Knights-Companions*, it ſeemed good to the Sovereign, for ſeveral urgent Reaſons, beſt known to her ſelf, to give Commandment, That for that time, *they would wholly forbear all Scrutiny of Votes, and Nominations of Perſons*; except which, there was nothing wanting to heighten the Solemnity of that Aſſembly: But this in the *Annals* is ſaid to be *præter morem*, contrary to the uſual Cuſtom.

§ 16. *Anno* 27 of *Eliz.* there is a remarkable Occurrence, not to be paſſed over; for the Earls of *Rutland* and *Derby*, the morrow after St. *George*'s Day, were deſirous to have ſeen the *Scrutiny*, which was committed into the Cuſtody of the Dean of *Windſor*, to be regiſtred, in purſuance of the before-mentioned Decree, *Anno* 5 *Eliz.* but he returned a modeſt denial, and ſaid, *It ought not to be ſeen before it was regiſter'd.* The Earls, not ſatisfied with this Anſwer, requeſted the Opinions of the *Knights-Companions*, preſent at the Feaſt, on this Affair; who, upon mature Deliberation, adjudged the Point againſt them; and ſince it has been a ſtanding Rule, that no Knight-Companion ought to ſee whom the other hath named.

§ 17. It hath chanced, that tho' the *Nominations* for *Election* have been received, preſented and peruſed, yet the Sovereign hath thought expedient to defer it, upon ſeveral Conſiderations, and principally where an intent was to keep an open Stall; but we muſt underſtand this of ſuch *Scrutinies* as are taken of Courſe, at the *Veſpers* on the Feaſt-day.

And the moſt memorable Example of this Kind, is that of the Emperor *Sigiſmond*, who expired in the 16th Year of K. *Henry* VI. whoſe Stall was reſerved Twenty One Years, and then determined, that Prince *Edward*, the Sovereign's only Son, ſhould fill it up, being at that time about Six Years of Age. This is the firſt Emperor, whoſe Election we find regiſter'd in the *Annals*, being about the 7th of *May*, in the 4th Year of *Henry* V. ſtyled *Sigiſmundus Imperator Almanicus.*

And keeping a vacant Stall was ſometimes given as a Reaſon by the Sovereign for his deferring an Election, as is plain from *An.* 13. *Car.* I. when the Scrutiny taken

the

the Day before was read over in the Chapter-House, the Sovereign declared, *That he would receive no Man into the Order before his Son* Charles. Whereupon all the Knights-Companions gave their Opinions, *That this Resolution was rather the effect of Justice, than Fatherly Indulgence; since they all acknowledged him, to be more a Prince by Merit, and towardliness of his Youth, than by the Fortune of his Birth.* At which the Sovereign expressed his Satisfaction no otherwise than by Silence.

And in like manner, *Anno* 15 *Charles* I. when the Chancellor of the Order gave up the Scrutiny to the Sovereign, he declared----*That he had a purpose to have Chosen Prince* Rupert, *his Nephew, a Knight of the Order; but being then a Prisoner with the Emperor, he would not Elect any at that Time*; whereupon, a vacancy of a *Stall* was reserved. It has sometimes been the Sovereign's Pleasure to defer Elections, without expressing the Cause, as in the 13 of *Elizabeth*; though she perused the Scrutiny in Chapter, yet the *Blue Book* informs us; That the *said Sovereign made no Election, though two Stalls were vacant.* Thus was it in the 2, 3, 11, and 12, of K. *James* I. where no other mention is made than this; *none were admitted into the Order this Year.*

Sometimes we find these *Prorogations of Elections* recorded, as solely done by the Will of the *Sovereign*; and at other Times by the *Sovereign*, and the approbation of the *Knights-Companions*; to the first of these we find a Memorial, in the 22 of *Elizabeth*, on the 24 of *April*; that the *Knights-Companions* had a Message sent to their Chapter, held before Morning-Prayer; *That it was the Pleasure of the Sovereign to prorogue the Election to the following Year.* And so it was, in the 10th of *Charles* I. though the Nomination was taken by the Chancellor, and presented to the Sovereign in Chapter, *the Sovereign did not think fit to make any Election at all.* And for a Testimony of the second, we meet with this Instance, in the 27th of *Elizabeth*; *that with the concurrent Approbation and Assent of all the Knights-Companions then assisting, the Sovereign thought fit to put off the Election to another Time.* As to the seeming difference of the *Sovereign's absolute Authority*, and yet the *Knights-Companions Approbation*, we have cleared up that Point in the *Act of Election*; for though it is *his* unquestionable Authority and

Pre-

Prerogative, to Prorogue *Elections ad libitum*, yet out of Reſpect, and Honour to the *Knights-Companions*, their Approbation hath been ſometimes expreſt.

§ 18. When any Knight-Companion hath received a Summons, to appear at a Chapter of Election, and doth wilfully refuſe, or withdraw himſelf, he was to be mulct a Mark for his Diſobedience, which King *Henry* VIII's Statutes inlarged to twenty Shillings, payable to the Dean and College of *Windſor*, to pray for defunct Souls. And at his next appearance in Chapter, he was to remain kneeling in the midſt of them, before the Sovereign, or Deputy, till he was reſtor'd to their Favour: Yet upon a juſt Cauſe ſignified to the *Sovereign* ſome time before, under the Seal of his Arms, he was excuſed, if it was found juſt and feaſible; if not, it was rejected, and he remained Puniſhable.

And for greater Caution, this Clauſe was formerly inſerted, in the *Letters of Summons*; where, after the Time and Place for Election was certified, and command given to obſerve both, the Letter concludes thus, *et ſe eſtre ny poues nous Signifies ſoubz, &c.* and if it cannot be accompliſhed, that is, if the Knight-Companion could not meet at the time aſſigned, to perform what the Statutes oblige, he ſhould then *ſignify to the Sovereign, under his Seal, the cauſe of his Impediment; ſo that he might perceive by his Excuſe*, whether it was worthy of Acceptance, or he in Fault or not.

CAP. X.

The Inveſtiture of a Knight-Subject *with the* Garter and George.

IF the Knight chance to be at *Windſor*, that is newly Elected, or where ſoever the Chapter is held, after the Sovereign hath ſignified his Pleaſure in the Election of the Perſon, the *Garter* is immediately diſpatched out of the Chapter, to give him the Intelligence; as is apparent

rent upon the Choice of the Lord *Howard*, and Sir *Henry Marney*, *Anno* 2 *Henry* VIII. who was diſpatched from the Chapter, to conduct them to the *Sovereign's* Preſence, to be inveſted with the principal Enſigns of the Order, the *Garter* and *George*.

And as *Garter* hath been accuſtomed to ſignify in Perſon the *Election* of a *Knight*, in like manner an Election is *ſignified*, by the Letters of the *Sovereign*, when he is pleaſed (for the greater Honour of the Perſon) to weave by verbal Notice: In ſuch Caſes, it's the *Chancellor's* Office to draw up the *Letters*, and they are to paſs, both under the *Sovereign's Sign Manual*, and Signet of the Order. Such a particular mark of Diſtinction and Honour was conferr'd on our Sovereign of *Bleſſed Memory*, *King Charles* II. Sir *John Burrough Garter*, carrying the Letter.

Charles Rex,

" Our moſt dear and entirely beloved Son, having, to " our great Comfort, ſeen and conſidered the ripeneſs of " your Youth, and conceived joyful and pregnant Hopes " of your manly Virtue, in which we are aſſured you " will increaſe, to your own Honour, both in Proweſs, " Wiſdom, Juſtice, and all Princely Endowments; and " that the Emulation of Chevalry will, in your tender " Years, provoke and encourage you, to purſue the Glory " of Heroick Actions, befitting your Royal Birth, and our " Care and Education. We with the Companions of our " moſt Noble Order of the Garter, aſſembled in Chapter, holden this preſent Day, at our Caſtle of *Windſor*; " have Elected and Choſen you one of the Companions " of our Order. In Signification whereof, we have ſent " unto you, by our Truſty and Well-Beloved Servant, " Sir *John Burrough* Knight-Garter, and our principal " King of Arms, theſe our *Royal Letters*, requiring you " to make your ſpeedy repair unto us, to receive the Enſigns of our moſt Noble Order, and to be ready for " your Inſtallation, upon the 21ſt Day of this preſent " Month. Given under the Signet of our Order, at our " Caſtle of *Windſor*, the 20th of *May*, in the 14th Year of " of our Reign, 1638.

To our dearly beloved Son Prince Charles.

This is the only Inſtance we have met with, where a Letter was ſent to an Elect Knight, and he at the ſame time preſent at Court; but when an Election is confirmed, and the Perſon remote from the Court, then the general Tenure of the Letter is, both to ſignify his Election, and Summon him to his Inveſture, with the Garter and George, as was performed by the Earl of *Derby*, and Sir *Edward Strafford*, to King *Henry* of *France*.

But where the Sovereign is pleaſed to mention particular Services, to recommend the Election of a Knight, the Preamble of the Letter is worded accordingly; and as this is a Caſe not very frequent, it will not be amiſs to exemplify it in the Choice of Sir *John Falſtoff*, where the Letter runs thus—*We conſidering the virtuous Fidelity you have ſhown, and the honourable Exploits you have done, in the Service of our thrice renowned Father, and that in our Service alſo, you (as many others) have given Proof of that Honour, and thoſe Deſerts, wherewith God hath endowed you, always ſuffering, as is the part of a good Subject, the Pains and Toils of War, for the vindicating and maintaining of our juſt Right, Claim, and Title, have Choſen you one of our Companions of our Order.*

When the Letter barely ſignifies Election, that is, when the Sovereign does not deſign a preſent inveſture with the Garter and George, but defers it till he takes Poſſeſſion of his Stall, the Day of his Inſtallation is inſerted towards the end of the Letter; and upon his appearance at *Windſor*, ſo ſoon as he appears in the Chapter-Houſe, the Garter is firſt buckled about his left Leg, then follows his Inveſture with the reſt of the Ornaments of the Order, and laſtly his Inſtallation. And this was the Caſe of *Henry* Earl of *Northumberland*, *Anno* 29 *Henry* VIII. whoſe Inveſture of the Garter was deferr'd till his appearance at *Windſor*, and then the whole Ceremony was performed at once.

§ 2. If the elect Knight be at hand, where the Chapter is convened, and the Garter hath been ſent to make known to him the Honour, and Conduct him into the *Chapter-Houſe*, to receive the Garter and George, before they break up, Intimation being given of his approach, the Sovereign ſends out two of the Knights-Companions to meet him, who, after a mutual Salute, Conduct him between them, to the Preſence of the Sovereign, Garter going

going before them. Thus was *Ubrick* Duke of *Holſtein*, *Anno* 3 *Jac.* I. introduced into the Chapter, between Prince *Henry*, and the Earl of *Dorſet*, and *Chriſtian* Duke of *Brunſwick*, *Anno* 22 *Jac.* I. between *William* Earl of *Pembrook*, and *Philip* Earl of *Montgomery*, to receive the Garter and George. The 6th of *November*, *Anno* 14 *Charles* II. *Chriſtian* Prince of *Denmark*, being elected at a Chapter held at *White-Hall*, and then abſent, the Garter King was diſpatched next Day by the Sovereign, to inform him, and to deſire his Preſence the next Day, that he might receive his Inveſture; which accordingly was done, being conducted between the Earls of *Lindſey* and *Mancheſter* into the Chapter, Garter preceding them, and after three Obeyſances, they brought him up to the Sovereign. Among Knights-Subjects, we find the Lord *Burley*, and the Lord *Grey*, were conducted to the Sovereign by the Lord *Clynton*, and the Earl of *Bedford*, *Anno* 14 *Elizabeth*, *cum multis aliis*. *Anno* 4 *Jac.* I. *Robert* Earl of *Salisbury* proceeded up to the Sovereign's Throne, between the Earls of *Nottingham* and *Dorſet*. In the Reign of King *Charles* I. the Earl of *Northampton* was conducted to receive the Garter in the *Chapter-Houſe* at *Windſor*, between the Earls of *Pembrook* and *Montgomery*. And when King *Charles* II. appeared, upon his Letter of Summons, at the Chapter held in the withdrawing Chamber in *Windſor Caſtle*, to receive his Inveſture, two of the Senior Knights, *viz.* *Philip* Earl of *Pembrook* and *Montgomery*, and *Thomas* Earl of *Arundel* and *Surry*, were ſent out to Conduct him in, who brought him between them unto the Sovereign, the Gentleman Uſher of the Black Rod going before.

The Duke of *Monmouth* being elected at a Chapter held in the withdrawing Room at *White-Hall*, the 28th of *March*, *Anno* 15 *Charles* II. Garter was immediately ſent to him in the Sovereign's Bed-Chamber, who being met at the Door by the Earls of *Lindſey* and *Mancheſter*, both the Garter and the Black Rod paſſed to the lower End of the Room before the Duke and the two Knights-Companions, whence they proceeded up to the Sovereign with three Reverences. At the Election of *James* Duke of *Cambridge*, in the ſame Room at *White-Hall*, (*December* 3. *Anno* 18 *Charles* II.) Garter was alſo ſent forth into the Bed-Chamber, to acquaint him that the Earl of

Manchester, and the Duke of *Monmouth*, were appointed by the Sovereign and Chapter to bring him in thither; that done, the aforesaid Knights-Companions arose and went to the Duke, whom meeting at the Bed-Chamber Door, they took their compass about the rest of the Knights-Companions, (then standing) and brought him between them, from the lower End of the Room, close before the Sovereign, the Garter and Black Rod preceeding.

§ 3. The Knight elect being thus introduced to the Sovereign, bows with all Reverence, and formerly a short gratulatory Speech was the vogue, that set forth his acknowledgment of his Sovereign's Royal Favour, and the grateful Respect he bore to the Knights-Companions for his Election.

Anno 28. *Hen.* VIII. we find Sir *Nicholas Crew*, after he had been conducted into the Chapter-House at *Windsor*, to receive his Investiture, thus to address himself: giving *infinite Thanks both to the Sovereign and whole Society, for that they had vouchsafed to receive him into the Honour of this most illustrious Order, being a Person in his own Esteem most unworthy thereof:* In the next Place professed, *That whereas he was preferred in this Choice before many others, much more deserving than himself, it was not to be attributed to his Merits, or any Thing by him performed, but meerly to the Sovereign's Bounty, and the Favour of the Knights-Companions towards him.*

The conferring of so singular an Honour, being thus thankfully own'd, the Ceremony of Investiture begins; the *Garter* first takes place, as the most ancient and chiefest *Ensign*, and then the *George*; but the compleat Investiture is not performed until the Elect Knights are installed at *Windsor*. Formerly the manner of robing of them was performed on this wise: First, the Elect Knight set his Foot upon a Stool, and then one of the Knights-Companions, by the Sovereign's appointment, as his Substitute, buckled the enobled *Garter* about his left Leg, as may be seen in the *Antiquities of* Warwickshire, in an old Draught of the Combats of Sir *John Astley*, who was inrolled in this illustrious Body, and is so represented. But of later Date, the Elect Knight kneeled on his right Knee, whilst this Ceremony was performed, in which space the Words of *Admonition* and *Signification*, at this part of the Investiture,

ſtiture, were read. The *Admonition*, upon the buckling of the Garter, in the *Engliſh* Statutes of K. *Hen.* VIII. is ſet down on this manner:

SIR,

The loving Brethren of the Order of the Garter, have received you their Brother and Fellow; and in Token of this, they give and preſent you this preſent Garter, which God grant that you receive and wear from henceforth to his Praiſe and Glory, and to the Exaltation and Honour of the ſaid Noble Order, and your ſelf.

Afterwards it was decreed, at a Chapter held at *Windſor*, the 5th of *Auguſt*, *Anno* 1 & 2 *Phil.* and *Mary*, to this effect: 'That not only the ſame Advertiſements, which 'were wont to be given to Strangers at their Inveſtitures, 'ſhould be likewiſe given to Knights-Subjects, that for 'the future ſhould be elected and inſtall'd; and with a farther Proviſo, 'That among the Knights-Companions 'there ſhould not be any difference either in Ceremony or 'Habit.

Hereupon the aforeſaid Tenure ceaſed to be uſed upon the fixing of the Garter, and one Form remained at the Inveſtiture of Strangers and Knights-Subjects, which is pronounced by the Chancellor, if the Sovereign or his Lieutenant be preſent, otherwiſe by the Regiſter.

"To the Laud and Honour of Almighty God, his im-"maculate Mother, and St. *George* the holy Martyr, tye "or gird your Leg with this noble Garter, wearing it to "the increaſe of your Honour, and in Token and Re-"membrance of this moſt noble Order; remembring "that thereby you being admoniſhed and encouraged, in "all juſt Battels and Wars, which only you ſhall take in "Hand, both ſtrongly to fight, valiantly to ſtand, and "honourably to have Victory.

But againſt the Inveſtiture of K. *Charles* II. the Words of the Signification being better weighed and conſidered, were thus methodized:

"To the Honour of God Omnipotent, and in Memo-"rial of the bleſſed Martyr St. *George*, tye about thy Leg,

" for thy Renown, this noble Garter; wear it as the Sym-
" bol of the moſt illuſtrious Order, never to be forgotten
" or laid aſide; that thereby thou may'ſt be admoniſhed
" to be couragious; and having undertaken a juſt War,
" into which only thou ſhalt be engaged, thou may'ſt
" ſtand Firm, valiantly Fight, and ſucceſsfully Conquer.

The Princely Garter being thus buckled on, and the Words of the Signification pronounced, the Elect Knight is brought before the Sovereign, who puts about his Neck the *George*, pendant at a Sky-colour'd Ribband, at which part of the Ceremony, the Admonition uſed at the adorning of an inſtalled Knight with the Collar of the Order, (only changing the Word Collar for Ribband) is pronounced; but were alter'd upon the Occaſion aſſign'd before.

" Wear this Ribband about thy Neck, adorn'd with
" the Image of the bleſſed Martyr, and Soldier of Chriſt,
" St. *George*; by whoſe Imitation provok'd, thou may'ſt
" ſo overpaſs both proſperous and adverſe Adventures,
" that having ſtoutly vanquiſhed thy Enemies, both of
" Body and Soul, thou may'ſt not only receive the Praiſe
" of this tranſient Combat, but be crown'd with the Palm
" of eternal Victory.

Greater Reſpect is conferr'd upon foreign Princes, who receive their Election here, than abroad; becauſe the Sovereign moſt uſually performs the Inveſtiture himſelf; as was ſolemniz'd upon *Philip*, King of *Caſtile*, when the Sovereign took the Garter from the King at Arms, and fixed it on his Leg, and Prince *Henry* faſten'd the Buckle.

Queen *Elizabeth* her ſelf buckled the Garter about the Leg of *John Caſimier*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, and hung about his Neck a Gold Chain with the *George* at it. And the like Honour did King *James* I. confer upon the Duke of *Holſtein*, in the 3d Year of his Reign.

Sometimes it happens, tho' very rarely, for the Sovereign, out of his ſpecial Grace and Favour, to condeſcend to Honour a Knight-Subject this way; tho', when Queen *Elizabeth* was pleaſed to adorn the Lord *Burleigh* with the Garter, the *Annals* record it to be done as it were *by the by*. The ſame Favours ſhe beſtow'd, tho' at different

times,

times, upon *Henry*, Earl of *Suſſex*, and the Earl of *Shrewſbury*. King *James* I. inveſted *Henry*, Earl of *Northampton*, with the principal Enſigns of the Order, as a Perſon worthy of ſo great an Honour: And the *Bleſſed Martyr* placed both the *Garter* and the *George*, with his own Hands, upon King *Charles* II.

Sometimes the Sovereign hath but performed part of the Inveſtiture, and laid his Commands on the ſenior Knight to do the reſt. Thus, *Anno* 13 *Henry* VIII. the Sovereign reached out the Garter to the Marquis of *Dorſet*, and commanded him to buckle it about the Leg of the Earl of *Devonſhire*; which, whilſt he was about, the Duke of *Norfolk* gave him his Aſſiſtance, and the Sovereign put on the Gold Chain. At the Inveſtiture of *Chriſtian*, Duke of *Brunſwick*, *Anno* 22 *Jac.* I. the Sovereign put about his Neck the Blue Ribband, whereat hung the Effigies of St. *George*; and the Earls, who introduc'd him to the Sovereign's Preſence, buckled on the Garter. Thus did the Sovereign to *William*, Earl of *Northampton*, *Anno* 4 *Car.* I. and the Earl of *Pembroke* faſten'd the Garter about his left Leg.

This Order of Inveſtiture began to be inverted *Anno* 22 *Jac.* I. the *George* and the Ribband being firſt put on, and the Garter laſt. And ſo was it performed when the Prince of *Denmark*, Dukes of *Monmouth*, *Cambridge*, and *Albemarle*, received their Inveſtiture in the Reign of King *Charles* II. The Garter, as it was the firſt, ſo is the principal and moſt worthy Enſign of the Order; and, in the Practice of all former Times, had always the Preference given to it. The Inveſtiture with theſe two Enſigns, hath generally been performed by the two ſenior Knights, at the Command of the Sovereign; but always in his Preſence, the Chapter ſitting; but if abſent, then by his Lieutenant. For, in 31 *Eliz.* the Lord *Buckhurſt* being elected at *Whitehall*, and coming to Court wholly ignorant of the Affair, and after the Sovereign was riſen, (yet leaving the Chapter ſitting) her Lieutenant inveſted him both with the *Garter* and *George*. After the Solemnity is compleated, the elect Knight renders moſt humble Thanks to the Sovereign, and with due Reſpects ſalutes the Knights-Companions, who re-ſalute the elect Knight, and joyfully receive him into their Society. If two or more elect Knights receive this Inveſtiture at one time,

as ſoon as the Senior is inveſted, and his humble Thanks preſented, he moves downwards towards the Chapter-Houſe Door, and there ſtands till the next Junior Knight is inveſted; and if there be more, ſo on until the Chapter break up.

§ 4. Where a Knight-Subject, at the time of his Election, is far diſtant from Court, or beyond Sea, and the Sovereign determines to ſend him the Two principal Enſigns of the Order, the Charge of this Employ does of right belong to the *Garter*. For the Proof of which there are divers Precedents.

The Letters heretofore ſent from the Sovereign, along with the Enſigns of the Order, to the elect Knights, have, for the moſt part, been drawn after the Form of thoſe that certify the Election, and differs only in the laſt Clauſe, which requires the elect Knight to repair to the Sovereign: The difference lay not in the Body, but in the Direction of the Letter, which was always worded according to the Quality of the Perſon to whom it was ſent. As to a Knight-Batchelor, the Direction was, *To our truſty and well-beloved*; and to an Earl, *Right truſty, and right well-beloved Couſin*; to a Duke, *Right truſty, and right entirely beloved Couſin*, &c.

The Forms of thoſe Letters, ſent upon like Occaſions to Knights-Subjects, when King *Charles* II. was beyond Sea, were penn'd after another Model, and contained other additional particular Clauſes; as, 1. Power to wear the *Star* of Silver about St. *George*'s Croſs; 2. The Great Collar of the Order; and, 3. To ſtyle themſelves *Knights, and Companions of the Order of the Garter*, in as ample a Manner, as if they had been inſtalled at *Windſor*; with an Aſſurance of receiving the whole Habit there, when the Sovereign was reſtored to the Poſſeſſion thereof.

And it appears from ſome of theſe Letters, that by reaſon Sir *Edward Walker*, Garter, was otherwiſe employ'd in the Service of the Sovereign, when they were tranſmitted, the Sovereign pitch'd upon other Perſons, to carry both the Letters and Enſigns of the Order, and yet continued the Garter in the Rights of his Office. However, Sir *Edward* eſteeming this devolving his Employment on others, as an Invaſion on the Rights of his Office; and having a juſt regard for the Intereſt of his Succeſſors,

no

no leſs than his own, humbly petitioned King *Charles* II. for Redreſs, and obtained his gracious Reference thereupon, to ſeveral *Knights* of the Order, to examine the Matter, and to give in their Report, what they found, and what they thought proper to be effected therein; and upon whoſe Report the Sovereign did him full Right by his gracious *Declaration*. For the Dukes of *Buckingham* and *Hamilton*, and the Marquis of *Newcaſtle*, to whom this Affair was referr'd, gave in their Report to the *King* at *Breda*, *May* 27. 1650.

We, George, *Duke of* Buckingham, William, *Duke of* Hamilton, *and* William, *Marquis of* Newcaſtle, *Knights of the moſt noble Order of the Garter, having read and conſider'd the within written Petition, do find the Allegations therein mentioned to agree with the Statutes and ancient Practices of the ſaid Order; and that Garter King of Arms, and his Deputies, ought to bear all Letters-Patents appertaining to the Brethren of the ſaid Order, and all Elections to the Knights elect. And we do therefore make this Report to your Majeſty, to the end you may be pleaſed to mantain the Petitioner in his juſt Rights; and that no Example lately made may be brought in Precedent againſt him, or his Succeſſors in the ſaid Office.*

G. Buckingham.
Hamilton.
W. Newcaſtle.

It was formerly the Practice, to ſend the Book of Statutes, under the common Seal of the Order, together with the Letters ſignifying an Election, and the Enſigns of the Order, no leſs to a Knight Subject than to a Stranger, that he might peruſe and adviſe thereupon, whether he would accept of the Election, or not; for ſo it appears, *Anno* 4 *Hen.* VI. by the Letters ſent to Sir *John Falſtoff*.

Within a few Days after Prince *Rupert* was elected into this Order, (being then in *Holland*) a Commiſſion of Legation was prepared to be ſent thither, with the *Garter* and *George*, by Sir *John Burrough*, Kt. to perform the Inveſtiture with them; but Sir *John* dying, prevented the Ceremony. Some time after the Prince had been in *England*, the then Sovereign thought fit to lay his Commands on Sir *James Palmer*, Chancellor of the Order, to attend his

his Highneſs, to declare the Reaſon why the ſaid Commiſſion was not ſent and executed, as was deſigned, as well as to deliver him the Commiſſion it ſelf; to the intent (being prevented of receiving his Inſtallation at *Windſor*, becauſe that Caſtle continued in the Poſſeſſion of the Rebels) it might remain with him as a Memorial of his Sovereign's Princely Favour, and Reſpect to his Quality and Merits, and for a farther Evidence of his being admitted into this moſt Noble Order, ſince there was no other Memorial thereof, but the Minutes of his Election, and this Commiſſion. And accordingly on *Monday*, the 14th of *January*, 1644. the Chancellor, accompanied with Dr. *Chriſtopher Wren*, Regiſter, and Sir *Edward Walker*, newly made Garter, attended the Prince at his Lodgings in *Oxford*; who, having notice of their Deſign, receiv'd them with all obliging Civility; and the Chancellor, in an eloquent Speech, made known to his Highneſs his Sovereign's Commands, and the Intent of his coming; which was no ſooner finiſhed, but Sir *James Palmer* preſented his Petition to the Prince, who gave his Majeſty many humble Thanks for this gracious Meſſage; and acknowledged his Majeſty's Favours beyond his Deſert; but promiſed he would ſtudy to be more worthy by his Actions, than in return of Words; with many Thanks to the Chancellor, and other Officers of the Order, for their Trouble: Whereupon they took their Leave, and the Chancellor went immediately to his Majeſty, and gave him a Narrative of what they had done.

§ V. It was an ancient Cuſtom, and part of the Ceremony belonging to the Inveſtiture with the Garter, to give him an Oath, whether he was a Stranger or a Subject-Knight, which we find ſtyled, *The Oath in ſuch Caſes accuſtomed to be taken*; and which was to this effect; *That the Knight ſhould well and faithfully keep and obſerve, ſo far as God ſhould enable him, all that was contained in the Statutes of the Order*: But this of late hath been diſuſed, and not impoſed, unleſs upon foreign Princes.

It is obſervable, that *Anno* 4 *Hen.* VI. a particular Commiſſion was iſſued, to the Earls of *Warwick*, *Saliſbury*, and *Suffolk*, with Power, to any Two, or One of them, to receive this Oath from Sir *John Falſtoff*, upon his Inveſtiture; which was beſides the Oath his Proctor

was

was afterwards to take at the Inſtallation, which Sir *John* empowered him to do on his behalf; which was, *Such Oath as ſhould be required at the time of Inſtallation.*

Altho' we have fully treated of the Ceremony and Manner of inveſting a Knight elect, with the *Garter* and *George*, we ſhall ſubjoin Two or Three conſiderable Inſtances, as moſt proper to this Place.

When *Philip*, Prince of *Spain*, *Anno* 1 *Mariæ*, had theſe Enſigns of the Order ſent him, the Sovereign joyn'd Garter King of Arms, with the Earl of *Arundel*, to perform the Inveſtiture; who, upon notice of his arrival on the Coaſt of *England*, ſet forward on their Journey to *Southampton*; where, on *Friday* the 20th of *July*, they took Water, and meeting the Prince before he landed, entered his Barge, and gave him notice of his Election in a ſhort Speech; which being ended, *Garter* having the Garter in his Hand, kiſſed it, and ſo preſented it to the Earl, who forthwith faſten'd it about the Prince's Leg; and after *Garter* had preſented the Earl with the *George*, hanging at a Chain of Gold, he put it likewiſe about the Prince's Neck. The Ceremony of Inveſtiture being thus performed, the Prince came on ſhore at *Southampton*; and on the uppermoſt Stair were ready attending his landing, the Marquis of *Wincheſter*, Lord High Treaſurer of *England*, with divers other Lords: The Prince gave the Lord *Williams* his White Staff, and made him Lord Chamberlain of his Houſhould; and Sir *Anthony Brown*, Maſter of his Horſe, preſented him, from the Queen, a Horſe with a Foot-cloth of Crimſon Velvet, richly embroider'd with Gold and Pearls, having the Bridle and all other Furniture ſuitable, whereon he rode to the Cathedral, and after Prayers to the Lodging prepared for him.

Concerning the *Garter*'s Inveſtiture of the Earl of *Warwick*, at *Newhaven* in *France*, the firſt of *May*, *Anno* 5 *Eliz.* is as follows: The *Garter* repairing firſt to the Earl's Lodgings, put on his Mantle in the next Chamber to the Earl's, and proceeded into the Earl's Chamber; where, having made Three Reverences, he buckled the Garter about his left Leg, and after put on the *George* and the Ribband about his Neck; reading to the Earl the Words of the Signification, appointed to be pronounced at the Inveſtiture; which being concluded, *Garter* retir'd into the Room

where

where he had put on his Mantle, and there disrobed himself, and so the Ceremony ended.

It was the Custom about these Times, for the Nobility, Allies, or Friends, to the elect Knight, to send him by the *Garter*, several *Garters* and *Georges*, as Marks of Congratulation for the Honour he was to receive, which the *Garter* delivered to him when the Investiture was finished, and he had put off his Robe, with the particular Services and Respects of those Friends who had bestow'd them. For thus was it with the Earl of *Warwick* at *Newhaven*, and the Lord *Scroop* at *Carlisle*, *Anno* 26 *Eliz.* At the *Garter*'s return to Court, he is obliged to deliver an Account to the Sovereign, how he hath discharged his Employment; and by special Directions from the elect Knight, who presents the highest Respects he can express, as well to the Sovereign as to the rest of the Knights-Companions, for honouring him with a Reception into so illustrious a Body.

We shall close this Section with a brief Account of the Investiture of the Duke of *Glouceſter*, on *Easter-day* in the Morning, being the 14th of *April*, 1653. In reference to which Ceremony there was provided:

1. A *Garter* with the Motto, to be tyed about his left Leg.
2. A *George* in a Ribband, to be put about his Neck.
3. An embroider'd *Cross* of St. *George*, with a *Garter* and *Star*, to be sew'd on the left Shoulder of the Duke's Cloak.
4. A Velvet Cushion, whereon the *Ensigns* and *Ornaments* of the Order were to be laid.

For the Honour of the Order, and his said Highness, Sir *Edward Walker*, Garter, humbly proposed, That he might be assisted by Two or Four Knights in performing his Duty.

That his Highness the Duke might receive the Ensigns of the Order, in the Presence-Chamber of the Princess Royal, or in his own, accompanied with the Queen of *Bohemia*, her Royal Highness, and some other Persons of Honour and Quality.

That his Highness having placed himself under the State, *Garter* should take the Cushion upon his Arms, on which were

were to be laid all the particular Ornaments juſt now mentioned; being aſſiſted with the Knights, and a Paſſage left for him to make his Three Obeyſances, he ſhould proceed up towards the Duke, and lay the Cuſhion with the Ornaments upon a Stool ſet near his Highneſs for that purpoſe.

That he ſhould ſignifie to his Higneſs, in few Words, the Cauſe of his coming, and then deliver into his Hands the Sovereign's Letter.

That his Highneſs having receiv'd it, ſhould break it open, and deliver it back to the *Garter* to be read; which he having done, ſhould return it to his Highneſs.

That, after this, he ſhould proceed to the Inveſtiture of his Highneſs with the Enſigns of the Order.

Which being done, he briefly repreſented unto his Highneſs, in a Speech, ſomewhat of the Quality and Splendor of the Order.

And, laſtly, to kiſs his Highneſs Hand, and ſo depart. And according to thoſe Propoſals, and in the ſame Order, were all Things performed.

§ 6. The Sovereign of this moſt Noble Order defrays the Charges of the *Garter*, whenſoever, and as often as he is diſpatch'd to any elect Knight-Subject, either with Letters to ſignifie his Election, or to inveſt him with the *Garter* and *George*; and this is commonly proportioned according to the length or the ſhortneſs of the Journey. The Allowance for the Journey which Sir *Gilbert Dithick*, Garter, made into the Counties of *Lincoln* and *Cumberland*, firſt to the Earl of *Rutland*, and then to the Lord *Scroop*, when Queen *Elizabeth* was Sovereign, appears to have been 20 *l.*

Beſides the Sovereign's Allowance to the *Garter*, he receives honourable Gratuities and Rewards from the elect Knight himſelf, after he has performed the Inveſtiture; and theſe have uſually been proportioned, according to the eſtimate of the Honour he receives, and the particular affection he has for the Garter, and the ſervice done by him. Among whom, *Anno* 17 *Henry* VIII. we find the Earl of *Arundel* beſtow'd on *Thomas Wriotheſley*, Garter, ten Pounds in Angelots, being then at his Mannor of *Dawnley*; and *Ralph* Earl of *Weſtmoreland*, elected at the ſame Time with the aforeſaid Earl, being at *Mile-end*, gave

gave to him ſix Pounds thirteen Shillings and four Pence. The Earl of *Northumberland*, in the 23 of *Henry* VIII. beſtow'd on the Garter, for the verbal certifying him of his Election, four Pounds, though he went no farther than the Chapter-Houſe Door.

Laſtly, *Anno* 26 *Elizabeth*, the Earl of *Rutland* honourably received the Garter at *Newark*, and the Lord *Scroop* gave him thirty Pounds in Gold, a Velvet Cloak, and a *Gallaway Nag*, and to *William Dethick*, *York Herald*, who accompanied Garter to *Carliſle*, ten Pounds.

But ſince theſe Times, the Knights elect have enlarged their gratuities to Garter, for his Service upon this Occaſion.

CAP. XI.

Of Preparations for the Perſonal Inſtallation of a Knight.

§ 1. THE Inauguration of a Knight of this moſt Noble Order, conſiſts in a Conjunction of many Ceremonies, and contains the moſt ſolemn part of thoſe, which compleateth all the reſt; and till this great Solemnity be regularly and duly performed, the Perſon elected hath not the Honour to be enrolled among the Number of Founders, but barely paſſes for an elect Knight, and no other: For the Statute expreſly ſays, That in Caſe a Knight elect die before his Inſtallation, He ſhall not be named one of the Founders; and the reaſon aſſigned for it is, becauſe he hath not had the full Poſſeſſion of his Eſtate, and in this Point do the other Bodies of the Statutes agree. But when the Ceremonies of Inſtallation are compleatly finiſhed, without all doubt the Knight is amply veſted, in Poſſeſſion of all Honours and Privileges appertaining to the Founder of this moſt Noble Order. But to ſpur up each elect Knight, who is either a Subject to his Sovereign, or reſides within the Realm, (and conſequently is better able to provide for Inſtallment, than one remaining

ing in Foreign Parts,) for the completion of his Honour, or elſe to wave the Act of Election, he has the ſpace of one Year allowed him by the Statutes for Inſtallation, otherwiſe his Election is ordained to be abſolutely null and void: Nor can there be any Motive ſufficient to retard the Sovereign from proceeding to a new Election, unleſs the elect Knight ſend or produce an Extenuation or Excuſe for ſuch his delay, fit to be excepted by the Sovereign or his Deputy, and the whole of that reſplendent Body, or that the Sovereign himſelf think fit to defer the Ceremony of Inſtallation for ſome time longer. For which reaſon, when certain Articles, tending to the Honour of the Order, had been prepared by the Sovereign's Lieutenant and ten Knights-Companions, in a Chapter held the 24th of *April*, *Anno* 21 *Jacobus* I. ratified by the Sovereign, and ordered to be obſerved; one of them was for accelerating the Inſtallation, after the Knight had been elected, yet qualified with this Exception: *Unleſs for ſome ſpecial Cauſe the Sovereign ſhou'd think fit to defer the ſame until the Eve or Day of St.* George *next following, the Time of Election.*

§ 2. The Feaſt of Inſtallation hath not been hitherto aſſigned to any certain Period of Time, but has always depended upon the Will and Pleaſure of the Sovereign, to affix a convenient Day, which hath been granted upon the requeſt of the Knights elect, or ſome other of the Knights-Companions, whoſe Favour and Eſteem with the Sovereign was beſt able to prevail; ſuch a one do we find *Anno* 35 *Elizabeth*; who, on the behalf of the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, obtained the 19th of *June* the ſaid Year, to be appointed for the Inſtallation. It ſometimes happens, that though the Day of Inſtallation be prefixed, yet ſomething extraordinary intervening, it hath been prorogued to a farther and more convenient Seaſon for the Sovereign's Affairs. And the moſt remarkable Inſtance is ſet down, *Anno* 3 and 4 *Philip* and *Mary*, when the Earl of *Suſſex*, the Lord *Grey*, and Sir *Robert Rocheſter*, Knights elect, had their Inſtallation, together with the Feaſt of St. *George*, prorogued to the 10th of *May* in the Year aforeſaid. But many urgent Affairs, relating both to the King and the Queen, fell out about that time; not only the Grand Feaſt, but the Solemnity of their Inſtallation

lation were prorogued to the 5th of *December*, and ſtood ſo by ſeveral Prorogations, to the 20th of *February* next enſuing; yet it was ordered that the Earl of *Suſſex* ſhou'd be immediately inſtalled, which was performed on the 8th of *January*, and the Lord *Grey* the 20th of *April* following; but Sir *Robert Rocheſter* never obtained that Honour.

Though the time of Inſtallation be arbitrary and uncertain, yet hath the Place, from the firſt Inſtitution of the Order, been appointed only to the Sovereign's Free Chapel of St. *George*, within whoſe Choice are erected the Sovereigns and Knights-Companions Stalls, and under its ſacred Roof their Banners and Atchievements are affixed, as Monuments of their high Merit, and ſo great Honour. For though the Celebration of the Grand Feaſt of St. *George*, happened to be removed from *Windſor*, by a Decree of the 1 *Elizabeth*; yet the Feaſt of the Inſtallation was excepted, and ordered to be Solemniz'd in that Place: For *Anno* 21 *Jac.* I. it was provided among the Orders, *That after an Election made of a Knight of the Order, his Inſtallation ſhou'd be performed at* Windſor, *according to the ancient Cuſtoms and Statutes of the Order.* When the Sovereign hath been pleaſed to prefix a certain Day for this Solemnity of Inſtallation, there are ſeveral things to be obtained, previous to it. (1.) A Commiſſion to admit and inſtal the elect Knight. (2.) Letters to each of the Commiſſioners, and the elect Knight, to repair to *Windſor*. (3.) Warrants for the Sovereign's Livery. (4.) A Bill or Warrant for the removal of Stalls and Atchievements, all ſigned by the Chancellor of the Order, with the Sign Manual of the Sovereign: And laſtly, the Knights own Preparations; among which his Atchievements are to be ready to be hung up, as ſoon as he is inſtalled.

§ 3. No elect Knight can be inſtalled, unleſs by the Sovereign of the Order himſelf, or by his Commiſſion drawn up in Writing, and paſſed under the Great-Seal of the Order, directed either to his Lieutenant or Knights-Commiſſioners. There is but one Inſtance to be found, where the Sovereign hath been pleaſed to Honour a Knight by inſtalling of him himſelf; and that was *Philip* of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, *Anno* 22 *Henry* VII. yet it is feaſible enough that *Sigiſmond* the Emperor, and ſome other Foreign

reign Princes of Rank and Eminence, might be installed by other Sovereigns, though there's no Memorial left upon Record. *In reference to Installation by Commission, it was ordained by the Statutes of Institution; That in Case the Sovereign shou'd be absent out of the Kingdom, at the Time of Installation of any of the Knights, so as he could not personally perform those things his Office obliged him to, it shou'd be Lawful for him to Constitute, as his Deputy in this Affair, whomsoever of the Society he shou'd think fit; and he to have Power and Authority, in the Sovereign's Name, to Perform and Execute these Things, which it wou'd have been in his own part to have done, had he been Present.* By Virtue of this Article, the Sovereign's Deputy, or Lieutenant, performed the Ceremony before the Reign of King *Henry* VIII. which was usually done at the Feast of St. *George*; but in the Commission given out for Installation, formerly the Lieutenant was first mentioned, and the Knights-Companions appointed for his Assistance at the said Feast, were joined with him in the Commission for Installation; but of late, the Commission hath passed to the Lieutenant alone. King *Henry* VIII. by his Statutes, enlarged the Power of his Deputy, and they run to two or more of the Knights-Companions, that shou'd Exercise the same by the Sovereign's Letters of Commission. And by the Privilege of this Article, whensoever after, the Sovereign's did Constitute an Installation, otherwise than at the Feast of St. *George*, they then delegated their Authority to such of the Knights-Companions as were judged most proper to perform this Ceremony. The Year after the enacting this Statute, there's a Commission recorded to be issued out to the Marquis of *Dorset*, and the Earls of *Devonshire* and *Kent*, to Instal the Lords *Ferrers* of *Chartley*, the substance of which is in our Annals. The particular Powers these Commissions have granted to them, are to accept and admit the Knight into the Order, to receive the Oath, and to Instal him; And their general Power is, to effect and accomplish every Point which belongs to his due Admittance, and plenary Instalment.

§ 4. Besides, the Commission impowering the Sovereign's Lieutenant, or Knights-Commissioners, therein nominated to the Installation of an elect Knight, it hath been a matter frequent with the Sovereign, to Issue out

Letters of Summons under his privy Signet, both to the Commiſſioners for Inſtallation, and elect Knights, under the Signet of the Order; thoſe to the Commiſſioners are directed ſeverally to each, nominated in the Commiſſion; who are to give them notice of the Inſtalment, and to require their repair to *Windſor*, againſt the Day aſſigned, that they may proceed to their Inſtallation. Thoſe directed to the elect Knights, paſs likewiſe under the Sovereign's Sign Manual, and Signet of the Order; and if there be two or more Knights appointed to be Inſtalled on the ſame Day, the like Letter is ſent to each of them, the difference being only in the Direction.

Beſides theſe Letters ſent from the Sovereign, the Chancellor (if the Sovereign be abſent,) in his circular Letter to the Knights-Companions, gives them an intimation of the deſigned Inſtallation, upon the Feaſt of St. *George*. And if the Feaſt be held either by the Sovereign or his Lieutenant, he diſpatcheth a Letter to the Prelate of the Order, intimating the Sovereign's Commands for his attendance at the Day appointed; and if it be performed by Commiſſioners, he iſſues his Letters to the three inferior Officers of the Order, purporting the ſame Command; the conveyance of which appertains to the Garter, and are left to his Care, and Truſt, by the Conſtitutions relating to the Order, whoſe allowances and rewards upon theſe and ſuch like Services, in their due Place, ſhall be conſidered.

§ 5. The third matter to be obtained by the Chancellor of the Order, is the Sovereign's Warrant, directed for the Maſter of the Great Wardrobe, for the Time being, to deliver ſo much Velvet for the Livery of the Order, as will make the Knight elect a Surcoat and Hood, and as much Sarcenet or Taffety as will ſerve to line them: Of ſuch a Warrant there is an ancient Precedent in Latin, entered in the Black Book of the Order; where it runs, *Nos ideo volumus & præcipimus, ut hinc Tabellioni virgas Octodecem ſubrubri oſtri de more tradas, cum tanto albo ſerico, quanto veſtimentum inde conficiendum infulciri poterit, pro liverata (quam vocant) ſua, &c.* There is likewiſe inſerted another Precedent in Engliſh of the like Nature, for the delivery of theſe Materials to Sir *John Wallop* Kt. elected

Anno

Anno 38 *Henry* VIII. and in the ſame Form run all the Warrants of Queen *Mary* and Queen *Elizabeth*.

Over and above theſe, there is a Warrant and Scheme prepared for the Sovereign to Sign, wherein is deſcribed the Order of the Stalls of *Windſor*, as he wou'd have them ſtand at the enſuing Election; by the Virtue of which, the Garter is impowered to ſhift or remove the Plates and Atchievements of the preſent Knights-Companions, ſo that room may be made for the elect Knight, or Knights, and to fix the new Plates and Atchievements within, and over the Stalls, in ſuch order as they are rank'd in the Scheme. As ſoon as the Sovereign's Pleaſure is known concerning an Inſtallation, Garter brings to the Chancellor of the Order, the Names of the preſent Knights-Companions, placed in the order they then ſit in their Stalls, to the intent he may preſent them to the Sovereign; who, upon obſerving the ſeries wherein they ſtand already, he may eaſier determine how to alter and place both them, and the new elect Knights. *Anno* 27 *Elizabeth*, the Office of the Garter being vacant, this employ was put upon the Clarenceux, and the Sovereign's Warrant for removal and placing of Plates and Atchievements, was delivered to him, five Days before the Inſtallation of the Earl of *Rutland*, the Lords *Cobham* and *Scroop*, who thereupon fixed them according to the direction given; upon what Ground this alteration and removal came to be made, and continues ſtill in Vogue, though it was otherwiſe at the Inſtitution of the Order, wherein we muſt have recourſe to the Statutes, and the antique Practice grounded upon them: Among the Statutes, thoſe of the Inſtitution did ordain, That if any Earl, Baron, or Knight-Batcheſſor, ſhou'd depart this Life, he that ſucceeded in his Place, of what Condition or State ſoever, ſhou'd poſſeſs the ſame Stall which his Predeceſſor held before, without changing: So that it might happen for an Earl, or a Duke, to ſucceed a Knight, and, *vice verſa*, it was thus at firſt conſtituted by *Edward* III. *that it might be known who were the firſt Founders of this moſt Noble Order.*

Now how punctually this Article of the Statutes hath been obſerved, that none Choſen along time after the Inſtitution of the Order, ſhou'd interrupt or change this courſe, we ſhall demonſtrate, conceiving it very material to eye thoſe Tables, yet preſerved in the Chapter-Houſe

in *Windſor*, wherein are collected the Names of all thoſe Knights-Companions who ſucceeded one another in each Stall, until the beginning of *Henry* VII's Reign.

From which Series of Succeſſion, we ſhall remark how exactly the Law in this Point hath been obſerved, even to King *Henry* VIII's Reign, when it received ſome alteration in this Point. For we find in the Annals ſeveral Knights deſigned for the Stall of their immediate Predeceſſors, by the Honour only of Election, although prevented of Inſtallation by Death, or other accidents; and the Statutes do not only bind him who ſhall chance to attain the Honour of Inſtallation, *but him who ſhall ſucceed or come after the Defunct Knight.* Firſt therefore we ſhall Inſtance in Foreign Kings, among whom we find *Ericus* King of *Denmark*, to have received *Inſtallation* in *Henry* V's Reign, not according to the State and Dignity of a King, but into the Stall of that Knight-Companion whom he ſucceeded, *viz.* the Duke of *Bavaria*. *John* the firſt King of *Portugal*, a Knight and Companion, likewiſe in *Henry* V's Time, was inſtalled in the ſecond Stall on the Sovereign's Side, which belong'd to *Henry* Duke of *Lancaſter*, his firſt Predeceſſor: And to this King did ſucceed, in the ſame Stall, his Son *Edward* King of *Portugal*, *Anno* 13 *Henry* VI. to whoſe Succeſſor *Humphry*, *Anno* 34, and *Caſimir* King of *Poland* were elected, *Anno* 28 *Henry* VI. into the ſixth Stall on the Prince's ſide, at that Time vacant by the Death of the Duke *Conimbero*, whoſe firſt Founder was Sir *John Mohun*. *Alphonſus* King of *Arragon* and *Naples*, *Anno* 38 *Henry* VI. was elected into the Stall of *Don Altro Vaſques Dalmedea Count d'Averence*, being the ſeventh on the Sovereign's ſide, Sir *Hugh Courtney* firſt poſſeſſing it. *Ferdinand* King of *Naples* and *Sicily*, elected *Anno* 3 *Edward* IV. was inſtalled on the third on the Prince's ſide, *Ralph* Earl of *Stafford* having been firſt inſtalled therein. And laſtly, we find *Alphonſus* King of *Sicily* and *Jeruſalem*, being elected by *Henry* VII. received his Inſtallation on the Prince's ſide, whoſe Predeceſſor was *Thomas Beauchamp* Earl of *Warwick*.

In the ſecond Place, if we deſcend to Foreign Princes, it is remarkable, that *William* Duke of *Gueldres*, elected by *Richard* II. was inſtalled in that which Sir *John Beauchamp* poſſeſſed, and *William* Earl of *Holland*, *Haynalt*, and

and *Zealand*, in that which appertained to Sir *John Chandos*. *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy*, in the Time of *Henry* V. into the Stall of Sir *John Clifford*. And *Anno* 28 *Henry* VI. *Henry* Duke of *Brunſwick* was elected into the Duke of *Suffolk*'s Stall.

And as the Statute was carefully obſerved, with reference to the Election and Inſtallation of Foreign Princes, ſo no leſs in relation to the Princes of the Blood at Home; among whom let us obſerve, in the third Place, the ranking the Sons of the Founder of this moſt Noble Order; where we ſee *Lyonel* Duke of *Clarence* his third Son, to have been inſtalled in the ſixth Stall on the Sovereign's ſide, whoſe immediate Predeceſſor was Sir *John Beauchamp*: In like manner *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaſter*, his fourth Son was inſtalled in the ſeventh Stall on the Prince's ſide, having Sir *Thomas Holland* for his Predeceſſor and a Founder: His fifth Son *Edmund Langley*, Duke of *York*, poſſeſs'd the Stall Sir *Hugh Courtney* did before: And the ſixth Son, *Thomas Woodſtock*, Duke of *Glouceſter*, enjoy'd the Stall Sir *John Grey* did before: This Rule was likewiſe obſerved ſtrictly in relation to the Sons of King *Henry* VII.

If we review the aforeſaid Tables, we ſhall find, that as the Knights-Companions of higher Dignity aſſumed the Stalls, (when they became vacant) though often of the lower ſort, ſo ſome of the inferior rank among them have had the Honour to be inſtalled in Seats of a ſuperior Claſs, and this by the virtue and due of the Law.

Amongſt theſe Knights-Companions we ſhall enumerate Sir *Philip la Vache*, a *Gaſcon*, who, in the Reign of King *Richard* II. was firſt inſtalled in the Prince's Stall, (being vacant by the Death of *John* of *Gaunt*,) though afterwards removed to the third Stall on the Sovereign's ſide. Sir *Nicholas Sarnesfield*, Standard-bearer to the Founder, who ſucceeded *Hugh* Earl of *Stafford*, and after him Sir *William Arundel*, immediate Succeſſor to Sir *Nicholas*, were both inſtalled in the ſecond Stall on the Sovereign's ſide: As likewiſe Sir *John Robſart*, Sir *Gilbert Talbot*, and Sir *John Grey*, *&c.* were inſtalled in the ſecond or third Stalls on the Sovereign's ſide.

These Instances already asserted, are sufficient to manifest the Usage and Practice, how the Knights-Companions have succeeded in the Stalls of their immediate Predecessors, down to the Reign of *Henry* VIII. and was consonant and agreeable to the ancient Law of the Order.

But we are to observe, that tho' each Knight was, by the before-mentioned Article, constituted to succeed his immediate Predecessor, in the Stall void by his Death, yet there's an exception as to that of the Prince of *Wales*. This Stall is the first on the left Hand, at the entrance into the Choir of St. *George*'s *Chappel* at *Windsor*, and wherein *Edward* the Black Prince was installed; from this Stall does the whole range of Stalls on the same side take their Denomination, and to which the Prince of *Wales*, as soon as he is elected into the Order, hath a due Title. Though this Stall *de Jure* appertains to that Prince, yet heretofore, when the Sovereign had no Heir, then was it for the present disposed to some other Knight, otherwise a defect in the full Number of Knights-Companions would have ensued.

The first that obtained that Honour, (besides the Prince of *Wales*,) was *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*, decreed him by K. *Richard* II. who never had Issue, and removed from the seventh Stall thither. But the first Companion that happened to be installed in it, was Sir *Philip la Vache* just mentioned, which was a great Honour done to one of his Rank: But it fell to him by the then Law of the Order, being elected into the Room of the said Duke, who died possessed of it. But King *Henry* IV. coming to the Crown, and his eldest Son being created Prince of *Wales*, laid claim to the Stall by Virtue of that Statute, and had it assigned to him. Nevertheless, that the former Possessor might suffer as little diminution as might be in the Honour of his Session, he was removed no lower than to the Stall which King *Henry* IV. lately held, when he was Earl of *Derby*.

Upon the Death of *Henry* IV. *Henry* V. being Sovereign, Sir *John Dabrichcourt* supplyed the vacancy, and was installed therein; and he dying in the fifth Year of that King possess'd thereof, his Plate continues in that Stall to this Day, and the Emperor *Sigismond* succeeds Sir *John Dabrichcourt* in the Prince's Stall.

Some

Some few Years before King *Henry* VI. died, he had a Son Born; and though the Emperor *Frederick* was elected into the Order, *Anno* 35 *Henry* VI. yet was that Stall reſerved for the Prince, (though he never poſſeſs'd it) and the Emperor 37 *Henry* VI. was inſtalled by Proxy in the Duke of *Somerſet*'s Stall, then lately deceaſed.

In *Edward* IV's Reign, the right of this Stall returned again to *Edward* his Son, the Prince of *Wales*, and in *Henry* VII's, to Prince *Arthur*, but upon his Death, to *Maximilian*, Son of *Frederick* King of the *Romans*, and after Emperor, enjoyed it. So did the Emperor *Charles* V. (his Grandchild,) in regard there was no Son as yet Born to the Sovereign.

But Prince *Edward* being Born, while the Stall was poſſeſſed by *Charles* V. it chanc'd likewiſe that the King of the *Scots* died, which caus'd King *Henry* VIII. to reſerve his Stall for that Prince, although he never had Poſſeſſion of it, or was elected into the Order, though we find him once regiſtred in a Scrutiny. King *Henry* VIII. dying, Prince *Edward* became, both by Inheritance and Succeſſion, Sovereign of this moſt Noble Order.

From this Time, to the eighth Year of King *James* I. there was no Prince of *Wales*, who finding the Prince's Stall vacant, at his entrance upon the Engliſh Throne, did in a Chapter in the firſt Year of his Reign, advance the French King *Henry* IV. from the ſecond Stall on the Sovereign's ſide, into it; and appointed Prince *Henry* to be inſtalled in that King's void Seat, where he continued till *Anno* 3 *Jac.* I. that *Chriſtierne* IV. King of *Denmark*, came to be inſtalled by Proxy, and the Prince was moved lower to make way for him, though he was Senior both by Election and Inſtallation. *Anno* 9 *Jac.* I. upon the Death of the French King, not the Prince, whoſe Right it was, ſince he was created Prince of *Wales*, but the ſaid King of *Denmark*, was tranſlated to the vacant Stall; and hereupon Prince *Henry* was returned again to the ſecond Stall on the Sovereign's ſide, which he enjoyed as long as he ſurvived, and upon his Death, Prince *Charles* was removed into it, and there remained all King *James*'s Reign.

When King *Charles* II. came to be inſtalled, the Sovereign finding him prevented from aſſuming the Prince's Stall, the King of *Denmark* being yet alive, aſſigned to

him the ſecond Stall on the Sovereign's ſide, (wherein himſelf ſat whilſt Prince of *Wales*,) and where hitherto his Plate remains as a fixed Memorial of his Inſtallation therein.

Although it has been made apparent, that the *Knights-Companions*, at their Election or Inſtallation, ſucceeded the immediate *defunct Knight* in his Stall, yet we may obſerve, that ſometimes after Inſtallation, as an eſpecial ſignal of Favour and Indulgence, the Sovereign hath been pleaſed, though very rarely, to advance a *Knight-Companion* to a higher Stall than that wherein he was firſt placed; and though there be no ſuch Permiſſion granted by the Law of the Order, yet we find *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaſter*, removed from the ſeventh Stall on the Prince's ſide, to the Prince's Stall it ſelf, and it's ſaid to be done by the Decree of the Sovereign and the *Knights-Companions*. And no doubt but as this was done by ſo good Authority, and ſo upon no leſs enducements to the Sovereign, and the whole Society. We ſhall here mention a few of theſe extraordinary Caſes. *William Henalt*, Earl of *Oſtervant*, was advanced by King *Richard* II. from the eleventh Stall on the Sovereign's ſide, to the Duke of *Britain*'s, being the ſecond on the Prince's ſide. *Humphry* Duke of *Glouceſter*, in the Reign of King *Henry* VI. was removed from the eleventh Stall on the Sovereign's ſide, to the ſecond on the ſame ſide; and *Richard Nevil*, Earl of *Warwick*, by the Conſent of the *Knights-Companions* in Chapter, *Anno* 39 *Henry* VI. was tranſlated to the Duke of *Buckingham*'s Stall; the Lord *Bonvil*, to the Lord *Scales*'s Seat; Sir *Thomas Kyriell*, to the Place of the Earl of *Shrewsbury*; and the Lord *Wenlock*, to the Stall of Viſcount *Beaumont*. But King *Henry* VIII. thinking it requiſite for the Sovereign of this moſt Noble Order, to be impowered by a General, how to Act that at Pleaſure, which the former Sovereigns did not, but by the Power of particular Acts, or Orders, in the Chapter; after he had confirmed the ancient Law of ſucceeding in the Stall of the immediate Predeceſſor, and not to ſuffer an alteration without the Sovereign's Licence, in the next Article he eſtabliſhed this Privilege upon Himſelf and Succeſſors: *That if there were any Place or Stall void, the Sovereign, at his own Pleaſure, might Advance and Tranſlate any Knight*

of

of the Society into the void Stall, ſo that it were higher than that, wherein he ſate before.

This in Effect did vacat the ancient Law of ſucceeding in Stall's, though at the ſame Time he ſeem'd to Confirm it to the *Knights-Subjects*, for afterwards Tranſlations preceeding to Inſtallations, became ſo frequent, that the Right an *elect Knight* had to his Predeceſſor's Stall, was ſeldom enjoyed. However, hereby he confirmed a Power to gratify ſuch of the *Knights-Companions*, as he ſhou'd think fit to advance, without having recourſe to a Chapter; and from hence began the Cuſtom to Iſſue out Warrants, under the Sovereign's *Sign Manual*, for the Tranſlation of Stalls, and conſequently the alteration and removal of ſuch of the *Knights-Companions Helms*, *Creſts*, *Banners*, and *Plates*, who ſhou'd receive a higher Exaltation.

Beſides the Power eſtabliſhed upon the Sovereigns of this moſt Noble Order, of tranſlating Stalls, when a vacancy happened, they farther added this larger Prerogative: That the Sovereign, once in his Life, might, if it pleaſed him, make a general Tranſlation of all the Stalls at his Pleaſure, except of Emperors, Kings, Princes, and Dukes, who ſhou'd keep their Stalls and Places, unleſs advanced to a higher Room and Stall. In which Tranſlation, the long continuance in the Order, and the Praiſes, Worthineſs, and Merits of the *Knights-Companions*, were to be conſidered and remembred.

But this Branch of the Sovereign's Prerogative, as far as we can find, was never put in Execution, though the Tranſlation, *Anno* 27 *Henry* VIII. border'd ſomething upon it, perhaps leſt it might raiſe too great Feuds among the *Knights-Subjects*; foraſmuch as that of tranſlating only, (when there happened a vacancy,) begot great Emulations, which at length introduced a Change, to which we ſhall paſs, after we have taken notice of a Clauſe added in the twenty ſecond Article of King *Henry* VIII's Statutes, relating to Princes.

It is obſervable the ancient Law of ſucceeding in Stalls, in relation to them, was wholly altered. For King *Henry* VIII. upon the Eſtabliſhment of his Body of Statutes, not only appointed thoſe Strangers, then preſent of the Order, to be ſeated next himſelf; but that all Emperors, Kings, and Princes, ſhould hold their Stalls after their Eſtates, and the very next unto the Sovereign, tho'

Knights-

Knights-Subjects, upon vacancy, become removable at Pleaſure.

For this reaſon, the Emperor *Maximilian* II. and after him *Rudolph* II. his Son, had the Prince's Stalls aſſigned them after their Election into the Order; and ſeveral of the Kings of *France* were placed in the next below, being the ſecond on the Sovereign's ſide. And when there chanced to be more than one King at a time in the Order, the ſecond Stall on the Prince's ſide was aſſigned him; for Precedency was meaſured now by Dignity and State, and not by the Antiquity of the Order; As appears from the King of *Bohemia*, *Anno* 19 *Henry* VIII. and the King of *Spain*, *Anno* 8 *Elizabeth*, Princes Strangers, according to their regality, and illuſtrious extraction, had their Scituation next to Kings, as is manifeſt from the Dukes of *Savoy*, *Montmorency*, and *Holſtein*, *Anno* 3 *Elizabeth*, and *Frederick* Prince *Palatine*, and *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, *Anno* 11 *Jac.* I.

But notwithſtanding theſe Aſſignments of Stalls to Strangers, they were nevertheleſs ſubject to removal, ſometimes to Stalls higher than their own, upon the Death of a Stranger, who died poſſeſſed of a ſuperior one; and ſometimes again to others lower, for the advancing a Knight of greater Degree and Diſtinction, where the upper Stalls were already ſupplied; elſe they could not be ſo ranked, according to their reſpective Quality, as the Statutes enjoyn; nor indeed wou'd any Stranger King have accepted of an Election, unleſs he was placed in a diſtinguiſhable Stall, ſuitable to his Dignity. *Ferdinand*, Emperor of *Germany*, is an inſtance of Advancement in tranſlation of Stalls; for after the Death of the Emperor *Charles* V. his Brother, he was advanced from the ſecond Stall on the Prince's ſide, into the Prince's Stall. And *Henry* IV. of *France*, from the ſecond on the Sovereign's ſide, to the Prince's Stall, and *Chriſtierne* IV. King of *Denmark*, *Anno* 9 *Jac.* I.

Among Princes Strangers, we find *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, advanced from the third on the Prince's ſide, to the ſecond on the ſame ſide, *Anno* 2 *Elizabeth*; and *Frederick* Prince Palatine, *Anno* 1 *Charles* I. was advanced from the ſecond of the Prince's, to the ſecond on the ſide of the Sovereign; likewiſe *Henry Frederick*, Prince of *Orange*, was advanced from the third of the Sovereign's, to the

ſecond

ſeeond of the Prince's, upon the Death of the King of *Sweden*, *Anno* 10 *Charles* I.

When the *French* King *Charles* IX. was elected, *Anno* 6 *Elizabeth*, the ſuperior Stalls were already filled with Strangers, and there was no Expedient left to give him the Stall the Sovereign deſign'd him, but by the removal of ſome of thoſe *Knights-Strangers* lower; and upon this, *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy* was diſplaced to the third on the Sovereign's ſide.

But the *French* King was not inſtalled, until the 16th of *January*, *Anno* 8 *Elizabeth*, and before that it was concluded to remove the King of *Spain* to the Duke of *Savoy*'s Stall, as void before, and to inſtal the *French* King in the King of *Spain*'s, which was accordingly done; ſo that upon this occaſion, there were four Strangers, and five *Knights-Subjects*, removed lower, to make way for the *French* King.

The 20th of *April*, *Anno* 2 *Jac.* I. The Duke of *Wirtemberg* was inſtalled in the third Stall on the Prince's ſide, and the Year following advanced to a higher.

The 26th of *May* enſuing, *Ulerick* Duke *Holſt*, had aſſigned unto him that Stall from which the Duke of *Wirtemberg* was advanced: But againſt the Inſtallation of *Chriſtierne*, the fourth King of *Denmark*, the Duke was removed back to his Seat, wherein he was inſtalled, and the Duke advanced into the vacant one. All which will appear more conſpicuous, from the appointment of Stalls on theſe Occaſions, which follow.

A remove of *Banners* and *Plates*, at the Inſtallation of *Frederick* Duke of *Wirtemberg*, *Anno Jac.* I. *Reg.* 2.

JAMES Rex.

1. *The Sovereign*	1. *The* French *King*
2. *The Prince*	2. *Void*
3. *Earl of* Nottingham	3. *Duke of* Wirtemberg
4. *Earl of* Ormond	4. *Earl of* Dorſet
5. *Earl of* Shrewsbury	5. *Earl of* Cumberland
6. *Earl of* Northumber.	6. *Earl of* Worceſter
7. *Lord* Sheffeild	7. *Earl of* Suffolk
8. *Earl of* Devonſhire	8. *Sir* Henry Lea

9. *Earl*

9. *Earl of* Suſſex	9. *Lord* Scroop
10. *Earl of* Derby	10. *Lord* Burleigh
11. *Duke of* Lenox	11. *Earl of* Southampton
12. *Earl of* Marr	12. *Earl of* Pembrook
13. *Void*	13. *Void*

The Order of Stalls at the Feaſt of St. *George*, *Anno Jac.* I. *Reg.* 3.

JAMES Rex.

1. *The Sovereign*	1. *The* French *King*
2. *The Prince*	2. *Void*
3. *Duke of* Wirtemberg	3. *Earl of* Nottingham
4. *Earl of* Ormond	4. *Earl of* Dorſet
5. *Earl of* Shrewsbury	5. *Earl of* Cumberland
6. *Earl of* Northumber.	6. *Earl of* Worceſter
7. *Lord* Sheffeild	7. *Earl of* Suffolk
8. *Earl of* Devonſhire	8. *Sir* Henry Lea
9. *Earl of* Suſſex	9. *Lord* Scroop
10. *Earl of* Derby	10. *Lord* Burleigh
11. *Duke of* Lenox	11. *Earl of* Southampton
12. *Earl of* Marr	12. *Earl of* Pembrook
13. *Void*	13. *Void*

A remove of *Banners* and *Plates*, at the Inſtallation of *Chriſtian* IV. King of *Denmark*, the 8th of *September*, *Anno Jac.* I. *Reg.* 3.

JAMES Rex.

1. *The Sovereign*	1. *The* French *King*
2. *The King of* Denmark	2. *The Prince*
3. *Duke of* Holſt	3. *Duke of* Wirtemberg
4. *Earl of* Nottingham	4. *Earl of* Ormond
5. *Earl of* Dorſet	5. *Earl of* Shrewsbury
6. *Earl of* Cumberland	6. *Earl of* Northumber.
7. *Earl of* Worceſter	7. *Lord* Sheffeild
8. *Earl of* Suffolk	8. *Earl of* Devonſhire
9. *Sir* Henry Lea	9. *Earl of* Suſſex

10. *Lord*

10. *Lord* Scroop	10. *Earl of* Derby
11. *Earl of* Exeter	11. *Duke of* Lenox
12. *Earl of* Southampton	12. *Earl of* Marr
13. *Earl of* Pembrook	13. *Earl of* Northampton

In this laſt Scheme, we find Prince *Henry* removed from the ſecond on the Sovereign's, to the ſecond on the Prince's ſide, to make room for the King of *Denmark*. And tho' the Duke *Chevereux*, *Anno* 3 *Charles* I. was advanced from the third Stall on the Sovereign's ſide, to the ſecond on the Prince's ſide, that became vacant by the Death of the Duke of *Brunſwick*; yet the Year after, upon the admiſſion of *Guſtavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, he was removed two Stalls lower, and the Prince Elector Palatine one.

We paſs on now from the removal and tranſlation of a *Knight-Subject*, after he had been inſtalled, to the aſſignment of his Stall, at the Time of the Inſtallation it ſelf; where it is worthy of Remark, That on the 24th of *April*, *Anno* 6 *Elizabeth*, in lieu of the ancient Law, which appointed each elect Knight to ſucceed in the Stall of his Predeceſſor, a new one was introduced, being compoſed, as was conceived, upon a more juſt level than the former, and as far as was poſſible, to extinguiſh all danger that might ariſe from Emulation. The Words are: *That all Knights, who for the future were admitted into the Society of the Order, ſhould take and be inſtalled in the loweſt Stall, according to the Courſe and Seniority of their Election, except only Stranger Kings and Princes.*

Upon which it chanced, that when a *Knight-Subject* elect was to be inſtalled, all the *Knights-Companions*, between him and the vacant Stall, were removed higher, that the ſpace might be ſupplied: And if two or more were to be inſtalled together, they poſſeſſed the loweſt Stalls, according to the Seniority of their Election. And though the manner and order in removals, is become a thing of courſe, and rendered familiar and eaſy; yet it cannot be effected, or the Atchievements, Banners, or Plates, diſplaced, unleſs by a Warrant iſſued from the Sovereign, to juſtify the Garter for ſuch his removals; which will plainly appear by the inſertion of theſe Schemes.

The

The Order of Stalls, as they ſtood at the Feaſt of St. *George*, *Anno* 29 *Eliz.*

ELIZABETH Regina.

1. *The Sovereign*	1. *Void*
2. *The* French *King*	2. *The King of* Spain
3. *The King of* Denmark	3. *Void*
4. *Duke* John Caſimire	4. *Void*
5. *Viſcount* Mountague	5. *Earl of* Leiceſter
6. *Earl of* Shrewsbury	6. *Earl of* Warwick
7. *Lord* Hunſdon	7. *Void*
8. *Void*	8. *Earl of* Worceſter
9. *Earl of* Huntington	9. *Lord* Burleigh
10. *Lord Grey*	10. *Earl of* Derby
11. *Earl of* Pembrook	11. *Ld.* How. *of* Effingh.
12. *Void*	12. *Lord* Cobham
13. *Lord* Scroop	13. *Void*

A Tranſlation of Stalls made againſt the Feaſt of Inſtallation, *Anno* 30 *Eliz.*

ELIZABETH Regina.

1. *The Sovereign*	1. *Void*
2. *The* French *King*	2. *The King of* Spain
3. *The King of* Denmark	3. *Void*
4. *Duke* John Caſimire	4. *Void*
5. *Viſcount* Mountague	5. *Earl of* Leiceſter
6. *Earl of* Shrewsbury	6. *Earl of* Warwick
7. *Lord* Hunſdon	7. *Earl of* Worceſter
8. *Earl of* Huntington	8. *Lord* Burleigh
9. *Lord* Grey	9. *Earl of* Derby
10. *Earl of* Pembrook	10. *Ld.* How. *of* Effingh.
11. *Lord* Cobham	11. *Lord* Scroop
12. *Earl of* Eſſex	12. *Earl of* Ormond
13. *Sir* Chriſtop. Hatton	13. *Void*

The firſt of theſe Schemes plainly evince, how the Stalls were ranked on St. *George's-Eve*, *Anno* 29 *Elizabeth*, and the other how modelled againſt the Inſtallation of the Earls of *Eſſex* and *Ormond*, and that of Sir *Chriſtopher Hatton*,

Hatton, the 23d of *May*, *Anno* 30 *Elizabeth*, which demonſtrates thoſe three elect Knights appear to be inſtalled in the lowermoſt Stalls, (as the laſt mentioned Decree enjoyns,) and by reaſon the Earl of *Eſſex*, and Sir *Chriſtopher Hatton*, were ſettled on the Sovereign's ſide, the vacancy in the eighth and twelfth Stalls of the ſame ſide became filled up; the Earl of *Huntington* being advanced into the eighth, the Lord *Grey* in the ninth, and the Earl of *Pembrook* in the tenth Stall, by the advance of the Earl of *Worceſter* into the ſeventh on the Prince's ſide, the vacancy is there ſupplyed, and the other Knights ſeated below him, by a like removal, left the twelfth Stall for the Earl of *Ormond*, and the thirteenth void.

The ſame Order was obſerv'd by King *James*, as appears by another Scheme of the Stalls ſettled on the 3d of *July*, *Anno* 1 *Jac.* I. at the Election of the Duke of *Lenox*, the Earls of *Northampton*, *Marr*, and *Pembrook*.

Stalls altered at a Chapter held at *Windſor*, the 3 *July*, *Anno* 1 *Jac.* I.

JAMES Rex.

1. *The Sovereign*	1. *The* French *King*
2. *The Prince*	2. *Void*
3. *Earl of* Nottingham	3. *Void*
4. *Earl of* Ormond	4. *Lord* Buckhurſt
5. *Earl of* Salop	5. *Earl of* Cumberland
6. *Earl of* Northumberl.	6. *Earl of* Worceſter
7. *Lord* Sheffeild	7. *Ld.* How. *of* Walden
8. *Lord* Hunſdon	8. *Lord* Montjoy
9. *Sir* Henry Lea	9. *Earl of* Suſſex
10. *Lord* Cobham	10. *Lord* Scroop
11. *Earl of* Derby	11. *Lord* Burleigh
12. *Duke of* Lenox	12. *Earl of* Southampton
13. *Earl of* Marr	13. *Earl of* Pembrook

From hence it is evident, that theſe elect Knights were inſtalled in the loweſt Stalls, and ſo continued throughout the ſeries of his Reign, and ſince, except the Prince of *Wales*, and *Charles* Duke of *York*, Sons to the ſaid Sovereign: For the Prince was inſtalled on the ſecond on the Sovereign's

Sovereign's ſide, and upon that Election of the Duke of *York*, *Anno Jac.* I. the ſecond Stall on the Prince's ſide was aſſigned him, and the Morrow after St. *George's Day*, upon which he was elected, he made a ſolemn Progreſſion to the Chapel, in order to take Poſſeſſion of it. Upon *Whitſunday* following, at a ſerious Debate, it was determined in Chapter, that notwithſtanding he was the Sovereign's Son, yet he ſhou'd have no more Preheminence than other *Knights-Companions*, and that his Atchievements, which had been ſet up over the ſecond Stall on the Prince's ſide, ſhou'd be removed to that Stall next above the Viſcount *Rocheſter's*, and to be conferred with the Earl of *Montgomery*, before whom he had the Preference, on *Whitſun-Munday*, as they proceeded to the Chapter-Houſe, in order to their Inſtallation. And where it was farther Decreed, *That all Princes not Abſolute, ſhou'd be inſtalled thenceforth in the Prince's Place.* But after this had paſſed, Endeavours were uſed to advance the Duke into the Stall he was firſt appointed to, and the Kings of Arms were conſulted upon this Point; who certified, that *Richard* Duke of *York*, ſecond Son to King *Edward* IV. was inſtalled in the fourth Stall on the Prince's ſide, and had Precedence of the Duke of *Suffolk*, and the Earls of *Dowglaſs* and *Eſſex*, who were elected long before him: That *Henry* Duke of *York*, ſecond Son to King *Henry* VII. was inſtalled in the third Stall on the Sovereign's ſide, and had the Preference of the Duke of *Buckingham*, and the Earls of *Oxford* and *Derby*, his Seniors; and in the laſt Place, that *Henry Fitz Roy*, Duke of *Richmond*, baſe Son of King *Henry* VIII. had Place and Precedence before the Dukes of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk*, and other *Knights-Companions*. Upon which Grounds it was thought requiſite, that the Iſſue of the Sovereign ſhould enjoy the ſame Privileges in this Affair, as thoſe Princes that were Strangers; and therefore at another Chapter aſſembled at *White-Hall*, on *Eaſter-Monday*, being the 13th of *April*, *Anno* 10 *Jac.* I. the Order which paſſed the Year before, for making the Duke a Puiſne, was abrogated, and he was tranſlated to the ſecond Stall on the Prince's ſide, and paired with Prince *Henry*, as may be ſeen by the Stalls then ſettled, and entered into the Blue Book of the Order.

We

We need not bring any more corroborating Circumſtances of the Obſervation of the Chapter Act, made *Anno 6 Elizabeth*, as it relates to *Knights-Subjects*, which has been punctually performed; but ſince Strangers are therein excepted, it will not be amiſs to note, that the Rule and Practice continued as was eſtabliſhed by King *Henry* VIII. *viz.* that they were inſtalled in Seats next to the Sovereign, according to the illuſtriouſneſs of their Dignity and Birth.

We ſhall mention one Inſtance, of the manner of placing both Strangers and Knights-Subjects at one and the ſame Time. At the firſt coming of King *Charles* I. to the Crown, there were of both Conditions to be inſtalled in one Day, to wit, the Duke of *Brunſwick* a Stranger Prince, the Earls of *Salisbury* and *Carliſle*, *Knights-Subjects*, elected by King *James* I. in the 22d Year of his Reign, and on the 15th of *May* following, the Earls of *Dorſet* and *Holland* were elected with the Viſcount *Andover*, and the Duke of *Chevereux* the 4th of *July* after. And when the removal of Stalls was propounded for the Admiſſion of theſe ſeven elect Knights, it was agreed too, that the Dukes of *Brunſwick* and *Chevereux* ſhou'd be inſtalled in the uppermoſt Stall among Strangers, as King *Henry* VIII. had before ordained, but the *Knights-Subjects* in the lowermoſt Stalls, according to the priſtine Practice, as appears from the Decree, *Anno 6 Elizabeth*, and from the ſettlement of Stalls then made, and thus intituled.

A remove of *Banners* and *Stalls*, at the Feaſt of St. *George*, and Inſtallation holden at *Windſor*, the 13, 14, 15 Days of *December*, *Anno* 1625. At which time were inſtalled the Dukes of *Brunſwick*, and *Chevereux*, the Earls of *Salisbury*, *Carliſle*, *Holland*, *Dorſet*, and the Viſcount *Andover*, as follows.

CHARLES Rex.

1. *The Sovereign*
2. *The Prince Palatine*
3. *Duke* Chevereux
4. *Earl of* Worceſter
5. *Earl of* Suffolk

1. *The King of* Denmark
2. *The Duke of* Brunſwick
3. *Earl of* Northumberl.
4. *Lord* Sheffeild
5. *Earl of* Suſſex

6. *Earl of* Darby	6. *Earl of* Mart
7. *Earl of* Pembrook	7. *Earl of* Montgomery
8. *Earl of* Arundel	8. *Earl of* Somerſet
9. *Earl of* Kelly	9. *Viſcount* Wallingford
10. *Earl of* Rutland	10. *Duke of* Buckingham
11. *Earl of* Leiceſter	11. *Earl of* Salisbury
12. *Earl of* Carliſle	12. *Earl of* Dorſet
13. *Earl of* Holland	13. *Viſcount* Andover

After the Reſtauration of King *Charles* II. to his Crown and Kingdoms, when ſeveral *Knights-Companions*, both Strangers and Subjects, were to be inſtalled, a Debate aroſe in the Chapter held at *White-Hall*, the 10th of *April*, *Anno* 13 *Car.* II. about placing their Atchievements over their Stalls; upon which the following Order was iſſued out.

CHARLES Rex.

Whereas divers elect Knights and Companions of our moſt Noble Order of the Garter are, by our ſpecial Appointment, to be inſtalled in the Chapel of our Caſtle of Windſor, *upon the* 15*th Day of this Inſtant; and that ſome of them who are Strangers, do not as yet, nor are likely to appear, either in their own Perſons, or by their ſufficient Proxies at the ſaid Inſtalment, and ſo might run the hazard to loſe the Benefit and Advantage of their Pre-election, in Point of Rank and Precedency, in reſpect of ſome of our Subject-Knights, who, though ſince elected, will be firſt inſtalled, without ſome Expedient taken therein to prevent it. There being no reaſon, (nor is it our intention) that thoſe noble Perſons ſhou'd ſuffer that prejudice, for want of that uſual formality, and for which they are not in the fault, but others, who, according to the Statutes and ancient Cuſtom, were to give timely Advertiſement to the ſaid Foreign elected Knights, and to Summon them by themſelves or Proxies, to aſſiſt at the ſaid Inſtalment: Our Will and Pleaſure is, you proceed forthwith to the placing of the Hatchments of all the reſpective Knights and Companions of our ſaid Order, whether inſtalled or elect, Subject or Stranger, over the Stalls, which we do in manner as followeth aſſign, and appoint them in our aforeſaid Chappel.*

1. The

1. *The Sovereign*	1. *Void*
2. *The Duke of* York	2. *The Elector Palatine*
3. *Prince Elector of* Brand.	3. *Prince of* Orange
4. *Prince* Rupert	4. *Prince* Edward
5. *Earl of* Salisbury	5. *Earl of* Barkſhire
6. *Earl of* Northumberl.	6. *Duke of* Eſpernon
7. *Duke of* Ormond	7. *Duke of* Buckingham
8. *Earl of* Southampton	8. *Marquiſs of* Newcaſtle
9. *Earl of* Briſtol	9. *Prince* Tarente
10. *Count* Marſhin	10. *Duke of* Albermarle
11. *Earl of* Sandwich	11. *Earl of* Oxford
12. *Duke of* Richmond	12. *Earl of* Lindſey
13. *Earl of* Mancheſter	13. *Earl of* Strafford

And for ſo doing, this ſhall be your ſufficient Warrant, any Statute, or Cuſtom, to the contrary notwithſtanding: Given under the Signet of our ſaid Order, at our Court at White-Hall, *the* 10th *of* April, 1666.

To our Truſty and Well-beloved Servant, Sir *Edward Walker*, Kt. Garter, and Principal King of Arms, of our moſt Noble Order of the Garter.

By the Sovereign's Command

Hen. de Vic.

By which we find the Stranger Princes are placed in the upper Stall, neareſt the Sovereign, according to their Dignities and Degrees, and all the *Knights-Subjects* as to the Time of their Elections. It is to be obſerved upon this Settlement, that though the Earl of *Southampton* did not receive his Garter and George, till the Sovereign, upon his happy arrival in *England*, conferred it upon him with his own Hand; yet, according to the Time of the Election, Place and Precedency were allowed him; which was in *January*, *An. Dom.* 1649. in the Iſle of *Jerſey*, ſome few Days before Duke *Hamilton* and the Marquiſs of *Newcaſtle* were elected.

It was ordered by the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions*, convened in Chapter on the 10th of *January*, *Anno* 14 *Car.* II. *That thenceforward all Princes Strangers, of what Condition ſoever, ſhou'd have Precedence among themſelves, according to the Seniority of their Elections and*

Inſtallations. Upon which the Sovereign, under the Signet of the Order, authorized the Garter, upon the 30th of *March*, to ſet up their Atchievements in St. *George's Chapel*, in the Order here exhibited.

CHARLES Rex.

1. *The Sovereign*
2. *Duke of* York
3. *Prince* Rupert
4. *Elector of* Brandenbur.
5. *Earl of* Salisbury
6. *Earl of* Northumberl.
7. *Duke of* Buckingham
8. *Marquiſs of* Newcaſtle
9. *Prince* Tarente
10. *Duke of* Albermarle
11. *Earl of* Oxford
12. *Earl of* Lindſey
13. *Earl of* Strafford

1. *Void*
2. *Prince Elector Palatine*
3. *Prince of* Orange
4. *Prince of* Denmark
5. *Earl of* Barkſhire
6. *Duke of* Ormond
7. *Earl of* Southampton
8. *Earl of* Briſtol
9. *Count* Marſhin
10. *Earl of* Sandwich
11. *Duke of* Richmond
12. *Earl of* Mancheſter
13. *Duke of* Monmouth

But upon mature Conſideration of a Law made by *Henry* VIII. for placing of Strangers, and for another founded by Queen *Elizabeth* for *Knights-Subjects*; the Sovereign, by the conſent of the moſt Noble Companions preſent, at a Chapter held the 19th of *November*, 1699. was pleaſed to Ordain, firſt, *That the Prince of* Wales, *and ſuch Emperors and Kings that ſhou'd be of the Order, ſhou'd be placed in the neareſt Stalls to that of the Sovereign, according to their Elections and Inſtallations.*

Then, *That all other Sovereign Princes, and Princes of the Blood, ſhou'd be placed in their Stalls next* unto the King's, *according to the Seniority, in the Order.* And thirdly, That all other his Majeſty's Subjects and Strangers, not of the Dignity above-mention'd, ſhou'd be inſtalled in the loweſt Stalls, according to their Antiquity in the Order, and the ancient Practice.

And whereas the Stall termed the Prince's had been long vacant, the Sovereign King *Charles* II. by the advice of the moſt Noble Companions, at the ſame Chapter, was pleaſed to order, *That the preſent King of* Sweden *ſhou'd, by his Proxy, be placed in that Stall, and his Atchievements hung up thereon accordingly, in convenient Time.* Which

order

order was ſtrictly put in Execution, and the Stalls at the Feaſt of St. *George*, *Anno* 23 *Car.* II. were thus ranged.

CHARLES Rex.

1. *The Sovereign*
2. *King of* Denmark
3. *Prince Elector Palatine*
4. *Prince of* Orange
5. *Pr. Elector of* Saxony
6. *Duke of* Buckingham
7. *Earl of* Briſtol
8. *Count* Marſhin
9. *Earl of* Oxford
10. *Earl of* Strafford
11. *Duke of* Albermarle
12. *Void*
13. *Void*

1. *The King of* Sweden
2. *The Duke of* York
3. *Prince* Rupert
4. *Elector of* Brandenbur.
5. *Duke of* Ormond
6. *Duke of* Newcaſtle
7. *Prince* Tarante
8. *Earl of* Sandwich
9. *Duke of* Richmond
10. *Duke of* Monmouth
11. *Void*
12. *Void*
13. *Void*

§ 7. Having diſpatch'd the ancient Law of Succeſſion into void Stalls, and of Tranſlation from one to another; we come now to conſider what is farther to be prepared for the Knight elect, againſt the Day of the great Solemnity, at his own Expence; the chief of which are;

1. A Mantle or upper Robe, with its Appurtenance.
2. A Collar of the Garter and Great George.
3. A Cap of black Velvet, adorned with Plumes.
4. A Helmet, Creſt, Mantlings, and Sword.
5. A Banner of his Arms.
6. A Plate of his Arms and Stile.
7. A Cuſhion, to carry his Robes and Collar upon.
8. Lodging Eſcutcheons.

Though the Kirtle on the Surcoat was anciently given by the King to the *Knights-Subjects*, yet we do not find the Mantle of the Order was, nor indeed of a later Date, unleſs now and then, as a diſtinguiſhing mark of Favour. But the Sovereign always beſtows the Mantle upon Strangers, as well as the whole Habit, when he has elected them into the Society of the Order. And upon ſending of the whole Habit over by Garter to the King of *Portugal*,

tugal, *Anno* 13 *Hen.* VI. the Mantle, Surcoat, and Hood, were accompted for in the Great Wardrobe, and is to this Day practiſed.

However of late the Sovereign hath been pleaſed, now and then, to confer the Mantle upon a *Knight-Subject*. Witneſs King *James* I. *Anno* 21. did to *James* Marquiſs of *Hamilton*; and King *Charles* I. *Anno* 4. to *Theophilus*, Earl of *Suffolk*, and the Year enſuing to *William*, Earl of *Northampton*: And *Anno* 14. Sir *James Palmer*, by his Sovereign's Direction, paid for the Velvet and Taffety of the Earl of *Kelly*'s Mantle and Surcoat, to Sir *Peter Richaut*, and put it upon the Account of the extraordinary Expence of the Order.

King *Charles* II. as a ſignal Mark of his Favour, cauſed ſeventeen Mantles (with the uſual Liveries of Surcoat and Hood,) to be made ready againſt the grand Feaſt of St. *George*, *Anno* 13. which he confered not only among the new elect Knights, but upon the Earls of *Salisbury*, *Barkſhire*, and *Northumberland*, that were three Senior *Knights-Companions*.

The Collar of the Order, and the great George, the elect Knight is to provide himſelf, unleſs where the Sovereign is pleaſed to beſtow the Mantle, which is always accompanied with the Collar, and then a like Warrant iſſues to the Maſter of the *Jewel-Houſe*, as was uſed for providing the ſeventeen Collars, *Anno* 13 *Car.* II.

The black Velvet Cap before-mentioned and deſcribed, with the Helm, Creſt, and Mantlings, together with a Sword and Girdle, are to be got in readineſs by the care and direction of the Garter, but at the Expence of the Knights elect; all which are to be ſet over his Stall, as ſoon as his Inſtallation Fees are paid.

This Honour, that every *Knight-Companion* ſhall have his Helm, Creſt, and Sword, affixed over his Stall at the Chappel of St. *George*, is particularly provided for in all the ſeveral Bodies of Statutes; and are ordained to remain there during the Lives of the Poſſeſſors, *In Memory of him that bears them, and a Teſtimony of the Defence of the Church, as the Oaths of Military Orders require.*

The Helms upon this Occaſion are compoſed of Steel, and of a more than ordinary proportion; thoſe for Sovereign Princes are framed open, with large Barrs; but thoſe for the *Knights-Subjects* are made cloſe. About King

Henry

Henry VIII's Reign, the *Knights-Subjects* Helms were parcel gilt with fine Gold in Oil, wrought with curious Works, and burniſhed with fine Gold. But in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, and ſince that Time, it hath been the Cuſtom to gild their Helms all over, and place the Arms of St. *George* in the Middle before the Vizors.

The Mantlings that hang down on either ſide of the Helm, together with the Wreath, are in ſome places called Appendixes, and are all of Tiſſue, or Cloth of Gold, and formerly lined with Sarcenet; but in the Reign of Queen *Mary*, they were exchanged for white Satin, for ſo were the Mantlings of *Anthony Brown*, Viſcount *Montague*, and *William Howard*, Lord Admiral, lined.

At the bottom of theſe Mantlings hang a pair of gilt Knobs burniſhed with Gold, from which ſpring out Toſſels either of Gold or Silver, (conſentaneous to the Metal in the Knights Court of Armour) mixed with Silk of the chief Colour in his Arms.

Upon the Helm and Mantlings, is placed a Wreath of corded Silk, of the Knight's Colours, which was formerly of Sarcenet, but now of Taffety.

The Creſt of the Knight is placed either upon theſe Wreaths, or Iſſuant out of a Crown, or Ducal Cap, turned with Ermin; and of what kind ſoever the Creſt is, the ſame is neatly carved in Wood, and either gilt, or wrought in; Directly before the Helm, an armed Sword hangs down, the Pomel, Croſs, and Chape are gilt; the Scabbard is made of the ſame Tiſſue or Cloth of Gold as the Mantlings are, as is the Girdle that belongs to it; but the Buckles and Pendants are of Copper Gilt.

The Cuſtom of ſetting up the Helm, Creſt, and Sword, over the Stall of the Knights, is as ancient as the Inſtitution of the Order; but when the Banners were firſt hung up, we have not ſo clear a Conviction; for neither the Statutes of Inſtitution, nor thoſe of *Henry* V. make mention of them.

The firſt time they occur to us, we find to be in *Anno* 2 *Hen.* VI. in the black Book of the Order, where the Banners of the King of *Portugal* is particularly ſpoke of, among the Atchievements then ſet over the Stall; But they are more particularly mentioned in the Body of King *Henry* VIII's Statutes.

The Fashion of the Sovereign's and all the *Knights-Companions* Banners are square; yet it does no where appear what the exact Standard was; yet we find them in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth* to be two Yards and a Quarter Long, and a Yard and three Quarters Broad, besides the Fringe, which is composed of Gold, or Silver and Silk, of the Colours in the Wreath; and on them are wrought, upon Taffety-Sarcenet, double Sarcenet, or rich Taffety, with fine Gold Colours on both sides, the Paternal Coat of the *Knights-Companion*, together with his Quartering, or so many of them as he pleases to use, and the Garter is to take care they be warrantably Marshalled.

And because a single Coat was not conceived to stand fair enough in a Banner of this proportion, the Sovereign hath been pleased to grant a new Coat, to bear in Quarters his Paternal one, if he wanted it; as King *James* I. did to *Robert Carr*, Viscount *Rochester*; to whose Paternal Coat he first added a Lion Passant, Gardant Or, in the dexter Part, as an especial Gift of his Favour, and then invented a new Coat, to be born in Quarter therewith, *viz.* Quarterly Or and Gules, a Lyon Rampant Sable over all, *June* 8. *Anno* 9 *Jac.* I.

These Banners of Arms are fixed to the End of long Staves, painted in Oil, formerly of the Colour of the Wreaths, but now Red; their Ends are put into Sockets of Iron, well fixed in the Wall, directly over the *Knights-Companions* Helms and Crests, and frequently lined with Fustian to preserve them.

There is moreover to be provided a Copper Plate Gilt, whereupon are engraved, the Escutcheon of the Knights elect Arms in Colours Enamilled, with his Quartering, Helm, Crest, and Supporters, and underneath, his Style and Titles of Honour, encircled with a Garter. Which Plate the Garter usually takes Care to provide, and is to be fixed on the back of the Knights Stall, assigned for his Installation.

A Velvet Cushion is likewise to be provided, to carry the Knight's elect Mantle, Collar, Hood, and Book of Statutes, before him, in the Progress into the Choire, in order to his Installation. At the Installation of the Lord Treasurer *Weston*, and the Earls of *Exeter* and *Lindsey*, who were installed, *Anno* 6 *Car.* I. the materials and garnishing of these Cushions are recited severally, to contain

one

one Yard and a Half of Crimſon Velvet, one Ell of rich Taffety for their Lining, four Yards of Fringe, and four great Toſſels.

Laſtly, There have frequently been made ready a convenient Number of Lodging Eſcutcheons of the elect Knights Arms, invironed with a Garter, and his Stile and Titles placed underneath; it having been an ancient Cuſtom, for the Knights to diſtribute theſe Eſcutcheons at the Inns, in their Paſſage to, and at *Windſor*, as a Memorial of their Inſtallation.

What falls under the Care of the Garter to prepare and make ready, the Expence ſometimes has been caſt up, and the Account ſtated and defraid before-hand; by which means, he was in a better capacity to furniſh out the Ceremony, for ſo did the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, *Anno* 34 *Eliz.*

Beſides theſe mentioned to be prepared and provided either by the Chancellor of the Order, or the Garter, the Knight elect muſt take care of other Affairs more particularly relating to himſelf and his retinue; ſuch as are Apparel, the Number of his Attendants and Servants, with their Cloaths and Liveries, his Coach and Saddle Horſes, both for himſelf and them, with other material Circumſtances, to ſet off his Cavalcade and Proceeding with greater Pomp and Gallantry. The Proviſions for Dyet at *Windſor* (if the Feaſt be kept at the elect Knight's Charge and Expence,) are to be conſidered of, and very often ſome Clark of the Sovereign's Kitchin is to be conſulted, in the management of that Affair.

The Hall or Room where the grand Dinner is to be kept, as well as the Chapter-Houſe and Chappel, ought chiefly to be decked and adorned with rich and ſumptuous Furniture, againſt this Solemnity, over and above what is commonly uſed. The Hall or Dining-Room is to be ſet off with rich Hangings; and if the Sovereign or his Lieutenant hold the Feaſt, there muſt be placed a Cloth of State at the upper End of it. The Chapter-Houſe is alſo to be hung, and a rich Carpet ſpread upon the Table, ſet about with Velvet Chairs and Cuſhions; and becauſe in the late Times of Rebellion and Plunder, this Place was not exempt, and nothing was found there upon the Reſtauration; King *Charles* II. in a Chapter convened the 1ſt of *January*, *Anno* 14th of his Reign, cauſed Directions

to

to be given to the Maſter of the Wardrobe, to provide Velvet for Chairs, to furniſh the Chapter-Houſe, and Cuſhions to be uſed in the Choir of St. *George's Chappel*, which accordingly were prepared againſt the following Feaſt.

Againſt the Inſtallation of *Philip*, King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, *Anno* 22 *Henry* VII. The Table in the Chapter-Houſe was covered with Cloth of Gold, and the Forms with Baudkin; before the Sovereign was laid a Cuſhion of Cloth of Gold, whereupon a Crucifix lay, and the Evangeliſt turned open to a place of the Cannon, with ſeveral Tapers burning on either Side. At the upper End of the Table, towards the Right Hand, was ſet a Chair for the Sovereign, under a golden Canopy, with Cuſhions of Cloth of Gold, and on the Left Hand a Stool with like Embelliſhments, for the King of *Caſtile*.

In St. *George's Chappel*, the High Altar is to be richly adorned with Plate, the Sovereign's Stall with a Canopy, and other uſual Ornaments, and the Stalls of the *Knights-Companions* preſent at the Ceremony, with Velvet Cuſhions. As to the Furniſhing of other Places in the Caſtle of *Windſor*, on ſo ſolemn an Occaſion, we ſhall relate the Account of the Ceremony of the Inſtallation of the King of *Leon* and *Caſtile*, juſt now mentioned. The Words are theſe:

To wit of the gret rich Cobbord, which continually ſtode in the gret Hall, which was all guilt Plate, or of the gret and rich Beds of Eſtate, Hangings of rich Cloth of Gold, or of the rich and ſumptuous Clothes of Arras, with divers Clothes of Eſtate, both in the King's Loggings, and in the King of Caſtile's Loggings, ſo many Chambers, Haulls, Chappels, Cloſettes, Galleries, with odir Loggings, ſo richly and very well appointed, with divers odir things, that I ſuffice or cannot diſcern, and as I ſuppoſe few or none that there were, that ever ſaw Caſtell or odir Loggings, in all things ſo well and richly appointed, and the great

great continual fare, open Houshold, so many Noble Men soo well appareilled and with soo short Warnying, heretofore, as I think hath not been seen.

CAP. XII.

The Personal Installation of a Knight-Subject.

§ 1. FOrmerly the Knights elect proceeded from *London* to their Installation at *Windsor*, in the nature of a Solemn and stately Cavalcade, which was performed on Horse-back, with the greatest Grandeur, and exceeding Pomp, whether we refer to the great Number of their Honourable Friends, who, on gallant Coursers, rode along with them; or the multitude of their own Attendants well mounted, the magnificence of whose Apparel, Jewels, Gold Chains, rich Embroideries, and Plumes of Feathers, of their Lord's Colours, struck Amazement, and even dazled the Eyes of the Spectators.

Equivalent to this Pompous Show was the Feast, which contained in it all manner of Stateliness and Plenty, as well of Provision, as other Incidents that might increase its Glory, in which the elect Knights, who kept it at their own Expence, strove not only to out-vie their Predecessor, but to Excel one another; That all Embassadors and Strangers esteemed it one of the goodliest and noblest Sights, that was to be exhibited in Christendom.

But to make the splendor of the Cavalcade no less conspicuous to the City of *London*, than to the Town and Castle of *Windsor*, the Knights elect have taken up their Lodgings, sometimes in the *Strand*, sometimes in *Salisbury-Court*, in *Holborn*, or within the City; and for intent they chose to pass through some Eminent Streets, that the People might the better Survey them, and receive the greater

greater Satisfaction. To illuſtrate which Matter, we ſhall deſcend to ſome Particulars.

Anno 34 *Eliz.* *Gilbert*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*, in order to his Cavalcade, was lodged in Mr. *Greſham*'s Houſe, (now known by the Name of *Greſham-College*,) whence he Rode through the City, accompanied with many of his Honourable Friends, and a numerous and gallant Train of Attendants and Servants, to *Charing-Croſs*, where he met *George*, Earl of *Cumberland*, (his Companion elect) and thence both Rode together towards *Windſor*; within a Mile or two of which Place, Garter King of Arms met them, and Marſhalled their Attendants in Order; and then the elect Knights proceeded with their gallant Train through the Town into the Caſtle in this Order.

1. Trumpets, two and two.
2. Gentlemen in Blue Coats and Gold Chains.
3. Gentlemen of Note.
4. Garter.
5. Gentlemen Uſhers.
6. The two elect Knights, Earl of *Ormond*, and Baron of *Effingham*; with their Footmen about them.
7. Noblemen, Knights, and Gentlemen of Quality.
8. All their Servants in the Rear.

Cuſtom and Peace contributed to make the Cavalcades more glorious, during the Reigns of Queen *Elizabeth*, and King *James* I. and eſpecially that of *Robert*, Earl of *Salisbury*, and *Thomas*, Viſcount *Bindon*, *May* 21ſt, *Anno* 4 *Jac.* I. who arrived at *Windſor* honourably accompanied, with a great appearance of Nobility, Knights, and Gentlemen of Figure.

But the Fate of this Solemnity, much like that glorious Body of the Sun, (whoſe Luſtre at ſuch times it ſtrove to outſhine) had now and then its interpoſitions, and intermitting Clouds, at other times long Nights, and the Splendor and Glory thereof but ſtruck the Sight now and then; when the Pleaſure of the Sovereign grew auſpicious, or the Honour of the Order became fixed upon more generous Spirits. But to ſpeak impartially, there may grow an Exceſs in ſuch Solemnities, even to Shame and Surfeit; and the beſt Cure to preſcribe for it, is a long Abſtinence. Nor was this Feſtival at all Times free

from

from this Diſtemper, but then a quick Application of the Sovereign's ſoon rectified it by taking away the Cauſe, and prohibiting Exceſs in their Attendants.

For this reaſon it was that King *James* I. obſerving thoſe Exceſſes the elect Knights run into upon this Occaſion, and willing to cheque the growing Inconveniencies, at the Inſtallation, of *Francis*, Earl of *Rutland*, Sir *George Villars*, Kt. (afterwards Duke of *Buckingham*) and the Viſcount *Liſle*, *Anno* 14 of his Reign, *forbid Livery Coats, for ſaving Charge, and avoiding Emulation*; and ſhortly after, in a Chapter at *White-Hall*, *Anno* 16. with the Conſent of the *Knights-Companions* then aſſembled, to put ſome reſtraint upon the Number of Attendants, decreed, *That every of the Knights-Companions ſhould have fifty Perſons to attend him unto the Annual Solemnities of the Order, and no more.*

In the Inſtallation of *William*, Earl of *Northampton*, *Anno* 5 *Car.* I. we find this ſtinted Number encreaſed to fourſcore, who began his Cavalcade to *Windſor*, from *Salisbury* Houſe in the *Strand*, and certainly wou'd have exhibited a more glorious Show, had not a continual Rain for three Days ſpace impeded him. Nevertheleſs, that what he deſigned with ſo much Splendor and Gallantry might out-live the accident of foul Weather, the Order of it ſhall be inſerted here.

The Order of riding to the Inſtallation of William, *Earl of* Northampton, *20th of* April, 1629.

1. Trumpets, whoſe Banners were of Damask, and had the Earls Arms, with his Creſt and Supporters environed with a Garter.
2. The meaneſt of his Servants; as Grooms and Yeomen, in Blue Coats, two and two.
3. His Lordſhip's other Servants, in Blue Coats; as Gentlemen, Eſquires, and Knights, two and two.
4. Two Secretaries; Mr. *Ralph Goodwin*, and Mr. *Francis Meroſſe*.
5. Steward, Mr. *Cuthbert Ogle*.
6. Comptroller, Mr. *William Goodwyn*.
7. Two Pages.
8. His ſpare Horſe, led by the Gentleman of his Horſe.

9. His

9. His Chaplain to diſtribute his Alms.
10. Purſuivants at Arms, two and two.
11. Gentleman Uſher, Mr. *Walter Thomas*, Bareheaded.
12. The Senior Herald covered.
13. The Earls of *Berkſhire*, *Northampton*, and *Salisbury*.
14. Noblemen in their Places, two and two.
15. Knights, Eſquires, and Gentlemen, which accompanied him.
16. The Commiſſioners Servants.
17. Other Noblemens, Knights, Eſquires, and Gentlemens Servants.

Henry Earl of *Danby*, and *William* Earl of *Morton*, being to receive the Honour of Inſtallation, *Anno* 10 *Car.* I. diſpoſed themſelves for their more commodious Paſſage, and the Peoples View; one was at *Warwick Houſe* in *Holbourn*, and the other at *Dorſet Houſe* in *Salisbury-court*, and made their Progreſſion ſeverally through the Streets to *Hyde-Park*, each having two Noblemen to ſupport him, with their Footmen in rich Coats on either ſide them.

Their Gentlemen Uſhers rode Bareheaded, and before them the Officers of Arms wearing their Coats, and their Servants in blue Coats and Cognizances, (as was the ancient Mode,) were all led on by Trumpets. The reſt of the Lords, Knights, and Gentlemen followed after each Knight's elect Troop, according to their Rank and Quality foremoſt. The Proceeding of the Earl of *Morton*, was Marſhalled in this manner.

1. Trumpets, two and two.
2. Grooms in Coats, two and two.
3. Yeomen, two and two.
4. Gentlemen, two and two.
5. Secretaries.
6. Stewards.
7. Gentleman of the Horſe.
8. Pages.
9. Four Officers of Arms.
10. Gentleman Uſher bare.
11. *Lancaſter* Herald covered.
12. Earl *Morton*, ſupported between two chief Lords.
13. Foot-men on each ſide, in rich Coats.
14. Noblemen and Gentlemen, according to their Degrees.

At

At *Slough*, (two Miles on this ſide *Windſor*,) they all made a ſtand, and being again placed in Order, they proceeded to *Windſor Caſtle*, where, alighting in the lower Court, the Knights elect were conducted to their ſeveral Apartments.

The laſt Cavalcade this Age has beheld, was exhibited by *Algernoon*, Earl of *Northumberland*, *May* 13. *Anno* 11 *Car.* I. from *Dorſet Houſe* in *Salisbury-court*, toward *Windſor*; nor was it the leaſt in Pomp and Glory: Eight and forty Gentlemen preceeded, then came the Pages, being Earls Sons, *viz.*

1. Mr. *William Herbert*, Mr. *John Herbert*, Mr. *Philip Cecil*, Mr. *Algernoon Sidney*.
2. Heralds at Arms, two and two.
3. Mr. *Blundeville*, Gentleman Uſher, Bareheaded.
4. *Norroy* King of Arms.
5. Marquiſs of *Wincheſter*.
6. The Earls of *Northumberland* and *Kent*.

And ſomewhat behind him, the reſt of the Lords, Knights, and Gentlemen in order; they had Priority according to their Quality, Riding two and two, and the Coaches cloſing up the Troop.

There was a publick Cavalcade deſigned from *Somerſet Houſe* in the *Strand*, to *Windſor Caſtle*, when King *Charles* II. was to have been inſtalled, which though it proved Abortive, yet ought not to be omitted, by reaſon of the Chancellor's Letter to each *Knight-Companion*, to make Preparation to attend him thither.

May it pleaſe your Lordſhip,

" THE King's Majeſty, Sovereign of this moſt Noble " Order of the Garter, having determined to Create " the Prince his Eldeſt Son Knight, and to propoſe him " in Election, to be a Companion of his Order; for the " better Conveniency of his Inſtallation, hath prorogued, " by a Commiſſion under the Seal of his Order, given " the 25th of *February*, now remaining in my Cuſtody, " the Celebration of the Feaſt of St. *George*, from the 22, " 23, and 24 of *April* next, whereon it ſhou'd have been " Solemnized, unto the 21, 22, and 23 of *May*, imme- " diately enſuing; and thereby given Command to all

" the

" the *Knights-Companions*, and Officers of this Order, that " they ſhould attend his Royal Perſon, at his Palace of " *White-Hall*, upon thoſe Days appointed. In diſcharge " of the Duty of my Place, and by ſpecial Order, I do " ſignify unto your Lordſhip his Majeſty's Will, and that " it is his Pleaſure, for the more Honour of the Prince, " and the Noble Feaſt of his Election and Inſtallation, " that your Lordſhip ſhou'd be attended with your Ser- " vants and Retinue, according to ſolemn Cuſtom, and " be prepared to Accompany his Higneſs, from *Somerſet* " *Houſe* in the *Strand*, unto the Caſtle of *Windſor*, upon " the 18th of that Month, and aſſiſt at the Ceremony and " Feaſt of his Inſtallation, upon the Day following: Pray- " ing your Lordſhip that you would be pleaſed to take " knowlege hereby, both of the Time and Place deſigned, " and of the Sovereign's Order, I humbly reſt,

St. *Martin's-lane*, *Feb.* 27. 1637.

In all due Obedience,

and Obſervance,

Thomas Rowe.

When this Letter was iſſued out, the Sovereign intended to create the Prince Knight of the *Bath*, which Ceremonies were intended to begin at the old *Palace-yard* in *Weſtminſter*, upon the 21ſt Day of *May*, *Anno* 13 *Car* I. and to Solemnize the Feaſt of St. *George*, upon the 23d of the ſame Month at *White-Hall*, and to take the Scrutiny that Evening for his Election into this Order: The next Day was deſigned to inveſt him with the Garter and George, and the Day after to ſet forward the Cavalcade towards *Windſor*, wherein alſo the Knights of the *Bath*, (intended to be created with the Prince,) were to Ride with their Robes. But this Reſolution being altered, ſtop'd the Progreſſion of the Cavalcade, and in the room of a Knight of the *Bath*, he was created a *Knight-Batchellor* at *Windſor*.

Formerly it was the manner for the Sovereign's Lieutenant to Ride to *Windſor*, attended with a gallant and glittering Train, and no ſmall Number of his own Gentlemen and Yeomen richly attired, and in every Punctilio

no fifty ſet out, as was ſeen in the Cavalcade of the Duke of *Norfolk*, Earl Marſhal of *England*, and Lieutenant for the Sovereign, for St. *George*'s Feaſt, *Anno* 5 *Eliz.* who had attending him twenty of his own Gentlemen and Yeomen, at the Time the Earls of *Northumberland* and *Warwick* were to be inſtalled; but this was never put in Practice, but when the Sovereign appointed the Inſtallation and the Feaſt of St. *George* to be celebrated together.

The Lieutenant, and his Aſſiſtants, or ſometimes the *Knights-Commiſſioners*, (if the Feaſt of St. *George* be not then Solemnized,) being arrived in the Caſtle, immediately retire to their Lodgings, which for the moſt part have been prepared at the *Dean's Houſe*, whoſe Rooms are the faireſt in the Caſtle, and the beſt fitted for Accommodation, next to thoſe of the Sovereign's in the upper Ward; and for the Knights elect, they were at all Times furniſhed with Lodgings in ſome of the Prebends Houſes.

The Offering in the Chappel, on the Eve of the Feaſt.

§ 2. If it ſo chanced that the Inſtallation was performed by Commiſſioners, and the Cavalcade proceeded from *London*, in the Morning of the Day preceeding the Inſtallation, and arrived at the Caſtle of *Windſor* early that Afternoon; then the *Knights-Commiſſioners* have been accuſtomed only to put on their Mantles, and enter St. *George*'s Chappel to offer; but without the Attendance of Heralds, or any ſolemn Proceſſion into the Choir, ſave one of the Prebends; where having placed themſelves in their Stalls with uſual Reverences, and heard an Anthem, they paſſed up to the Altar with the Verger and Garter before them, and there made their Offering, both of Gold and Silver, according to the uſual Cuſtom. As ſoon as *Veſpers* were finiſhed, after the ſame manner they deſcended from their Stalls, and departed to their Lodgings; and in this caſe the *Knights-Commiſſioners* did not lay by their Mantles till Supper was ended.

In this nature was the Ceremony of Offering (on the Eve of the Inſtallation) performed by the Lord Admiral and Earl of *Ormond*, Commiſſioners for the Inſtalla-

tion of the Earl of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, *Anno* 34 *Eliz.* But at the Inſtallation of the Earl of *Rutland*, and others, *Anno* 26 *Eliz.* the Lord *Hunſdon* (one of the Commiſſioners for that Solemnity,) refuſed to make his Offering alone, though he arrived timely enough, on the Eve of the Feaſt at *Windſor* Caſtle, becauſe he wanted the Company of Viſcount *Mountague*, who was a joynt Commiſſioner with him, that arrived not till the Morning after.

This Offering of the *Knights-Commiſſioners*, coming to the Caſtle on the Eve of the Inſtallation, is founded upon an Article of *Edward* III. which runs to this Effect: *That if any of the* Knights-Companions, *being upon a Journey, ſhou'd accidentally paſs by* Windſor-Caſtle, *he is to turn in thither, in Honour of the Place, and prepare himſelf to enter into the Chappel to Offer; firſt putting on his Mantle, without which he muſt never preſume to enter into it*; but upon Emergencies, and allowable Cauſes, he is to be excuſed.

After the *Knight-Companion* had entered the Caſtle, the Canons Reſident were, by the aforeſaid Article, appointed to meet and recieve him, and with due Reverence conduct him into the Choir. If it was at the Celebration of High Maſs, the Knight was obliged to ſtay and hear it, in Honour of God and St. *George*; but if he arrived in the Afternoon, he was to ſtay till the Canons, and the reſt of the Choir, had ſung the Anthem *de Profundis*, which no ſooner was ended, but he proceeded to the High Altar and Offered, and returned to his Stall with uſual Reverences, and then departed.

But if the *Knight-Companion* paſſed through the Town of *Windſor*, and neglected to Offer at the Chappel, as often as he omitted it, he was bound, upon his Obedience, to walk a Mile on Foot to the Chappel, in Honour of St. *George*, and upon defailure, to offer a Peny, which by King *Henry* VIII's Statutes is inlarged to a Groat. Upon the Explication of this Article, there aroſe a Diſpute about the juſt Diſtance intended from the Caſtle; and that the Knights-Companions might be ſenſible of the breach of the Injunction, it was thought requiſite by King *Henry* VIII. to ſet down a certain Bound, which in his Statutes is declared to be two Miles; within which, if any of the *Knights-Companions* come, and do not repair

to

to the Chappel and Offer, he is liable to the Mulct before ſpecified.

Upon Hunting, or other Paſtimes the Foreſt afforded, they uſed to ſend their Offering in Money to the Canons, which being received, the Knights took it for a Diſpenſation of the Ceremony enjoined by the Statutes.

Endeavours were uſed to have this Article interpreted with greater Latitude, which ſo far took Effect, that at a Chapter called at *Windſor* the 10th of *October*, *Anno* 15 *Car* I. it was ordered, that ſome Expedient might be found out, to ſave the Knights from the Breach of their Oath, if they came within the limited Diſtance of the Place, and paſſed thence without Offering. But no farther Progreſs being made in that Affair, the Law ſtands as it did.

The Supper of the Eve.

§ 3. The Supper, after their arrival at *Windſor*, is but in the Nature of a private Meal, and prepared for the Lieutenant (or Commiſſioners) or Knights elect, moſt commonly at the Dean's Houſe. *Anno* 26 *Eliz.* on the Eve of the Inſtallation of the Earl of *Rutland* and Lord *Cobham*, the Commiſſioners ſupped together with ſuch Lords and Gentlemen of Figure as came along with them; and no Nobleman had above one Servant to attend him at the Table, and the reſt provided for themſelves at their proper Inns. Sometimes they have been permitted to Sup in ſome Appartments of the Sovereign's Lodgings; for ſo it was at the Inſtallation of the Lord *Ruſſel*, and other elect Knights, *Anno* 31 *Henry* VIII. and likewiſe of the Earl of *Shrewsbury*, and Lord *Hunſdon*, *Anno* 3 *Eliz.* the Lieutenant and Knights ſupped in the great Chamber there, in the ſame Regularity that was uſed at other Times. And in the 34th of Queen *Elizabeth*, when the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland* were inſtalled, all the Lords and Gentlemen ſupped together at one long Table ſet in the Council Chamber.

The Order in proceeding to the Chapter-Houſe.

§ 4. Before we come to the particular Ceremonies of the Inſtallation, tranſacted either by the Sovereign, (or in his abſence by his Lieutenant or Commiſſioners,) we ſhall premiſe this general Remark: That ſince neither the Statutes of *Inſtitution*, nor thoſe of King *Henry* V. afford us a Formulary for the Perſonal Inſtallation of a Knight elect; yet thoſe enacted by King *Henry* VIII. do briefly exhibit the Order and Method of it. And we muſt farther obſerve, that if the Inſtallation be appointed together with the Feaſt of St. *George*, then either the Sovereign, or elſe his Lieutenant and Aſſiſtants are preſent; but if at any other Seaſon, then it paſſeth by Commiſſioners only.

After ſuch time therefore as the Sovereign, his Lieutenant, or Commiſſioners, have prefixed the Hour wherein to proceed to the Chapter Houſe, in Order to the Inſtallation, (which has generally been diſpatched in the Evening,) all the *Knights-Companions*, and elect Knights, the Officers of the Order, and of Arms, the Prebends of the College, and Alms-Knights, are to give their Attendance, *viz.* the Knights-Companions, and elect Knights, and Officers, of the Order, on the Sovereign, in his inward Lodging; the elect Knights, and Officers of Arms, in the Preſence Chamber, the Prebends and Alms-Knights, in the Great Chamber, where they waited the Sovereign's coming forth.

The Attendance to be given upon the Sovereign's Lieutenant, and ſuch of the Knights-Companions as are appointed for his Aſſiſtants, is by the Officers of the Order and of Arms, the Prebends and Alms-Knights, either at his Lodgings, or elſewhere he ſhall deem meet to appoint; from which the Knights-Companions are exempt. For though the Knights-Companions have ſometimes proceeded to the Chappel before the Sovereign's Lieutenant, at an Inſtallation, yet hath it been at ſuch time only, as they accompanied their Sovereign to *Windſor*, to hold the Feaſt of St. *George*; and if the Sovereign, through any Indiſpoſition, or weighty Affair, cou'd not paſs down to the Chappel on the Eve of the Feaſt, yet they being obliged by

by the Statutes to celebrate *Veſpers*, did upon this Occaſion proceed thither, though not upon the Account of Inſtallation; as it fell out at the Inſtallation of Prince *Henry*, and four other Knights, *Anno* 1 *Jac.* I. when the Progreſſion began from the Preſence Chamber, and thence paſſed to the Chappel in the following Order.

1. Alms-Knights.
2. Prebends.
3. Purſuivants.
4. Heralds.
5. *Ulſter* King of Arms.
6. *Lyon* King of Arms.
7. *Clarenceux* King of Arms.
8. The four elect Knights.
9. Knights-Companions.
10. Garter.
11. Regiſter.
12. Black Rod.
13. Chancellor.
14. The Sovereign's Lieutenant leading the Prince in his Hand.

At the Inſtallation of the Duke of *Brunſwick*, and five other elect Knights, the 23d of *November*, *Anno* 1 *Car.* I. the Knights-Companions likewiſe proceeded before the Sovereign's Lieutenants, tho' the Sovereign was at *Windſor*, but not in the Cavalcade.

Upon the Sovereign's Commiſſioners, neither the Knights-Companions, nor the Prelate, nor Chancellor, do give their Attendance; only at the Grand Feaſt of St. *George*, *Anno* 13 *Car.* II. the Chancellor then waiting on the Sovereign at *Windſor*, in the Duties of his Place, out of a ſingular Regard to his Royal Highneſs the Duke of *York*, attending the Commiſſioners in the proceeding to his Inſtallation, for at that time he was Comptroller of his Houſhould.

The Proceedings on this ſolemn Occaſion have been generally order'd on Foot; yet upon extraordinary Incidents have been marſhalled and diſpoſed on Horſe-back, in manner of a Cavalcade, as was uſed at the Inſtallation of *Philip* King of *Caſtile*, *Anno* 22 *Hen.* VII. and that when the Lord *Ruſſel* and other elect Knights were in-

ſtalled, *Anno* 31 *Hen.* VIII. King *Philip* (when the Earl of *Suſſex* was inſtalled, *Anno* 1 and 2. *Ph.* and *Mar.*) honoured him with his Preſence, and riding on Horſe-back, with ſeveral of the Knights-Companions, from his Lodgings in the Caſtle, down to the Cloiſter Door, at the Eaſt-End of the Chappel, and there alighting, proceeded directly to the Chapter-Houſe. The Proceeding was on Horſe-back, at the Inſtallation of the Earl of *Shrewsbury* and the Lord *Hunſdon*, *Anno* 3 *Eliz.* and at the Earl of *Northumberland*'s and Earl of *Warwick*'s, *Anno* 5. At the Inſtallation of *Francis*, Duke *Montmorency*, the Viſcount *Hereford*, and the Lords *Burleigh*, *Grey*, and *Shandos*, *Anno* 14 *Eliz.* The Sovereign's Lieutenant and Knights Aſſiſtants did Robe themſelves in the Sovereign's Lodging in the Caſtle; and meeting in the Preſence Chamber, proceeded downwards towards the outer Hall-door, in the upper Ward of the Caſtle, when taking their Horſes, adorned with Foot Clothes, they proceeded on Horſe-back to the Weſt Door of the Chappel.

If the Progreſſion was begun on Horſe-back at the beginning of the Feaſt, ſo it continued, as often as the Sovereign (his Lieutenant or Commiſſioner) went to the Chapter-Houſe, or Chappel, and their returns were marſhalled in the like Order at their ſetting out.

The Servants and Attendants belonging to the Knights elect, (if they be taken into the Proceſſion,) paſs on firſt two and two in a Rank, according to their Quality; and thoſe who are the moſt inferior, the foremoſt: Next the Alms-Knights in their Habits and uſual Order.

Then follows the Virger of the College.

After him the Prebends or Canons: But what attendance they have given heretofore at the Inſtallations, the Memoirs of this illuſtrious Society is wholly ſilent in; for in thoſe Schemes left us of proceeding to Inſtallations, in the Reigns of King *Henry* VIII. King *Edward* VI. Queen *Mary*, and part of Queen *Elizabeth*, we find them not inſerted, though ſince they are next to the Prebends of the College, the Purſuivants, Heralds, and Provincial Kings of Arms, proceed in a Body.

After them the Knights-Subjects elect, unleſs the Proctor of an abſent Knight-Subject, paſs at the ſame time in this Proceeding, who take Place after the Provincial Kings: And if it ſo chance, that the Proctor to a Stranger-Prince

be

be preſent at the ſame time, he is to proceed between the Knight-Subject's Proctor, and the Knights-Subject elect. But Prince *Henry* at his Inſtallation, *Anno* 1 *Jac.* I. moved in a Place Superior to all the Knights-Companions, and was paired with the Earl of *Nottingham*, the Sovereign's Lieutenant for that Occaſion. Where two or more elect Knights prepare for their Inſtallation at the ſame time, they take Place according to the Seniority of their Election, going two and two together; and if the Number be odd, the Junior elect Knight paſſeth alone. Formerly the elect Knight paſſed in his ordinary Apparel, wearing over it in Days of Yore a ſhort Gown, afterwards a Cloak, and of latter Times a Coat, as did the Earl of *Northumberland*, *Anno* 5 *Eliz.* and the Earls of *Pembrook* and *Derby*, *Anno* 16 *Eliz.* and the Annals of the Order make this remark upon the Earl of *Suſſex*, and the Lord *Buckhurſt*, *Anno* 31 of *Eliz.* of *Charles* Duke of *York*, *An.* 9 *Jac.* I. But this was before any peculiar under Habit, was appointed to the Knights-Companions, for now there being a Cloth of Silver Doublet, and Trunk Hoſe, eſtabliſhed to be worn at the Feaſt of Inſtallation, and of St. *George*, the elect Knight proceeds in this Dreſs, as did the Duke of *Albermarle*, *Anno* 23 *Car.* II.

In this proceeding to the Chapter-Houſe, he wears only the Garter about his Leg, and the George and the Ribbond wherewith he was inveſted, either about his Neck, or as of late drawn under his right Arm, which being omitted by Sir *George Villars*, and Viſcount *Liſle*, is noted to be contrary to order.

The Earl of *Rutland* with his Fellow elect Knights, *Anno* 14 *Jac.* I. proceeded Bare-headed, as did the Duke of *Lenox*, *Anno* 9 *Car.* I. as well as the Duke of *Albermarle*, *Anno* 23 *Car.* II.

The elect Knight does not always make one in this Proceeding, but ſometimes ſtays at his Lodgings in the Caſtle, as did the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, *Anno* 34 *Eliz.* or elſe at ſome other convenient Station adjoining to the Chapter-Houſe, till he be ſent for in thither, to receive Inveſtiture with the Surcoat, as the Duke of *Montmorency* did, and other elect Knights, *Anno* 14 *Eliz.* who went privately from the Sovereign's Lodgings, down to the Houſe of Mr. *French*, (then one of the Prebends,) and reſted in the Parlour, until they were ſent

for: Sometimes the Knight elect goes privately into the East-Isle of the Chappel behind the High Altar, and there remains till called in, as did the Duke of *Monmouth*, *Anno* 15 *Car.* II.

If the Sovereign be present at the Installation, the Knights-Companions proceed next after the Knights elect, according to the order of their Stalls; but if the Sovereign's Lieutenant, then his Assistants go in their Places; as at the Installation of the Earl of *Shrewsbury* and Lord *Hunsdon*, *Anno* 3 *Eliz.* makes plain, the proceeding being ordered after this manner.

1. Vergers.
2. Alms-Knights.
3. Officers of Arms.
4. Elect-Knights.
5. Assistants to the Lieutenants.
6. Officers of the Order.
7. Earl of *Arundel*, Lieutenant.

If the Installation be dispatched by Commissioners, then the three inferior Officers of the Order immediately follow the Knight elect, and proceed next before the Commissioners, and they were thus marshalled at the Installation of the Earl of *Northampton*, *Anno* 5 *Car.* I.

1. The Earls Servants.
2. Alms-Knights.
3. Prebends.
4. Heralds.
5. Elect-Knights.
6. Officers of the Order.
7. The Sovereign's Commissioners.

Yet *Anno* 16 *Eliz.* at the Installation of the Earls of *Pembrook* and *Derby*, we find the Officers did precede the elect Knights, but it was through inadvertency; at the Installation of the Earl of *Northampton*, some Question and Debate arose, concerning the precedency of these three Officers, in this proceeding, where it was at length concluded, that from the Castle to the Chappel, they shou'd proceed before the Commissioners; but in returning from the Chappel to the Castle, they shou'd follow.

We

We preſume the Queſtion, (whatſoever it was) chanced not to be propounded, till the proceeding was ready to paſs on, and then ſtarted on a ſudden, becauſe the Heralds (as the Annals note,) did not quickly diſcypher the matter, that it proceeded more from ſurprize, than want of Ability to reſolve.

This determination which took Place, was barely grounded upon Conjecture, and if ſeriouſly conſidered, will appear diſconſonant to Precedents and Practice, both before and ſince; where all returns are marſhalled anſwerable to their ſetting forth, unleſs the Condition of any Perſon in the mean time ſuffer a Mutation.

It's obſervable, that when Inſtallation paſs by Commiſſioners only, theſe three inferior Officers wear their Robes, but bear not the Enſigns of their Office in the Proceeding. And this ſeems to be deduced from particular Injunctions, laid down in the Conſtitutions belonging to the Officers of the Order, which appoint Garter and Black-Rod to bear the Enſigns of their Offices at the Feaſt of St. *George*, when the Sovereign or his Deputy ſhall be preſent; whence it may be inferred, that if either chance to be abſent, they are under no obligation to bear them: For at the Inſtallations of *Frederick*, King of *Denmark*, and *John Caſimire*, Count Palatine of the Rhine, *Anno* 25 *Eliz.* no Enſigns were born by the Officers; and ſo was it practiſed the Year after, at the Inſtallations of the Earl of *Rutland* and Lord *Cobham*, as the Red-Book of Order plainly ſets forth. But if the Sovereign himſelf be preſent, or that he conſtitute a Lieutenant in his ſtead, the Regiſter then carries the Red-Book, and the Garter and the Black-Rod bear each of them their Rods. It is remarkable, that in every proceeding to Inſtallation, by Lieutenant, or Commiſſioners, the Garter carries the Sovereign's Commiſſion in his Hand before them to the Chapter-Houſe. At the Inſtallation of the Earls of *Derby* and *Moreton*, the Officers of the Order proceeded before the Knights to the Chapter-Houſe, not only without the Enſigns of their Office, but their Heads covered; and the reporter of this Inſtallation gives this for a reaſon; becauſe there was then neither the Sovereign, nor his Lieutenant, repreſenting the King's Perſon, preſent.

The

The Sovereign ſometimes being willing to confer additional Honours to ſome elect Knights, hath appointed their Inſtallation at ſuch time as he perſonally ſolemnized the Feaſt of St. *George*, as he did at the Inſtallation and Election of *Philip* King of *Caſtile*, *Anno* 22 *Hen.* VII. which for its memorableneſs, and mixt proceeding on Horſe-back, we ſhall inſert in this Place: He paſſed from the Sovereign's Lodging in the Caſtle, to the South-Door of St. *George's-Chappel*, and was thus ordered.

1. Knights according to their Degrees.
2. Lords after their Degrees.
3. Knights-Companions in their whole Habit, bearing Company with ſome of the Knights of the Order of *Joyſon d' Or*.
4. Prelate of the Order.
5. Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*.
6. The *Spaniſh* Ambaſſador.
7. *Joyſon d' Or*, King of Arms, in Coat of Arms.
8. Garter King of Arms, in his Coat of Arms.
9. The Sword.
10. *Philip* King of *Caſtile*.
11. The Prince.
12. King *Henry* VII. Sovereign of the Order.

Anno 19 *Jac.* I. was another inſtance at the Feaſt of St. *George*, when the Sovereign, with ſeveral Knights-Companions, proceeded alſo to the Chapel, at the perſonal Inſtallation of *Frederick*, Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*; we might add ſeveral other Examples, but ſhall only mention that of the perſonal appearance of King *Charles* II. at the grand Feaſt of St. *George*, held next after his happy Reſtoration, whereat twelve elect Knights were inſtalled. At this Solemnity of Inſtallation, the Sovereign proceeds in full Robes, having the Sword of State born before him by a Nobleman not of the Order, his Trainbearers, *&c.* following the Sovereign's Lieutenant and his Aſſiſtants, as alſo the Commiſſioners proceed in full Robes, which is mention'd, *Anno* 31 *Henry* VIII. when the Earl of *Arundel* and his Aſſiſtants inſtalled, the Lord *Ruſſel* and two other elect Knights, but the Sovereign's Lieutenant only

only hath his Train carried up, which is usually perform'd by some of his own Gentlemen.

The Processional way (if beginning in the Presence-Chamber,) is from thence in the upper Ward of the Castle, and through the other Wards in at the Cloyster Door, and so to the Chapter-House; but if from the Dean's House, they go only through the Cloysters, into which there is an immediate Passage from the Deanry: The proceeding having entred the East Door of St. *George*'s Chapel, and past by the Chapter-House Door, makes a stand in the North Isle; while first the Officers of the Order, next the Knights-Commissioners, or else the Knights-Assistants, and the Sovereign's Lieutenant; or lastly the Knights-Companions, and the Sovereign with the Sword born before him, pass into the Chapter-House, but the Knight or Knights elect do not enter, but as they come in at the Chapel-Door, they fall off on the left Hand into the East Isle behind the high Altar, and there repose themselves, (on Chairs or Stools, with Cushions purposely prepared,) until they are called into the Chapter-House. This hath generally been the Custom, of which many Examples might be produced, but in respect to great Personages they have been sometimes (though rarely) admitted into the Chapter-House, with the Sovereign or his Lieutenant, among whom *Philip* of *Castile* and *Leon*, *Anno* 22 *Henry* VII. and Prince *Henry*, *Anno* 1 *Jac.* I. the latter was led in by the Sovereign's Lieutenant, when four other elect Knights installed with him sat till they receiv'd their Summons to enter.

Sometime the Sovereign and Knights-Companions wav'd going to the Chapter-House, and pass'd immediately into the Choir, as did King *James* *Anno* 9. when *Charles* Duke of *York* and others were installed; the like did King *Charles* I. but then a Chapter was held in the Privy-Chamber, before the proceeding set forward; and in the former instance, when the proceeding came as far as the East End of the Chapel, the Duke of *York*, *&c.* with *Norroy* before them, went out of the proceeding into the Chapter-House, and there reposed, while the Sovereign proceeded on to the South Door of the Chapel, and thence into the Choir.

The Ceremonies perform'd in the Chapter-Houſe.

§ 5. After the Lieutenant's entrance into the Chapter-Houſe, and opening the Chapter; Garter, with three Reverences, preſents firſt the Commiſſioners of Lieutenancy to hold the Feaſt, next that of Inſtallation, to the Lieutenant, (or if the Inſtallation paſs'd by Commiſſioners, then only the Commiſſion of Inſtallation to the Senior Commiſſioner,) which being receiv'd, he delivers it to the Regiſter of the Order, who forthwith Reads it; for to him this Duty belongs, as is recorded in the Black-Book of the Order, on occaſion of Garter's reading the Commiſſion for Inſtallation of Sir *Thomas Brandon*, *Anno* 22 *Henry* VII. the Regiſter being then abſent.

When the Regiſter hath read the Commiſſions, he returns them to the Lieutenant, (or Commiſſioners,) and he again to the Garter, as at the Inſtallation of the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, *Anno* 34 *Eliz.* If the Sovereign be preſent, the Chancellor acquaints him the Knights elect are without, otherwiſe the Lieutenant, and Aſſiſtants, (or Commiſſioners) conſult touching the calling in, and receiving them, and Garter is uſually employed in this Service; who, with all due reſpect, compliments and conducts him to the Chapter-Houſe Door: But in the inſtance of the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland* aforeſaid, Garter went to their Lodgings, and having delivered his Meſſage, they forthwith repaired to the Chapter-Houſe, their Train attending them to the Door: At the Inſtallation of *Francis* Duke of *Montmorency*, the Earl of *Leiceſter*, then the Sovereign's Lieutenant, as an evidence of ſingular reſpect, ſent from the Chapter two of the four Aſſiſtants aſſigned him, who taking Garter, and the Officers of Arms before them, led him thence between them to the Chapter-Houſe.

When there are two or more elect Knights, that wait in the Eaſt Iſle, expecting to be called in, Garter firſt conducts the Senior by Election to the Chapter-Houſe Door, and ſo the reſt in their ſeveral Orders, as in 14 *Jac.* I. by the Earl of *Rutland*, Sir *George Villars*, and the Viſcount *Liſle*; and ſo again 13 *Car.* II. As ſoon as Garter hath conducted the elect Knight to the Chapter-Houſe Door,

Door, two of the Commiſſioners, (when the Inſtallation is performed by Commiſſioners,) or two of the Knights-Aſſiſtants, (when by the Sovereign's Lieutenant,) or two of the Senior Knights, (if the Sovereign himſelf be preſent,) receive him without, who is immediately conducted from the Chapter-Houſe Door, up to the Sovereign, (his Lieutenant, or Commiſſioners,) to whom he makes humble Reverence; when the Lieutenant, (or Senior Commiſſioners,) in a ſhort Speech, publiſhes the effect of his Commiſſion, and declares to him the Sovereign's bounty and ready kindneſs, in a full admittance into this Honourable Society, which the elect Knight very humbly acknowledges and accepts. When *Philip* King of *Caſtile* and *Leon* was inſtalled in Perſon, *Anno* 22 *Henry* VII. the Sovereign being preſent roſe from his Throne, and gave him Information of the Statutes and Ceremonies of the Order, and how he was bound by them; to all which he freely and readily aſſented.

Theſe Ceremonies of receiving an elect Knight being over, he diſrobes himſelf of his upper Garment, then the Surcoat and Kirtle is taken from the Table, with which he is inveſted; and during this Ceremony, the following Words of Admonition, entred at the end of King *Hen.* VIII's Book of Engliſh Statutes, are read or ſpoken.

Take this Robe of Purple, to the encreaſe of your Honour, and in Token, or Sign, of the moſt Honourable Order you have receiv'd; wherewith you being defended, may be bold not only ſtrong to Fight, but alſo to offer your ſelf to ſhed your Blood for Chriſt's Faith, the Liberties of the Church, and the juſt and neceſſary defence of them that are oppreſſed and needy.

After this, his Sword is cloſe girt about him over his Surcoat, by the Commiſſioners, (or the Aſſiſtants to the Lieutenant, or ſome of the Knights-Companions,) and ſometimes in the way of aſſiſtance, Garter hath done this Service; and as ſoon as the Ceremony is over, the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, proceeds into the Choir, leaving the elect Knights behind them: The Hood was heretofore put on in the Chapter-Houſe, (for ſo the Statutes of King *Henry* VIII. do appoint,) after the elect Knight hath been inveſted with his Surcoat, and before he proceeded to his Inſtallation; but of late, becauſe it muſt be

taken

taken off again in the Choir, and laid aſide, that the Mantle may be put on, it hath been eſteemed a ſort of diminution in the Inveſtiture to take off any part of the Habit before the whole Inveſtiture be compleated; ſo that in the beginning of the Reign of King *James* I. it was judged more convenient that the Hood ſhould be carried on the Cuſhion by Garter into the Choir, together with the Mantle and Collar, and not be put on till after Inveſtiture with the Mantle; and thus it was obſerved at the Feaſts of St. *George*, 13, 15, and 23 *Car.* II. And though anciently it was laid over the left Shoulder, and ſo worn upon all Occaſions, yet *Anno* 2 and 3 *Phil.* and *Mar.* the wearing it ſo being taken notice of to obſcure the Eſcutcheon of St. *George*, embroidered on the ſame Shoulder of the Mantle, it was decreed in a Chapter held the ſame Year, 22 of *April*, that for the future the Knights-Companions ſhould wear their Hoods on their right Shoulders, to the end that the Eſcutcheon might be the better ſeen and appear.

Nevertheleſs, there was a Queſtion moved 12 *Jac.* I. whether the uſage of wearing the Hood ſhould not be reſtored to the left Shoulder, but it ſeems it was over-ruled; and 23 *Car.* II. ſome of the Knights-Companions imagining it moſt proper to wear their Hoods on their left Shoulders, ran into that error, but upon better information the next Morning, altered them to the right. To Foreign Princes, there is liberty given by King *Hen.* VIII's Statutes to receive, if they pleaſe, their Habit wholly within the Chapter-Houſe, before they enter their Stalls; by which it appears that this was the Cuſtom in times paſt; an inſtance whereof we have in *Philip* King of *Caſtile*, *Anno* 22 *Henry* VII. who was entirely inveſted in the Chapter-Houſe with the Garter, Surcoat, Mantle, Hood, and Collar; the Sovereign himſelf putting his Hand to his Inveſtiture with the Mantle. Hence King *Philip*, Grandſon to the aforeſaid King of *Caſtile*, was inveſted with the whole Habit of the Order before he aſſumed the Stall; in *Philip* and *Mary*'s proceeding to the Chapel, he receiv'd his Inveſtiture within the Weſt Door, and there the Regiſter delivered the Mantle to the Earls of *Derby* and *Pembrook*, who kiſſing it, preſented it to the Queen, who, aſſiſted by the ſaid Earls, perſonally inveſted the King therewith: Next Garter gave the Collar to the

Earls

Earls of *Arundel* and *Pembrook*, who likewiſe preſented it to the Queen, and ſhe thereon put it about King *Philip*'s Neck; and immediately the Knights-Companions, having robed themſelves within the Chapel Door, proceeded before the King and Queen, who with joined Hands paſſed into the Choir, where the Queen led him to the Sovereign's Stall, which aſcending, they both ſat therein. But as the aforeſaid Statute leaves this to the pleaſure of the Stranger Prince, and was permitted only for gaining Time, ſo none, who have receiv'd perſonal Inſtallation at *Windſor* ſince, have been fully inveſted before they entered the Choir. For inſtance, *Francis*, Duke *de Montmorency*, 14 *Eliz.* and *Frederick*, Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*, 10 *Jac.* I. were both inveſted with their Surcoats only in the Chapter-Houſe, but they receiv'd their Mantles, Hoods, and Collars, in their Stalls, after they had taken their Oaths.

The proceeding into the Choir.

§ 6. The Knight elect, habited as before, proceeds from the Chapter-Houſe along the North Iſle, and enters the Weſt Door of the Choir in ſolemn Order; but his Place in this proceeding is changed, for here he is led between two Knights-Companions. This is noted in the Black-Book to be the Order wherein *Albra Vaſques d'Almadea*, Earl of *Averence*, and two others, proceeded to their Inſtallations, 24 *Henry* VI. And notwithſtanding the Statutes of Inſtitution, and thoſe made by King *Henry* V. are ſilent in the Order of this Proceeding; yet for an elect Knight to be led to his Stall between two fellow Knights, is no modern Ceremony; ſince we likewiſe find, that the Viſcount *Bourchier*, 30 *Henry* VI. paſt to his Inſtalment between the Lord *Haſtings* and Lord *Beauchamp*. But the Order of proceeding is preciſely ſet down in *Henry* VIII's Statutes, *viz.* *That the elect Knight, attended by his Gentlemen and Servants, ſhall be led between two other Knights-Companions, the Officers of the Order going before them.* And this has been the conſtant Practice at all Inſtallations ſince; the Knight elect proceeding, either between two of the Knights-Commiſſioners, when there hath been no Lieutenant, or between two of the Knights

Knights Assistants, where a Lieutenant was constituted; or lastly between the two Senior Knights-Companions, the Sovereign being present: But when there hath been three Commissioners named, then the two Senior Commissioners take the Knight elect between them, and the Junior Knight-Commissioner proceeds before them; which was observed at the Instalment of the Earls of *Essex* and *Ormond*, and Sir *Christopher Hatton*, 30 *Eliz.*

In all cases where the Sovereign is present at an Installation, after the custom of investing with the Collar in the Chapter-House was left off, it is generally to be observed, that as soon as the Investiture with the Surcoat is finished, the Sovereign passes from the Chapter-House into the Choir, with the whole proceeding before him, leaving the elect Knight behind; and when he and the Knights-Companions have taken their Stalls, the two Senior Knights-Companions, by the Sovereign's verbal Directions, descend from their Stalls, and stand under their Banners, whilst the Arms-Knights, but not the Prebends, Officers of Arms, and the three inferior Officers of the Order, pass out of the Choir, and proceed before them to the Chapter-House, from whence they introduce the elect Knight into the Choir to his Installation; but if there be more than one Knight installed, then the two next Senior Knights descend, and so the next, till all the elect Knights are conducted in: And this course is likewise observed when a Lieutenant is constituted, and hath been generally so practised since the Investiture with the Collar was performed in the Choir; and particularly at the Installations of the Duke of *Lenox*, the Earls of *Pembrook*, *Marr*, and *Southampton*, 1 *Jac.* I. and of the Duke of *Holstein*, and the Earl of *Northampton*, 3 *Jac.* I. In this proceeding to Installation, the Register usually carries a Book of the New Testament, for the elect Knight to take his Oath on, as likewise the Oath it self, fairly written on Parchment: Garter bears his Mantle till he arrives at his Stall; and King *Henry* VIII's Statutes place this Service upon some of the Knights-Companions likewise; but it never appears that it was ever performed by any of them. 'Tis probable, that about the time when this Injunction passed, it was the Custom for Garter to bear the Mantle on his Arm; for so it was at the Installation of the Lord *Russel*, and others, 31 *Henry* VIII. but it was

nor

not long after, that the laying it on a Velvet Cuſhion began. The great Collar of the Order was likewiſe laid upon the Cuſhion, at the Inſtallation of Sir *Henry Sidney*, 5 *Eliz.* the Earl of *Shrewsbury*, 34 *Eliz.* and in this manner born before the Knights elect, 13 *Car.* II. before the Duke of *Monmouth*, 15 *Car.* II. and before the Duke of *Albermarle*, 23 *Car.* II. with theſe the Hood, heretofore put on in the Chapter-Houſe, hath of late been laid on the Cuſhion, and alſo the Book of Statutes, and ſo born by Garter before Prince *Henry*, 1 *Jac.* I. and *Frederick*, Elect or Palatine, 10 *Jac.* I. and before the Knights Inſtallation, 13 *Car.* II. and ſince.

And here it is to be obſerved, that when Garter bears the Ornaments and Enſigns on the Cuſhion before an elect Knight, or a Proctor, he is always placed between the Regiſter and Black-Rod in the proceeding: Laſtly, in this proceeding the Knight elect goeth Bare-headed, holding his Cap in his Hand; and ſo did the Duke of *Albermarle*, 23 *Car.* II. for it hath been thought incongruous to the Order of Inveſtiture, as is before obſerved of the Hood, to put on any part of the Habit, or other Ornaments, that muſt be taken off again, before the Inveſtiture is compleated; and the proper Place for putting on the Cap is not till all the other is finiſhed.

The Ceremonies of Inſtallation.

§ 7. When the proceeding hath entered the Choir, the Alms-Knights, and Officers of Arms, make their Obeyſances toward the High Altar, and the Sovereign's Royal Stall, in the manner hereafter deſcribed; then they proceed to the Steps before the Altar, and divide themſelves; next the Officers of the Order make the ſame Reverence; and laſtly, the two Commiſſioners, or Knights Aſſiſtants, or Knights-Companions, and Knights-elect, all three together. After this the Officers of the Order turn aſide toward the Stall deſigned for the elect Knight, and approaching near it, ſtand below in the Choir, whilſt the Commiſſioners, or Aſſiſtants, or Knights-Companions, paſs into the lower Row of Stalls, ſometimes called the middle Row, directly under the deſigned Stall, leading the elect Knight with them, who in this Place takes his

Oath, called in the Annals, the ſacred Oath of the Order of the Garter; during which time he ought to ſtand between the two Knights-Companions who brought him thither, as at the Inſtallation of Prince *Henry*, 1 *Jac.* I. and when the Earl of *Shrewsbury* was inſtalled, 34 *Eliz.* 'tis obſerved, that the Senior Commiſſioner firſt entered the lower row of Stalls; but 31 *Henry* VIII. at the Inſtallation of the Lord *Ruſſel*, and others, the Junior Aſſiſtant went up firſt. The Knight elect being thus placed, the Regiſter of the Order ſtanding before them, but below in the Choir, reads the Oath; for it is part of his Duty to adminiſter the ſame: And in this ſolemn Ceremony, the New Teſtament, whereon the Oath is taken, generally opened in ſome Place of the Goſpels, is indifferently held by one of the three inferior Officers of the Order, or ſometimes the Regiſter hath held it, as at the Inſtallation of the Earl of *Derby*, 16 *Eliz.* the Earl of *Rutland*, and Lord *Cobham*, 26 *Eliz.* At other times the Garter hath held it, as 5 *Eliz.* when the Earl of *Northumberland* took his Oath; and 10 *Car.* I. at the Inſtallation of the Earl of *Moreton*: But when the Earl of *Shrewsbury* was Sworn, 34 *Eliz.* the Uſher of the Black Rod performed this Office.

Whilſt the Oath is adminiſtring, the elect Knight holds his right Hand on the Holy Evangeliſts; and when the Regiſter hath pronounced the Words, he immediately Reſponſes, *I will, ſo help me God*, and then takes off his Hand reverently, kiſſing the Book; and by this Ceremony ſeals his Obligation to the Statutes of this moſt Noble Order. The Ceremony uſed when *Philip*, King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, took the Oath, which was done in the Chapter-Houſe at *Windſor*, 22 *Henry* VII. he laid his Hand on the Canon, under which was placed the Book of Statutes of the Order by the Prelate, to whom it was delivered by the Regiſter, and having repeated the Words of the Oath, and reverently kiſſed all thoſe things by which he Swore, he took a Pen from the Prelate's Hand, and Signed the Oath he had taken, and deliver'd it to the Sovereign then preſent.

The Form of the ancient Oath appointed by the Statutes of Inſtitution, to be taken by a Knight-Subject, was very ſhort, but comprehenſive: *That he ſhould well and faithfully obſerve, to the utmoſt of his Power, all the Statutes*

Statutes of the Order; and this was all the Oath taken by the firſt Founders, and to which they alſo affixed their Seals; and ſo it continued without alteration or addition, till towards the End of King *Edward* IV's Reign; and then, at a Chapter held at the King's Wardrobe in *London*, it was decreed, That all the Knights-Companions then alive, and all ſuch as ſhould afterwards be admitted into the Order, ſhould be obliged to ſubjoin the Words following: *That they wou'd aid, ſupport, and defend, with all their Power*, the Royal College of St. *George*, within the Caſtle of *Windſor*, *as well in its Poſſeſſions, as all other things whatſoever*; which being drawn in form, was enter'd in the Black Book; but has ſince receiv'd many alterations: And there is an inſtance, 1 *Eliz.* when the Oath has been diſpenſed with; as by the Duke of *Norfolk*, and others, in regard the Rites and Ceremonies of Religion were then altered, and no new form of an Oath ſettled, ſo that they only obliged themſelves by Promiſe to obſerve ſuch Statutes and Orders as ſhould be decreed in the next Council of the Order, which was ſoon after ſettled, and recorded in the Red Book of the Order, and is the Oath taken by a Knight-Subject at this Day.

You being Choſen to be one of the Honourable Company of this moſt Noble Order of the Garter, ſhall Promiſe and Swear, by the Holy Evangeliſts, by you here touched, that, wittingly or willingly, you ſhall not break any Statute of the ſaid Order, or any Articles in them contained; the ſame being agreeable, and not repugnant to the Laws of Almighty God, and the Laws of this Realm, as far forth as to you belongeth and appertaineth: So help you God, and this Holy Word.

As ſoon as the Knight elect hath taken the Oath, he is led to his appointed Stall, through the Entrance next beneath it, and there placed before it. In the Interim, Garter advancing into the lower row of Stalls, to the Place where the elect Knight ſtood when he took the Oath, preſents from thence the Mantle, Collar, and Book of Statutes, to thoſe who led him, who inveſt the Knight elect firſt with the Mantle, by putting it on his Shoulders. There are ſome Examples where the elect Knight hath been inveſted before he went up to his Stall,

as in the caſe of the Earl of *Northumberland*, 5 *Eliz.* *Francis*, Duke *de Montmorency*, and others, 14 *Eliz.* the Earls of *Dunbar* and *Montgomery*, 6 *Jac.* I. and the Prince of *Wales*, 14 *Car.* I. among which may be numbered thoſe inſtalled at the Grand Feaſt of St. *George*, 13 *Car.* II. but this happen'd through a vaſt Concourſe of People in the Chapel, that prevented the due Order.

In the Red Book it is obſerved, that the Inveſtiture with the Mantle and Collar, hath been ſometimes performed by the Black Rod; as at the Inſtallation of the Earl of *Northampton*, 5 *Car.* I. the Lord Treaſurer *Weſton*, the Earls of *Exeter* and *Lindſey*, and the Marquiſs of *Hamilton*, 6 *Car.* I. Nevertheleſs, this is to be underſtood as this Officers Aſſiſtance to the Knights-Companions, whoſe Office it only is, and no otherwiſe. Whilſt the Ceremony of Inveſtiture with the Mantle is performing, the Words of Admonition proper thereto, are pronounced as follows.

Take this Mantle of Heavenly Colours, in Sign and Token of the moſt Honourable Order you have receiv'd, and to the increaſe of your Honour, ſigned and marked as you ſee, with a red Eſcutcheon of our Lord's Croſs, to the intent that you, being always defended by the Virtue and Strength thereof, may paſs through your Enemies, and them alſo overcome and vanquiſh, ſo that at the laſt, for your worthy and approved Acts, you may, after this Temporal Chivalry, come to Eternal Triumphant Joys in Heaven.

But at the Inſtallation of King *Charles* II. they receiv'd ſome alteration, and were put in the following Form.

Receive this Robe of Heavenly Colour, the Livery of this moſt excellent Order, in augmentation of thy Honour, enobled with the Shield and Red Croſs of our Lord, by whoſe Power thou may'ſt ſafely pierce Troops of thy Enemies, and be over them ever Victorious; and being in this temporal Warfare Glorious in egregious and heroick Actions, thou may'ſt obtain Eternal and Triumphant Joy.

Next, the Commiſſioners, Aſſiſtants, or Knights-Companions, lay the Hood on the Knight's right Shoulder over the Mantle, and bringing the Tippet athwart his Breaſt, tuck it under the Girdle, at which his Sword hangs:

hangs: And laſtly tye the Collar about his Shoulder, over his Mantle and Hood; and at this part of the Inveſtiture, the following Words of Admonition are likewiſe pronounced.

To the encreaſe of your Honour, and in Token of the Honourable Order you have receiv'd; take this Collar about your Neck, with the Image of the Holy Martyr, and Chriſt's Knight, St. George, *by whoſe aid you being defended, may paſs through the Proſperities and Adverſities of this World, that having here the Victory, as well of your Ghoſtly as Bodily Enemies, you may not only receive the Glory and Renown of Temporal Chivalry, but alſo at the laſt, the endleſs and everlaſting reward of Victory.*

This Form of Words receiv'd likewiſe alteration when King *Charles* II. was to be inſtalled, to the Tenor following.

Wear this Collar about thy Neck, adorn'd with the Image of the Bleſſed Martyr and Soldier of Chriſt, St. George, *by whoſe Imitation provoked, thou may'ſt ſo overpaſs both proſperous and adverſe Encounters, that having ſtoutly vanquiſhed thy Enemies, both of Body and Soul, thou may'ſt not only receive the Praiſe of this tranſient Combat, but be Crowned with the Palm of eternal Victory.*

Antiently at the Solemnity of Inſtallation, when the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant was preſent, the elect Knight, after he had been inveſted with the Mantle in his Stall, was immediately conducted out of the Choir, back to the Chapter-Houſe, where the Sovereign, or Lieutenant, uſed to remain till his return, there to receive the Collar of the Order from one of them, which done, he is ſaid to have receiv'd the entire Poſſeſſion of his Habit. This is contained in King *Henry* VIII's Statutes, and appears to have been the Practice about that Time, as in the caſe of the Lord *Mountjoy*, and others, 18 *Hen.* VIII. and ſeveral others after, in the 1 and 3 *Edw.* VI. and the 3, 5, and 14 *Eliz.* The Proceeding back to the Chapter-Houſe on this occaſion, was much after the manner of what is before mention'd, except, that here the new inſtalled Knight took his Place according to the Dignity of

his Stall. But 'tis obſervable, that when the Sovereign's Lieutenant remained in the Chapter-Houſe, while the elect Knight proceeded to his Inſtallation, the Uſher of the Black-Rod ſtayed behind to attend the Lieutenant; and as ſoon as the Inveſtiture with the Collar was over, the Lieutenant proceeded to the Choir in the Rear, and the new inſtalled Knight in Place according to his Stall, as in the caſe of the Lord *Ruſſel*, and others, 31 *Hen.* VIII. and the Marquiſs of *Dorſet*, and others, 1 *Edw.* VI. The Proceeding having entered the Choir, and the Lieutenant and Knights-Companions taken their Seats, then the uſual Ceremonies, the Service of the Church began.

But when the Inſtallation was performed by Commiſſioners, the Collar of the Order was laid on the Cuſhion with the Mantle, and born before the elect Knight to his Stall, where, after his Inveſtiture with the Mantle and Hood, he receiv'd Inveſtiture with the Collar alſo, of which there are ſeveral Examples in the time of *Phil.* and *Mar.* and Queen *Eliz.* In like manner, at all Inſtallations ſince, where the Sovereign has been preſent, the ancient cuſtom of returning to the Chapter-Houſe being laid aſide, the Knights-Companions, who led the elect Knights to their Stalls, did there inveſt them with their Collars alſo; as the Earl of *Rutland*, Sir *George Villars*, and the Viſcount *Liſle*, 14 *Jac.* I. and the Earl of *Suffolk*, 4 *Car.* I. and hath been thus obſerved at all Inſtallations ſince, the Sovereign preſent.

So ſoon as the Inveſtiture with the Mantle, Hood, and Collar is over, thoſe appointed deliver the Book of Statutes to the new inveſted Knight, which was obſerved to the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, 34 *Eliz.* the Earl of *Rutland*, Sir *George Villars*, and the Viſcount *Liſle*, 14 *Jac.* I. and ſo generally to all elect Knights ſince. This Book the Knight is to keep ſafe in his own Cuſtody, for his Inſtruction in the Laws and Ceremonies of this moſt Noble Order. They likewiſe give him the Black Velvet Cap adorned with Plumes of white Feathers, and this in particular was obſerved to be the laſt Ceremony performed at the Inſtallation of King *Charles* II.

All things relating to the full Inveſtiture being ended, there remains only to compleat this great Ceremony, the Inſtallation it ſelf, which is performed in the manner following. The new inveſted Knight ſtanding before his Stall,

Stall, and turning toward the High Altar, makes humble Obeyſance that way, and then toward the Sovereign, or if abſent, toward his Stall; which done, the Commiſſioners, Knights-Aſſiſtants, or Knights-Companions, receive and embrace him with great Civility, as their Fellow and Companion, and ſet him down in his aſſigned Stall with Profeſſions of Eſteem, and Wiſhes for his Honour and Happineſs. Of this Ceremony, there is a notable Inſtance at the Inſtallation of *Philip*, King of *Caſtile*, 22 *Henry* VII. where the Sovereign perſonally introduced him to his Stall, and there placed him, at which time there was a certain Form of Words pronounced relating to the elect Knight's Seſſion, and Act of Inſtallation, no leſs than at his Inveſtiture, but the ſame are not repeated.

The Order to be obſerved when two or more Knights are inſtalled in one Day.

§ 8. In this caſe it ſeems to have been the ancient Practice, when the Ceremony has been perform'd by two Commiſſioners, or two Knights-Aſſiſtants, that as ſoon as they had finiſhed all the Ceremonies due to the Senior of them, they left him poſſeſt of his Stall, and forthwith returned to the Chapter-Houſe in the uſual manner, and thence conducted the next Senior elect Knight, and ſo of the reſt: So it was at the Inſtallation of *Albro Vaſques d'Almadea*, Earl of *Averenches*, the Lord *Beauchamp*, and Sir *Thomas Hoo*, in the time of *Henry* VI. and ſo of the Earl of *Huntington*, 1 *Edw.* VI. when the two Aſſiſtants, after they had inveſted and inſtalled the ſaid Earl, returned to the Chapter-Houſe for the Lord *la War*, and ſo for the Lord *Cobham*, and Sir *William Herbert*. In like manner, when the Commiſſioners had given the Proctor to *Emanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*, Poſſeſſion of his Principal's Stall, 1 and 2 *Phil.* and *Mar.* they proceeded back for *William* Lord *Howard*; ſo by the Earl of *Pembrock*, 16 *Eliz.* when they had firſt inſtalled the Earl of *Derby*, and by the Earl of *Cumberland*, after the Earl of *Shrewsbury* had been inſtalled.

When the Sovereign hath nominated three Commiſſioners, they have returned altogether to fetch in the other Knights ſingly, that were to be inſtalled, and alternately

changed their Places in the proceeding to the ſeveral Inſtallations, one of them always going ſingle before; as at the Inſtallation of the Earls of *Eſſex* and *Ormond*, and Sir *Chriſtopher Hatton*, 30 *Eliz.* when the Earl of *Worceſter*, the Lords *Hunſdon* and *Grey*, were Commiſſioners: And if the Lieutenant had four Aſſiſtants aſſigned him, which was neceſſary when many Knights were to be inſtalled, the order of their Inſtallation hath been as follows.

Firſt, Two of the Senior Knights-Aſſiſtants conducted the Senior elect Knight to his Inſtallation, and the other two Aſſiſtants proceeded with the ſecond elect Knight; the former then took the third elect Knight, and ſo alternately changed till all were inſtalled: As at the Inſtallation of *Francis*, Duke *de Montmorency*, and others, 14 *Eliz.* And the like manner of alternate change is obſerved if four Commiſſioners be conſtituted, as at the Inſtallation of *Frederick*, King of *Denmark*, and *John*, Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*, 25 *Eliz.* where the King's Proxy was conducted into the Choir between the Earl of *Leiceſter* and the Lord *Hunſdon*, the two Senior Commiſſioners; and the Prince, between the Earl of *Huntington* and the Lord *Charles Howard*, the two Junior Commiſſioners.

But ſome have been of Opinion, that the Commiſſioners named to this Employment, ought not to divide the Duty, and part of them to Inſtal one, and part the other, and by ſuch an alternative to diſpatch the Ceremony, as in former Caſes; but all jointly aſſiſt at each Inſtallation: Of which Opinion there is an Inſtance at the Inſtallation of the Earl of *Salisbury*, and the Viſcount *Bindon*, 4 *Jac.* I. where the Earl having been brought into the Choir, inveſted and inſtalled by the Earls of *Nottingham* and *Suffolk*, the two Senior Commiſſioners, the other two Commiſſioners who were left behind in the Chapter-Houſe, to conduct the Viſcount to his Stall, remembring that all four were joint Commiſſioners, apprehended that the Earl was not legally inſtalled, becauſe they, as Co-partners in the Commiſſion, had not aſſiſted; and this Opinion being debated, prevailed ſo far, that it was agreed to be imparted to the Earl of *Salisbury*, who ſubmitted to deſcend into the lower Seats before his Stall, and there all four Commiſſioners gave him his Oath again, then led him to his

Stall,

Stall, and a ſecond Time inveſted and inſtalled him; and ſo of the Viſcount *Bindon*.

But this Method was not only new, but different from former Practice, as in all the caſes before recited; and beſides, where the Sovereign hath authorized his Lieutenant to perform this Ceremony, and appointed ſome of the Knights-Companions to aſſiſt, they, and not the Lieutenant, have done the Duty belonging to Inſtallation, that part of it of inveſting with the Collar in the Chapter-Houſe, the whole Duty at the Inſtallation of Prince *Henry* excepted. And 'tis to be farther obſerved, that the foregoing caſe of the joint Aſſiſtance in the Inſtallation of the Earl of *Salisbury*, was thought ſo little Eſſential, or worthy of becoming a Precedent, that at the very next Feaſt, when the Earls of *Dunbar* and *Montgomery* were inſtalled, 6 *Jac.* I. and four Commiſſioners appointed, the two Senior inſtalled the Earl of *Dunbar*, and the two Junior the Earl of *Montgomery*; and ſo again, 10 *Car.* I. by the Earls of *Danby* and *Moreton*. But laſtly, if the Sovereign be preſent, and conſequently the Knights-Companions perform this Ceremony, then there is generally ſo many of them as can go through the whole, without changing, after the manner uſed when done by Commiſſioners or Aſſiſtants; in which caſe the two Senior Knights-Companions deſcend from their Stalls, and paſſing thro' the Choir to the Chapter-Houſe with the Proceeding before them, conduct to his Inſtallation the eldeſt elect Knight; and having performed that whole Ceremony, return and take their Stalls, and ſo the reſt in due Order; as was practiſed at the Inſtallation of Prince *Henry*, and others, 1 *Jac.* I. and of the Earl of *Rutland*, 14 *Jac.* I. and at the grand Feaſt of St. *George*, 13 *Car.* II. but here the ſeparate proceeding with each ſingle Knight to and from the Chapter-Houſe, taking too much time, and the Day being far ſpent in the Ceremonies of the Dukes of *Ormond* and *Buckingham*; the Sovereign ordered, that with the next Proceeding, the reſt of the elect Knights, being eight, beſides two Proxies, ſhould all be introduced at once; ſo that each of them being placed before his Stall, took the Oath, receiv'd his Inveſtiture, and was led up to his Stall, and took Poſſeſſion of it by ſolemn Inſtallation.

And

And in regard ſo many Knights elect were introduced together, it was judged neceſſary, that their Mantles and Collars ſhould be likewiſe brought in the proceeding, and each elect Knight appointed one of the Gentlemen that attended him, to bear the Cuſhion whereon they were laid, before him to the Choir Door, where they held them in their Arms, till Garter in due order fetch'd them into the Choir: And here we may inſert this general Rule, that at all Inſtallations, where ſome of the elect Knights are not ſent for unto the Chapter-Houſe, to receive Inveſtiture with the Surcoat, before the Senior elect Knight hath been conducted to his Stall, but left to repoſe themſelves in the Eaſt Iſle of the Chappel, as hath often happened, the Knights Commiſſioners, or Aſſiſtants, on their return to the Chapter-Houſe, ſend Garter for the next Senior elect Knight, whom they receive at the Door thereof, and having inveſted him with his Surcoat, and girt his Sword about him, proceed with him to his Inſtallation in the uſual manner. And the ſame method is obſerved if there were more elect Knights to follow; and we find it 30 *Henry* VIII. 16, and 34, and 10 *Car.* I.

The Knight, or Knights, having now receiv'd a compleat Inſtallation, the Knights-Commiſſioners, Aſſiſtants, or Knights-Companions, with marks of Reſpect, take their leave of the laſt inſtalled Knight, and deſcending into the Choir, take their own Stalls; but the Senior Knight-Companion aſcends firſt: But obſerve, that if the Stalls of the Knights-Commiſſioners, Aſſiſtants, or Knights-Companions, be on the ſame ſide with the laſt inſtalled Knight, then they deſcend not into the Choir, but paſs directly to them along the Stalls, as in the 34 *Eliz.* The Ceremonies of Inſtallation being finiſhed, the Officers of Arms firſt, next the Alms-Knights, deſcend from the Steps of the Altar, and take their ſeveral Stations in the Choir; then one of the Prebends of the College, or, if the Sovereign be preſent, the Prelate, with the Serjeant of the Veſtry before him, is conducted to the Altar by the Verger of the Chappel, and there begins the Service appointed by the Church, which being ended, the Proceeding paſſes out of the Choir in uſual Order, either to the Preſence-Chamber, or the Lieutenants, or Commiſſioners Lodgings, as the Occaſion is.

The Offering of Gold and Silver.

§ 9. But if the Inſtallation be ſolemnized in the Morning, the Service of the Church having proceeded as far as the Offertory, two of the Prebends, appointed to recieve the Offering, are conducted to the Altar by their Verger, and firſt the Alms-Knights, then the Officers of Arms, aſcend the Steps of the Altar again, and ſtand in order as before. After which, Garter Summons down the Knights-Companions to the Offering, who deſcend into the Choir under their proper Stalls, as does the Sovereign's Lieutenant, who offers firſt for the Sovereign, he receiving the Bezant from the Senior Knight, and then returns to his Stall: And at this inſtant, was the uſual time heretofore for offering the Defunct Knights Atchievements, which was altered by King *James* I. as will be ſeen hereafter.

The Lieutenant, after a ſhort ſtay in his Stall, deſcends again, and proceeds up to the Altar, to make his own Offering of Gold and Silver, and then returns, as do the reſt of the Knights-Companions, including thoſe newly inſtalled, in their due order. But when the Inſtallation paſſes by Commiſſioners, there is then no Offering made for the Sovereign, but the Commiſſioners offer firſt, and after them the other Knights in due order.

The Ceremony of Offering at the Inſtallation of *Philip*, King of *Caſtile*, 22 *Henry* VII. is remarkable. He deſcended from his Stall into the Choir, and ſtanding before it, as the other Knights-Companions did, the Sovereign left his Royal Stall to proceed to the Offering, to which the King would have followed, but the Sovereign would not permit, obliging the King to proceed along with him, on his left Hand, though he deſired to perform his Duty as a Brother of the Order, ſo that they made their Offerings ſo near together, where, though the Sovereign had the Precedence, yet 'twas hardly obſervable.

Of the grand Dinner at the Inſtallation.

§ 10. On the Day of Inſtallation, there hath, from ancient Time, been appointed a Noble and Sumptuous Feaſt,

and

and though it was agreed on in a Chapter, 3 *Edward* VI. *That the Knights elect might, from thenceforth, be inſtalled by Commiſſion without a Feaſt*; yet after his Reign, we find the old cuſtom of a Feaſt at this Solemnity reſtored.

If the Sovereign appoint the Inſtallation to be when the Feaſt of St. *George* is alſo celebrated, and is himſelf perſonally preſent, the Feaſt is then kept at the Sovereign's Charge; and if in ſuch caſe he conſtitute a Lieutenant, then the Inſtallation Dinner is kept at the Charge of the Lieutenant; and is uſually prepared in ſome of the Sovereign's Lodgings in the Caſtle, but ſeldom in St. *George's* Hall; as was done by the Earl of *Arundel*, at the Inſtallation of the Earl of *Shrewsbury*, and the Lord *Hunſdon*, 3 *Eliz.* But when the Inſtallation is kept at any other time of the Year, than that of St *George's* Feaſt, then the new inſtalled Knights are at all the Expence; who generally have had the Dinner prepared in the Dean's Lodgings; however, be it where it will, the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, Commiſſioners, or Aſſiſtants, together with the new inſtalled Knights, proceed thither in full Robes; which is obſerved in the Inſtallation of 3 *Eliz.* above, to be according to the ancient Cuſtom. At the Inſtallation, 31 *Henry* VIII. the Sovereign's Lieutenant walked alone, after him his two Aſſiſtants, and laſtly the new inſtalled Knights.

The Lieutenant's Place at the Table is ſomewhat on the left Hand the Cloath of State, there ſat the Earl of *Arundel*, 3 *Eliz.* but the other four Knights-Companions, his two Aſſiſtants, and the two new inſtalled Knights, ſat toward the Table's End on both Sides, for that they could not well ſit all on a ſide. But of late Years, as at the Inſtallation, 5 *Car.* I. a Queſtion aroſe, whether the Lieutenant or Commiſſioners ſhould ſit at Dinner in their Habits, ſince the Power given them ſeemed to expire when the Knights were elected; (though unanimouſly allowed the new inſtalled Knights ought to do ſo,) and likewiſe Precedents quoted, as 29 *Henry* VIII. at the Inſtallation of the Lord *Cromwell*, where the Knights put off their Habits, and dined in their ordinary Apparel; and ſo of the Earl of *Rutland*, and the Lord *Cobham*, 26 *Eliz.* where the Commiſſioners did the ſame, and the new inſtalled Knights kept on only their Surcoats: But what followed on this Debate is not mention'd; but the gene-

ral

ral Practice at other Times hath been of keeping on the Habit till the Dinner is ended.

At the ſecond Courſe, called alſo ſecond Meſs, or ſecond Service, Garter, accompanied with the Officers of Arms, Proclaims the Stiles and Titles of Honour of the Sovereign (if he be perſonally, or by his Lieutenant, preſent,) in *Latin*, *French*, and *Engliſh*, and cries Largeſs thrice; next the Stiles of the new inſtalled Knights in *French*, or *Engliſh* only, with two Largeſſes, and in that Order they were inſtalled. And thus it was at the Inſtallation of *Charles*, Duke of *York*, 9 *Jac.* I. of *Frederick*, Prince Palatine, 10 *Jac.* I. and the Earl of *Rutland*, and others, 14 *Jac.* I.

Philip, King of *Caſtile*, Dined with the Sovereign in his Privy-Chamber, 22 *Henry* VII. whoſe Stile was Proclaimed by Garter, not in the ſame Room, but at the Sovereign's great Chamber-Door, and in St. *George's Hall*, after Largeſs had been thrice cryed. When the Sovereign conſtitutes a Lieutenant, then is the Lieutenant's Stile alſo Proclaimed, and to his other Honours is added this of his Lieutenancy, and afterwards the Stiles of the new inſtalled Knights, as 3 *Eliz.* But the Order of this Ceremony is more particularly obſerved at the Inſtallation of the Duke *de Montmorency*, and others, 14 *Eliz.* where firſt Garter cried Largeſs, and next Proclaimed the Sovereign's Stile, *&c.* in three Languages, then ſtepping two Foot back, Proclaims the Lieutenant's Stile in *French* only, with two Largeſſes; and after that, he cried one Largeſs for the Duke; and laſtly, for all the other new inſtalled Knights, only two Largeſſes, and the Officers of Arms did the like; and ſtill as Garter had finiſhed his Proclamation, the Heralds joined with him in crying Largeſs, and ſo with Reverence departed the Hall.

But laſtly, it is proper to obſerve, that when neither the Sovereign, nor his Lieutenant, are preſent, then the Sovereign's Stile is not Proclaimed, nor thoſe of the Commiſſioners, but only of the new inſtalled Knights.

As ſoon as Dinner is ended, the Knights-Companions riſe from Table, and withdraw to diſrobe themſelves, and therewith the Solemnity of Inſtallation ends: And if at any time the Solemnity continues that Evening, and the following Day, it is only becauſe the Sovereign (or his Lieutenant,) is preſent, on account of celebrating St. *George's* Feaſt, and not with reference to the Inſtallation.

Of

Of ſetting up the Knight's Atchievements.

§ 11. The laſt thing to be done at this great Solemnity, is ſetting up the *Helm*, *Creſt*, *Sword*, *Banner*, and *Plate*, of the new inſtalled Knight, over his Stall in the Chappel of St. *George*; to which purpoſe they are to be provided, according to the Directions before given.

By the Statutes of Inſtitution it is ordained, that the time for ſetting up the Atchievements ſhall be when the elect Knight comes to *Windſor-Caſtle*, that is, to his Inſtallation, and not before; and the reaſon is there likewiſe given, leſt it ſhould happen, he not coming for his Inſtallation within the time limitted, and conſequently the vacating his Election enſuing, that a new Election being made, thoſe military Enſigns might not ſeem to be diſgracefully withdrawn, and an occaſion of Diſhonour given, which otherwiſe could not be avoided, if they ſhould be ſuddenly taken down from a Place ſo high; which demonſtrates, that the intention of this Article extends to the finiſhing the Ceremonies of Inſtallation, before the Atchievements ought to be ſet up, by ſo carefully providing againſt the Diſhonour of taking them down, in caſe the Election ſhould become void; which muſt infallibly happen, if the Knight elect died but an Hour before he were compleatly inſtalled. Accordingly, in the ancient Deputations both to Sir *William Philip*, and Sir *John Falſtaff*, Power is given their Proctors firſt to demand, receive, and obtain their principal Stalls, and next to tender their Helms, and Swords, to be hung up in the Choir of *Windſor*, according to Cuſtom: And for clearer Information of the courſe of this Ceremony, that the Sovereign impowered his Commiſſioners, firſt to give the Deputy Poſſeſſion of his Principal's Stall, and after to receive the Atchievements, and place them over it: This is to be conſidered as a Memorial of the Knights being inſtalled a Companion of the Order, and 'tis incongruous in the Rules of Honour to have the Sign or a Memorial of an Action precede the Action it ſelf.

Again, the Statutes expreſly provide, that the Knights Atchievements ſhall not be hung up, till the Duties and Fees enjoined are firſt diſcharged; and 'tis certain, there

are

are no Fees due, nor can be claimed, till the Ceremonies on which they become due are entirely finiſhed. But to clear all Doubts which may ariſe upon this Point, it was at a Chapter held at *White-Hall*, the fourth of *February*, 22 *Car.* II. ordained, *That not any of the Atchievements of an elect Knight's Stall be ſet up in the Chappel at* Windſor, *before he be inſtalled, and the Fees of Inſtallation paid.*

And though this was the Practice anciently, yet were the Atchievements always prepared and brought to *Windſor*, and ſet before the elect Knight's Stall; and in caſe of his not coming to receive Inſtallation, then, being no otherwiſe placed, they might be the eaſier removed without the Choir, in as decent manner as could be, ſo that the Honour of Knighthood might be preſerved entire; nevertheleſs, to be retained for publick Uſe, and the Benefit of the College.

Where mention is made in the Annals of any Perſon employed to ſet up the Atchievements of a Knight, it is to be underſtood that he was his Proctor, and inſtalled on his behalf: And there appears but one ſingle Inſtance where one Perſon hath hung up a Knight's Atchievements, when another was inſtalled for him; and this happen'd 14th of *Auguſt*, *Anno* 29 *Hen.* VI. where the Lord *Rivers* having been elected to the Stall of the Lord *Hungerford*, his Sword and Helm were ſoon after (ſent) hung up by *William Bobden*, his Eſq; and *Guyen Herald*, and he inſtalled the 30 *October* following, by Sir *William Crafford* his Proctor; but this was contrary to the Law of the Order.

Where the ſetting up of a Knight's Atchievements is barely mentioned, without taking notice of the Inſtallation, it is to be underſtood, that ſuch Knight's Inſtallation was alſo ſolemniz'd at that Time: As in the caſe of the King of *Portugal*, of whom the Annals only note, that he had taken care to ſet over his Stall, Helm, Sword, and Banner, and all things belonging thereto, at the Feaſt at *Windſor*, 2 *Henry* VI. In what manner theſe Atchievements are fixed, appears by the Statutes; the Helm and Creſt to be ſet over each Knight-Companion's Stall, and the Sword to hang directly under them; but the Plate to be nailed to the back of the Knight's Stall.

CAP.

CAP. XIII.

The Installation of a Knight-Subject by Proxy.

The Original Cause of making Proxies.

§ 1. THere was no liberty given at the Institution of the Order, for a Knight-Subject to be installed by his Proctor or Deputy; but on the contrary, in the Founder's Statutes was inserted this expres Prohibition: *That none of the Knights elect should be permitted to be installed by* Proxy, *unless he were a Stranger.* And this Law continued unaltered till the Reign of *Henry* V. when *John* Duke of *Bedford*, the Sovereign's Deputy for holding the Feast of St. *George* at *Windsor*, 7 *Henry* V. and other the Knights-Companions then present, took it into Consideration; that where a Knight-Subject, elected into the Order, was at that Time employed beyond Sea, in the Service of his Prince, and likely to continue in that Service some time, it was agreed, that the said Duke should make an Address to the Sovereign, by Letters under the Seal of the Order, (he being then employed in the War against *France*,) that in the like cases his Majesty would Ordain, *That* Knights-Subjects *might, as well as* Strangers, *be admitted into the* Order, *notwithstanding the Clause in the Statutes.*

It likewise appears from that *Letter*, as well as from the Blue-Book, that Sir *John Grey*, and the Lord *Bourchier*, had been installed at the aforesaid Feast, by their several Proxies; which the Sovereign's Deputy concurr'd with, out of great Respect to their Persons; lest by a too rigid Observance of the Statutes, by their absence in the Wars, where they were then loyally employed, and might meet their Deaths, they should want the desired Suffrages of those Masses, ordained to be Sung for a defunct Knight; as had happen'd to several by unsuspected delays. But to clear this matter, for the future it was Decreed, 9 *Hen.* V. That where any elect Knight was actually

actually in the Sovereign's Wars, or otherwiſe employed Abroad on his Sovereign's Affairs, he ſhould poſſeſs the Privilege of a Stranger in this particular; which Decree was added to King *Henry* Vth's Statutes. And it was ſoon after enjoined the elect Knight, on notice of his Election, to take care timely to appoint his Proctor, that he might enjoy the Rights and Privileges of a Founder: Such an Obligation was laid on Sir *John Falſtaff*, who, at the reception of the Garter, was in *France*, employed in the Sovereign's Service.

But King *Henry* VIII. beſides his Confirmation of this Decree, for allowance of a Proxy in the aforeſaid two Caſes, farther enlarged it, to ſuch as the Sovereign ſhould either Command, or permit Licence to be inſtalled by Proxy, which is to be underſtood of Knights elect within the Kingdom, as well as thoſe beyond Sea: By Virtue of which Clauſe, the elect Knight, the Earl of *Dorſet* being Sick, 1 *Car.* I. obtained the Sovereign's Licence to be inſtalled by his Deputy Sir *Richard Young*.

Letters of Procuration.

§ 2. It is obſerved before, out of the *Regiſtrum Chartaceum*, that Sir *John Robeſart*, elected into the Order by King *Henry* V. was inſtalled by Virtue of his Letter Miſſive, ſent to Sir *Thomas Barr* his Proxy; but the ſame Regiſter calls it, in another Place, a ſufficient Procuration under his Seal of Arms, enabling him to perform the Ceremony of his Inſtallation.

The Copy of this Inſtrument is not extant; but that Letter Miſſive Sir *John Grey* directed to Sir *John Liſle*, to take Poſſeſſion of his Stall, and by Virtue of which he was inſtalled, *tells him he had Choſen him for his Proxy, and to take his Stall for him in his Name*, &c. And omitting other Precedents, doubtleſs, in the caſe of a Knight-Subject, the Sovereign may, if he pleaſes, nominate and appoint a Proxy for Inſtallation, where the elect Knight hath not done it himſelf; for here, all thoſe Conſiderations of grand Reſpect, Forms of the Oath, &c. conſtantly afforded to Strangers, have no Place; which is evident from the Sovereign's Letters of Summons to the Commiſſioners named for Inſtallation of the Lord *Grey*,

4 and 5 *Phil.* and *Mar.* who at that time was Priſoner in *France*, and his Deputy Sir *Humphry Radcliffe*, is therein mentioned to be appointed by the Sovereign herſelf.

The firſt Precedent of Letters of Procuration, or Deputation, drawn into a ſolemn Form, is that made by Sir *William Phelip*, 5 *Hen.* V. by which, having obtained the Sovereign's Licence, he impowers two Knights, Sir *Andrew Butrely*, and Sir *John Henington*, or either of them, as their Buſineſs would permit, to ſupply his Place, and take Poſſeſſion of his Stall, in the Choir at *Windſor*.

Qualifications of a Proxy.

§ 3. The Qualifications of a Proctor, nominated by a Knight-Subject, are the ſame with thoſe requiſite in the Proctor of a Stranger, of which ſomething will fall in our Way hereafter; I ſhall therefore only in general obſerve here, that to neither Knight-Subject, nor Stranger, the Proctor is to be under the Degree of a Knight, enobled with Arms, and of an honeſt and untainted Reputation; it being judg'd proper chiefly in this Point, that a Knight-Subject ſhould exactly obſerve the ſame Rule enjoined to Strangers; in reſpect of which, it is very remarkable, that Sir *William Liſle*, though one of the Alms-Knights, yet in Degree a Knight, was not refuſed to be Proctor to Sir *John Grey*, 7 *Hen.* V.

Preparations for Inſtallation.

§ 4. The Day for Inſtallation of a Knight-Subject by Proxy, being appointed by the Sovereign, there are to be provided for him, firſt, a Commiſſion for Inſtallation, which by the Chancellor of the Order is preſented to the Sovereign for his Sign Manual; to which is after affixed, the Seal of the Order: And appoints, 1. To conduct the Proctor to *Windſor-Caſtle*. 2. To put him in Poſſeſſion, as from the Sovereign, of the Stall aſſigned his Principal. 3. To inveſt him with all the Benefits, Honours, Prerogatives, Franchiſes, and Liberties thereto belonging. 4. To receive his Mantle, Helm, and Sword, and ſet them up in their appointed Places. 5. To add thereto

thereto all usual Ceremonies. 6. Lastly, an Injunction to all the Knights to permit all the Solemnity punctually to be performed: An ancient Precedent of this is found 5 *Hen.* V. in the case of Sir *John Falstaff*: Also 2 *Edw.* IV. at the Installation of the Earl of *Worcester*, and other elect Knights, by their Proxies.

Of later Times, the Commissions granted on such Occasions differ from those made for the Personal Installation of the Knights themselves, only by premising the Cause of their Principal's Absence, and Service he is then employed on; authorizing the Commissioners to admit the Proxy into his Stall: Likewise where the Installation is performed by two or more Commissioners, the Sovereign directs Letters to each of them, giving notice of the intended Solemnity, and requiring them to attend at a Day prefixt, to the end the Proxy may be put into Possession of his Principal's Stall.

And as there is, upon admission of an elect Knight, installed by Proxy, the same ground for removal of Stalls, as in personal Installations; so the Sovereign issues out Warrants to *Garter*, some time before the Solemnity, to remove the Atchievements and Plates, as usual, and place them in the Order such Warrants direct. Anciently the Stall for an elect Knight, was assigned in the Commission issued for Installation, as in the case of Sir *Henry Inghouse*, Proctor to Sir *John Falstaff*, 5 *Henry* V.

The rest of the Particulars to be provided against the Day of Installation, are at the Knight's own Charge, and are agreeable with those in Personal Installations.

Proceeding to the Chapter-House.

§ 5. The next thing to be consider'd, is the Proxies Place in proceeding to the Chapter-House, and this is immediately after the Provincial *King of Arms*, because as yet he hath not taken Possession of his Principal's Stall; which done, it gives him a Place in his return according to its Dignity. In this Order the Proctors of the Marquis of *Newcastle*, and the Earl of *Bristol*, proceeded (Bare-headed,) 13 *Car.* II.

And though this be the Proctor's usual Place in this Proceeding, yet Sir *Henry Sidney*, Proctor to the Earl of

Warwick, 5 *Eliz.* proceeded immediately before the elect Knights; which is the only inſtance of that kind.

Laſtly, the Proctor, as in the caſe of an elect Knight, paſſes into the Eaſt-Iſle, behind the High-Altar, as ſoon as he comes within St. *George*'s *Chappel*, while the Sovereign, Lieutenant, or Commiſſioners, proceed into the Chapter-Houſe, and there repoſeth himſelf till he is ſent for in; as in the caſe of the Marquiſs of *Newcaſtle* and Earl of *Briſtol* above: But if the Proxy paſs not in the Proceeding, he then goes privately to his Place, before the Proceeding ſets forward.

Tranſactions in the Chapter-Houſe.

§ 6. After the Chapter is opened, the firſt thing done, is for *Garter* to preſent the Commiſſion or Commiſſions, which he carried in the Proceeding thither, as well that for the Lieutenancy, (if a Lieutenant held the Feaſt,) as of Inſtallation, for admitting a Proxy, the Order of which is obſerved before.

The Letters of Procuration, or Deputation, are next read, after which the Proxy is ſent for into the Chapter-Houſe by *Garter*, who conducts him to the Door, and there the Commiſſioners, or Aſſiſtants, or Knights-Companions, receive him. But 5 *Eliz.* Sir *Henry Sidney* exhibited his Deputation, after he was called in: Or ſometimes the Proxy produces his Deputation before the Proceeding to the Chapter-Houſe, as Sir *George Howard*, Deputy to the Earl of *Bedford*, did, 6 *Eliz.* And in ſuch caſe there is no need of admitting the Proxy into the Chapter-Houſe, but that he may ſtay without, till the Sovereign, his Lieutenant, or Commiſſioners, are paſt into the Choir, and he ſent for thither; at which time the *Mantle* was wont to be laid on his right Arm at the Chapter-Houſe Door, by the Knights-Companions appointed to introduce him.

Anciently, as ſoon as the Proxy was admitted into the Chapter-Houſe, and the Letters of Procuration were read, the *Mantle* of his Principal was uſually laid on his right Arm by the Sovereign's Lieutenant, or Commiſſioners, and part of it ſpread on the Proxies Shoulders, the Eſcutcheon of St. *George* lying uppermoſt, and the Cordons

laid

laid fair to be ſeen; and in this manner he bore it in the Proceeding to the Stall, where he held it till Service was ended; but 'tis now ordered otherwiſe, as by the direction of King *Charles* II. that the *Mantle* ſhould be born on the left Arm.

But 5 *Eliz.* the Earl of *Warwick*'s Proctor had the Mantle born before him into the Choir by *Garter*, in the ſame manner as is uſual to Knights Perſonally inſtalled; and not delivered him, till he had taken the Oath; and at the delivery thereof, the Words of Admonition were pronounced by the *Regiſter*; as it was obſerved to the Proxies of the Marquiſs of *Newcaſtle*, and the Earl of *Briſtol*, 13 *Car.* II.

Proceeding to the Choir.

§ 7. The Proxy proceeds from the Chapter-Houſe Door, between the Sovereign's Commiſſioners, *&c.* But touching the Order of this Proceeding, ſo much has already been ſaid, that we ſhall give but one Inſtance, *Anno 6 Elizabeth.*

1. Verger.
2. Alms-Knights.
3. Officers of Arms.
4. Officers of the Order.
5. Lord *Hunſdon*, Proctor to the Lord *Cobham.*
6. Earl of *Bedford.*

Ceremonies performed in the Choir.

§ 8. The Proceeding having entered the Choir, the Commiſſioners, *&c.* conduct the Proxy into the lower Stall, directly under that deſigned for his Principal, where the *Regiſter* reads the Words of the Oath, while the Proxy, laying his Hand on the Book, repeats them after him, and Kiſſes the Book: And this Oath his Deputation impowers him to take, in the Name of his Principal; the Form of the Oath having no difference from the Oath taken Perſonally by an elect Knight.

The Oath being taken in this ſolemn manner, the Proctor is led up to the Stall of his Principal, where both

the Knights, who conducted him into the Choir, firſt take the *Mantle*, and lay it on his Arm, next laying their Hands on him, in the Name of his Lord and Maſter, from whom he received his Deputation, ſet him down therein: And ſo the Ceremony of Inſtallation being fully ended, the Service of the Church begins.

If the Inſtallation be performed in the Morning, there is an Offering of Gold and Silver; at which time the Proxy in his turn comes from his Principal's Stall, and ſtands before it, and when the Sovereign, or the Lieutenant for him, and for himſelf, or elſe the Commiſſioners, and the reſt of the Knights-Companions preſent, have offered, then the Proxy (being joined to the Knight ſitting in the oppoſite Stall, if preſent at the Solemnity, and having two Officers of Arms before them,) proceeds to the High Altar, and there offers both Gold and Silver; and then returns, and takes his Stall as the reſt do. In this manner the Earl of *Warwick*'s Proxy, joining with the Earl of *Northumberland*, inſtalled at the ſame time, proceeded to the Offering, 5 *Eliz.* As likewiſe the Proctor to the Earl of *Bedford*, with the Lord *Hunſdon*, 6 *Eliz.*

The Ceremony of the Offering being finiſhed, the Service of the Church goes on, which being over, the Proceeding returns in the ſame Order it came to the *Chapter-Houſe*, except, that now the Proxy takes his Place according to the Dignity of his Stall. But in regard the *Statutes* expreſly declare; That after the Proxy hath been admitted to his Principal's Stall, he ſhall neither wear the *Mantle*, nor have any Voice in Chapter, nor enter there in the abſence of him that ſent him; ſo that it was the ancient Practice to take off the *Mantle* from his Arm at the *Chapter-Houſe* Door, in his return from the Choir, and delivered to the *Verger* of the Chappel, though ſometimes to the *Sexton*, at other times to *Garter*, alſo to the *Black-Rod*, who hath taken it from off the Proxies Arm, and carried it into the Chapter-Houſe; this done, the Proxy retires privately out of the Proceeding to his Lodging.

It appears however, but by what indulgence is not mentioned, that though *Garter* took the *Mantle* from Sir *Henry Sidney*, 5 *Eliz.* at the Chapter-Houſe Door, on the Evening he returned from Inſtallation; yet the next Morning

Morning he rode in the Proceſſion to the Chapel, the Celebration of the Feaſt of St. *George* continuing, with the *Mantle* or his right Arm; and having entered the Choir, took his Principal's Stall, bearing likewiſe the Mantle in the grand Proceſſion, at the Offering of Money, and during Divine Service, and from the Chappel to the Caſtle to Dinner: And the like in the Afternoon of the ſaid Day, he rode on Horſe-back in the Proceeding to the Chapter-Houſe Door, but there the *Mantle* was taken from him, and laid within upon the Table, whilſt he retired into the Eaſt-Iſle of the Chappel, and at the riſing of the *Chapter*, it was again delivered to him, whence he proceeded in his Principal's Place to the ſecond Veſpers.

Next Morning, the *Lieutenant*, and *Aſſiſtants*, having ended the Chapter, the *Mantle* was again laid on his Arm, and in that manner he paſſed to his Principal's Stall, and afterwards offered, as on the Feaſt Day. The Morning Service ended, the *Lieutenant* and *Aſſiſtants* returned to the Chapter-Houſe Door, where they put off their *Mantles*, and at the ſame time the *Sexton* of the College receiv'd the Mantle from him.

The Grand Dinner.

§ 9. At Dinner the Proxy ſits with the Lieutenant or Commiſſioners, and takes Place where his Principal ſhould ſit if he were preſent; and this was ſo obſerved at the Inſtallation of the Earl of *Warwick*, 5 *Eliz.*

The Stile of the Knight inſtalled by Proxy, is proclaimed in *French*, or *Engliſh*, in the uſual Form and Place, as 25 *Hen.* VIII. at the Inſtallations of the Earls of *Beaumont* and *Newblanke*, by their Proxies; for they were Knight-Subjects, though not to the Sovereign, and therefore not improper to be made uſe of as an Inſtance. To conclude, the Proctor is to take care that the Atchievements and Plate of his Principal are ſet up in their proper Places, which appears not only from the ancient Letters of Procuration, but alſo by Commiſſions of Inſtallation, which appoint that the Sovereign's Deputy ſhould receive from the Proctor his Principal's Helm and

Sword, (for there is no mention of the Banner till afterwards,) and place it over his Stall.

CAP. XIV.

The Signification of Election to Strangers.

Within what time, and in what manner, Certificate is made of their Election.

§ 1. IN regard that Strangers elect, are for the moſt part Sovereign Princes, whoſe Affairs obliged them to abide in their own Dominions, and very rarely permitted them to receive Perſonal Inſtallation, it was thought fit to allow them ſeveral Privileges, by the Founder of this moſt *Noble Order*, and principally, that of giving previous and timely Notice of their Elections, and convenient time of conſideration for Acceptance; affording Inveſtiture in their own Countries, and permitting their Inſtallations to be performed at *Windſor* by their Proxies or Deputies.

It was therefore by the *Statutes* ordained: That when any ſuch ſhould be choſen into the *Order*, they ſhould be certified of their Elections by the Sovereign; and beſides, that, at his Charge, the *Garter* ſhould be ſent over to them, with the *Mantle* and *Statutes* of the *Order*, Sealed with the common Seal; ſo that they might have notice, at leaſt within four Months from the time of Election, to the end they might adviſe and determine with themſelves, from the Tenor of the *Statutes*, whether they would receive the Honour of this moſt *Noble Order*.

In Purſuance of theſe Directions, it became cuſtomary for the Sovereign, when he ſent his Letters, to ſend alſo, and that by way of ſolemn Embaſſy, the Habit and Enſigns or the *Order*, with a Book of the *Statutes*; and in caſe the Election were accepted, Inveſtiture might be received before the return of the Perſons, by whom the Habit

Habit was ſent. As upon the Elections of *Edward*, King of *Portugal*, at the Feaſt of St. *George*, 13 *Hen.* VI. the Duke of *Urbin*, 14 *Edw.* IV. and ſeveral others.

The right of bearing theſe Letters ſignifying Election, and returning the Strangers Anſwer, belongs to *Garter*, by the Conſtitutions of his Office. And though Certificate of Election was to be made within four Months from the time of Election, yet King *Henry* VIII. added this neceſſary Clauſe: *That when the Sovereign had any great or high Impediment, he might defer certifying the Election till a more convenient Time.* As may be ſeen in the caſe of *Frederick* III. Emperor of *Germany*, in the time of *Henry* VI. who having been elected 35 of that King, had not Letters ſent him to ſignify it till the next Year. It likewiſe appears, that Letters to the ſame Effect were then likewiſe diſpatched to the King of *Arragon*, the Duke of *Brunſwick*, and King of *Poland*, who had been elected eight Years before.

And yet we find it recorded, that the *Habit* and *Enſigns* of the *Order* were ſent by ſpecial Ambaſſadors to all three, 34 *Hen.* VI. two Years before: But perhaps this ought to be underſtood of their being but then deſign'd, and ordered to be ſent, and on ſecond Thoughts might be ſtopped, or if ſent, by ſome accident might have miſcarried; otherwiſe it ſeems needleſs to have ſent other Letters to give notice of their Election two Years after: But to clear this matter, we after find a ſecond mention of ſending the *Habit* and *Enſigns* to the King of *Poland*, 37 *Hen.* VI. by which it is demonſtrable, that the firſt Embaſſy took no Effect.

It does not appear that King *Hen.* VIII. or any of his Succeſſors, ever made uſe of that Liberty granted by the aforeſaid Article of his *Statutes*, for deferring the ſignificatory Letters of Election beyond the time appointed by the *Statutes* of Inſtitution, as we find by the many Inſtances of that kind. *Francis* the firſt King of *France* was elected *October* 21. 19 *Hen.* VIII. and was inſtalled the 25 *January* following; ſo that 'tis plain, the Letters of Notice muſt needs have been diſpatched within the limited Time. *James* V. of *Scotland*, who was elected 20 *Jan.* 26 *Hen.* VIII. had notice of Election immediately ſent him; and *Hen.* II. of *France*, having been elected 24 *April*,

April, 5 *Edw.* VI. had Letters of Signification ſent him in *May* following; and ſo in all Examples ſince. And when King *Charles* II. elected any Stranger whilſt he was Abroad, Letters of Signification were ſent them immediately after.

Of notice given of an Election, before ſending the Habit.

§ 2. Here it is to be obſerved, with how much caution, more than the former, the Statutes of King *Henry* VIII. Ordain, *to ſend Letters that ſignify Election, and the Book of Statutes only at firſt*; but not the *Garter* and *Mantle*, till the *elect Stranger*, having had time to conſult the Statutes, certifies his acceptance of the *Order*; and then, and not before, it is Decreed to ſend a ſolemn Embaſſy with the whole Habit, *George*, and *Collar*: And conſonant to this, the Practice hath ſometimes been. As in the caſe of *Henry* II. King of *France*, 5 *Edw.* VI. *Emanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*, 1 and 2 *Phil.* and *Mar.* and in that of *Frederick*, Duke of *Wirtembergh*, to whom Queen *Elizabeth* ſent Letters ſoon after his Election, and he returned Thanks, and Acceptation, by his two Ambaſſadors, who received Promiſe of ſending the whole Habit ſoon after; however, the ſame were not ſent during her Life.

Notice of Election ſent with the Habit.

§ 3. When the Sovereign hath been well aſſured of the *elect Stranger's* acceptance, the ſame Embaſſy (as anciently before adding this Clauſe,) diſpatched both Ceremonies. The Sovereign's Letter ſignifying Election, being firſt preſented, together with the Book of Statutes, and an acceptance declared, then within few Days, the whole Habit of the *Order* was ſolemnly delivered.

And thus it was directed ſoon after the Election of *James* V. King of *Scots*, to the Lord *William Howard*, ſent on that Embaſſy; and in like manner, at the Election of *Chriſtian* IV. King of *Denmark*, 1 *Jac.* I. to the Earl of *Rutland*

Rutland ſent on that Embaſſy. As alſo to *Guſtavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, and *Henry*, Prince of *Orange*, within two Months, their Elections following on *April* 24. 3 *Car.* I. and the date of the Commiſſion for delivering the Order being on *June* 24. following.

The manner and order of the delivery of theſe Letters, ſignifying Election, when the Habit is ſent, is thus.

" Firſt, The Ambaſſador and *Officer of Arms* having " notice given them of the firſt Audience, preſent themſelves to the *Stranger Prince*, in the accuſtomed manner of Ambaſſadors; and delivering the Sovereign's " *Letters Miſſive*, with all due Reverence, the Ambaſſador, after ſome ſhort general Compliment from the " Sovereign, ſignifying that his Maſter, and the Honourable " *Society* of the *Garter*, in reſpect of his renowned Prowes, Valour, Virtues, *&c.* and to eſtabliſh and encreaſe " the Amity that is between them, hath elected him into " the moſt Noble *Order* of St. *George*; and that Sovereigns do never elect any Stranger, but ſuch as they " highly Honour; and therefore earneſtly deſires it may " be accepted as a true Teſtimony thereof: To which " end the Sovereign hath ſent him over, and his Herald " there preſent, to perform the due Ceremonies.

But this Commiſſion of Legation hath ſometimes been obſtructed by the multitude of Affairs lying on the Sovereign's Hands, particularly in the Time of *Car.* I. when engaged in that unnatural Civil War; ſo that when they ſent their Letters of Signification, it was thought fit to Commiſſionate their Agent, or Reſident at the Prince's Court, and *Garter* Principal *King of Arms*, to deliver part; but the two chief and moſt peculiar *Enſigns* of the *Order*, *viz.* the *Garter* and *George*, deferring the ſolemn Embaſſy till a more convenient Seaſon. The firſt Precedent of which kind, was 10 *Jac.* I. when Sir *Ralph Winwood*, and *William Seagar*, Eſq; *Garter*, were Commiſſioned to deliver only, for the preſent, the Garter and George, to *Maurice*, Prince of *Orange*, five Days after his Election; and ſo to *Charles*, Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*,

Rhine, 9 *Car.* I. and to *William*, Prince of *Orange*, and the Duke *de Eſpernon*, the ſame Reign. And ſo likewiſe during the unhappy Exile of King *Charles* II. it was uſual, for want of more conveniency, to preſent the elect Knight, in confirmation of his Election, whether he were *Stranger*, or *Subject*, with the *Garter*, *George*, *Ribband*; and ſometimes a St. *George*'s *Croſs*, radicated within a *Garter*, to be fixed on the left Shoulder of their Cloaks, or upper Garments. But theſe things after returned into their proper Channel, as we may ſee in ſeveral caſes ſince, of which we need not inſtance more, than that of the preſent Sovereign, and his Royal Highneſs the Prince: The former at a Chapter of the moſt Noble *Order*, held at *Kenſington*, 18 *June*, 1701. 13 *Will.* III. was elected, and on the 21 *June*, the Sovereign, by Commiſſion under the Great Seal of the *Order*, conſtituted the Earl of *Macclesfield*, and *Gregory King*, Eſq; *Lancaſter Herald*, (then Deputy Garter King of Arms,) to carry the *Habit* and *Enſigns*, and to inveſt his then Electoral Highneſs therewith. The next Day after their arrival, at a private Audience, his Electoral Highneſs received the *Garter* and *George*, with the uſual Formalities; and two Days after, *viz.* 24 *Auguſt*, was ſolemnly inveſted with the whole Habit of the *Order*. On 13 *March* following, 1702-3. he was inſtalled at *Windſor* by his Proxy *Charles*, Lord *Mohun*, with the accuſtomed Ceremonies. The ſame *Order* was obſerved at the Election of his Royal Highneſs the Prince, 4 *April*, 5 Queen *Anne*; when the Lord *Halifax*, and *John Vanbruge*, Eſq; *Clarenceux* King of *Arms*, (in the room of Sir *Henry St. John*, Knight Garter,) were Commiſſion'd to carry the *Habit* and *Enſigns*. They had their firſt Audience, on this occaſion, of the Prince, the 31 *May*, who afterwards received the Garter and leſſer George, and on 2 *June* following, was inveſted with the whole *Habit* and *Enſigns* of the *Order*.

Certificates of Acceptation.

§ 4. After delivering the Sovereign's Letter, ſignifying Election by the Ambaſſador, and the *elect Stranger* doth readily

readily accept the *Order*, he is obliged, by the Statutes, to return the Sovereign a Certificate of ſuch his Acceptance, and deſire of Ratification. And 'tis obſervable, before the additional Clauſe made by King *Henry* VIII. this ceremonious Courſe had been the Practice of ancient Times; and both expected from, and obſerved by the King of *Denmark*, who having been elected, 6 *Hen.* V. was the eighth of the ſame King taken notice of for not returning, before that Time, an Anſwer, whether he accepted the Honour or no: And it appears, before the next Feaſt of St. *George*, he ſent over his ready Acceptance, both of the Honour of Election, and of the Enſigns of the *Order*; and thereupon Directions were given for his Inſtallation by the Lord *Fitz Hugh*, his Proxy.

But for an inſtance, after the ſaid additional Clauſe, there is one remarkable enough, in the Preamble of the Sovereign's *Credential Letters* to the Duke of *Savoy*, 1 and 2 *Phil.* and *Mar.* ſent with the Habit and Enſigns of the *Order*; in which it appears: *That the Sovereign having given notice of his Election into this moſt Noble* Order, *he had returned back his cheerful and ready Acceptance of, and ſingular Satisfaction in the ſaid Choice; and therefore cordially wiſhed it might attain its due Effect.*

In ſucceeding Times it was thought neceſſary, where the whole *Habit* was ſent to a *Stranger*, together with the Sovereign's Letters of notice, to make a proviſional Decree, (which paſſed, 13 *Car.* I.) *That Garter, and all others, whom he pleaſed to join in Commiſſion with him, ſhould be moſt punctually careful, that they delivered not the* Enſigns *of the* Order *to any* elect Stranger, *till they were ſatisfied, by his* Letters Patent, *of his kind and grateful Acceptance thereof*; or in caſe of refuſal, to forbear their Preſentation.

And the ſame care was alſo taken, where only the *Garter* and *George* were ſent; as appears by the Inſtructions ſent, 19 *Car.* I. to Sir *William Boſwel*, then appointed by the Sovereign to preſent thoſe two principal Enſigns to *William*, Prince of *Orange*; where, among other things, he is expreſly commanded, *To take a Teſtimonial from the ſaid Prince, of his kind Acceptation thereof, before he ſhould deliver thoſe Enſigns of Honour to him*: So likewiſe in the Inſtitutions of the ſame Date, for delivery

livery of the *Garter* and *George* to the Duke *de Eſ. pernon.*

Of an Election not accepted.

§ 5. That ſometimes this Honour hath not been accepted, appears in the ſingle caſe of *Philip* II. Duke of *Burgundy*, who having been elected by King *Henry* V. then in *France*, had not, *Anno* 1 *Henry* VI. ſent his Anſwer. It was therefore concluded on at the Feaſt of St. *George*, held at *Windſor* the ſaid Year, by *Humphry*, Duke of *Glouceſter*, then Deputy to the Sovereign, and by, and with the unanimous conſent of the *Knights-Companions* preſent, to ſend Letters to the ſaid elect Duke, by which he was deſired to know, whether he gave his Acceptance or no? The Duke of *Burgundy*, it ſeems, made no Anſwer to this Letter: It was therefore again debated at the next Year's Feaſt, and then thought fit, to ſend Perſons over to him with the Nomination, who ſhould preſs him for his final Anſwer. And then it appears, that the ſaid Duke weighing the Statutes, and reflecting on the Quarrels between the Duke of *Glouceſter*, and the Duke of *Brabant* his Unckle, made a plauſible Excuſe, refuſing the Election, leſt he ſhould be forced either diſhonourably to violate the pious Conſtitutions of the *Order*, or the obligations of Alliance; and upon this they proceeded to a new Election.

But this is the only inſtance of this kind; and it hath been the conſtant way of all elect Strangers, not only to accept, but to receive with the higheſt Marks of Satisfaction, the notice of their Election, and the Inveſtiture of the *Order*.

CAP.

CAP. XV.

The Inveſtiture of Strangers, with the Habit and Enſigns of the Order.

The Time for ſending the Habit and Enſigns unlimitted.

§ 1. THough the Statutes of the *Order* appoint and prefix a time, wherein the Sovereign's Letters of notice to an elect Knight ought to be ſent, yet as to the ſending a ſolemn Embaſſy with the Habit and Enſigns, they do not limit any certain time, but leave it wholly to the Sovereign's Pleaſure, wherein his own Intereſt and Conveniency, as well as that of the *elect Stranger*, is to be conſidered.

Nevertheleſs, the Statutes of Inſtitution direct, that this Legation ſhall be diſpatched with convenient ſpeed; which muſt be interpreted to refer both to the Sovereign's conveniency of ſending, and the *Stranger's* capacity of receiving.

And therefore we find it ſix Years after the Election of the Kings of *Arragon* and *Poland*, and the Duke of *Brunſwick*, e'er we meet with the firſt notice of the Sovereign's determination of ſending over the Habit: For they having been elected 4 *Auguſt*, 28 *Hen.* VI. the preparations for the *Legation* were not made till the thirty fourth Year of the ſame King; and doubtleſs ſome cauſe, within the limits of that conveniency allowed to the Sovereign by the aforeſaid Article of the *Statutes*, or the accident of Miſcarriage might fall out; particularly in reſpect to the King of *Poland*, becauſe three Years after the former Order of *Legation*, we find new Directions iſſued for ſending the Enſigns of the *Order* to him.

But in King *Henry* VIIIth's Body of *Statutes*, this Clauſe of ſending the Legation with convenient ſpeed, is wholly omitted, and the Sovereign is not limitted as to the Time; ſo that the Habit and Enſigns have happen'd to be ſent ſometimes ſooner, ſometimes later; as the Sovereign

vereign has thought convenient; of which ſufficient hath been ſaid already; and we find in two Elections of *Strangers* in the two late Reigns, *viz.* that of the preſent Sovereign and Prince; that the Legation was ſent only a very few Days after their Election.

Preparations made for the Legation.

§ 2. In reference to this ſolemn Embaſſy, there are ſeveral things to be provided, before the Ambaſſadors, or Commiſſioners, take their Journey. As, (1.) Credential Letters. (2.) Commiſſion of Legation. (3.) Warrants for the *Habit* and *Enſigns*. And (4.) other Neceſſaries.

The Credential Letters are, as to particulars, drawn ſuitable to the preſent Occaſion, by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, and directed to the *Stranger elect*; but the Subſtance, in general, is, *That the Sovereign having elected him into the Society of the* Order, *hath ſent his Ambaſſadors with full Power to preſent the* Habit, *and perform the Ceremonies due and accuſtomed, as if himſelf were preſent.* And farther, to deſire him, *To give Credit to all that his Ambaſſadors ſhall ſay, or perform, on his behalf, in reference to their Commiſſion, as he would do to himſelf.*

Theſe Letters paſs under the Sign Manual of the Sovereign, and Signet of the *Order*; but it is obſervable, that theſe to *Emanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*, were ſign'd both by King *Philip* and Queen *Mary*.

The *Commiſſion* of *Legation* is likewiſe to be prepared by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, fairly engroſſed on Velom, and Sealed with the *Great Seal* of the *Order*, the Subſtance of which, for the moſt part, hath been as follows.

Firſt, The Merits and Worthineſs of the *elect Stranger*, to deſerve the Honour of *Election*, and the reaſons of inducing the Sovereign to confer the ſame upon him, are elegantly ſet forth.

Secondly, The Perſons nominated for this Honourable Employment, are ordained, authorized, and deputed, and therein Stiled, Ambaſſadors, Procurators, and ſpecial Meſſengers, and ſo are acknowledged to be by the *Stranger elect*, in their Certificates of the Receipt of the Habit.

Thirdly,

Thirdly, Their Power, Authority, and ſpecial Command, is to addreſs themſelves to the *Stranger elect*, and preſent, and deliver him from the Sovereign, the *Garter*, *Mantle*, and other Enſigns of the Order: Where obſerve, that there were four or five joined in a Commiſſion, as it has ſometimes happened, then any five, four, three, or two, were of the Quorum; whereof the Principal of the Embaſſy was always one.

Fourthly, They were impowered to require from the *Stranger elect*, his Oath, according to the Form preſcribed in the *Statutes*; but this was a ſpecial caſe, and only inſerted in the Commiſſions of Legation to *Charles*, Duke of *Burgundy*, 9 *Edw.* IV. and *Ferdinand*, Archdeacon of *Auſtria*, 15 *Hen.* VIII. and omitted in all Commiſſions ſince that time.

And laſtly, To perform, and diſpatch thoſe things, which they ſhould judge neceſſary, in the ſame manner as if the Sovereign were preſent in Perſon; and this Power it was thought fit to allow the Ambaſſadors, in caſe any thing ſhould want to be performed which their Inſtructions had not ſufficiently provided for.

The firſt Embaſſy on this occaſion, recorded in the *Blue-Book*, is that to *Edward*, King of *Portugal*, 13 *Hen.* VI. to whom, for the greater Dignity of the *Order*, Garter was thought fit, by the *Chapter*, to be ſent alone with the *Habit* of the *Order*: And hence is the original of *Garter's* Claim to this Employment.

Nevertheleſs, in ſucceeding times, as the Order grew into Eſteem, ſome one of the Knights-Companions was made choice of by the Sovereign to be Principal in theſe Legations; as were *Galliard Sieur de Duras*, ſent to *Charles*, Duke of *Burgundy*, 9 *Edw.* IV. *Arthur Plantagenet*, Viſcount *Liſle*, to *Francis* the firſt King of *France*, 19 *Hen.* VIII. and others.

Sometimes other Noblemen, or Perſons of Quality, though not Knights-Companions, (yet correſpondent to the Degree of the *Stranger elect*, or to the Eſteem the preſent Intereſt begat in the Sovereign,) were employed chief in theſe Embaſſies; among whom Sir *Charles Somerſet*, after Earl of *Worceſter*, was ſent to the Emperor *Maximilian*, 6 *Hen.* VII. *Henry*, Lord *Morley*, to *Don Ferdinand*, Prince of *Spain*, 15 *Hen.* VIII. and others.

In Embaſſies of this nature, it was heretofore uſual, to join ſome Perſons of Rank and Quality, or Office neat the Sovereign, in the Commiſſion; as Sir *John Scot*, Comptroller of the Houſhold, and Sir *Thomas Vaughan*, Treaſurer of the Houſhold, both joined with the *Sieur de Durat* aforeſaid: And Sir *Nicholas Carew*, and Sir *Anthony Brown*, with the Viſcount *Liſle*.

To theſe Perſons, the Sovereign thought fit ſometimes to add a Doctor of the Law, or a dignified Clergyman, and ſuch as had the Language of the Country, not only the better to make ſuch Anſwers to Queſtions as the *Stranger elect* might ſtart, on peruſal of the *Statutes*, but likewiſe to inform him touching the Inſtitution of the *Order*, or other Paſſages relating to the Founder, or matters touching the Honour of the Garter. Beſides, a dignified Clergyman was in thoſe Times thought proper to Adminiſter the Oath, and pronounce the Words of Signification, at the Inveſtiture with the Habit and Enſigns of the *Order*.

And for theſe reaſons, was *John Ruſſel*, Doctor of the Civil Law, and Archdeacon of *Berkſhire*, joined in Commiſſion with the aforeſaid *Sieur de Duras*, and *Edward Lee*, Doctor in Divinity, Archdeacon of *Colcheſter*, and the Sovereign's Almoner, ſent over with the Lord *Morley*; and others.

But of later Years the Sovereign's Ambaſſador, Reſident with the *Stranger elect*, hath ſupplied this Place; as did Sir *Thomas Smith*, in the Legation ſent over to *Charles* IX. and Sir *Edward Stafford*, in that of the *French* King *Henry* III. and Sir *Anthony Mildmay*, to that of *Henry* IV.

Beſides the aforementioned Perſons, *Garter* was always joined in theſe Commiſſions of Legation, not only to keep on Foot his Right, but to manage the Ceremonious Part; and of this there are ſo many numerous Inſtances as are ſufficient to juſtify the Privilege of his Office, and maintain the intereſt of an ancient Right. Beſides which, if it were any way diſputed, we find it decreed in a *Chapter* 13 *Car.* I. *That the carrying the Enſigns of the Order to* Stranger Princes, *doth properly belong to* Garter.

Beſides thoſe Perſons joined in the Commiſſion of Legation, there has frequently been appointed, either *Norroy*, King of Arms, or ſome one of the *Heralds*, to go in Quality of an Attendant in this Service, not only for the Honour

Honour of the Sovereign, but of the Stranger who is to receive the *Habit*, in regard the Ceremonies of Inveſtiture with the whole *Habit*, require the Aſſiſtance of two Officers of Arms, of which there are ſome Precedents.

Lancaſter Herald attended the Embaſſy to *Charles* IX. King of *France*: *Cheſter Herald*, and *Rouge Dragon*, Purſuivant at Arms, on that of *Henry* III. of *France*. A Herald likewiſe attended the Embaſſy to *Emanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*: *York Herald*, that of *Maximilian*, the Emperor: And *Somerſet Herald*, to *Henry* IV. of *France*.

And whereas there went only *Norroy* to *Chriſtian* IV. King of *Denmark*, it was becauſe no more of the Officers of Arms could then be ſpared from their neceſſary Attendance on the Sovereign's Coronation; ſo in the Embaſſy to *Maurice*, Prince of *Orange*, one Herald ſufficed, becauſe the *Garter* and *George* only were ſent him, and conſequently there was but little Service then to be performed.

Concerning other Companions, and Attendants, in theſe Legations, they are both for Quality and Number ſuch, and ſo many, as the chief in the Legation judges ſufficient for the Honour of the Sovereign, and the Dignity of the Embaſſy; and with theſe have uſually gone ſeveral Noblemen, Knights, and Gentlemen.

In the third Place, there is to be prepared for theſe Legations, Warrants for the Habit and Enſigns of the *Order*; and theſe are alſo to be drawn up by the Chancellor of the *Order*, who is to attend the Sovereign for his Sign Manual thereto.

One Warrant is to be directed to the Maſter of the *Great Wardrobe*, to deliver to Garter the Mantle, with the Eſcutcheon of St. *George* within a Garter, embroidered on the left Shoulder, and Toſſels belonging; and alſo the *Surcoat* and *Hood*.

There is alſo another Warrant drawn up, for the delivery of the Enſigns of the *Order* to *Garter*, *viz.* the rich *Garter*, and great *Collar* of the *Order*, with a George Pendant, and another George hanging in a blue Ribbond; together with Caſes for them, lined with purple Velvet, and gilt on the outſide.

And ſometimes theſe Enſigns have been delivered out of the *Jewel-Houſe*, to the Herald of Arms, joined in the Legation in *Garter's* ſtead, as were thoſe ſent to *Charles*,

King of *Sweden*, 20 *Car.* II. but thoſe provided for *John George*, Duke of *Saxony*, to Sir *Thomas Higgons*, the Principal in the Legation; for which they gave their ſeveral Receipts.

The Sovereign's Warrant for the delivery of the Enſigns ſent to *Maximilian* the Emperor, was directed to the Lord Treaſurer, for which *Garter* gave his Receipt. But for thoſe ſent to the *French* King, *Henry* IV. the Warrant was directed to the Maſter of the *Jewel-Houſe*; and out of this Office have all the *Enſigns* of the *Order* been ſince delivered.

There are ſeveral other neceſſaries to be provided, which may paſs as Appurtenances to the former, and are ſometimes inſerted in the Sovereign's Warrants for the Habit of the *Order*, and at other times iſſued by particular Warrants: As a black Velvet Cap with white Feathers and a Heron Sprig, a Girdle and Hangers with the ſame coloured Velvet, with the Surcoat. A Yard of purple Velvet hath uſually been allowed out of the *Great Wardrobe*, for covering the Book of *Statutes*, ſent to the *elect Stranger*: And for the Velom, Writing and Binding the ſaid Book, there is a Fee paid by the Sovereign to the *Regiſter* of the *Order*, which hath generally been proportioned to the Dignity of the Receiver; for this Officer had allowed him for the Book ſent,

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
To the *French* King, *Henry* IV.	5	0	0
To *John Caſimir*, Count Palatine	4	0	0
To the Duke of *Hoſtein*, 3 *Jac.* I.	3	6	8
To the King of *Sweden*, 3 *Car.* I.	3	0	0

But to be more particular, we will inſert the Bill of Charges for the Book of *Statutes*, ſent to *James* VI. of *Scotland*, 26 *Hen.* VIII.

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
For Velom	0	5	0
For illumining the Arms and Letters	0	10	0
For Writing	1	0	0
For Binding and Gilding	0	2	8
For half a Yard of purple Velvet	0	7	0
For half a Yard of crimſon Sattin	0	7	0
For the purple Silk for the Laces	0	0	4
For the white and green Silk for the Seal	0	1	0

For

	l.	s.	d.
For red Silk for the Strings, and garnishing the Book	0	1	0
For an Ounce and half of Venice Gold	0	5	0
For shaping, making the Bag, and garnishing	0	3	4
For red Sarcenet for lining the Bag	0	1	4
For a Box	0	0	8
Total	3	4	6

This Book of *Statutes* ought to be Sealed with the common Seal of the *Order*, which not only the Institution, but all the other succeding Bodies of *Statutes* appoint. Besides, at a Chapter held at *White-Hall*, 13 *Car.* I. the Law was confirmed; and thereupon it was again decreed, That the Book of *Statutes* sent to any *Stranger Prince*, should be Sealed with the Great Seal of the *Order*, affixed to a Label of blue Silk and Gold.

There is also to be provided a large purple Velvet Cushion, to carry the Robes on, when they are to be presented; this is likewise put into the Sovereign's Warrant, and provided by the Master of the *Great Wardrobe*; usually containing one Yard and quarter in length, adorned with Fringe, Cauls, and Tossels of Gold and purple Silk, and within it a Pillow of Fustian filled with Down.

There were two Velvet Cushions prepared for the Service of the Duke of *Wirtembergh*'s Investiture, 1 *Jac.* I. one of Purple, for the Sovereign's State; and another of Crimson, for the Duke; so the same Year to *Christian* IV. King of *Denmark*.

Two *Majesty Escutcheons* are likewise to be provided, painted in *Oil*, and gilt with Gold; one to have the Arms of the Sovereign surrounded with a Garter, under an Imperial Crown; the other of the *Stranger's* Arms, within a Garter also, and such a Crown as is proper to his Dignity. Both these are to be put in Frames, painted and gilt, with their several Stiles fairly Written under the Arms, and set on the back of the Sovereign's Stall, under the State, as also on the back of the Stall of the *Stranger elect*: But there were three *Majesty Escutcheons* sent over in the Legation to *Henry*, Prince of *Orange*, in regard that at his Investiture, *Frederick*, Elector Palatine, was pre-

ſent. In caſe the chief Perſon in the Legation be a Knight of the *Order*, then he is to have a like Eſcutcheon of his own Arms, ſet over his own Stall; for ſo had the Earl of *Derby* provided for him at the Sovereign's Charge, when he was ſent with the Habit to the *French* King, *Henry* III.

The remaining Neceſſaries, are ſuch as relate to the Tranſportation of the Habit of the *Order*, *viz.*

One Pair of fine Holland Sheets to fold the Habit in.
Two ſweet Bags of Taffaty to lay amongſt them.
Two Trunks to put the ſaid Parcels in.
One Sumpter Saddle.

All which are to be provided at the Sovereign's Charge, and is alſo his Gift to the elect *Prince*.

What farther Warrants are to be obtained from the Sovereign, relate to *Garter*, and ſuch other Officers of Arms, as are appointed to attend the Legation; as firſt a Warrant, whereby the Sovereign aſcertains a Warrant for their Diet, and Reward, during their Journey, and till their return; and on which, moſt commonly, for greater certainty of its Payment, the Sovereign's Privy Seal is obtained.

The Allowance to *Garter* in the Reign of *Edw.* VI. was ten Shillings a Day for his Diet, and Ten Shillings a Day more as a Reward: And this we find allowed to Sir *Gilbert Dethick*, in the Embaſſy to *Henry* II. King of *France*, 5 *Edw.* VI. and the like in his Legation to *Maximilian* the Emperor; and to *Frederick* II. King of *Denmark*, 24 *Eliz.*

And when *Clarenceux* was ſent in the Place of *Garter* (the Office being void by the Death of the ſaid Sir *Gilbert*) to the *French* King, *Henry* III. the ſame was alſo allowed him, and commenced nine Days before his ſetting out; and of which there are other Precedents.

Of this daily Allowance, *Garter* hath uſually obtained an advance before-hand, for his better ſupport by the way.

When any of the Heralds were ſent in *Garter's* Place, the ſame Allowances were made them, as if *Garter* had gone in Perſon; as had *Henry St. George*, Eſq; *Richmond Herald*, ſent with the Earl of *Carliſle*, to *Charles*, King of *Sweden*,

Sweden, 21 *Car.* I. As alſo to *Thomas St. George*, Eſq; *Somerſet Herald*, ſent with Sir *Thomas Higgins*, to the Duke of *Saxony*, ſoon after.

As to the Allowance to ſuch Officers of Arms, as are not joined in, but appointed to attend any of theſe Legations; it was uſually, if a Herald, the Moiety of what was given to *Garter*: And if a Purſuivant at Arms, half as much as a Herald.

Agreeable to which, was the Allowance given to *Cheſter Herald*, and *Rouge Dragon* Purſuivant, in the Embaſſy to *Henry* II. King of *France*, 5 *Edw.* VI. and there called the *old Rate*; ſo alſo to *Somerſet Herald*, to *Frederick* II. King of *Denmark*, and the *French* Kings, *Henry* III. and IV. And both the Herald and Purſuivant had alſo a proportionable part of their daily Allowances before-hand.

Beſides which Allowances mentioned, *Garter* hath alſo Allowance for Poſtage, both Outward and Homeward, for Himſelf and Servants; and for Tranſportation of the Habit, and other Things neceſſary for the Voyage. And this by a Clauſe added in the Sovereign's Warrant, is left to *Garter* at his return, when he gives in a Bill of particulars, ſubſcribed with his Hand, to the Treaſurer or Chamberlains of the Exchequer, to have been diſburſed by him.

The Warrant to furniſh *Garter*, or the *Herald*, with Poſt Horſes, and convenient Shipping to carry them over, is uſually had of the Privy Council, or Secretary of State; either before, or after the Lord Ambaſſador; and is not provided for in the ſame Ship.

The Ceremonies of Inveſtiture.

§ 3. The Ceremonies performed at a Stranger Prince's Receipt of the whole Habit and Enſigns of the Order, are highly Solemn, whether we conſider the manner of Inveſtiture performed by the Sovereign's Ambaſſadors, on the *Feſtivity* and *Triumphs*, added by the new inveſted Prince.

Firſt, the Commiſſions joined in the Legation, receiving notice of their firſt Audience, are to preſent themſelves in the accuſtomed manner of Ambaſſadors, Garter, or his Deputy, going in breaſt with the chief of the Legation,

if there be only himſelf joined in Commiſſion with the Lord Ambaſſador, and in this Place *William Segar*, Eſq; *Norroy* King of Arms, (ſent in the room of *Garter*) proceeded with the Earl of *Rutland* at their firſt Audience before *Chriſtian*, IV. King of *Denmark*.

Being arrived near the *elect Stranger*, they preſent the Letters, certifying Election, or their Credential Letters from the Sovereign; and after ſome ſhort general Compliment by the Ambaſſador, he makes known to him, his Election in the uſual Form, which is before ſufficiently ſpoke of.

After the Formality of this Addreſs is over, and that the Stranger hath by his Anſwer accepted of his Election, and conſented to the Reception of the *Order*; the Ambaſſador immediately delivers him the Book of *Statutes*, that he may, if he pleaſes, peruſe them before he aſſume the Habit, and deſires his Conſideration thereon. Next, both the Commiſſioners in the Legation preſent him with the *George* and *Ribbond*, and put it about his Neck, as in ſeveral Inſtances hath been ſhown.

In the interim, before the Day of Inveſtiture, Time is uſually ſet apart for Conference between the Sovereign's Ambaſſador, and ſome of the elect Prince's Council, touching the ordering of the Ceremonies, and wording the Oath to be by him taken. *Garter* is likewiſe to conſider what Places in the elect Prince's Court are fit to perform the Ceremony, and to ſee them made ready, and to inſtruct his Officers, what Duties and Services they are to undertake.

If the great Hall, or other large Room, be appointed, there ought to be prepared a Table, with a rich Carpet, whereon the Habit and Enſigns of the *Order* are to be laid, while the Sovereign's Commiſſion of Legation is read; another Table ſhould be prepared for the Stranger who receives the *Order*; and a third for the Sovereign's Ambaſſador.

In the Church or Chappel where they are to proceed to hear Divine Service, a Stall is to be erected under a Cloth of State, on the Right Hand Entrance of the Choir, for the Sovereign of the *Order*, wherein is to be fixed the *Majeſty Eſcutcheon* of the Sovereign's Arms; another Stall is alſo to be placed on the ſame ſide of the Choir for the inveſted Stranger, at the ſame diſtance from the Sove-

reign's

reign's Stall, as is that for the elect Stranger in the Choir at *Windſor*; in which is to be fixt the *Majeſty Eſcutcheon* of his own Arms, brought likewiſe over by *Garter* or his Deputy; a third Stall is to be erected for the Lord Ambaſſador, who (if a *Knight-Companion*) hath an *Eſcutcheon* of his own Arms within a *Garter* ſet over it; for ſo had the Marquiſs of *Northampton*, at the Inveſtiture of the *French* King, *Henry* II. *Anno* 5 *Edw.* VI. and the Earl of *Derby*, at that of *Henry* III. under all theſe *Eſcutcheons of Arms*, the Stiles and Titles (fairly Written) of the *Sovereign*, and each *Knight-Companion*, are to be affix'd.

Where there is no ſolemn Proceeding to Church, the Sovereign's *Eſcutcheon of Arms*, with his Titles, have been ſet up at the upper end of the Room, where the Inveſtiture is performed; ſo alſo the Stranger Knight's at due diſtance, as at the Inveſtiture of *Guſtavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, in his Tent at the *Leaguer*, near *Darſhaw*, in *Pruſſia*, 23 *September*, *Anno* 3 *Car.* I.

Beſides the before-mentioned Preparations; the *Church* or *Chappel*, into which the new inveſted Stranger proceeds, is to be richly adorned, as we find by ſeveral Inſtances; as at the Inveſtiture of King *Henry* III. when the Church of *Auguſtine Fryars* in *Paris*, was hung with rich *Arras*, and all the *Choir* and *Stalls* with *Cloth of Gold*. On the Day the Solemnity of Inveſtiture is celebrated, the elect Stranger ſends his Coach, and ſome Perſons of Quality, to Accompany the Sovereign's Ambaſſadors to his Court. At the Inveſtiture of *Henry*, Prince of *Orange*, *Frederick*, Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*, ſat with the Viſcount *Charleton*, in one Boot of the Prince's Coach, and Sir *William Segar* in the other; and were met by the ſaid Prince at the Foot of the Stairs of his Court, and conducted thence into his great Chamber.

After ſuch time as the elect Stranger, and the Sovereign's Ambaſſadors, have a while retired; the Stranger uſually firſt enters the Room appointed for the Ceremony, and ſtands under his own State, expecting the coming in of the Ambaſſadors, and notice thereof being given them, they (repoſing in a Room near) proceed in manner following.

Servants to the Lord Ambaſſador, two and two.

The Herald in his Coat of Arms, bearing the Mantle, Surcoat, Hood, and Cap, in his Arms; and if a *Purſui-*

vant

vant attend the Embaſſy, he (wearing his Coat) proceeds before him, bearing part of the ſaid Habit.

Garter veſted in his rich Coat of his Sovereign's Arms, alſo (but at the Inveſtiture of the Duke of *Wirtemberg*, he wore his Robe of Crimſon Satten, as did *Clarenceux*, at the Inveſtiture of the *French* King, *Henry* III.) bearing on a Cuſhion the *Garter*, and *Collar* of the *Order*, with the great *George*, the Book of *Statutes*, and the Commiſſion of *Legation*.

Laſtly, The Lord Ambaſſador, or chief in the Embaſſy, who, if a *Knight-Companion*, proceedeth in his compleat Habit.

If any other *Knight-Companion* is preſent, he alſo wears his whole Habit of the *Order*, as did the Conſtable of *France*, at the Inveſtiture of the *French* King, *Henry* II. The ſaid Conſtable alſo pair'd in the Proceeding with the Sovereign's Ambaſſador.

In going up to the Sovereign's State, they all make three Reverences, and drawing near, the Ambaſſadors Servants fall off on either ſide for the *Herald* to paſs up to the Table, ſet before the Sovereign's State; whereon (with a ſingle Reverence) he lays the Robes.

Then *Garter* draws near the Table alſo, and with a like Reverence towards the Sovereign's State depoſites the *Enſigns* of the *Order*.

The Lord Ambaſſador follows, and makes his Reverence towards the Sovereign's State, and after turning to the Stranger elect, and doing him Reverence, he (or ſome other fit Perſon) delivers himſelf in a ſhort, but grave, and learned Oration; " in which he not only ſets forth the " Praiſes of the illuſtrious *Order*, and of the King the So- " vereign, but alſo the Virtues, the memorable and " praiſe-worthy Actions of the elect Stranger, to whom " the Habit and Enſigns of the *Order* are ſent: Neither " are his Anceſtors (if any of them have attain'd the " Honour of this *Order*,) paſt over in Silence, that thereby " his Heart (already breathing impatience and deſire,) may " be ſo much the more inflamed with an Earneſtneſs to " obtain the Honour and Favour of this ſo great a Dig- " nity.

" He adds beſides, that the Sovereign having well " weigh'd theſe and the like things in his Mind, and " maturely advis'd thereof with his *Knights-Companions*, " they

" they were perſwaded and well ſatisfied in themſelves,
" to nominate and chuſe him before others; to the end
" that he might both himſelf be honoured by the Choice
" of ſuch a Perſon, and alſo thereby give an increaſe and
" addition of Luſtre to thoſe renowned Actions and Vir-
" tues, which already were a chief Ornament to him.

" Laſtly, He points towards the *Enſigns* of the *Order*,
" which he declares to have been ſent by the Sovereign,
" out of great Love, and ſingular Affection, to dignify
" him therewith, as to a Perſon to whom he wiſh'd as
" well and honourably as to any other Prince whatſoever,
" and withall intreats him kindly to accept thereof, and
" wear them in remembrance of the Sovereign and his
" *Order*.

This or the like Oration being ended, the Ambaſſadors preſent their Commiſſion of *Legation* to the elect Stranger, who delivers it to his Secretary, and he publickly Reads it.

At the before-mentioned Inveſtiture of the *French* King, *Henry* II. the Biſhop of *Ely*, one of the Commiſſioners of the *Legation*, made the Speech, to which the Cardinal of *Lorrain* returned Anſwer in the ſaid King's behalf, with all thankful Acknowledgments of the Honour of the *Order*.

After the Commiſſion is read, *Garter* preſents the Oath fairly Written, which is adminiſtred to the elect Stranger, where, if any Exceptions were before made and admitted, they muſt be rehears'd, as we find it directed in the inſtructions given for the Inveſtiture of *James* V. King of *Scotland*. The Ceremony of the Oath being finiſh'd, *Garter* takes from off the Cuſhion the Garter, and having kiſs'd it, preſents it to the Lord Ambaſſador, who kneeling down, puts it with all Reverence on the Stranger's left Leg, being aſſiſted by *Garter*, who pronounces theſe Words of *Signification*.

Ad laudem atque honorem Omnipotentis Dei, intemeratæ Matris ejus, & Sancti Georgii Martyris; cinge tibiam tuam hoc inſigni Subligaculo, circumferens in augmentum honoris tui, & in ſignum ac memoriam illuſtriſſimi Ordinis, nuſquam oblivioni daturus, aut omiſſurus, quod eo moneris; ut valeas, inquam & velis in juſto bello, quod ſolum inibis, ſtare firmiter, agere fortiter, & feliciter omnino vincere.

This

This being ſaid, *Garter* takes the *Surcoat*, and with the Ceremony of a Kiſs, delivers it to the Lord Ambaſſador, who (after the Stranger elect hath put off his Cloak or upper Garment, and Sword,) puts it upon him in this manner: Firſt, The Lord Ambaſſador begins at the Stranger's Right Arm, and *Garter* (or the *Leiger Ambaſſador* if preſent,) aſſiſts at the left Shoulder. The Stranger being thus veſted with the *Surcoat*, both the Lord *Ambaſſador* and *Garter* gird his Sword about him, with a Velvet Girdle of the ſame Colour, at the doing whereof *Garter* ſaith theſe Words.

Capito veſtem hanc purpuream, ad incrementum honoris, & in ſignaculum Ordinis accepti: qua munitus non veteberis pro fide Chriſti, libertate Eccleſiæ, pro jure, & oppreſſorum atque indigentium neceſſaria tuitione, ſanguinem etiam fundere, nedum fortiter ac ſtrenue dimicare.

After this, *Garter* takes up the *Mantle* and *Hood*, which, in like manner kiſſing, he delivers to the Lord Ambaſſador, who inveſts the Stranger therewith, and lays the Hood upon his right Shoulder; (the Train being given into the Hands of ſome Noble Perſonage to be born up,) *Garter* alſo pronouncing theſe Words.

Accipe Clamidem hanc Cœlici coloris, in ſignum Clariſſimi hujus Ordinis, & in Augmentum etiam honoris tui, rubeo Clypeo Dominicæ crucis, uti cernis, inſignitam: ut cujus virtute ſemper ac vigore protectus per Hoſtes tutus abeas, eos ubique ſuperare valeas, & pro clariſſimis denique Meritis, poſt egregiam hanc hujus temporis Militiam, ad æterna vereque Triumphalia gaudia pertingas.

Garter, in the laſt Place, takes up the *Collar*, and with a Kiſs alſo preſents it to the *Lord Ambaſſador*, who placeth it about the Stranger's Shoulders, and *Garter* uttereth theſe Words.

Torquem hunc in Collo deferes, ad augmentum honoris, & in ſignum quoque clariſſimi ordinis a te ſuſcepti, cum imagine Sanctiſſimi Martyris, & Chriſti Militis Georgii: cujus præſidio ſuffultus, Mundi hujus tam proſpera quam adverſa ſic pertranſeas, ut animæ pariter ac corporis hoſtibus hic ſtrenue devictis, non Temporariæ modo Militiæ gloriam, ſed & perenis victoriæ palmam denique recipere valeas. Amen.

When the Ceremony of Inveſtiture is finiſhed, the *Lord Ambaſſador* congratulateth the new inveſted Stranger in the Sovereign's

Sovereign's Name, and in the Name of all the *Knights-Companions*, and then delivers him his Velvet Cap, adorned with white Plumes, and the Book of *Statutes*.

The Stranger being thus inveſted, ſtayeth a while in the Room, where he received this Honour, with the Ambaſſador, and after Complements of Congratulation between them, he goeth to the Church in a ſolemn manner, having the Train of his *Mantle* born up; at the Entrance into the Church, all in the Proceſſion make three Reverences, the firſt towards the *High Altar*, the next towards the Sovereig 's Stall, and the third towards the new inveſted Stranger's Stall.

The *Lord Ambaſſador* proceedeth towards the Seat aſſign'd for him, and ſtands before it till the Stranger hath aſcended his Stall, and after making his Reverences, (as before) takes his; then *Garter* making the like Reverences, ſits down on a Chair, plac'd for him before the Sovereign's Stall.

But the *Herald at Arms* ought to be often near the Stranger, or elſe the *Lord Ambaſſador*, to inform them of the *Order* of *Ceremony*, becauſe *Garter* is obliged to attend the Sovereign's Royal Stall.

After a ſolemn Anthem, *Garter* paſſeth in the middle of the *Choir*, and by a Reverence, firſt to the inveſted Stranger, and next to the *Lord Ambaſſador*, gives them the Signal for deſcending, and being both come down, *Garter* paſſeth up before the Stranger to the *High Altar*, where he makes his Offering of Gold and Silver, being accompanied with the *Lord Ambaſſador*, the *Herald* laying the Cuſhion whereon he kneels when he Offers.

But if a *Knight-Companion* be ſent on this *Legation*, then he proceeds firſt up to the *Altar*, preceeded by *Garter*, and Offers for the Sovereign, which done, he returns to his own Stall: Next, the inveſted Stranger proceeds up, (preceeded as before,) Offers, and returns back to his own Stall; afterwards the aforeſaid *Knight-Companion* proceeds up again, and Offers for himſelf: And in this *Order* was the Offering made when the Emperor *Maximilian* was inveſted at *Vienna*, *January* 4. *Anno* 10 *Eliz.*

The new inveſted Stranger having offered, returns to his Stall, and the *Lord Ambaſſador*, with three Reverences, takes his Seat, the *Organs*, *&c.* playing all the while:

When

When the ſolemn Service is finiſh'd, the Stranger deſcends again from his Stall, and with the Proceeding before him, returns in the ſame Order he came to the Room, where he received his Inveſtiture.

It's obſervable, that the Emperor *Maximilian*, out of a compliance with the Proteſtant Religion, cauſed, on the Day of his Inveſtiture, all Prayers to Saints incenſing, and other Matters and Ceremonies not uſed by the Church of *England*, to be wholly omitted at the Service in his Chappel.

At theſe great Solemnities, the inveſted Strangers have heretofore held moſt magnificent Feaſts, but of late they are not ſo much in Uſe: And when Dinner was ready, they proceeded thither in their whole Habit, which they wore all Dinner time.

At the Inveſtiture of *Chriſtian* IV. King of *Denmark*, *Anno* 1 *Jac.* I. the Sovereign's Stiles and Titles of Honour were proclaimed thrice, (before they ſat down to Dinner,) and the ſaid King's twice; but when *Maurice* and *Henry*, Princes of *Orange*, received Inveſtiture, the Stiles were proclaimed immediately after they were inveſted, and in the ſame Room, the Ceremony being perform'd to both in the Afternoon.

At the Feaſt made by *Maximilian* I. (King of the *Romans*,) Sir *Charles Somerſet*, and Sir *Thomas Wriotheſley*, ſent on the Embaſſy, was admitted to his Table, and ſat on his left Hand: On the Day of Inveſtiture of *Don Ferdinand*, Prince of *Spain*, Arch-Duke of *Auſtria*, the Lord *Morley*, and Sir *William Huſſey*, ſat on his right Hand at Dinner, and Dr *Lee*, and the ſaid Sir *Thomas Wriotheſley*, on his left; theſe four being join'd in the Commiſſion of *Legation*.

At a Feaſt on the like Occaſion by the *French* King, *Henry* II. he admitted to his Table (beſide the Marquiſs of *Northampton*, the principal Perſon in the *Legation*,) the before-mentioned Conſtable of *France*; and all three ſat in their full Robes of the *Garter*, which they put not off till after Dinner. The Cardinal of *Lorrain* ſat alſo at the King's Table, but it was on the other ſide.

When the Inveſtiture was performed in the Afternoon, then was the Grand Dinner turn'd into a Supper; as it was at the Inveſtiture of *Maximilian* the Emperor, and two of the *French* Kings; but when *Henry*, Prince of

Orange,

Orange, receiv'd the *Enſigns* of the *Order*, there was no Feaſt at all, but purpoſely omitted, to prevent the difference which might have been occaſioned by the Precedency and Place, between Ambaſſadors drinking of Healths, and other Complements.

On this Solemnity, and the Honour they deriv'd from it, ſome have thought fit to tranſmit the Memory to Poſterity, by Medals, with Inſcriptions relating thereto; ſuch were thoſe of Gold and Silver, which *Frederick*, Duke of *Wirtemberg*, cauſed to be made; as alſo thoſe made by *Charles*, King of *Sweden*.

Certificates of having receiv'd the Habits, *and* Enſigns *of the* Order.

§ 4. The magnificent Solemnity of Inveſtiture, *&c.* being compleatly finiſh'd, and the Ambaſſadors having fully performed their Duties therein; they are yet further to obtain from the new inveſted Stranger, before their departure, a publick Inſtrument, teſtifying the reception of the ſaid Habit and Enſigns, Sign'd with his Hand, and Sealed with his Great Seal; this we find anciently done in ſeveral Inſtances, and is generally demanded and obtain'd.

Hereupon a Clauſe to this Effect is uſually added, in Inſtructions given to Ambaſſadors; as appears from thoſe to the Lord *Howard* and *Garter*, in the Embaſſy to *James* V. King of *Scotland*; namely, that *Garter ſhould remember* (after the Inveſtiture was performed,) *to Purchaſe, and Sollicit a Certificate from the ſaid King, of his reception of the Order, and taking the Oath, both under his Seal.*

The Form and Subſtance of theſe Certificates are much alike; for after a recital of all the Powers given to the Ambaſſadors nam'd in the Commiſſion of *Legation*, the Stranger Prince firſt makes Certificate of his receiving, and Inveſtiture with the *Mantle*, *Surcoat*, *Collar*, and other Ornaments of the *Order*; and that they receiv'd them from the Sovereign's Ambaſſador, with the accuſtom'd Solemnities.

In ſome of theſe Certificates, namely from *Ferdinand*, Prince of *Spain*, *Anno* 15 *Hen.* VIII. from *Francis* I. the

the *French* King, *Anno* 19 *Hen.* VIII. and from *Guſtavus*, King of *Sweden*, *Anno* 3 *Car.* I. we find the taking the Oath appointed by the Statutes to be alſo certified. Of the return of theſe Certificates, the Annals of the *Order* ſometimes take notice, and by a Decree, 13 *Car.* I. care was taken to oblige the Ambaſſadors to produce theſe Certificates to the Sovereign at their return.

The Stranger Prince hath been pleas'd ſometimes, to give with the Certificate, a particular Teſtimonial of *Garter*'s punctual diſcharge of his Duty in the *Legation*, or of the Officer of Arms employed in his ſtead; as did *Guſtavus*, King of *Sweden*, in the preamble of his *Diploma*, whereby he teſtifies the beſtowing upon *Henry St. George*, *Richmond Herald*, the Honour of Knighthood; they have alſo uſually given *Garter* Gratuities, either in Money, Diamonds, or ſome other Preſent of great value, of which ſeveral Inſtances might be produced.

CAP. XVI.

The Inſtallation of a Stranger by Proxy.

Touching the Choice and Nomination of a Proxy.

§ 1. AFter the Stranger is inveſted, he is enjoin'd by the Statutes (be he of what State or Condition ſoever,) to ſend in eight Months after his Inveſtiture, either a *Proctor* or *Deputy* to be inſtalled in his behalf, in the Seat aſſign'd him within the Chappel of St. *George* at *Windſor*.

The Time limited for ſending in *Henry* Vth's Statutes, is but ſeven Months; and thoſe of *Henry* VIII. allow no more; and that not only after Inveſtiture, but after the Stranger hath certified the Sovereign of his reception of the *Order*.

By King *Henry* VIIIth's Statutes, it's alſo provided; *That in caſe a Stranger do not ſend his* Deputy *or* Proctor *within ſeven Months, without having a reaſonable Excuſe, and ſuch as ſhould be allowed by the Sovereign or his Deputy,*

the

the Election (notwithstanding his former Acceptation,) *should be also void, except so it be, that the Stranger be hindred or disturbed by great Affairs, and then might he send his Excuse to the Sovereign, or his Deputy, within one Month after; and according as the Sovereign or his Deputy should allow or disallow of his Excuse, that then the Sovereign or his Deputy might give unto him four Months of respite more; within which time, if he neither come, nor send his Deputy to be installed for him, then the said Election should be void for that time.*

The *French* King, *Francis* I. was so earnest for compleating this Honour, that he dispatch'd his Proctor hither with all the speed he could, and most of the Stranger Princes have sent their *Deputies* within the limited time, there being very few Instances to the contrary, and those were occasioned through the multiplicity of Affairs.

When the *Garter* and *George* only have been sent to a Stranger, the Ceremony of Installation hath been dispenc'd with, till a more convenient time, as appears from the Instructions of *March* 4. *Anno* 19 *Car.* I. given at the sending these two principal *Ensigns* of the *Order*, to *William*, Prince of *Orange*, and *Bernard de Foix*, Duke *d'Espernon*, (in regard of the Interruptions then given by the Rebellion here,) such dispensations, and for the same reason, was King *Charles* II. necessitated to give those Strangers whom he honoured with Election, while he remain'd in Foreign Parts.

Upon the said King's happy Restauration, among many other things relating to the *Order*, this particular was taken into consideration, in reference not only to the Duke *de Espernon* and Prince *Maurice*, who were dead, but those Strangers also then living; and at two *Chapters* held at *White-Hall*, *Anno* 13 *Car.* II. directions were given to *Garter* to place the *Banners* and *Atchievements* of the surviving Strangers over their respective Stalls; and the Sovereign, by his supream Power, (induc'd by the impossibilities of the late Troubles to perform the Installation, and by reason of the time elaps'd since their Elections,) dispenc'd wholly and absolutely with their Installations, but at the same time declar'd, that as the like necessity and conjuncture could never happen again, so he would not, on any motion or pretence whatsoever, give the like dispensation.

It ſeems to reſt in the pleaſure of the Stranger, whether he will chuſe to ſend over any Perſon of his own Court, or give his Procuration to ſome one of the Sovereign's Subjects, to receive his Stall, and in his Name to take Poſſeſſion of it; the latter of which hath been done ſeveral times, out of deſire to favour ſome of our Nobility with this Honour, of which many inſtances might be given.

It hath ſometimes happned, that a *Proctor* for the Inſtallation of a Stranger, hath been appointed and nominated by the Sovereign of the *Order*, though the Principal had nam'd another before: Thus it fell out in the caſe of *Maurice*, Prince of *Orange*, *Anno* 10 *Jac.* I. who having deputed Count *Henry* his Brother, to be inſtalled for him, and he having put to Sea in Order thereto, but by reaſon of contrary Winds not arriving in *England* before the Day appointed for his Inſtallation, the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* ordered that *Lodowick* of *Naſſau*, Kinſman to the elect Prince, ſhould take Poſſeſſion of his Stall on his behalf: A caſe ſomewhat like, was that of *John George*, Duke of *Saxony*, who ſent over his Procuration to *John*, Earl of *Bath*; and he being detained in the Weſt on extraordinary Occaſions, when St. *George*'s Feaſt was held at *Windſor*, *Anno* 23 *Car.* II. wrote to the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, to obtain the Sovereign's Diſpenſation, for not appearing in the Name of his Principal; who repreſenting his humble requeſt to the Sovereign, in a *Chapter* held on the Eve of the ſaid Feaſt, he was pleas'd to grant it, and appointed *Heneage*, Earl of *Winchelſea*, who perform'd the Service. There is alſo an ancient Example of this kind, *Anno* 9 *Hen.* V. where the Sovereign nominated the Lord *Fitz Hugh*, *Proctor* for the King of *Denmark*; which yet was not done, till after the Sovereign had been certified that the ſaid King had been inveſted, and obliged himſelf by Oath to the obſervation of the *Statutes*.

In like manner it is recorded, that the Earl of *Cleveland* was by the Sovereign appointed Deputy for the Inſtallation of *Guſtavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, and yet not unlike, but this might be with conſent of the ſaid King, though the Annals herein are ſilent.

The

The Proctor's Qualifications.

§ 2. By the Statutes of the *Order*, the *Proctor*, whether he be nominated by his Principal, or by the Sovereign, muſt be *Procurator ſufficiens & Idoneas*; that is, ſuch a Perſon who hath always been accounted of unblameable Converſation, not branded with any note of Infamy, but altogether irreprovable. And ſuch was *Dominicus Franciſcus*, *Deputy* to *Charles*, Duke of *Ferrara*, who in the *Black-Book* of the *Order* is characterized to be a Knight of incorrupt Fame; nor are we to doubt but that other *Proctors* to Strangers were ſuch, though the Teſtimonials of their Virtues do not appear in the Annals of the *Order*.

Secondly, The *Proctor* ought to be a Perſon correſpondent to the State and Dignity of the Stranger that is inveſted, which may ſufficiently appear by ſeveral Inſtances; the Emperor *Maximilian* I. appointed for his Proxy, the Marquiſs of *Brandenburgh*, *Anno* 6 *Hen.* VII. *Francis* I. King of *France*, *Adrian de Fercelin*, Lord of *Broſs*, *Anno* 19 *Hen.* VIII. and *Henry* IV. of *France*, *Sieur de Chaſtes*, Vice Admiral of *France*, *Anno* 42 *Eliz.*

Thirdly, It is provided that he be a Knight, and without any manner of Reproach; and if it ſo happen that he have not receiv'd the degree of Knighthood, the Sovereign is to beſtow that Honour before he be allow'd to take upon him the Execution of his deputative Power; for none but Knights are capable of this Honour, or permitted to bear the *Enſigns* of ſo great an *Order*. Hereupon the Lord *Willoughby* of *Eresby*, *Proctor* for *Frederick* II. King of *Denmark*, was Knighted by the Sovereign, the Morning before he proceeded to take Poſſeſſion of the Stall.

There was one reaſon notwithſtanding, why this particular was not ſtrictly ſtood upon, (though moved) in the caſe (and it's the ſingle caſe) of *Henry Ramell*, Hereditary Lord of *Woſterwitz* and *Beckeskaw*, *Deputy* for *Chriſtian* IV. King of *Denmark*, *Anno* 3 *Jac.* I. for it being taken notice of that he was not a Knight, certain Perſons were ſent from the Sovereign to ſignify his Pleaſure, that he ſhould be advanc'd to the Honour of Knight-

hood before he took upon him the *Enſigns* of the *Order* in his King's behalf; to which he made Anſwer, that he appeared here, not in his own, but in the Name of the King of *Denmark*; and that ſuch a degree of Honour was unuſual in his own Country, (being Born in *Pomerania*,) and therefore humbly deſired that he might be excus'd from the Honour; upon which the Sovereign was pleas'd to diſpence with him, and forthwith the ſaid *Deputy* (but no Knight,) was admitted to take the Stall aſſign'd to the ſaid King his Principal.

His Letters of Procuration.

§ 3. The Authority wherewith an elect Stranger inveſts his Proxy, which ought to paſs under his Hand and Seal, do generally contain theſe Particulars.

First, He premiſeth the Sovereign's Election of him into the Order of the *Garter*, and his receipt of the Habit and Enſigns thereof, then takes notice of the Obligation the *Statutes* of the Order put upon him, for ſending a Proxy to take Poſſeſſion of his Stall, in regard the Dignity whereunto he is advanc'd in his own Country, will not permit him to repair Perſonally to *Windſor*; and being not only deſirous that the Election and Inveſtiture ſhould obtain its due effect, but to fulfil, as far as in him lies, the Injunctions of the *Statutes*, in what concerns the aſſuming of his Stall, and taking the Oath appointed; he therefore Ordains, Authoriſes, and Deputes, a Perſon fitly qualified, (named in the Deputation,) his ſufficient *Proctor*, and ſpecial *Deputy*, to appear at the Caſtle of *Windſor* in his behalf and in his Name, at the next Solemnity that ſhould be held there, to ſupply his room, and receive Poſſeſſion of the Stall aſſign'd him, according to the uſual Form; and in all reſpects to perform thoſe Ceremonies and Things in his behalf due and accuſtom'd, or ſhould appear to belong any way to the Splendor or Ornament of the Order: As alſo to take the accuſtomed Oath with thoſe Qualifications, and in that Form as had been (or ſhould be) agreed on; and further, to fulfil all other things which he ſhould think neceſſary to be perform'd on this Occaſion, or whatſoever thing might require a more ſpecial Command, than was contain'd in the Letters

ters of Procuration; and as fully as the Stranger ſhould be obliged to, and would do, if he were there preſent in his own Perſon. Laſtly, there is uſually added a Clauſe of Ratification and Confirmation, of all ſuch things as the *Proctor* ſhould ſay or do, in reference to the Solemnity of Inſtallation.

Of the Proctor's Reception.

§ 4. When the Sovereign is acquainted with the arrival of the Proxy, and the occaſion of his coming, he ſoon after gives him Audience; after which, a Day for Inſtallation is aſſign'd, and the Sovereign nominates ſome of the *Knights-Companions* his Commiſſioners, to perform the Ceremonies.

The *Proctor* heretofore has been receiv'd with very great State; Sir *Balthaſar Caſtilian*, ſent hither from the Duke of *Urbin*, *Anno* 22 *Hen.* VII. was met at the Seaſide by Sir *Thomas Brandon*, with a goodly Company of his own Servants well Hors'd, who kept Company with him, till they came near *Deptford* in *Kent*; where, by the Sovereign's Command, he was met by Sir *Thomas Dokara*, and Sir *Thomas Wriotheſley*, *Garter*: The ſaid Sir *Thomas Dokara* had attending him thirty of his Servants, all in new Liveries, well Hors'd, every Gentleman bearing a Javelin in his Hand, and every Yeoman a Bow and a Sheaf of Arrows, and ſo they convey'd him to his Lodging. The next Day they conducted him to *London*, and by the way there met him divers *Italians*, and *Paulus de Gygeles*, the Pope's Vice Collector, to whoſe Houſe he was convey'd and lodg'd. The reception alſo of *James* Lord *Rambovillet*, Proctor for the *French* King, *Charles* IX. was very noble.

The Preparations for Inſtallation.

§ 5. The Preparations of the Inſtallation of a Stranger by Proxy, are the ſame as for the Proxy of a *Knight-Subject*, mention'd as before, and the Form of the Commiſſion for Inſtallation is much the ſame; the Preamble

tains the Authority wherewith the Proxy is impower'd, and is penn'd with like Words.

The Letters of notice to the Commiſſioners.

The Warrants for removing of Stalls, and for the Strangers Atchievements, are all to be obtain'd by the Chancellor of the Order, under the Sovereign's Sign Manual, to which the Signet of the Order is to be affixt.

The Strangers Atchievements (as mention'd in the Warrant,) are to be provided at the Sovereign's Charge; namely, his *Helm*, *Creſt*, *Mantlings*, and *Sword*, together with a *Banner* of his *Arms* and *Quarterings*; and theſe the Proctor is enjoin'd to bring along with him to *Windſor*.

Sometimes a Warrant hath been directed to the Maſter of the *Wardrobe*, to provide but ſome part of theſe Atchievements; and another Warrant to the Lord Treaſurer of *England*, to deliver *Garter* Money to provide the other part; in each of which, the particulars relating to either are enumerated; for ſo were the Warrants drawn up for the Atchievements of the *French* King, *Henry* II. At other times direction hath been to the Maſter of the *Wardrobe*, to deliver to *Garter* the whole, who thereupon puts the Charge upon Account.

Sometimes particular Warrants have been directed to the Maſter of the *Wardrobe*, to deliver ſeveral Parcels of the Materials, for the making up theſe Atchievements; as were thoſe Warrants, to deliver the Sovereign's Embroiderer, and to *Garter*, ſo much Velvet, Cloth of Gold, *&c.* for making the great Banner, and other the Atchievements of *Charles* IX. and *Henry* III. *French* Kings.

It alſo appears that *Garter* hath ſometimes laid out the Money for all, or part of the Atchievements, and then delivered his Bill of diſburſements into the *Wardrobe*; as is manifeſt from thoſe Bills for the Atchievements of *Frederick* II. King of *Denmark*, in Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, and the Duke of *Holſtein*.

Beſides the Atchievements, ſome other things uſed at the Solemnity are commonly included in the foretaid Warrants; the *Mantle* of the *Order* is not prepared at the Sovereign's Charge, for the Statutes of Inſtitution appoint the Proxy to bring one with him, not that the Sovereign ſhould provide it, having done that before, at the Legation with the whole *Habit*; nor is it found in the Rolls or Books of the Sovereign's great *Wardrobe*, that any Ac-

count is made for providing a ſecond *Mantle*, when the Proxy of a Stranger came hither; which, had the Sovereign been at ſuch Charge, would not have been omitted.

The Proctor's Cavalcade to Windſor.

§ 6. The Day appointed for the Inſtallation drawing on, the Proxy was heretofore accompanied from *London* to *Windſor*, with the Sovereign's Lieutenant and his Aſſiſtants, (if the Feaſt of St. *George* was then alſo celebrated,) or otherwiſe the Sovereign's Commiſſioners with a great Retinue.

Among the reſt, when the Deputy of the *French* King, *Francis* I. rode to *Windſor*, *Anno* 19 *Hen.* VIII. all the *Knights-Companions* that were in Commiſſion for that Solemnity, aſſembled at the Lord *Sandy's* Place near St. *Paul's* Church in *London*, whence they rode to the *Deputy's* Lodging, and thence accompanied him with a gallant Equipage to the Caſtle of *Windſor*, where Lodgings were prepared for him at the *Dean's* Houſe.

In like manner, *Anno* 8 *Eliz.* the Earls of *Suſſex* and *Leiceſter*, and Lord *Clinton*, (three of the four Commiſſioners appointed for the Inſtallation of the *French* King, *Charles* IX.) with other Lords and Gentlemen, took their Horſes at the Court Gate at *Weſtminſter*, and with a great Train rode to the Lodgings of the ſaid King's Proxy, (being then at St. *Mary's Spittle* in *London*,) whence they went through *Holbourn* towards *Windſor*; the Earl of *Southampton*, Viſcount *Mountague*, Sir *Henry Lea*, and Sir *Edward Umpton*, met them at *Langford* near *Colbrook*, with their Hawks, and ſhew'd the Proxy variety of ſport, with which he being well pleaſed, they rode to his Lodgings at the *Dean's* Houſe at *Windſor*, the uſual Place of entertaining the Strangers Proxies.

Supper after his Arrival there.

§ 7. The Evening of their arrival paſſeth with a ſumptuous Supper, but the principal Entertainment is reſerv'd for the following Day's Dinner. At the Inſtallation of the *French* King, *Francis* I. all the Commiſſioners met together

gether at the Marquiſs of *Exeter*'s Lodgings, and went to the *Dean's* Houſe, where they were entertain'd by him at Supper all at one Table; at another Table ſat *Garter*, with certain of the *Deputy's* chief Gentlemen, and ſome of the *Heralds*; and at a third ſat the reſt of the *Heralds*, and other of the *Proxies* Servants.

The Commiſſioners and other Noblemen, who accompanied the *Proctor* of *Charles* IX. to *Windſor*, ſupped alſo with him at the *Dean's*; He himſelf ſitting at the upper end of the Table; then the Earls of *Suſſex* and *Leiceſter* by him, one againſt the other, next the Earl of *Southampton*, and Viſcount *Mountague*, then the Lord *Clinton*, and Lord *Herbert* of *Cardiff*, after them two Strangers of diſtinction, then lower ſat the Lord *Grey*, and other Strangers, and laſt of all, at the lower end, oppoſite to the *Proctor*, ſat *Monſieur Doſe*, *alias* St. *Michael*, the *French Herald*. *Garter*, *Black-Rod*, and divers Strangers, ſupped with the *Dean*, and in the Parlour and Hall ſat divers Penſioners, Gentlemen, and Strangers.

Of the Proceeding to the Chapter-Houſe.

§ 8. What hath been before ſet down of the Proceeding to the *Chapter-Houſe*, at the perſonal Inſtallation of a *Knight-Subject*, will extend hither, both as to Order and Circumſtances; yet this general Rule is to be born in mind, that the Place of a Stranger Prince's Proctor here, is next after the Provincial King's, (unleſs the Proctor of a *Knight-Subject* happen to intervene,) and before the Junior *Knight-Companion*, (unleſs a *Knight-Subject* paſs then in the Proceeding,) of which we have an Inſtance at the Inſtallation of the Dukes of *Brunſwick* and *Chevereux*, and the Earl of *Dorſet*, by their Proctors, but the Earls of *Salisbury*, *Carliſle*, and *Holland*, with Viſcount *Andover* in Perſon, *Anno* 1 *Car.* I. when the Proceeding was ordered as followeth.

1. Two Waiters of the Sovereign's Hall, in their Livery Coats, bearing White Rods.
2. Alms-Knights.
3. Prebends of the College.
4. Officers of Arms.

5. Proctors

5. Proctors to the abſent elect Knights.
6. Elect Knights in Perſon.
7. Knights-Companions.
8. Black-Rod.
9. Regiſter.
10. Garter.
11. Chancellor.
12. Prelate.
13. Sovereign's Lieutenant.
14. Courtiers and Gentlemen in the Rear.

Only in the ſingle caſe of *Chriſtan* IV. King of *Denmark*, *Anno* 3 *Jac.* I. (as an extraordinary Reſpect and Honour,) his Proxy went in the Proceeding to the *Chapter-Houſe* next before the Sovereign's Lieutenant.

As we had a former Example, of a Proctor to a *Knight-Subject*, who in this Proceeding paſt before the *Alms-Knights*, and Officers of Arms, namely, Sir *Henry Sidney*, *Deputy* to the Earl of *Warwick*, 5 *Eliz.* ſo here in the caſe of a *Stranger*, the Viſcount *Hereford*, Proxy to the Duke of *Holſtein*, inſtalled 3 *Eliz.* went in this Proceeding to the *Chapter-Houſe*, before the Officers of Arms: Which Proceeding was ordered as follows.

1. Gentlemen and Knights.
2. The Proctor and Ambaſſador of *Holſtein* together.
3. Officers of Arms.
4. Regiſter and Garter.
5. Lord *Haſtings*, and Lord *Paget*, Commiſſioners.

If the Proxy of a Stranger paſs in the Proceeding, which the Sovereign, his Lieutenant, or Commiſſioners, make to the *Chapter-Houſe*, then for the moſt part he gives his Attendance in the *Preſence-Chamber*, or in the Room whence the Lieutenant or Commiſſioners proceed, and there joins himſelf thereto.

But ſometimes the Commiſſioners, as an inſtance of ſingular Reſpect, after their ſetting out, have taken the Proxies Lodging in their way, and there receiv'd him into the Proceeding; ſo did Prince *Henry*, by the Proctor of *Chriſtian* IV. King of *Denmark*; and the Commiſſioners by the Proctor of the Duke of *Wirtembergh*, 2 *Jac.* I.

'Tis

'Tis obſerved, that the Proxies of Strangers have not always gone in the Proceeding, but ſometimes ſtaid at their Lodging, till the Commiſſioners were ready to ſend for them to the *Chapter-Houſe*. As at the Inſtallation of *Charles* IX. King of *France*, 8 *Eliz.* the Commiſſioners meeting, they, and the three inferior Officers of the Order, robed themſelves, and then went to the Proxies Lodging, and having juſt confer'd with him, took leave, and proceeded to the *Chapter-Houſe*, whence they ſent out *Garter* to the Proxy, with invitation to come to them, who was preſently conducted by *Garter* to the *Chapter-Houſe* Door, where the two Senior Commiſſioners receiv'd him between them.

Sometimes the Proxies have paſt privately to the Eaſt-Iſle of St. *George*'s Chappel, and there reſted, before the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* went into the *Chapter-Houſe*, or proceeded into the Choir, without entering thereinto; for ſo did the Earl of *Cleveland*, and the Marquiſs of *Dorſet*, Proxies to *Guſtavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, and *Henry*, Prince of *Orange*, 4 *Car.* I. The like Method was obſerved by the Earl of *Dover*, Proxy to *Charles*, Prince Palatine, 9 *Car.* I. and by Sir *George Cartaret*, Proxy to *Chriſtian*, Prince of *Denmark*, 15 *Car.* II. ſo alſo of the Earls of *Carliſle* and *Winchelſea*, Proxies to *Charles*, King of *Sweden*, and *John George*, Prince Elector of *Saxony*, 23 *Car.* II.

The Ceremonies perform'd therein.

§ 9. When the Proceeding hath arrived at the *Chapter-Houſe* Door, the Sovereign, and *Knights-Companions*, or the Lieutenant, &c. with the Officers of the *Order* before them, enter to hold their Conſultation; the Stranger's *Proxy* being firſt requeſted to ſtay without, till his Deputation, or Letters of Procuration are read, to the end they may underſtand the effect thereof.

To this purpoſe we find it directed, by an ancient Hand, that where any Knight is inſtalled by his Deputy, he ought to ſtay without the Veſtry, or *Chapter-Houſe* Door, till he be introduced by two *Knights-Companions*: So the Lord *Paget*, one of the Commiſſioners for Inſtallation of the Duke of *Savoy*, when the Proceeding was come to the

Chapter-

Chapter-Houſe Door, acquainted his *Proxy* with this Cuſtom and Injunction, which he complied with.

The Eaſt-Iſle, behind the High Altar, is the uſual Place for *Proxies* to ſtay, till they are called into the *Chapter*, as it is alſo for the *Deputies* of *Knights-Subjects*, where Chairs and Cuſhions are prepared for this occaſion.

The firſt thing done after the *Chapter* is opened, is reading the Commiſſion for *Inſtallation*, by the *Regiſter* of the *Order*, (but if the Sovereign be preſent, no Commiſſion iſſues,) and next, the Letters of Procuration; this being the moſt uſual and proper Place for this Ceremony

However, at the *Inſtallation* of the *French* King, *Francis* I. by a very unuſual compliance, the Commiſſioners went from the *Chapter-Houſe*, after they had called in and inveſted the Earl of *Oxford*, with his *Surcoat* and *Hood*, to the *Dean's* Houſe, where the *Proctor* was lodg'd, and in a great Chamber there, ſhewed him the Sovereign's Commiſſion, and in it the Authority for admitting him into the Stall of his Lord and Maſter: Upon which the *Proctor* preſented them with his Procuration, which impowered him to take Poſſeſſion of it, and to perform what Ceremonies related to it; which Inſtrument the *Regiſter* read before them. This being done, they all proceeded to the Chappel; where entering, they waved their return to the *Chapter-Houſe*, and paſſed directly into the *Choir*.

After ſome time of Conſultation in the *Chapter-Houſe*, the *Proxy* is ſent for in thither by *Garter*, who conducts him to the *Chapter-Houſe* Door, and his Reception there by the Commiſſioners is after the ſame manner as is uſed to the *Knight elect*, or to his *Proxy*: But whether he ought to enter the *Chapter-Houſe*, or be admitted any farther than the Door, or Porch thereof, and to paſs thence immediately into the *Choir*, hath been ſome Queſtion; becauſe the Practice ſeems to have been ſometimes one way, ſometimes another.

All that we find to prohibit his Entrance therein, is an Expreſſion in the ſhort Ceremonial of *Inſtallation* of Strangers by *Proxy*, entered in the *Black-Book*; where it ſays----That the *Mantle* is to be laid on the *Proctor's* right Shoulder, in the Porch of the *Chapter-Houſe*, *becauſe he is not to enter into it.*

And there are two Inſtances where the *Mantle* was delivered to the *Proctor* at the *Chapter-Houſe* Door; from whence

whence ſome may infer, that the Practice of thoſe Times was alſo agreeable to the aforeſaid direction; namely, that of the *Proctor* of the *French* King, *Francis* I. 19 *Hen.* VIII. where *Garter* ſtood at the *Chapter-Houſe* Door, with the *Mantle*, and as the Proceeding paſſed by, preſented it to the two Senior *Knights-Companions*, who placed it upon the *Proctor's* right Arm; and ſo of the *Proctor* of *Emanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*, 1 and 2 *Phil.* and *Mar.* who entered not into the *Chapter-Houſe*, but had the *Mantle* diſcuſſed at the Door.

But theſe Inſtances, if duly weighed, cannot properly, or with any Advantage, be alledged to prove the Aſſertion; becauſe the Affairs relating to both, receiv'd diſpatch in the *Proctors* Lodging a little before, and where the *Proctor* himſelf was preſent, where the meeting of the Commiſſioners and Proctor cannot be deemed leſs than a *Chapter*, tho' not held in the *Chapter-Houſe*, from the Tranſactions that paſſed there, *viz.* producing the Sovereign's Warrant, and the *Proctor's* Inſtrument of Deputation, which were both read before them by the *Regiſter*, and the *Proctor* accordingly admitted, which being finiſhed, nothing relating to the preſent purpoſe required their paſſing into the *Chapter-Houſe*, or remained to be done till they came into the *Choir*.

But the general Practice runs ſtrong on the contrary ſide; for we find that the *Proctor* for *Charles* IX. King of *France*, 8 *Eliz.* was met at the *Chapter-Houſe* Door, by the Earls of *Suſſex* and *Leiceſter*, who took him in thither between them, where, after the *Regiſter* had read, as well the Sovereign's Commiſſion for Inſtallation, as his Letters of Procuration, and the Commiſſioners had admitted him *Deputy* for the ſaid King, they all came forth, and laid his Principal's *Mantle* on his right Arm and Shoulder, the Train whereof was born by the Earl of *Southampton*, aſſiſted by the Lord *Herbert* of *Cardiff*.

Again it is remarkable, 25 *Eliz.* that *Garter* conducted the *Proxy* of *Frederick* II. King of *Denmark*, to the *Chapter-Houſe*, and at that Place the Earl of *Leiceſter*, and the Lord *Hunſdon*, received and led him in: So alſo was *Chriſtian* IVth's *Proxy* led thither, by the Earls of *Nottingham* and *Dorſet*. And in *Jac.* I. *Lodowick*, Count *Naſſau*, *Proctor* to *Maurice*, Prince of *Orange*, was called into the *Chapter-Houſe*, and there left, while the Sovereign, and

Knights-

Knights-Companions, proceeded into the *Choir*: Alſo in like manner was Sir *George Carteret*, *Proctor* to *Chriſtian*, Prince of *Denmark*, 15 *Car.* II. and the *Proctors* to the King of *Sweden*, and Duke of *Saxony*, 23 *Car.* II.

Nor are theſe Inſtances, and the Practice in this latter caſe, really derogatory to the Statutes, which, though they prohibit the *Proxies* Entrance into the *Chapter-Houſe*, yet do not extend to any thing previous to the Inſtallation, but what may happen after; for the Article of the *Statutes* having firſt directed the delivery of the *Mantle* to the *Proxy*, and next the aſſumption of his *Principal's Stall*, in theſe Words, *Dictus Procurator Inſtallatus*, it immediately ſubjoins, *that from thenceforth*, that is, from the time of Inſtallation, *he ſhall neither wear the* Mantle, *nor enter into the* Chapter, *nor have Voice there, by virtue of any Power granted him.* All which are Prohibitions, plainly relating to future Examples, and ariſing after the Ceremonies of Inſtallation are paſt, and not at all refering to what preceeds it.

And it ſeems the Law hath been thus underſtood, in regard the greater prevalence of Practice hath generally attended it; for not only the *Proxies* of Strangers, as is obſerved, but generally *Knights-Subjects*, have been called into the *Chapter-Houſe*, and there received the *Mantle*, before they proceeded into the *Choir*.

The Ceremony of delivering the *Mantle* to the *Proctor*, is performed by the Sovereign, his Deputy, or the Commiſſioners, *Garter* preſenting it to them; and the manner of it was anciently, by putting it on the *Proxies* right Arm or Shoulder, in the Name of his Lord and Maſter, there to hold it till the End of Divine Service.

But as there hath ariſen ſome diſpute, touching the *Proctor's* entry into the *Chapter-Houſe* before Inſtallation, ſo it hath happened in this Point of receiving the *Mantle*, *viz.* whether in the *Chapter*, or *Stall* allotted their *Principal*, of which there are Examples.

That part of the Article in the *Statutes* of *Inſtitution*, relating to this Point, runs thus:----*That the* Mantle, *tempore Inſtallationis Procuratoris*, ſhall be laid on his Arm, *&c.* but whether this ſhall be conſtrued to that inſtant of time, when the *Proctor* is brought to the *Stall* of his *Principal*, or to ſome greater Latitude, as during the time of Inſtallation, including the very firſt Action, or beginning of the Ceremony, namely, the being called to the *Chapter-Houſe*

Houſe Door, and entrance into it, is the Queſtion; becauſe there are Inſtances in both, but the latter is moſt warrantable by the *Statutes* and general Practice.

The Article in *Henry* VIIIth's *Statutes* being much more clear in deſcribing and explaining the Ceremonies of *Inſtallation*, than any of the former; (the particulars of which in every Point ſeems to be excellently regulated,) having mentioned the Sovereign, or his *Deputies*, laying the *Mantle* on the *Proxies* Arm, it immediately follows, as the very next thing to be performed in courſe of time; *That afterwards he ſhall be led by two Knights, from the* Chapter-Houſe *Door to the* Stall, *and there being, ſhall make his Oath, and be inſtalled*; it gives no Account of laying the *Mantle* on the Arm of the *Proctor* at the inſtant of *Inſtallation* in the *Choir*, that being directed to be done before. It is alſo recorded in the *Black-Book*, where this Ceremony is more fully treated; *That* Garter *ſhall take the* Mantle *upon his Arms, and deliver it to both the* Knights-Commiſſioners, *and that they* (according to the Tenour of the Statutes,) *ſhall lay it on the* Proctor's *right Shoulder, in the Porch of the* Chapter-Houſe.

Beſides, the ancient uſage of receiving the *Mantle* in the *Chapter-Houſe*, or at the *Chapter-Houſe* Door, either before, or in the Proceeding to the *Choir*, of which many inſtances may be given, there are ſeveral modern inſtances where the *Mantle* was born to the *Choir*, (and ſometimes the *Collar* of the *Order* with it,) not by the *Proctor*, but by *Garter*, before him, and delivered in his *Principal's Stall*; as in the Proceeding of the *Proxy* for the Duke of *Wirtembergh*, *Anno* 2 *Jac.* I. when, after he had taken the Oath, and was led into the Duke's *Stall*, (not before) was the Robe laid on his Arm; and ſo was it done in many more *Inſtallations*; which manner hath ſo far prevail'd as to be the continu'd Practice, *Garter* carrying the *Mantle* on a Cuſhion before the *Proctors* into the *Choir*, and laying it (after they have taken their Oaths,) on their Arms in ſuch manner, that the *Croſs* of St. *George* may be conſpicuous.

Of the Proceeding to the Choir.

§ 10. Concerning the *Proxies* Proceeding into the *Choir*, King *Henry* VIIIth's *Statutes* direct: *That he ſhall be accompanied*

companied and led by two Knights-Companions *of the* Order, *from the Door of the* Chapter-Houſe, *to the* Stall *aſſigned to his Principal*; agreeable to which, is that Paſſage in the *Black-Book*; *That as ſoon as the two Knights have placed the Mantle on his Arm, they ſhall take him between them, and conduct him to the* Stall *of his Lord*; and thus aſſiſted have all *Proxies* proceeded to the *Choir*.

Since the Cuſtom of receiving the *Collar* in the *Chapter-Houſe* was laid aſide, the Sovereign, (or his Lieutenant,) with the *Knights-Companions*, (ſo ſoon as the *Mantle* is delivered the *Proctor*, or (as of late) that he hath been admitted according to the purport of his Deputation,) proceed to the *Choir*, leaving the *Proxy* behind them in the *Chapter-Houſe*, and after they have taken their *Stalls*, the Sovereign directs two of the *Knights-Companions* to deſcend; who taking the *Alms-Knights*, *Officers of Arms*, and the three inferior Officers of the *Order* before them, paſs to the *Chapter-Houſe*, and bring thence the *Proxy* to his *Inſtallation*. In this Proceeding the *Proxy* goes Bareheaded, as did the Earl of *Dover*, *Proctor* to *Charles*, Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*, and Sir *George Cartaret*, *Proctor* to the Prince of *Denmark*, *Anno* 15 *Car.* II.

The Ceremonies of Inſtallation.

§ 11. When the Proceeding hath entred the *Choir*, and paid the accuſtomed Reverences, both towards the *Altar* and the Sovereign's *Stall*, and the *Alms-Knights*, *Officers of Arms* and of the *Order*, taken their uſual Stations; the two Commiſſioners (*Knights-Aſſiſtants* or *Knights-Companions*,) and *Proctor* make their Reverences together, and then they conduct him into the lower *Stalls* directly before the *Stall* appointed for his *Principal*, the foreſaid *Officers* of the *Order* ſtanding below in the *Choir*: If there be more than two Commiſſioners, then the two Senior conduct him as before, while the reſt of the Commiſſioners take their Station below in the *Choir*, before their proper *Stalls*, and there ſtay till the *Inſtallation* be finiſh'd, and the like do the *Lieutenants-Aſſiſtants*, except the two Senior that are imployed in the Ceremony.

The *Proxy* thus introduced into the lower *Stalls*, ſtands there while the *Regiſter* pronounceth the Oath of the *Order*

Order to him, which he repeats diſtinctly, laying his Hand on the *New Teſtament*, and afterwards kiſſeth the Book.

The ancient Oath appointed by the *Statutes* of Inſtitution is ſhort, and without limitation in all Points, the ſame with that a *Knight-Companion* takes at his Perſonal *Inſtallation, viz. Faithfully to obſerve, to the utmoſt of his Power, the* Statutes *of the* Order; but afterwards the Sovereign's and Fellows of thoſe other *Orders* of *Knighthood*, (as the *Golden Fleece*, *Monſieur* St. *Michael*, *&c.*) before their admiſſion into the *Order* of the *Garter*, ſued for, and obtained the allowance of ſome relative exceptions or proviſo's to be added to the aforeſaid Oath; which uſually were ſuch as ſtood with the intereſt of their Religion, their great State or Dignity, or precedent obligation to the *Order* they had before accepted.

In the *Black-Book* is a Precedent of the Oath to be taken by an Emperor; whereby he is obliged to promiſe on his Royal Word, and give his Faith on his Honour and the Holy Evangeliſts, *That he will faithfully and truly, to the utmoſt of his Power, obſerve the Statutes in every Branch and Article thereof, at leaſt ſo far as they can or ought to be obſerved by him, and ſo far as they ſhall not be contrary or derogatory to thoſe whereunto he hath before given his Name and Sworn, and ſaving all other conditions agreed on.* There are beſides this, other Precedents in the Annals of the Form of the Oath from the *Proctor* of an Emperor or King, and of every other inferior Degree, wherein are ſeveral exceptions before agreed on; and when *Philip*, King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, (Sovereign of the *Order* of the *Golden Fleece*,) was Perſonally inſtalled at *Windſor*, *Anno* 22 *Hen.* VII. and took the Oath without Limitation, yet he ſoon after obtain'd the Sovereign's Diſpenſation, that the uſe of the *Collar* and other *Enſigns* of the *Order* might be left to his pleaſure, and that he might not be obliged to be preſent at future *Chapters*.

Other Exceptions have been admitted, but were obtained with great difficulty and much debate, leſt the Dignity and Reputation of the *Order* ſhould (inſtead of being kept up) be leſſen'd, the forbearance of ſome Circumſtances that hath been yeilded to, having ſometimes been brought into Precedent, to the prejudice of the *Order*.

The

The exceptions that were allow'd the Arch-Duke of *Austria*, when he took the Oath at his Inveſtiture at *Noremberg*, *Anno* 15 *Hen.* VIII. were as follow.

Not to wear the Garter *and* Collar *but at ſome certain times in the Year, at his own pleaſure.*

That if he were not in Place convenient to go to hear Maſs on St. George's *Day, he ſhould cauſe a Prieſt to ſay it in his preſence.*

Not to be obliged, if buſied in weighty Affairs, to wear the Garter, Collar, *or whole* Habit *of the* Order, *on St.* George's *Day, longer than during divine Service; nevertheleſs he promiſed, if he could not than wear it for a whole Day together, he would willingly wear it on ſome other ſolemn Day within the compaſs of the Year.*

Of another nature were the exceptions which *Francis* I. King of *France*, procured to be admitted into the Oath taken by his *Proctor*, *Anno* 19 *Hen.* VIII. *viz. To obſerve the Statutes of the* Order *of the* Garter *ſo far as they were conſiſtent with, and not contrary or prejudicial to the Statutes of the* Order *of St.* Michael, *and other* Orders *which his Principal had before taken of other Princes.*

Such like exceptions have been generally allowed to Kings and Sovereign Princes; but as to the *Proxies* of ſuch Strangers, not Sovereign Princes, but Subjects, the Form of their Oath is uſually framed (by the indulgence of the Sovereign,) with juſt limitations, not only to their obligation of the Statutes of any other *Order* they had accepted, or any Oath formerly taken, but ſometimes to the Fidelity and Allegiance which they owe their Sovereign Lord and Prince.

After the Oath hath been adminiſtred to a Stranger's *Proxy*, (with ſuch or the like exceptions before ſet down,) the two *Knights-Commiſſioners* paſs up with him into the higher Row of *Stalls*, and ſo to that aſſign'd to his Principal, where being arrived, they take the *Mantle* from *Garter*, and lay it upon the *Proctor's* left Arm, with the Eſcutcheon of St. *George* uppermoſt, according to an *Order* in a *Chapter* held, *Anno* 23 *Car.* II. which was to be a ſtanding Rule for the future, and is now obſerv'd.

In the Act and Ceremony of *Inſtallation*, the *Commiſſioners* who firſt conducted the *Proxy* into the *Choir*, jointly embrace him; then the *Proxy* makes his double Reverence, and laſtly the *Commiſſioners*, according to the Cuſtom of

Inſtallations, ſet him down in his Principal's *Stall*, where he hath uſed to remain during Divine Service; but by the aforeſaid *Order* in *Chapter*, *Anno* 23 *Car.* II. the *Proxies* are prohibited ſitting in their *Stalls*, but directed to ſtand before them uncovered, with their *Mantles* on their right Arms, until Divine Service be ended.

The two *Knights* (between whom the *Proxy* proceeded to *Inſtallation*,) deſcend into the *Choir*, and ſtand before their own *Stalls*, and after a while, firſt the Senior *Commiſſioners*, and then the other, aſcend into them with uſual Reverences, and then Divine Service begins.

The Proctor's Offering.

§ 12. The *Proctor* having receiv'd Poſſeſſion of his Principal's *Stall*, ſtays in the *Choir*, and performs the following Ceremonies, the chief of which is the *Offering* of *Gold* and *Silver*, according to the Degree and Seniority of his Principal's *Stall*, in caſe the *Inſtallation* be in the Morning; but if it be celebrated when St. *George*'s Feaſt is held by the Sovereign's *Lieutenant*, the *Proxy* ought not to Offer till the *Lieutenant* hath firſt Offered for the Sovereign; and the *Lieutenant* alſo Offereth for himſelf before the *Proctor*, if his Stall be higher than the Stranger's, for whom the *Proctor* is inſtalled.

The *Proctor* in Offering doth it with all the Ceremony as if his Lord were preſent; when the *Knights-Companions* deſcend from their Stalls, (which Ceremony begins with the Junior *Knight*,) he alſo deſcends in his turn, and placeth himſelf below in the *Choir* before the Stall of his *Principal*, and if he have an oppoſite *Knight-Companion*, he joins himſelf to him, and proceeds towards the *Altar* to the Offering, with the Officers of Arms before him; but if no *Knight-Companion* be oppoſite, he then proceeds alone, having his Train born, and a *Knight-Companion*, or ſome other great Perſonage, ſuitable to his Degree, attending on his left Hand, to give him the Offering, which he Offers kneeling on a Cuſhion, and after him the reſt of the *Knights-Companions* preſent Offer, every one according to the Seniority of their Stalls.

After the Offering, the *Proctor* taking his way by the Eaſt-end of the Stalls, returns back to the Stall of his *Principal*,

cipal, and Divine Service being finish'd, and like Honour in all respects shewed to his *Proxy* as if his Principal had been present, he ought to remain in his Master's Stall till his next Junior *Knight* hath left his Stall, and then descend after him, and stand below before his Stall, till his turn come to join himself again to the Proceeding, and so to pass out of the *Choir*.

Sometimes the *Proctor* hath been receiv'd at his coming down from his Lord's Stall by the two *Knights-Commissioners* who installed him, as were the *Proctors* of *Frederick* II. King of *Denmark*, and *John*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, between whom they also proceeded to the *Chapter-House* Door, in the same manner they were conducted into the *Choir*; but notwithstanding this, the *Proctor* ought rather to take in his return the Place of his Principal, (as he did at the Offering, and which is indeed his right,) and so the *Proctor* of *Francis* I. went behind alone in his Principal's place, and followed the *Knights-Commissioners* from the *Choir* to the place where he lodged; and this Method is since followed.

The Dinner.

§ 13. When the *Installation* hath past in the Morning, there hath usually been prepared a great Dinner at the Sovereign's Charge; we need here only mention what is different in this particular from the Personal *Installation* of a *Knight-Companion*.

The *Proxy* washes alone, sits at the chief Place of the Table alone, and is serv'd alone, but the other *Knights-Companions* sit at the end of the Table; but if the Sovereign's Lieutenant be present, the *Proctor* dines at the same Table with him, and then a little before the second Course is brought in, the Sovereign's Stile is proclaimed with the usual Ceremony, in *Latin*, *French*, and *English*; but otherwise only the Stile of the new installed Prince, and but once. The Stile and Titles of *Christian* IV. King of *Denmark*, were proclaimed in *Latin*; and of *Maurice*, Prince of *Orange*, in *French*.

Dinner being ended, all rise in Order and Wash; first, the *Proxy* alone, and after him the *Knights-Commissioners*; and accompanying the *Proctor* to his Chamber, where leaving

him, they retire to their own Lodgings, and there put off their Habits.

When the Solemnity of *Inſtallation* is over, the *Proctor* is to take care, that *Garter* forthwith ſet up the Atchievements of his *Principal* over his *Stall*, and fix the Plate of his Arms on the back thereof; in Memorial of the Ceremony of Inauguration; to which end alſo Medals have frequently been ſtruck, to perpetuate the Honour ſo received.

CAP. XVII.

The Duties and Fees payable by the Knights-Companions *at their Inſtallations.*

Touching the Fees due to the College of Windſor.

§ 1. SUCH was the Piety and Bounty of our Anceſtors, that they thought no Work well perform'd, without being attended with ſome charitable Donation, eſpecially if it had relation to the Church, whereto they generally bore a venerable Eſteem. Hence was it at the *Inſtallation* of the *Order* ordain'd: *That every* Knight-Companion *ſhould, at his entrance, beſtow a certain Sum of Money, according to his Quality and Degree.* That is to ſay,

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
The Sovereign of the *Order*	26	13	04
A Stranger King	20	00	00
The Prince of *Wales*	13	06	08
Every Duke	10	00	00
Every Earl	06	13	04
Every Baron	05	00	00
Every Knight-Batchelor	03	06	08

Theſe Summs were appointed *towards the Relief of the Cannons of* Windſor, *the Alms-Knights, and augmentation of*

of the Alms-Deeds, there appointed perpetually to be done. To the end, *That every one entring into this Military* Order, *might thereby more worthily obtain the Name, Title, and Privilege, of one of the Founders of the* Order; *it being ſuppoſed a worthy and juſt thing, that whoſoever obtained this Privilege, ſhould add ſome ſmall increment to this Foundation.*

Not long after eſtabliſhing the Statutes, the Titles of *Marquiſs* and *Viſcount* becoming ſpecial Dignities, it was Decreed, *Anno* 22 *Hen.* VI. that a *Marquiſs* ſhould contribute 8 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.* and a *Viſcount* 5 *l.* 16 *s.* 8 *d.* which was confirmed by King *Henry* VIIIth's Statutes.

And though in all the Bodies of the Statutes, the Sovereign of the *Order* is charg'd with Payment of Fees to the College, yet is it to be underſtood only of thoſe Sovereigns, who were not (before the aſſumption of their Stall,) elected into this *Order.*

Upon a Decree, *Anno* 22 *Car.* II. the *Inſtallation* Fee to all the Officers of the *Order* were ſettled: Thoſe made payable to the *Dean* and *Canons* are,

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
A Stranger King	20	00	00
A Stranger Prince	10	00	00
The Prince of *Wales*	20	00	00
A Duke	10	00	00
A Marquiſs	08	06	08
An Earl	06	13	04
A Viſcount	05	16	08
A Baron	05	00	00
A Knight-Batchelor	03	06	08

Theſe Fees ought to be paid at the time of the Knight's *Inſtallation*, by the Hands of ſome one of their Servants, ſo ſoon as the Ceremonies are ended; the Statutes expreſsly prohibiting the ſetting up of their Atchievements till Payment be made.

The *Alms-Knights*, by Queen *Elizabeth*'s Eſtabliſhment, receiv'd *Inſtallation* Fees apart from thoſe paid to the College, which by the aforeſaid Eſtabliſhment of Fees, *Anno* 22 *Car.* II. are made equal to thoſe payable to the *Dean* and *Canons*; and by the ſaid Decree, the *Choir* of *Windſor*, under which not only the *Vicars*, but the *Vergers*, *Choriſters*,

niſters, and *Bell-Ringers*, are comprehended, receive the following Fees.

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
A Stranger King	16	00	00
A Stranger Prince	08	10	00
A Prince of *Wales*	16	00	00
A Duke	08	10	00
A Marquiſs	06	15	00
An Earl	05	10	00
A Viſcount	04	00	00
A Baron	04	00	00
A Knight-Batchelor	03	00	00

Fees due to the Regiſter, Garter, Black-Rod, *and* Officers *of* Arms.

§ 11. In the Rank of thoſe Officers to whom *Inſtallation* Fees are due, ſtands firſt the *Regiſter*, who, as appears by the *Black-Book*, is to have of every *Knight-Companion* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* and a Robe.

But there being a concealment of this Fee, it was repreſented to King *Charles* I. who ordered the *Regiſter* to be paid in Lieu of the Robe, as follows;

		s.	*d.*		*l.*	*s.*	*d.*
Imprim. For a	Knight-Batchelor	13	04		28	00	00
	Baron	13	04		30	00	00
	Viſcount	13	04		32	00	00
Item. For a	Earl	13	04	and	34	00	00
	Marquiſs	13	04		36	00	00
	Duke	13	04		40	00	00
	Prince	13	04		38	00	00

The ſame were ſince ſettled by the Eſtabliſhment of *Inſtallation* Fees, *Anno* 22 *Car.* II. when it was added, that the Prince of *Wales*, and a Stranger King, ſhould pay 40 *l.* and a Stranger Prince 38 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*

Next, the *Regiſter* and *Garter* claim both Droits and Fees, for their Service and Attendance, having a greater ſhare of Buſineſs than any other Officer of the *Order*. As to the firſt of theſe, it was ordained by the Conſtitutions of his Office; *That as often as any Knight ſhould happen*

to

to be inſtalled, he might challenge for himſelf the Garments wore by him, immediately before his Inveſtiture with the Surcoat of the Order. And the conſtant Practice hath interpreted this to be the Knight's upper Garment, anciently a ſhort Gown, of later times a Cloak, but now a Coat; which he puts off in the *Chapter-Houſe* when the *Inveſtiture* begins.

By the Eſtabliſhment of *Inſtallation* Fees, *Anno* 22 *Car.* II. the compoſition ſet upon each *Knight-Companion* for his upper Garment, was thus rated.

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
A Prince of *Wales*	60	00	00
A Duke	55	00	00
A Marquiſs	50	00	00
An Earl	45	00	00
A Viſcount	40	00	00
A Baron	35	00	00
A Knight-Batchelor	30	00	00

Beſides this Droit or Compoſition, there hath in all times been paid to *Garter* by every *Knight-Companion*, a Fee for his *Inſtallation*, which was likewiſe brought to the following certainty by the ſaid Eſtabliſhment.

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
A Stranger King	30	00	00
A Stranger Prince	20	00	00
A Prince of *Wales*	40	00	00
A Duke	35	00	00
A Marquiſs	30	00	00
An Earl	25	00	00
A Viſcount	20	00	00
A Baron	25	00	00
A Knight-Batchelor	10	00	00

The Fee due to the *Black-Rod* by the ſaid Eſtabliſhment, is, from

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
A Stranger King	20	00	00
A Stranger Prince	20	00	00
A Prince of *Wales.*	40	00	00
A Duke	20	00	00
A Marquiſs	18	00	00
An Earl	16	00	00

	l.	s.	d.
A Viſcount	14	00	00
A Baron	12	00	00
A Knight-Batchelor	10	00	00

The *Officers* of *Arms*, by the ſaid Eſtabliſhment, have the ſame Fees as are allowed the *Black-Rod*; only in the Fee of a Stranger King, they have an addition of ten Pounds more.

Fees belonging to other of the Sovereign's Servants.

§ 3. In the Liſts of *Inſtallation* Fees of former times, ſome Officers were ſet down, who gave their attendance, with the ſeveral Sums they receiv'd, ſome that were then accounted Fees, and others Benevolences; all which nevertheleſs were admitted into the Liſt of *Inſtallation* Fees, 22 *Car.* II. and though not entered into the *Regiſter* of the *Order*, yet are to be given in under the Hand of *Garter*, with the other Fees payable at *Inſtallations*, and to be paid by every Knight to all Perſons concern'd reſpectively, according to ancient Cuſtom, *viz.*

	Prince.			Duke.			Marquiſs.			Earl.		
To the Wardrobe	06	00	00	03	00	00	02	10	00	02	00	0
The Trumpets	12	00	00	06	00	00	05	00	00	04	00	0
The Serj. Trumpet	02	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	0
The Muſicians	16	00	00	08	00	00	01	00	00	06	00	0
Drums and Fifes	04	00	00	02	00	0	01	15	00	01	10	0
Knight-Harbinger	03	06	08	03	06	08	03	06	08	03	06	8
The Porters	06	00	00	03	00	00	02	10	00	02	00	0
Maſter Cook	03	00	00	01	10	00	01	05	00	01	00	0
Serjeant Porter	06	00	00	03	00	00	02	00	00	01	00	0
To the Veſtry	02	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	0
Yeomen Harbingers	06	00	00	03	00	00	02	10	00	02	00	0
Uſhers of the Hall	02	00	00	01	10	00	01	05	00	01	00	0
Grooms of Chamb.	03	00	00	01	10	00	01	05	00	01	00	0
Yeomen Uſhers	06	13	04	03	06	08	03	00	00	02	10	0
Quarter Waiters	08	16	00	04	08	04	03	16	08	03	06	8
Sewers	08	00	00	04	08	04	03	16	08	03	06	8
Buttery	03	00	00	01	10	00	01	05	00	01	00	0
Pantry	03	00	00	01	10	00	01	05	00	01	00	0
Cellar	03	00	00	01	10	00	01	05	00	01	00	0

To

	Viſcount.			Baron.			Kt-Batch.		
To the Wardrobe	01	15	00	01	10	00	01	05	00
The Trumpets	03	00	00	02	10	00	02	00	00
The Serj. Trumpeter	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
The Muſicians	05	00	00	04	00	00	03	00	00
Drums and Fifes	01	05	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
Knight-Harbinger	03	06	08	03	06	08	03	06	08
The Porters	02	00	00	01	10	00	01	00	00
Maſter Cook	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
Serjeant Porter	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
The Veſtry	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
Yeomen Harbingers	02	00	00	01	10	00	01	00	00
Uſhers of the Hall	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
Grooms of Chamber	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
Yeomen Uſhers	02	00	00	01	10	00	01	00	00
Quarter Waiters	03	00	00	02	10	00	02	00	00
Sewers	03	00	00	02	10	00	02	00	00
Buttery	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
Pantry	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00
Cellar	01	00	00	01	00	00	01	00	00

Fees payable for Strangers.

§ 4. That Strangers ſhould be liable to the demand of Fees, was thought unreaſonable; therefore by the *Statutes* of *Inſtitution*, the Sovereign is obliged to pay them; the firſt Example whereof that we meet with, is an Order, 1 *Hen.* VI. which appointed: *That the uſual Fees, due for the* Inſtallation *of the King of* Denmark, *ſhould be diſcharg'd by the Sovereign, as the* Statute *enjoin'd.*

To this purpoſe Privy-Seals were iſſued to the Lord Treaſurer for the time being, to pay the Fees to the *Regiſter* of the *Order* out of the *Exchequer*, which was the conſtant Cuſtom, till King *Charles* I. in the 13th Year of his Reign, ſettled an Annual Penſion of 1200 *l.* upon the *Order*; and by a Commiſſion in the ſaid Year, impower'd the Chancellor of the *Order*, and his Succeſſors, to pay out of the ſame, not only the ordinary, but alſo extraordinary Charges of the *Order*; wherein the Fees for *Inſtallation* of Strangers are included.

Notwithſtanding the Sovereign (as we have ſhown) diſcharg'd the *Inſtallation* Fees due from Strangers, yet they

or their *Proctors* for them, did always beſtow particular Rewards on the *College*, the Officers of the *Order* and of *Arms*, the *Alms-Knights*, and ſome others who attended the Solemnity, and in particular *Garter* had anciently beſtowed on him a rich Gown, to wear at the time of *Inſtallation*, but of late he has been preſented with ſome other thing of conſiderable Value. They alſo were liberal to the Officers of *Arms*, as appears by ſeveral *Largeſſes* given to them by their *Proctors*, and in general to the greateſt part of thoſe that gave their Attendance.

CAP. XVIII.

Of the Grand Feaſt of the Order.

The Grand Feaſt appointed to be celebrated Annually on St. George's Day.

§ 1. BY the *Statutes* of *Inſtitution*, it's ordain'd, That a ſolemn Feſtival ſhould be Annually celebrated on the 23d Day of *April*, or St. *George's Day*, in Honour of the Patron of the *Order*, as is obſerved in other military Orders, erected ſince this of the *Garter*, to which this ſeems to give Rules of holding their Feſtivals on the Anniverſary of their Patrons. Thus *Philip*, Duke of *Burgundy*, on his erecting the *Order* of the *Golden Fleece*, taking St. *Andrew* for its Patron, appointed the Feſtival on St. *Andrew's Day*. *Lewis* XI. King of *France*, appointed *Michaelmas Day* for holding the Feaſt of the *Order* of St. *Michael*. And ſo the Feſtival of the Duke of *Savoy's Order* of the *Annunciade*, on *Lady Day*. The Duke of *Bourbon's Order* of the Knights of our *Lady*, on the Conception of our *Lady* (8th *December*;) and other inſtances might likewiſe be given if it were neceſſary.

The Anniverſary of St. George *fixed by the Church, to the twenty third of* April.

§ 2. That the 23d of *April* was the Day whereon St. *George*

George ſuffered Martyrdom by Beheading, appears from the *Greek Hexamiter* before his Commemoration; which was the Day obſerved both by the *Greek* and *Latin Church*; as alſo by our Predeceſſors, the *Saxons*.

St. George's Day *made* Feſtum duplex.

§ 3. After the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* had encreaſed the Honour of their Patron's Feſtival, our Church began to take greater notice of it, being now alſo eſteemed among us as the Patron of the Nation; and therefore they beſtowed an addition of Honour upon it, by making it *Feſtum duplex, ad Modum Majorum Duplicis.* 3 *Hen.* V.

The Place for celebrating the Grand Feaſt, aſſigned to Windſor-Caſtle.

§ 4. The Founder of this moſt Noble *Order* having fixed on this Day, for performing its Solemnities, he made Choice of that of his Nativity, the *Caſtle* of *Windſor*, which for a long time after was inviolably obſerved there, either upon the very Day, or ſome other appointed by Prorogation, not long after: For which way of Prorogation, allowance was given by the *Statutes* of the *Order*, and of which the *Regiſters* are full of inſtances.

St. George's Day *kept apart from the Grand Feaſt, and how then obſerved.*

§ 5. How this Noble *Order* flouriſhed from its Foundation to the time of *Henry* V. no Account can be given, ſince the Annals thereof are wanting to his Reign; but then it appears to have been in conſiderable Splendor; but the Civil Wars toward the end of *Henry* VIth's Reign, eclipſed it for a while. Under King *Edward* IV. when things were a little ſettled, it ſeem'd to recover; and in King *Henry* VIIIth's time, was at a greater heighth than ever. However, though the ſeveral Branches of the *Order* receiv'd ſome Augmentation from the influence of this

Monarch,

Monarch, yet the Grand Feaſt began to decline, by a removal of the obſervation of St. *George's Day* from *Windſor*, and a prorogatory Celebration of the Grand Feaſt to other times.

The Article of the *Statutes*, cauſing this great alteration from the original deſign of the firſt Inſtitution, gives the Sovereign Power to prorogue the Grand Feaſt at his Pleaſure; but then 'tis evident from the ſame Statute, that St. *George's Day* was nevertheleſs ordained to be duly obſerved by it ſelf, in what Place ſoever the Sovereign (if within the Realm) ſhould then reſide; *Windſor* hereby being not excluded.

It farther implies, the ſacred *Rites* and *Offices* to be performed, with other Matters concerning the *Order*; for beſides the particulars therein enumerated, this general Clauſe is obſervable: That what other urgent Affair ſoever, relating to the *Order*, ſhould offer it ſelf to be performed, the ſame might be treated of, and receive diſpatches, in the *Chapter* held where the Sovereign then ſhould be, as fully as if he were at *Windſor Caſtle*.

So that henceforward, all things began to be ordered, both on the Eve the Day of St. *George*, and the Morrow after, with as great State; all Affairs as legally diſpatched, and all Ceremonies as magnificently performed, except that of offering up of Atchievements, which is peculiar to the Chappel of St. *George* at *Windſor* only, as could be obſerved at the *Grand Feſtival* it ſelf.

And how, by Virtue of this Article, and with what Ceremonies St. *George's Day* was held, when the Grand Feaſt was prorogued, is evident from a full and ample Precedent, 22 *Hen.* VIII. now remaining in the *Office* of *Arms*.

For though the Sovereign with 13 *Knights-Companions* were at *Windſor* that Year, upon the 22, 23 and 24 of *April*, yet at that time they obſerved only the Feaſt Day of St. *George*, with the Eve and Morrow after, but deferred, by Order in *Chapter*, the Celebration of the Grand Feaſt, to the 8th of *May* enſuing.

The Grand Feaſt neglected by King Edward *VI.*

§ 6. From the Acceſſion of this Prince, the Sovereignty of this *Order* became more neglected, ſo that during his Reign,

Reign, no Anniverſary of St. *George* was kept at *Windſor*, by a *Grand Feſtival*.

This is ſuppoſed to be owing to the common Calamity of that Age, wherein moſt Ceremonies, ſolemn or ſplendid, eſpecially ſuch as related to Divine Services, came under the denomination of being either Superſtitious or Idolatrous. Inſomuch, that at a *Chapter* held at *Greenwich*, 2 *Edw.* VI. an Abolition being intended for ſuch Ceremonies as were not conſonant to the King's Injunctions, lately preſcribed, it was then decreed, that then, and for ever from thenceforth, at the Feaſt of this moſt Noble *Order*, no other Ceremonies ſhould be obſerved than ſuch as were appointed by his Majeſties Letter.

That no Proceſſion ſhould be made with going about the Church, or Church-yard, but the King's Majeſty's Proceſſion, lately ſet forth in Engliſh *to be uſed. His Majeſty and other* Knights-Companions *ſitting in their Stalls, at the Entry, ſuch Reverences to be made to the King's Majeſty only as was heretofore. The Offering to be in the Box for the Poor, without any other Reverence, or kiſſing any Paten, or other thing; but only at the return, due Reverence to the King, as was uſed before. The Maſs of* Requiem *to be left undone, but yet, both on St.* George's Day, *and for next Day, a Maſs to be Sung with great Reverence; in which, immediately after the Words of Conſecration is ſaid, the Prieſt ſhall ſay the* Pater Noſter, *and ſo turn and Communicate to all, or ſo many of the* Order, *or other, after they have done, as ſhall be diſpoſed to receive the Communion, according to the* Order *preſcribed by his Majeſty's Book of Communion, and without any other Rite or Ceremony after the ſaid Communion to be uſed; except ſome godly Pſalm or Hymn to be Sung in* Engliſh, *and ſo to end the ſaid Service. All* Chapters, *and other Rites concerning the* Order, *not being contrary to theſe, to remain as they have been uſed.*

This Decree ſeemed to mean nothing leſs than a Prohibition to the holding the Grand Feaſt at *Windſor*, at leaſt the neglect of its Celebration there, whilſt King *Edw.* VI. lived: And though toward the End of his Reign, ſome care was taken for a Permiſſion to hold the ſaid Feaſt, either on St. *George's Day*, or ſome other appointed by Prorogation; yet it was without any regard to the ancient and uſual Place; for when the Act paſſed, commanding the Days therein mentioned to be kept Holy, and no other, whereby

whereby this was involved among many other Saints Days then prohibited to be kept, as not being found among the Feasts then Eſtabliſh'd; it was conſidered, that a Proviſo and Allowance ſhould be entered in the aforeſaid Act, for the Celebration of this Feaſt, particularly by the *Knights-Companions*; which Act, though it ſuffered a Repeal by Queen *Mary*, yet ſtands in force at this Day, being revived by King *James* I. his repealing that *Statute* of 1 *Mar. Cap.* 2.

Removed from Windſor *by Queen* Elizabeth.

§ 7. But the moſt fatal Blow given to the growing Honour of the Caſtle of *Windſor*, was a Decree in *Chapter* held 9 *Eliz.* with the conſent of the *Knights-Companions* then preſent, *viz.*

That if on the Vigil and Day of St. George, *the Feaſt was not held at* Windſor, *according to the uſual Cuſtom, it ſhould nevertheleſs be ſufficient, if the Obſervation thereof were kept at the ſame Place where the Sovereign ſhould then happen to be, where alſo the reſt of the* Knights-Companions *were obliged to be preſent, no leſs than if the Feaſt had been held at* Windſor.

And ſo ſevere was the latter part of this Decree againſt the flouriſhing condition of that Place, that it commanded alſo,

That no other Solemnity, under the notion of St. George's *Feaſt, ſhould thenceforth be celebrated at* Windſor, *except upon occaſion of the* Inſtallation *of ſome illuſtrious Perſon, and then alſo, not without expreſs leave of the Sovereign.*

And to ſay truth, this *Statute* was but too ſtrictly obſerved during her Reign; for we meet but with one Feaſt of St. *George* held there, till 1 *Jac.* I. (unleſs we miſtake the Feaſts of *Inſtallation* for thoſe of St. *George*,) but then the Sovereign, who was yet in *Scotland*, ſent his Commiſſion, dated 5 *April*, to the Earl of *Nottingham*, his *Lieutenant*, to prorogue the Feſtival to the 3d *July* following, and after conſtituted him to hold the Feaſt, which was performed the 2, 3 and 4 Days of the ſaid Month, with all Pomp and Ceremony. The King himſelf, being then at *Windſor*, was prevented from being preſent by ſome occaſion not mentioned.

This

Thus, after a long Interval, the Honour of the Feaſt was reſtored, which had this effect, toward the End of King *James* I. Reign, and that of his Son and Succeſſor, King *Charles* I. that it begat a Re-union of the Feaſt and Place, whereby the Caſtle of *Windſor*, famous for the *Inſtitution* of this moſt Noble *Order*, retrieved its ancient Honour, of having its Solemnities celebrated there.

Of Prorogation of the Grand Feaſt.

§ 8. Having thus noted, that from the beginning of King *Henry* VIIIth's Reign, till of late Years, the Grand Feaſt was ſeldom obſerved upon the preciſe Day of St. *George*; and that the occaſion how both Day and Feaſt came to be celebrated apart, took its riſe from the indulgence of the *Statutes* in point of Prorogation: 'Tis neceſſary farther to obſerve, that this Prorogation is of two ſorts, either Abſolute, as being enjoined by the *Statutes*; or elſe Arbitrary, at the Sovereign's Pleaſure, upon intervening Reaſons.

In the firſt of theſe the Founder's *Statutes* enjoin, *That if the Feaſt of St.* George *ſhall happen within fifteen Days next after* Eaſter Day, *it ſhall be prorogued to the Sunday Fortnight, or fifteen Days after* Eaſter Day. And the reaſon is there given, *That every of the* Knights-Companions *might have opportunity of coming thereto, without being conſtrained to ride upon any of thoſe three Holy Days preceeding* Eaſter Day. The ſame Rule for Prorogation, where there is a concurrence of theſe two Feaſts, is likewiſe enjoin'd by the *Statutes* of King *Henry* V. and King *Henry* VIII.

And when the Grand Feaſt, in this caſe of *Eaſter*, has been kept before the expiration of the ſaid fifteen Days, the *Knights-Companions* then abſent, to avoid the Penalty for their not appearing, have made Excuſe; that the ancient *Statutes* of the *Order* were violated in keeping the Feaſt within fifteen Days after *Eaſter*, as was alledged when Sir *John Denham*, Lord Treaſurer, as Preſident, held the Feaſt of St. *George* at *Windſor*, 24 *April*, 8 *Henry* VII.

Anciently, where the *Regiſter* mentions the Grand Feaſt to be held at *Windſor*, beyond the Day of St. *George*, 'tis obſervable upon Calculation, that *Eaſter Day*, in thoſe

times,

times, fell too near the 23d of *April*, to celebrate the Feaſt on, without breaking the Law, which was the real cauſe of thoſe Prorogations, of which there are many Inſtances.

And as the *Knights-Companions* had Prohibitions put upon the Solemnization of their Feaſt, in caſe of its interfering with *Eaſter*, ſo had the Church of *England*, in their Obſervation of St. *George*'s *Day*, in reference to ſeveral other Feſtivals; and this continued till the time of the Reformation begun by King *Edward* VI. but ſince the Grand Feaſt has been celebrated upon any of them indifferently the Feaſt of *Eaſter* only excepted.

The ſecond ſort of Prorogations, which are meerly Arbitrary, and wholly dependent on the Sovereign's Pleaſure, yet warranted ſufficiently from the Words, *Cauſa poſtulante*, mentioned in King *Henry* VIII's Statutes; as likewiſe the great Latitude given the Sovereigns of this moſt Noble *Order*, in reference to their Affairs, in the ſame Statutes: The firſt Precedent of which was, *Anno* 5 *Hen.* V. when about *Auguſt*, four Months after St. *George*'s *Day*, that King being engaged in the Wars of *France*, ordered the Feaſt to be celebrated at *Caen* in *Normandy*, and with great Solemnity created fifteen Knights into the *Order*.

There are ſeveral other Examples, particularly one 8 *Hen.* VIII. when the King being at *Eltham* on St. *George*'s *Day*, it was in a *Chapter* there held, Decreed, That the accuſtomed Feaſt of St. *George* ſhould be obſerved at *Windſor* 25th of *May* enſuing. And from this time it became Annually cuſtomary, to keep the Day of St. *George* where the Sovereign at that time made his Abode: On which Day, and the Day after, the uſual Solemnities were obſerved. But as to the Solemnization of the Grand Feaſt it ſelf, that was in one of the *Chapters* then held, adjourned to ſome farther time, and then ſolemnized at *Windſor* by Prorogation, not by the Sovereigns themſelves, but by their *Lieutenants* and their *Aſſiſtants* appointed for that purpoſe.

But to proceed with the Cauſes of Prorogation, which were either for ſome weighty reaſons, or upon emergent Occaſions; *Anno* 1 *Mariæ*, the Sovereign celebrating the Feaſt of St. *George* at St. *James*'s, *Philip*, Prince of *Spain*, and the Earl of *Suſſex*, were on the Morrow after elected into the *Order*; whereupon it was likewiſe Decreed,

creed, that the Inauguration of theſe two *elect Knights*, till the Prince came to *England*, which happening 21*ſt July* following, the Grand Feaſt, together with that of the *elect Knights* Inſtallations, were appointed to be celebrated at the ſame time.

Again 3 and 4 *Phil.* and *Mar.* at a *Chapter* held 22*d April*, the Feaſt of St. *George*, together with the Inſtallation of three *elect Knights*, was appointed to be held at *Windſor* the 9*th* of *May* enſuing; and by a *Chapter* ſummon'd the 3*d* of *May*, before the appointed Day for holding the Feaſt, the ſame was prorogued to the 15*th* of *December* following, upon the preſſing Affairs of the King and Queen. But before that deſign'd time came, another *Chapter* was held on the 31*ſt* of *October*, wherein it was again prorogu'd to the firſt Sunday after *Twelfth-day*, viz. 9 *January*, if by that time the King, who was then in *Flanders*, ſhould return to *England*: But that not happening, it was farther prorogu'd to the 20*th* of *February*; and thence, by another Decree, to St. *George's Day*. Of which there are many other Examples, and ſometimes upon other Occaſions; but ſtill at the Sovereign's Pleaſure.

Of Commiſſions of Prorogation.

§ 9. There is no Precedent of Commiſſions for Prorogation, ancienter than 12 *Car.* I. left by Sir *Thomas Rowe*, wherein Notice is taken of all the Adjournments of the Grand Feaſts, from St. *George's Day* preceeding, till that Time, with the Reaſons thereof, and chiefly upon Conſideration of the ſpreading Sickneſs, together with a Command to the *Knights-Companions*, and the Officers of the *Order*, to attend the Sovereign on the new aſſign'd Days for celebrating the Feaſt.

As to the Subſtance hereof, the ſucceeding Commiſſions very near agree, yet with ſome little Difference; as firſt, the Preambles are general, and run thus: *Whereas, upon ſpecial Reaſons, and other important Affairs*, &c. except the Commiſſion iſſu'd 25*th February*, 1637. where the Preamble was fitted to a ſpecial Occaſion, and runs thus, ----- *Whereas we have determined to create the Prince, our eldeſt Son, a Knight, and to propoſe him in Election as a*

Companion of our moſt Noble Order, *for the more Conveniency of his* Inſtallation, *We have thought fit to defer the Feaſt of St.* George, *&c.*

But in the Commiſſions of Prorogation of the Grand Feaſt, 25*th February*, 19 *Car.* I. the Place appointed for Celebration is omitted, which Defect we find in the abovementioned Precedent alſo; yet afterwards that material Part came to be inſerted, and firſt of all in that Commiſſion of the 26*th February*, 14 *Car.* I. where the Place, being the City of *York*, is put into the Body of the Commiſſion. And when the Civil War drew on, and the Sovereign could not well aſcertain any Place, then the Grand Feaſt was appointed to be kept at any ſuch Place as, on a nearer View, ſhould ſeem convenient; afterwards it vary'd ſomething, and came to be inſerted thus,--*Whereſoever We ſhall then be*; or thus, *at ſuch Places as We ſhall timely appoint.*

The moſt ordinary courſe, preparatory to the iſſuing ſuch Commiſſions of Prorogation, has been by the Sovereign's Declaration in *Chapter*, or otherwiſe the Signification of his Pleaſure to the Chancellor of the *Order* at any other Time, who thereupon drew up the Commiſſion, and preſented it to the Sovereign for his Sign Manual, and then affixed thereto the great Seal of the *Order*. But where the Chancellor was not at Hand to receive the Sovereign's Commands, in this Caſe it was convey'd to him by ſome other Hand, with command to ſummon the *Knights-Companions* and Officers accordingly. For ſo it was done to Sir *Francis Windebank*, Knt. Secretary of State, by his Letter to Sir *Thomas Rowe*, 13 *Car.* I. for Prorogation of the Grand Feaſt.

And as all the preceeding Adjournments of the Grand Feaſt have been either decreed in *Chapter*, or directed immediately from the Sovereign; ſo there is a Precedent where the *Lieutenant* has been impowered to prorogue the ſame; yet to the Time and Place appointed by the Sovereign, and inſerted in the Commiſſion of *Lieutenancy*: And this was in a Commiſſion, 1 *Jac.* I. directed to *Charles*, Earl of *Nottingham*.

That

That the Grand Feaſt ought to be celebrated once a Year.

§ 10. Though the Prorogations of the Grand Feaſt have been occaſionally made uſe of on the aforeſaid important Reaſons, yet no ſuch Adjournment or Prorogation is legally to be inlarged beyond St. *George's Day* enſuing; becauſe once within the compaſs of every Year, the Grand Feaſt ought to be ſolemniz'd; for ſo it was ordained by the *Statutes* at the Inſtitution of the *Order*, and confirmed likewiſe by the ſucceeding *Statutes*. And when our Hiſtorians take notice of the Grand Feaſt, they ſpeak of the ſame thing, that it ought Annually to be performed; whence it is frequently called in the Regiſters, *Annua Feſtivitatis, ſolemnitas annua, celebritas annna*, and the like.

Of late Times, an Occaſion happen'd that brought this of the *Statutes*, into a ſolemn Debate in *Chapter*, which, for the Reſult thereof, became very remarkable.

At a Chapter *held at* White-Hall, *2d* February, 1640.

The Sovereign propos'd to the Knights-Companions, *that having prorogued the Celebration of St.* George's Feaſt *from time to time, to the* 1ſt, 2d, *and* 3d *of* March, *ſo near Lent, that if the Feaſt were not held on theſe Days, it could not be done within the compaſs of that Year; becauſe the* 23d *of* April, *for the next Year, did fall on* Good-Friday, *and ſo conſequently muſt have been kept in Lent this Year, or not at all; and conſidering the great and important Affairs of the Parliament, he moved the Queſtion, whether, if there were no Feaſt kept this Year, it would be any Blemiſh to the Honour of the* Order? *And whether he might not diſpence with the* Statute, *and defer it till next Year? They all confeſſed the Sovereign's diſpenſing Power; yet ſome of the* Knights *ſeeing from the Inſtitution to that Time, no Precedent was found where the Grand Feaſt had been wholly omitted, but that ſome of the Sovereigns, even though engaged in War beyond Sea, either ſolemniz'd the Feaſt in their own Pre-*

ſence, or by Commiſſion in England, *which was averred by the* Chancellor *to be both the fundamental and conſtant Practice,) humbly beſought the Sovereign not to begin to make any Breach in the conſtant* Order, *ſo long and uninterruptedly continued. Whereupon it was reſolv'd, by general Vote, that the Feaſt ſhould be celebrated on the aforeſaid Days of Prorogation.*

By which Determination it ſufficiently appears, of what Moment the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* then conceiv'd it to the Honour of the *Order*, to follow the *Statutes*, for the Celebration of the Grand Feaſt once every Year. Beſides, it is obſervable, that it was not thought expedient to be diſpens'd with, even on the moſt preſſing and important Occaſions. But rather than the *Statutes* ſhould ſuffer any Violation, the Feaſt was then ſolemniz'd, tho' they were ſo ſtraiten'd, in point of time, as not to have above two Days to make Preparation for it.

And though indeed, on the breaking out of the unhappy Civil War, the Sovereign was oblig'd to defer the Solemnity from Year to Year, it was not to be look'd on as any Precedent; and on the Reſtauration of King *Charles* II. it renew'd its former *Order*.

CAP. XIX.

Of Preparations for the Grand Feaſt of the Order.

Of Letters giving Notice of the Time and Place.

§ 1. AMong many other things which are neceſſary to be prepar'd beforehand; the firſt of Courſe is, the Letters directed to all the *Knights-Companions* and Officers of the *Order*, reſident within the Kingdom, to give them Notice of the Time and Place, when and where the Feaſt is to be held. (2.) Letters of Diſpenſation to ſuch Knights, as the Sovereign ſhall pleaſe to excuſe from their Attendance at the Feaſt. (3.) Commiſſions

miſſions of Lieutenancy, (or ſometimes of Aſſiſtance) when the Sovereign cannot perſonally ſolemnize the ſame (4.) Warrants for the Removal of Atchievements, if there be then Occaſion. (5.) Eſcutcheons and Stiles, to be ſet on the back of each *Knight-Companion's* Stall, if the Feaſt be held elſewhere than at *Windſor*. (6) The Chappel to be decently adorn'd. (7.) The great Hall, or other Place, for the Grand Dinner, to be prepar'd, and very nobly furniſh'd. (8.) And laſtly, Officers to be appointed, beſides thoſe of the *Order* of Arms, who are to give peculiar Attendance on the Sovereign, at this Grand Solemnity.

As to the firſt of theſe Points, the Chancellor is to attend the Sovereign ſome convenient Time before the approach of St. *George's Day*, to learn his Pleaſure therein, and whether he is inclined to Prorogue the Day, *&c.*

If the Sovereign be inclin'd to a Prorogation, then the Chancellor is to draw up a Commiſſion for that purpoſe. After this, Letters iſſu'd out anciently under the Sovereign's Sign Manual, both to his Lieutenant, when he holds not the Feaſt perſonally, and the *Knights-Companions*, giving them notice of the Time and Place; but of late the Chancellor hath been appointed to diſpatch theſe Letters in his own Name.

But whether the Feaſt be held upon St. *George's Day*, or any other, by Prorogation, the Sovereign's Pleaſure was uſually known ſo long before the appointed Time, that theſe circular Letters iſſu'd out ſometimes two, three, four, five, or ſix Months, before the aſſign'd Day. And in Caſes where there has been farther Prorogations, Care has been taken to iſſue out new Commiſſions, in the like convenient Time, before the old were expir'd; as may be obſerv'd by what has gone before; that ſo thoſe *Knights Companions*, who are moſt remote from Court, may have ſufficient Time to prepare, either for Attendance, or, on juſt Occaſion, to apply themſelves to the Sovereign, for Letters of Diſpenſation for Abſence: And farther, that the abſent Knights may thereby take notice of the Day ſet, becauſe ſuch are oblig'd to hold the Feaſt in their own Houſes, at the ſame Time.

Beſides the Letters directed to the *Knights-Companions*; the Chancellor is likewiſe to write his Letters to each of the Officers of the *Order*, to give them the like notice.

Of Diſpenſations for not attending the Grand Feaſt.

§ 2. It having been complained of by the Chancellor of the *Order*, and taken notice of by the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions*, in a Chapter held at the Celebration of the Grand Feaſt, 13 *Car.* I. at *White-Hall*:

That of late Years, divers Knights-Companions *had neglected, both their Attendance on the Sovereign at the Feaſt of St.* George, *or to ſend, under their Seals of Arms, their probable Excuſes, and Petitions for Licence and Diſpenſation, contrary to the moſt ancient* Statutes, *and their Duty.*

It was therefore, among many other things, decreed, *That for the future, every Knight of the* Order *ſhould be bound to attend on the uſual Days, or ſuch as ſhould be aſſigned by Prorogation*: But in Caſe of Sickneſs, or other important Buſineſs to retard them, they ſhou'd, under their Seals of Arms to the Chancellor, ſignify the Reaſons for requiring a Diſpenſation for their Abſence, twenty Days at leaſt before the uſual, or aſſigned Time, to be preſented by him to the Sovereign; and on Neglect of ſo doing, except in ſudden Accidents, ſhould not be excuſed, but incur the Penalty of the *Statutes*.

And it is evident, that this way of enjoining the *Knights-Companions* to ſend the Reaſon that prevented their Attendance, under their Seals, has been very ancient; for the *Black-Book* records an *Order* in *Chapter*, held at a General Feaſt, 1 *Hen.* VI. to this very Purpoſe; and enjoin'd farther, *That when ſuch abſent Knights were preſent at the next Feaſt, they ſhould be oblig'd to give the Reaſon why they ſhould not incur the Penalty of their former Abſence, ſince the* Statutes *enjoin it.*

In Purſuance of the beforementioned Decree, Sir *Thomas Rowe*, then Chancellor, added to thoſe his Letters, dated 18 *May*, 1637, and directed to the *Knights-Companions*, under the Seal of the *Order*, this following Poſtſcript.

According to two Acts made in Chapter, *in the Preſence of the Sovereign*, 18 April, 1637. *concerning the Neglect of the* Knights-Companions, *in their Attendance upon his Majeſty at the Feaſt of St.* George, *and a Command expreſly receiv'd to ſignify ſo much to your* Lordſhip; *I have the true*

Copies

Copies of the Acts themſelves, it being reſolv'd, in Caſe of Omiſſion of your lawful and timely Excuſe, under your Seal of Arms, and in Occaſion of Abſence, in keeping the Solemnity in your own Houſe, that no Diſpenſation ſhall be given, but your Lordſhip *ſhall incur the Penalties of the ancient* Statutes; *which are, That you ſhall not be permitted to the* Chapter, *nor to your Seat, the next Year; but ſhall ſtand before it, as do the* Choriſters: *In Proceſſion then you ſhall go before, and not in your Place among the Knights, and ſhall Offer laſt; and that this Penance being done, you ſhall come before the Seat of the Sovereign, and ask Abſolution: But if two Years ſucceſſively your* Lordſhip *ſhall omit your Attendance, or timely Suit for Diſpenſation, you ſhall pay twenty Marks, and that Sum to be doubled for every Year of ſuch Omiſſion, till you are reconcil'd, and pardon'd by the Sovereign, whereof I beſeech your* Lordſhip *to take Knowledge.*

It afterwards appears, by an *Order* paſt in *Chapter, 9th October,* 15 *Car.* I. that this early Notice to be given from ſuch of the *Knights-Companions* as, upon the Reaſons already mention'd, ſhould be abſent, was deſign'd chiefly in Favour of the Officers of the Sovereign's *Houſhold*, who, by knowing in due Time who ſhould be abſent, and who not, might make timely and certain Proviſion for the Feaſt.

Upon Notice ſent by the Chancellor, to the *Knights-Companions*, as aforeſaid, if any of them ſhould happen to be any way indiſpos'd, or have other lawful Excuſe for not repairing to Court, and attending the Feaſt, they may acquaint the Chancellor therewith, whoſe Duty it is to repreſent it to the Sovereign, and thereon to procure his Letters of Diſpenſation for their Abſence, if the Sovereign conſents.

Which Letters are to be convey'd by *Garter*, or carry'd by whomſoever he ſhall appoint; for which there was a Fee by the Mile allowed him, by the following *Order*, paſt at a Meeting held by the *Knights-Commiſſioners*, for regulating Points relating to the *Order*, 13 *Car.* I.

Whereas it having anciently been the Office of Garter, King *of* Arms, *to diſperſe and ſend Letters of Prorogation, Diſpenſation, and other Commands of the Sovereign, to the abſent Knights, which in many Caſes muſt be chargeable, it was this Day order'd, That if he ſhould ſend any Act of*

Favour or Diſpenſation to any Knight, abſent from his Majeſty's Court, or four Miles from the City of London, *he to whom ſuch Diſpenſation ſhould be ſent, ſhould pay his Servant or Meſſenger, for every Day's Travel, as much as is allow'd and paid any other Meſſengers of his Majeſty's Houſe or Chamber.*

Variety of Occaſions and Accidents, as Grounds to move the Sovereign, and Inducements to obtain his Diſpenſation, are extant in ſeveral Letters ſent to Sir *Thomas Rowe*, when Chancellor, on the aforeſaid Injunctions, decreed 13 *Car.* I. but they all agree in the Cauſes we have mentioned.

Of Commiſſions of Lieutenancy.

§ 3. Touching the third particular, and preparing Commiſſions of Lieutenancy, in ſuch Caſes where the Sovereign cannot perſonally celebrate the Feaſt; as alſo Commiſſions for thoſe whom he thinks fit to appoint for his *Aſſiſtants*, the Reader is referr'd to the Head in the next *Chapter*, under which there is an Account of conſtituting a *Lieutenant*; and here only obſerve, that the Chancellor is to draw up theſe Commiſſions, and attend the Sovereign for his Hand, and after to paſs them under the Great Seal of the *Order*.

Warrant for the Removal of Atchievements.

§ 4. If there be Occaſion for Removal of any of the *Knights-Companions* Atchievements, at the Grand Feaſt, which indeed has ſeldom happen'd, unleſs an Inſtallation were celebrated at the ſame time, then does the Chancellor obtain the Sovereign's Warrant, directed to *Garter*, for the Performance thereof: But of this we have already ſaid ſufficient, under the Head of Preparations made for Perſonal Inſtallations of a *Knight-Companion*.

Eſcutcheons of Arms and Stiles.

§ 5. Heretofore, when the Celebrations of St. *George's Day* were kept at any other Place beſides *Windſor Caſtle*,

it

it was thought moſt neceſſary to provide large Paper Eſcutcheons; wherein were Marſhalled the Arms and Quarterings of the Sovereign, and each *Knight-Companion*, in Metal and Colour, encompaſs'd with a *Garter*; and thereon Crowns, Caps, or Coronets, peculiar to each Dignity, with their Stiles and Titles fairly printed underneath, (but without Creſts or Supporters,) to be ſet on the Backſide of their Stalls, on the Eve of the Feaſt: But the Sovereign's Arms were impaled with thoſe of St. *George*, over which an imperial Crown was plac'd, and theſe, (in Defect of the Plates and Banners, ſet over their Stalls, in the Choir of St. *George*'s *Chappel* at *Windſor*,) did ſerve for Directions for the *Knights-Companions*, that, by the view of them, they might the more readily and certainly know their proper Stalls.

We have not met with any Memorial of this Uſage, that reacheth higher than *Anno* 21 *Hen.* VII. when the Sovereign, holding the Day of St. *George* at *Cambridge*, *King's College Chappel* was furniſh'd with Eſcutcheons of the *Knights-Companions* Arms; but to ſhew the Uſe was ancient, there is this Note put into the Memorial, [as was Yearly accuſtomed,] *Anno* 22 *Hen.* VIII. the Sovereign being at *Windſor* on the Eve of St. *George*, appointed the Service of the Church to be celebrated in his Chappel, in the upper Quadrangle of *Windſor Caſtle*; and there being preſent with him thirteen *Knights-Companions*, each of them had ſet over their Heads an Eſcutcheon of their Arms.

This Manner the Stalls were afterwards ſolemnly eſtabliſh'd, and enlarged to abſent Knights, by an *Order* of *Chapter*, held at *Greenwich*, *Anno* 3 *Edward* VI. wherein the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* agreed, that from thenceforth every Stall, upon St. *George*'s *Eve*, ſhould have an Eſcutcheon of the Arms of them which are abſent, as well as thoſe that were preſent, at their ſeveral Coſts and Charges.

But this cannot be underſtood of the Stalls ſituate in the Chappel of St. *George* at *Windſor*; for beſides, that we have met with no ancient Account of any ſuch Cuſtom in that Place, we find a Memorial, rather implying the contrary; when Queen *Elizabeth*, in the ſixth Year of her Reign, held the Feaſt of St. *George* upon its proper Day, at *Windſor Caſtle*; namely, that there was no Eſcutcheons

cheons of the *Knights-Companions* Arms ſet up there, but only the Plates; and without all doubt, had it been the Uſage to fix Eſcutcheons in the Choir of that Chappel, as at other Places, they would not at that time eſpecially have been omitted; becauſe then the Sovereign appear'd upon an extraordinary Occaſion, and where many things were added to heighten the Glory of that Grand Feaſt, by Reaſon the Peace between *England* and *France* was to be proclaimed at this Feſtival, in the Preſence of the *French* Ambaſſador, and was accordingly done with great Solemnity on St. *George*'s *Day* in the Morning, at the Eaſt-Entrance in the lower Ward of the Caſtle, at the top of the Hill towards St. *George*'s *Chappel*; and to which Place the Sovereign, in her whole Habit of the *Order*, (the *French* Ambaſſador being near her,) with the five Officers of the *Order*, and *Knights-Companions* before her, and before them the Officers of Arms and Trumpets, proceeding in a ſtately and well order'd Cavalcade; and after *Clarenceux*, King of Arms, had ended the Proclamation, they continu'd the Proceeding thence to the Chappel, in the ſame State and Order.

As to the Practice and conſtant Uſage of ſetting up Eſcutcheons of Arms, ſince *Anno* 3 *Edward* VI. and at ſuch time as St. *George*'s *Day* was held elſewhere than at *Windſor*, we have ſeen Variety of Teſtimonies.

The Care of ordering and providing of which belong'd to *Garter*; but the Sovereign of the *Order* was at the Charge, (notwithſtanding the ſaid Order, *Anno* 3 *Edw.* VI.) which heretofore we ſee was paid out of the Treaſury in the *Exchequer*; and ſince the Eſtabliſhment of 1200 *l. per Annum*, (ſettled by the late Sovereign King *Charles* I. to diſcharge the ordinary and extraordinary Expences of the *Order*,) the Allowance iſſu'd thence, and was paid by the Chancellor of the *Order*; but now the Charge is plac'd upon *Garter*, he having an Allowance therefore included in the Augmentation of his Penſion, *Anno* 15 *Car.* II.

We find Privy Seals to have iſſu'd as high as the fifteenth of Queen *Elizabeth*, for the Annual Allowance of 7 *l.* for Eſcutcheons imploy'd for the Uſe aforeſaid, and that the Price ſome time before was about that rate; for the three and twenty Eſcutcheons, provided againſt St. *George*'s *Feaſt*, *Anno* 1 and 2 *Phil.* and *Mar.* came to 6 *l.* 1 *s.* and 8 *d.* and thoſe five and twenty ſet up the following

lowing Year, 61. 11 s. and 8 d. ſome Differences then alſo being in the Work, which enhanc'd the Price, *viz.* thoſe provided for Princes, at 6 s. and 8 d. a Piece, and each of the reſt at 5 s.

The Sovereign, the Prince of *Wales*, and Stranger Kings and Princes, have accuſtomably had, at theſe Times, Majeſty Eſcutcheons ſet up over each of their Stalls; but the reſt of the *Knights-Companions*, Lodging Eſcutcheons only; and we have ſeen an Account of ſome Majeſty Eſcutcheons prepar'd for every St. *George's Feaſt*, from 1613, to 1619; to wit, one for the Sovereign, another for the King of *Denmark*, a third for the Prince of *Wales*, and a fourth for *Frederick*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, at 6 s. and 8 d. a piece; but ſo many *Knights-Companions* as attended the Sovereign at thoſe Feaſts, had each a Lodging Eſcutcheon, at 2 s. and 6 d.

From the Marſhalling of Arms, quarter'd in the *Knights-Companions* Eſcutcheons, and ordering their Stiles, (printed always in *French*) there are ſeveral things no leſs uſeful than worthy of Obſervation; for, firſt, though the Plates of Arms and Quarterings, fix'd in each *Knight-Companion's* Stall at *Windſor*, continue there without Alteration, or very ſeldom chang'd from that Order wherein they were Marſhall'd at that Time of their Inſtallation; yet theſe Eſcutcheons and Stiles Annually ſet up, do admit of frequent Alteration, as there is Occaſion; either by adding more Quarterings, altering the Stiles, or amending any thing that is amiſs.

For Inſtance: Whereas the Duke of *Savoy*, before 5 *Eliz.* bore *Gules* a *croſs Argent*, it was then alter'd into five Coats; that is to ſay, in the firſt Quarter, *Weſtphalia*, *Saxe-Moderne* and *Angria*; in the ſecond, *Chablais*; in the third, *Aouſte*, and the fourth as the firſt; and over all, in the middle, the aforeſaid Eſcutcheon of *Savoy*.

When the Lord *Hunſdon* was inſtall'd, *Anno* 3 *Eliz.* he had twelve Coats of Arms, thus Marſhall'd in his Plate; four, four, and four; the firſt *Carey*, the ſecond *Spencer*, the third *Somerſet*, the fourth *Bullen*, the fifth *Ormond*, the ſixth *Hoo*, the ſeventh *Rochford*, the eighth *Seyntomer*, the ninth *Malmains*, the tenth *Wichingham*, the eleventh St. *Leger*, and the twelfth *Hangford*; but *Anno* 7 *Eliz.* his Eſcutcheon receiv'd an Addition of four other Coats, *viz.* *Beuchamp*, *Warwick*, *Berkley*, and *Gerard*

rard, and they were inſerted next to *Somerſet*, the third Coat in this ſaid Plate.

But on the contrary, where *Ambroſe*, Earl of *Warwick*, had twenty one Coats put into his Plate, *Anno* 5 *Eliz.* and they Marſhall'd in this Order, five, five, five, and ſix; namely, firſt *Sutton*, ſecond *Paganell*, third *Grey* of *Ruthin*, fourth *Haſtings*, fifth *Quincy*, ſixth *Malpas*, ſeventh *Somery*, eighth *Valence*, ninth *Talbott*, tenth *Warwick*, eleventh *Beauchamp*, twelfth *Berkley*, thirteenth *Liſle*, fourteenth *Gerard*, fifteenth *Guilford*, ſixteenth *Houlden*, ſeventeenth *Weſt*, eigthteenth and nineteenth *Quarterly de la Ware* and *Cantilupe*, twentieth *Mortimere* of *Wigmore*, and twenty one *Greely*; at the Feaſt of St. *George* held at *White-Hall*, *Anno* 9 *Eliz.* his Eſcutcheon contain'd but ſixteen; *viz.* four, four, four, and four; namely, firſt *Sutton*, ſecond *Paganell*, third *Somery*, fourth *Malpas*, fifth *Grey* of *Ruthin*, ſixth *Haſtings*, ſeventh *Valence*, eighth *Ferrers*, ninth *Quinceſs*, tenth *Cheſter*, eleventh *Talbott*, twelfth *Beauchamp*, thirteenth *Warwick*, fourteenth *Berkley*, fifteenth *Gerard*, ſixteenth *Liſle*: So that there were ſeven Coats taken out of the former; namely, *Guilford*, *Holden*, *Weſt*, *de la Ware* and *Cantilupe*, *Quarterly* *Mortimere* and *Greely*, and two added, *viz.* *Ferrers* and *Cheſter*.

But the greateſt and frequenteſt Variations are in the Stiles and Titles of *Honour*, ſet under the Eſcutcheons, and theſe relate unto, and are occaſioned principally from their attaining or reſigning of Offices or Dignities.

We find that the Stile ſet under the Eſcutcheon of *Ferdinand* the Emperor, at St. *George*'s *Feaſt*, *Anno* 1 and 2 *Phil.* and *Mar.* was as followeth.

Du tres hault tres-Excellent & tres-Puiſſant Prince, Ferdinand, par la grace de Dieu, Roy des Romaines, de Hungarie, & Bohemie, Arch-Duc d'Auſtrie, Duc de Burgoigne, &c. Chevalier du tres Noble Ordre de la Jarretiere.

But *Anno* 5 *Eliz.* in the ſaid Emperor's Stile, the Titles of King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* were left out; becauſe *Maximilian* his Son had a little before obtain'd both thoſe Kingdoms.

In the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, the Stiles of *Philip*, King of *Spain*, who, while Queen *Mary* lived, was Co-Sovereign of this moſt Noble *Order*, run thus:

Du

Du tres Hault tres-Excellent and tres-Puiſſant Prince Philip, par la grace de Dieu, Roy d'Eſpaigne, des Deux Cicels & Jeruſalem, Arch-Duc d'Auſtriæ, Duc de Burgoigne, Millan, & Brabant, Compte de Hapsburghe, Flanders, Flanders, & Tiroll; Chevalier du tres-Noble Ordre de la Jarretiere.

But at the Feaſts of St. *George*, *Anno* 28, 29, and 30 *Eliz.* the Title of Catholick Prince was alſo given him.

The Inſtances relating to *Knights-Subjects* are very many; here having been almoſt every Year ſome Additions, or Omiſſions.

In the Duke of *Norfolk*'s Stile, *Anno* 3 *Eliz.* the *Lieutenantſhip of the North* was omitted. In the Earl of *Rutland*'s, at the ſame Feaſt, *Preſident of the Council in the Council in the North*, was added. The Marquiſs of *Wincheſter* caus'd the Title of Baron *St. John* to be omitted, becauſe his eldeſt Son bore that Title, and was a Baron of Parliament.

It may be further obſerved, that a Stranger elect (having receiv'd the *Habit* and *Enſigns* of the *Order*,) hath been allow'd the Honour of having an Eſcutcheon of his Arms ſet on the back of that Stall deſign'd for him, notwithſtanding he has not been inſtall'd.

Of Adorning the Chappel.

§ 6. The Chappel where divine Service is celebrated, at the Time of the Grand Feaſt; whether it be that of St. *George*'s at *Windſor*, or elſewhere, as the Sovereign is pleas'd, hath at all Times been adorn'd with rich Furniture; the Care and Overſight whereof at *Windſor*, is committed to the Dean of the College, but at other Places, to the Dean of the Chappel.

The *Altar*, by the Gift of pious Benefactors, was adorned with Veſſels, ſumptuous both for their Materials and Workmanſhip; but *temp. Hen.* VIII. and *Edw.* VI. moſt of them were diſpos'd of, ſo that King *James* I. taking notice that very little Plate, and other Ornaments, were belonging to the Chappel, was pleas'd to make ſome Proviſion for the adorning thereof, which was at length

length effected by the free Contributions of the Knights themſelves.

For at a *Chapter* held at *White-Hall*, 16 *Jac.* I. it was decreed, that every *Knight-Companion* ſhould give to the Uſe of the *Altar*, in the ſaid Chappel, a piece of *Plate* of the Value of 20 *l.* at the leaſt.

This Decree was confirm'd, *Anno* 6 *Car.* I. the Dean and Canons of *Windſor* being impower'd to demand and receive the Sums of Money, as above, which they were to beſtow in Plate for the Uſe of the *Altar*; and accordingly they agreed for the Quantity of Plate hereafter mention'd, which was deliver'd, *Anno* 1637. *viz.*

	Ou.	*Dr.*
Two little Candleſticks chas'd and gilt, for Wax Candles	092	06
Two Chalices, with four Pattens	113	01
Two great Candleſticks, neat for Tapers	553	15
Two little Baſons	251	15
One great Baſon	210	00

	l.	*s.*
The Value at 12 *s.* the Ounce, came to	730	10
Beſides nine Caſes	009	10

But to make ſome farther Addition to the Glory of this *Altar*, King *Charles* II. at the time of his *Inſtallation*, offer'd two large gilt Water-pots, weighing 387 Ounces ten Peny Weight, amounting, by the excellent Workmanſhip, to 12 *s.* the Ounce, and to the Sum of 232 *l.* 10 *s.* Some ſacred Ceremonies were perform'd at the Conſecration of this Plate, not very neceſſary to be ſpoke of here. But all theſe, with the other Goods and Monuments belonging to the King's free Chappel and Treaſury at *Windſor*, were rifl'd and taken away by the Parliament Army. King *Charles* II. therefore, after the Reſtauration, *Anno* 1667, by the Conſent of the *Knights-Companions*, did levy and collect, and by his own Bounty furniſh'd the Chappel again with the following Plate:

A Pair of gilt Flaggons, bought with Money collected from the Knights-Companions, 150 *Ounces.*

A Pair of wrought Flaggons, with great Bellies, having the Figure of St. George *on Horſeback on the Cover*, &c. *bought with the* Knights *Money*, 414 *Ounces.*

One

One ſmall Baſon. 25 *Ounces and an half.*

A Pair of plain gilt Chalices and Covers, bought alſo with the Knights *Money,* 163 *Ounces and a quarter.*

A large Emboſt Baſon, with the Figure of Mary Magdalen *waſhing our Saviour's Feet,* 198 *Ounces.*

A Pair of large Taper Candleſticks, 264 *Ounces.*

At the Charge of the College.

A Pair of large Baſons gilt and emboſs'd, given by her Royal Highneſs the Dutcheſs of York, 305 *Ounces.*

A plain gilt Corporas, the Gift of Sir Richard Fanſhaw, 24 *Ounces.*

A double gilt Chalice, the Gift of the Lady Mary Heveningham, 33 *Ounces.*

As to the Adorning, and Furniture of the Chappel, 'tis very ſumptuous; the particulars being not ſo very material, I ſhall here omit them.

The Furniſhing St. George's Hall.

§ 7. The Care of making ready and furniſhing St. *George's Hall,* or any Place, either there, or elſewhere, ſet apart for the Grand Dinner, is committed partly to the Gentlemen Uſhers of the *Black-Rod,* and partly to the Sovereign's Surveyer-General of his Works, both by Warrant from the Lord Chamberlain of the Houſhold: They cauſe to be prepar'd the Tables, and ſet in order the rich and coſtly Furniture.

Officers and Servants appointed to attend the Grand Feaſt.

§ 8. The principal Officers of the Grand Feaſt are ſerv'd by Noblemen, whom the Sovereign appoints, and are put in a Liſt, Sign'd by the Lord Chamberlain of the Houſhould, and deliver'd to the *Black-Rod,* who gives them Notice ſome convenient time before the Feaſt, that they may the better perform the Duty of their ſeveral Places; of what Quality they uſually are, will appear by the following Liſt.

Thoſe

Thoſe that gave their Attendance at the Grand Feaſt, *Anno* 14 *Car.* II. when the Sovereign was inſtall'd, were,

For the Sword, The Earl of *Northampton.*
The great Baſon, The Earls of *Bedford, Hertford, Clare,* St. *Albans,* and the Lord *Herbert* of *Ragland.*
The Cup-bearer, The Earl of *Eſſex.*
The Carver, The Earl of *Carliſle.*
The Sewer, The Earl of *Dover.*
The Surnap, The Earl of *Elgin.*
The Ewer, The Earl of *Devonſhire.*
The Train, The Lords *Ruſſel, Herbert,* and *Cranborne.*

The Gentlemen of the Sovereign's Privy-Chamber in waiting bear the Canopy, and the Sovereign's Officers and Servants following, (having notice from the Lord Chamberlain,) give their Attendance; as appears by the Liſt of thoſe appointed to give their Attendance at *Windſor, Anno* 23 *Car.* II.

Lord Chamberlain, and Servants.
Groom of the Stool.
Bed-Chamber Men.
Secretaries of State.
Gentlemen-Uſhers of the Privy-Chamber.
Mr. Vice Chamberlain.
Gentlemen of the Bed Chamber.
Privy Purſe.
Secretaries of *Scotland.*
Twelve Gentlemen of the Privy-Chamber in waiting.
Four Gentlemen Uſhers daily Waiters.
Two Cup-bearers.
Eight Quarter Waiters, Gentlemen Uſhers.
Two Chaplains.
Two Phyſicians.
Two Chirurgeons.
Mrs. Sempſtreſs and Landreſs to his Majeſty.
Four Grooms of the Chamber.
Fourteen Lords to attend his Majeſty.
Officers of the Guard.
Yeomen of the Guard.
Three Maſters of the Tents.
Maſter of the Ceremonies.
Aid of the Ceremonies.
Jewel-Houſe.

Muſi-

Muſicians.
Yeomen of the Bows and Guns.
Captain Cook, and the Children of the Chappel.
Two Carvers.
Two Sewers.
Two Pages of the Preſence.
Two Eſquires of the Body.
Two Apothecaries.
Four Serjeants at Arms.
Eight Sewers of the Chamber.
Pages of the back Stairs.
Captain of the Guards.
Officers of the Robes.
Two Grooms of the Privy-Chamber.
Groom Porter.
Marſhal of the Ceremonies.
Removing Wardrobe.
Gentlemen of the Chappel.
Five Meſſengers.
Sixteen Trumpeters.
Serjeant Trumpeter.
Drum Major.
Four Drummers and a Fife.

CAP. XX.

The Order of the Ceremonies on the Eve of the Grand Feaſt.

Of the beginning of the Grand Feaſt.

§ 1. THE Celebration of the Grand Feaſt, with the Ceremonies, devis'd to ſet forth and illuſtrate the Glory thereof, hath been worthy the obſervation of the firſt Inſtitutor, and all ſucceeding Sovereigns; well knowing that what is once ſlightly obſerv'd will ſoon fall into diſeſteem, if not into contempt. Therefore they have been very particular to the Day, the Hour,

and the Place, where the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* are to meet.

As to the firſt, although St. *George's Day* (or ſuch other Day as the Sovereign ſhall pleaſe to nominate and appoint, by Prorogation in lieu thereof,) be the Principal and Grand Day of the Feaſt, yet the Eve of that Day does the Feaſt take Commencement, and determines not till the third Day following; the whole Solemnity taking up three Days incluſively.

And this is clear from ſeveral Articles of the *Statutes*, wherein the courſe of the Ceremonies to be obſerv'd at the Grand Solemnity are ſet down; whether obſerved, on the Eve, the Feaſt-Day, or the Morrow after: And theſe three Days together did the Sovereign hold the Grand Feaſt, whether they perſonally celebrated the ſame, or deputed other of the *Knights-Companions* to that Employment, the cauſe of the Commiſſions of Deputation limitting their Power either in general, *during the time of the Feaſt*; or in particular, upon the Day of St. *George*, the Day, and that following, *viz.* the laſt Day of the Feaſt. In like manner, when in ſucceeding Times, Commiſſions of Prorogation of the Grand Feaſt were made uſe of, we find the three Days continuance of the Feaſt to be particularly mentioned in the Body of thoſe Commiſſions: Namely, the Day wherein, by ſuch Appointment, the Feaſt was to begin, the Grand Day it ſelf, and the Day whereon it ended.

The Directions given in the *Statutes*, for the Order and Courſe of this Solemnity, to begin with the Eve, run thus: Every Year upon St. *George's Eve*, ſhall be an Aſſembly, or Meeting of all the *Knights-Companions* of the *Order*, at *Windſor Caſtle*, *&c.* and the ſame is poſitively enjoin'd by all the other Bodies of the *Statutes*.

And as the Grand Feaſt is generally ſaid to Commence *in Vigilia Sancti Georgii*, or as it is otherwiſe expreſt in the *Black-Book*, in *Vigilia in future celebratis*, or, *Vigiliis Divi Georgii*, or in *Vigilia Feſti*. So has the time of this preceeding Day ſeveral other Denominations given it in the ſame *Regiſter*, *Veſper ante Diem Sancti Georgii*; *in Veſperiis Georgianis*, *in Veſperiis Feſti*, *in Veſperiis Commitionem*; and at other times, *pridie Divi Georgii*, *pridie Georgianæ Solemnitatis*, *pridie Feſti*, *pridie feriarum Divi Georgii*, and ſometimes *per vigilia*, and laſtly in plain *Engliſh*,

Engliſh, St. *George's Eve*; all which ſignify one and the ſame thing, and are but various Names given to the Evening of the Day foregoing either that of St. *George*, or that whereon the Grand Feaſt is appointed to be held by Prorogation.

Thus we ſee that the Founder began his Solemnity upon the Eve of the Feaſt Day; which doubtleſs was in conformity to the Cuſtom of the Church, who made the *Vigils* and *Eves* part of the enſuing Feſtivals, and as Uſhers to the Grand Solemnities.

As the Eve was appointed by the Founder for the Commencement of the Anniverſary of the Grand Feaſt, ſo to make the time more certain, the *Statutes* expreſs the exact Hour of meeting for beginning the Solemnities, to be at the Hour of *Tierce*, which in many other Places is called, *Hora Tertiarum*. But this ſeemed not ſufficient to expreſs clear enough the meaning of a Law, where a Penalty was enjoined, and therefore at a *Chapter* held at *Windſor*, 17 *Edw.* IV. a ſcruple ariſing among the *Knights-Companions*, concerning the Words *Hora Tertiarum*, whether they were intended to mean three in the Afternoon, or at the Hour of the Church, generally uſed after Prime Noon before; and fixed it to the latter.

The *Regiſtrum Chartaceum* Records the ſame Explanation of the Words; and to let us ſee that 'twas immediately put in Practice, it is there entered with the Names of thoſe *Knights-Companions* preſent with the Sovereign, both in the Morning and Evening of the ſame Day.

Another Inſtance of which there is, 3 *Hen.* VII. on the Eve of the Grand Feaſt, held by Prorogation at *Windſor*, where the Sovereign, in regard of the arrival of ſeveral Ambaſſadors, put off the uſual *Chapter* till Noon; whence it is evident, that the Cuſtom at this time was likewiſe to begin the Solemnity in the Morning.

But notwithſtanding the ſaid Decree of King *Edw.* IV. we find it *Anno* 11 *Hen.* VIII. to be meant and intended for three in the Afternoon. And when King *Henry* VIII. came to Model the *Statutes* of the *Order*, in two ſeveral Articles, he declares and expounds the *Hora Tertia*, (which the *Engliſh* Verſion of thoſe *Statutes* renders the *Hour* of *Tierce*,) to be the *Hora Tertia poſt Meredíem*, three in the Afternoon; and in another Article of the ſame *Statutes*, *Hora Tertiarum*, *id eſt*, *Hora Tertiarum poſt Meredíem*;

and elſewhere, *Hora Tertia Veſpertina vel Pomeridiana*; which Hour, as it was then ſettled to be the punctual time for the *Knights-Companions* meeting, to enter on the Solemnity of the Feaſt, ſo has it ever ſince continued unaltered, and uſually obſerved.

The Place of Aſſembly for the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions*, hath uſually been in ſuch of the Sovereign's Privy Lodgings, both at *Windſor*, or elſewhere, as he hath appointed; frequently in the Privy, Withdrawing, or Bed Chambers: To this appointed Place the *Knights-Companions* repair, to give their Attendance on the Sovereign, having firſt inveſted themſelves in full Robes, either in their own Lodgings, or ſome convenient Room at Court, where *Garter* is to attend them, with notice of the approaching Hour.

The *Knights-Companions* being come to the Sovereign, as likewiſe the Officers of the *Order*, habited in their *Mantles*, and bearing in their Hands the *Symbols* of their ſeveral Offices, they wait the Sovereign's being veſted in his Robes, till he paſſes into the Preſence Chamber, or give beginning to the Feaſt, by opening the *Chapter* at their meeting, before he goes thither.

About the ſame time, the Provincial *Kings*, *Heralds*, and *Purſuivants*, wearing their Coats of the Sovereign's Arms; ſo alſo the Band of Penſioners, armed with their Pole Axes, Aſſemble in the Preſence Chamber; but the Prebends of the College, veſted in their Taffaty Mantles over their Surplices, and *Alms-Knights* in their *Mantles* and *Surcoats*, come no nearer than the Guard Chamber.

Laſtly, The Servants and Attendants of the *Knights-Companions* meet without the Guard Chamber Door, whence ſpreading themſelves down the Stairs, through the Stone Gallery, into the upper Ward of the Caſtle, or as far as their Number will reach, all wait the Sovereign's coming forth into the Preſence.

It will be neceſſary here to inform the Reader, in regard not only the Feaſt Day of St. *George*, but the Grand Feaſt held in Honour of the *Order*, hath been kept in ſeveral other Places beſides *Windſor Caſtle*, more particularly, at *White-Hall*, St. *James*'s, *Greenwich*, and *York*; that there are many Ceremonies, and other Particulars hereafter named, which alter not with the Place, but appertain to the Feſtival, and are therefore to be obſerved every

where

where alike; as for inſtance, the form of Proceeding, the manner of holding *Chapters*, the Ceremony of Offering Gold and Silver, Swearing of Officers, and ſuch like: But others there are, which are preciſely local and particular, as the *Prebends* and *Alms-Knights* going in the Proceeding, the Offering up of Atchievements, *&c.* to *Windſor* only.

Since the withdrawing the Grand Feaſt from *Windſor*, ſome of the Officers of Arms, curious in the Obſervation of theſe Solemnities, performed in other Places, have afforded us great Plenty of Memorials, relating to the ceremonious Part thereof, while the ſame was continued at *Windſor*; and therefore, when the true Place where the Inſtance lies, ſhall be alſo cited, the Reader is not to conclude that the Precedent urged doth not full enough anſwer the Purpoſe, unleſs it had been likewiſe fetched from *Windſor*. But that in this caſe, the Ceremony or Example is ſuch, as is peculiar to the Feaſt, not the Place, and ought to be obſerved without alteration at any Place, where the Sovereign ſhall keep the Grand Feaſt.

Of ſetting the Proceeding in Order.

§ 2. In Times paſt, the *Knights-Companions* appeared at the Grand Feaſt, attended with a numerous Train of Servants and other Dependents; but the Feaſt having removed from *Windſor* to other Places, much of this ancient Splendor was laid aſide; yet upon King *James* I. Acceſſion to the Crown, ſomewhat of this Glory began to revive; for we find it entered upon the *Regiſter*, in the fourth of his Reign; *That the ancient Cuſtom, which for ſome Years had been intermitted, wherein, at the Solemnity of this Feaſt, all the* Knights-Companions *were wont to go attended, each with a large Train, was recalled and brought back into uſe.*

But this heighth of Gallantry and Splendor in the Number of Attendants, and richneſs of their Apparel, within ten Years grew up to ſuch Exceſs, or rather Exorbitancy, that it required a reſtraint; wherefore the Sovereign, by the unanimous Advice of the *Knights-Companions*, Decreed, and Commanded, *That every one of the* Knights-Companions *of the* Order, *ſhould have to attend upon his Perſon*

at the yearly Solemnization of the Feaſt of the Order, *fifty Perſons, and no more*: The reaſon whereof we find elſewhere noted to be, for ſaving of Charge, and avoiding of Emulation. But in the beginning of King *Charles* I. Reign, of ever Bleſſed Memory, the gallantry of Attendants began again to Increaſe and Augment; inſomuch that at the Grand Feaſt held at *White-Hall*, the 22d, 23d, and 24th of *April*, *Anno* 8 *Car.* I. we find it obſerved, that the *Knights-Companions* came forth attended, each with a Train of Servants very richly clad.

But to return and enter upon the Proceeding, to the end the Servants and Attendants of the *Knights-Companions* may be exactly Marſhalled, the Uſher of the Hall (whoſe Duty it is to rank them) ought to call for a Liſt from *Garter*, of ſuch *Knights-Companions* as are to be preſent at the Grand Feaſt, noted with their ſeveral Places in the Proceeding, for his better Directions in aſſigning the Attendants their due Places, the Order whereof is thus: Firſt, the *Junior* Knights-Attendants proceed one before another, on the left Hand, upon whoſe right Hand the ſecond eldeſt Knights-Attendants go in equal Rank with them, for this we obſerve to have been the general rule; where the *Knights-Companions* Proceed in pairs, their Attendants go together; thoſe belonging to the *Senior* Knights of the two, on the right Hand, and to the *Junior* upon their left; but the Order is otherwiſe, where any of the *Knights-Companions* proceed ſingle and alone, (which often falls out, as ſhall be noted in its due Place,) for then the Attendants belonging to that ſingle Knight go two and two, on both ſides the Way, oppoſite one againſt the other.

But when the Grand Feaſt is Celebrated at *White-Hall*, there the *Knights-Companions* Attendants are Marſhalled by the ſaid Uſher, on both ſides the Paſſage, from the outward Door of the Guard Chamber, down into the Hall, taking up all the Room as far as the old Chappel; and becauſe here they do not proceed, in regard of the ſhortneſs of the Proceſſional way, but only make a ſtand, for the Proceeding to paſs through them, they are ranked in a way different from that uſed at *Windſor*; nevertheleſs relating more eſpecially to the Order obſerved by their Maſters: Which Method, in the Sovereign's Proceeding to the Chappel, at the beforementioned Feaſt,

held

held at *White-Hall*, *Anno* 8 *Car* I. we find thus deſcribed The eldeſt *Knight-Companions* Servants were ranked on the right Hand of the Paſſage, the chiefeſt of them near unto the old Chappel Door; and the ſecond Knight (being Companion to the eldeſt) his Attendants ſtood on the left ſide, the chiefeſt of them alſo next the ſaid old Chappel Door, and in caſe the eldeſt Knight's Fellow or Companion be not preſent in this Proceeding, then the eldeſt Knight's Servants ought to be placed oppoſite one againſt the other, upon each ſide the ſaid old Chappel Door: The like Order is to be taken in Marſhalling the Servants of the other Knights of this moſt Noble *Order*, whoſe Companions are then abſent.

Secondly, The Order of Proceeding amongſt the *Alms-Knights*, (who, *Anno* 1 *Car.* I. had two Waiters of the Sovereign's Hall, in their Livery Coats, bearing white Rods in their Hands, to proceed before them,) is in general two and two together, the *Junior* is placed foremoſt on the left Hand, and his next *Senior* on his right; and if Sickneſs, or other lawful Impediment, chance to hinder one or more of them, from going in the Proceeding, his *Junior* is advanc'd into his Place, and conſequently all the other *Juniors* do in like manner alter their Places, and advance, to the end the ſuperior Place be ſtill ſupplied, according to the right rule of Marſhalling the Singles, that compoſe a groſs Body; but in this Caſe, if the Number that attend happen to be odd, the Governor of the *Alms-Knights* goes laſt of all, and alone.

Thirdly, The Virger of the College hath his Place next after the *Alms-Knights*, and immediately before the *Prebends* of the College; who being habited in a Gown, beareth a Silver Verge, the Enſign of his Office: Nevertheleſs, heretofore, when the *Prebends* went not in the Proceeding, on the Eve of the Grand Feaſt, the Virger proceeded firſt of all, before the *Alms-Knights*, for ſo it was obſerved on the Eve of St. *George*, at *Windſor*, *Anno* 6 *Eliz.* and in this manner we ſee it expreſt, in the Proceeding ſet forth by *Marcus Gerchard.*

Fourthly, Under the general rule, relating to the *Alms-Knights*, are comprehended the *Prebends* of the College, the *Purſuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings*, inſomuch, that where either of the ſaid Kings are abſent, the *Senior Herald* is advanced, and goes in breaſt on the left Hand of

him who is then preſent; ſo alſo where any of the *Heralds* are wanting, his next *Junior* aſcendeth into his Place; whereby it ſometimes falls out, that the *Senior Purſuivant* is joined to the left Hand of the *Junior Herald*: And through their defects and abſence, the Number of the Officers of Arms be odd, then (with this difference in the foreſaid rule obſerved among the *Alms-Knights*,) the youngeſt *Purſuivant* goeth ſingle by himſelf.

Touching the right of Precedency, between the Officers of Arms, and *Prebends* of the College, in Proceeding before the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions*, we find there hath been heretofore not only ſome Queſtion ſtarted, but the Place contended for; inſomuch, that at the Inſtallation of the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, *Anno* 34 *Eliz.* the *Prebends* took Place, and upon the 24th of *May*, *Anno* 39 *Eliz.* at the Inſtallation of *Thomas*, Lord *Howard* of *Walden*, and others, the *Prebends* again endeavoured to paſs between the Officers of Arms, and Officers of the *Order*; but *Charles*, Lord *Howard* of *Effingham*, then Lieutenant to the Sovereign, delivered his Opinion on the behalf of the Officers of Arms againſt the *Prebends*.

Yet did not this ſo ſettle the *Order* of Precedency, or quiet the *Prebends*, but that the Contention again broke out, *Anno* 1 *Jac.* I. at the Inſtallation of the Earls of *Pembrook*, *Marr*, *Southampton*, and Duke of *Lenox*; (which happened on the ninth, not ſecond of *July*, in the foreſaid Year,) even to ſuch a heighth, that the *Prebends*, *Purſuivants*, and *Heralds*, contended in the Proceeding; but the Controverſy was on the next Morning compoſed, by the Lord Admiral, (then the Sovereign's Lieutenant,) the Lord Treaſurer, and the Earl of *Worceſter*; and the *Order* in Proceeding thus ſettled: firſt, That the *Alms-Knights* ſhould go foremoſt, the *Purſuivants* next, then the *Prebends*, and then the *Heralds* and Kings of Arms; and this Order in Proceeding was afterwards obſerved, on the 21 *May*, *Anno* 4 *Jac.* I. at the Inſtallation of the Earl of *Salisbury*, and Viſcount *Bindon*; as alſo the 19 *May*, *Anno* 6. of the ſame King, at the Inſtallation of the Earls of *Dunbar*, and *Montgomery*.

Howbeit, *Anno* 9 *Jac.* I. and ſo afterwards, we do not find the *Purſuivants* mentioned in the Proceeding, by particular Name, nor otherwiſe, than in this following Order,

der, *viz. Alms-Knights, Prebends, Heralds*, &c. but it may be preſumed that the *Purſuivants*, then joined again in Body with the *Heralds*, (though for ſome Years before divided from them, by the interpoſition of the *Prebends*,) as well as the Provincial Kings, and all of them under the Title of *Heralds*, and ſometimes Officers of Arms.

And though at the Grand Feaſt held by Prorogation, on Sunday the 14th of *September*, in the ſaid fifteenth Year of King *James*, it is noted, that the Prince (being then the Sovereign's Lieutenant,) proceeded to Morning Service on the Feaſt Day, with the *Alms-Knights, Heralds, Prebends*, and Officers of the *Order* before him; from which manner of Expreſſion, it may perchance be ſuppoſed, that the *Heralds* went at that time next after the *Alms-Knights*, and before the *Prebends*; nevertheleſs, elſewhere we find them, on the Eve of the aforeſaid Feaſt, ranked in this following Order.

The Alms-Knights.
The Prebends.
The Officers of Arms.
The Knights of the Order, *&c.*

And doubtleſs, they proceeded in the ſame Order to the Chappel, on the next Morning, notwithſtanding what is before ſaid to the contrary, thoſe Expreſſions being interwoven with the general Account given of the Ceremonies of the whole Feſtival, and more ſubject to miſtake, where the relation of the Proceeding is carried on in a continued Diſcourſe, than were ranked (as is before exhibited,) in particular Lines, and in the Order and Form of a Proceeding. Beſides, we no where meet with any Order or Decree, nulling the foreſaid Determination, made *Anno* 1 *Jac.* I. which placeth the *Prebends* before the *Heralds*. Finally, to give an end to the Diſputes in this Point, we find, that upon the Eve of this Feaſt, held at *Windſor*, the 23, 24, and 25 of *November*, *Anno* 1 *Car.* I. the *Prebends*, proceeded next before the *Purſuivants*, and the *Purſuivants* immediately before the *Heralds* and Provincial Kings; that is to ſay, all the Officers of Arms (except *Garter*, whoſe Place is elſewhere,) proceeded in one entire Body together, which Order we find to be the ſame in all Proceedings after, that we have met with, and was

ſo

ſo obſerved at the Grand Feaſt held at *Windſor*, *Anno* 13 *Car.* II. and ever ſince. But to proceed.

All the before mentioned Attendants wait in their ſeveral Stations, till the Hour of *Tierce*, when the Sovereign (having the *Knights-Companions* and Officers of the *Order* before him, and his Train carried up,) paſſeth towards the Preſence Chamber, notice of whoſe coming being given, the Band of Penſioners make the accuſtomed Guard and Paſſage along the Preſence Chamber, the *Seniors* ſtanding towards the Lobby Door, within which Guard, on the other ſide, the Officers of Arms place themſelves: Upon the ſame warning, the Yeomen of the Guard clear a like Paſſage from the Preſence Chamber Door, along the Guard Chamber, unto its outward Door, for the Proceeding to paſs through.

At the Sovereign's approach, one of the Gentlemen Uſhers attended with the Sword of State, (the Point reſting upon the Ground,) delivereth to ſuch one of the Nobility, (not being a Knight of the *Order*,) whom the Sovereign, as an honorary Favour, hath before nominated, to bear it from thence, before him in all the Proceedings of the Feaſt; during which Action, the *Knights-Companions* proceed forwards, and being entred the Preſence Chamber, Flank on each ſide the State, with ſome ſmall diſtance between them, and there make a ſtand: The Sovereign being alſo entred, paſſeth to the Step before the State, (the Nobleman who beareth the Sword, and the five Officers of the *Order*, retiring a little on his right Hand,) and then turning himſelf towards the *Knights-Companions*, ſtandeth there a while, until they have made their Reverences unto him; which being performed, he reſaluteth the *Knights-Companions* by putting off his Cap: This done, the Sovereign putteth his Cap on again; whereupon every of the *Knights Companions* putteth on theirs, and immediately Rank themſelves, according to their due Place, on both ſides the State.

For the right underſtanding whereof, we are in the fifth place to Note, that in the Order and Method wherein the *Knights-Companions* are ranked, (if they be all preſent,) is two and two together, the *Junior* foremoſt on the left Hand, for that is his Place in all Proceedings; but where any of them be abſent, the rule is different from that appropriate to the before-mentioned Degrees;

for

for though it be recorded, that upon the Eve of the Grand Feaſt held at *Windſor*, *Anno* 7 *Hen.* V. the *Knights-Companions* went in Order to the *Chapter-Houſe* and *Choir*; yet this being expreſt but in general terms, how it ought to be underſtood, will more fully appear, from the particular Directions given for the Order of the *Knights-Companions* Proceeding in King *Henry* VIII's Statutes; where the Law directs each *Knight-Companion* to proceed alone, at ſuch time as his Fellow (who poſſeſſeth the Stall oppoſite unto him) is abſent, but the Order of ſuch Proceeding will by a Scheme be made more evident.

The Proceeding of the Knights-Companions, *preſent on the Eve of St.* George, *to the Cloſet at* White-Hall, Anno 3 Eliz.

The Lord *Hunſdon.*	Void.
The Lord *Robert Dudley.*	The Viſcount *Mountague.*
The Lord *Loughborow.*	The Earl of *Shrewsbury.*
The Earl of *Suſſex.*	The Lord *Howard* of *Effing.*
Void.	The Earl of *Weſtmorland.*
The Marquiſs of *North.*	Void.
The Lord *Clynton.*	The Duke of *Norfolk.*
Void.	The Earl of *Pembrook.*

Thus four *Knights-Companions* proceeded alone, in regard the Stalls oppoſite to them were void, the three firſt being abſent, and the laſt void by the Death of the Earl of *Huntington*; and to avoid all diſputes in relation to Precedency, King *Henry* VIII. Decreed, in the ſixteenth Year of his Reign; *That each* Knight-Companion *ſhould take Place, in Proceſſion, Station, or ſitting at the Table, thence forward, as he had his Seat or Stall in the Choir, and not according to the Degree of his Birth or Condition, unleſs the Sovereign was pleaſed that any ſhould be made Choice of, according to the Nobility of his Family, to ſit at the end of his own Table, or perform any other thing by the by.*

The Proceeding among the Officers of the *Order* differeth from all before ſpoken of; for, being five in Number, the three inferior Officers (when all preſent,) March in a breaſt, and (of later Times,) the *Regiſter* in the middle,

Garter

Garter on his right Hand, and the *Usher* of the *Black-Rod* on his left.

After these three Officers, the two superior proceed together, the *Prelate* on the Right, and the *Chancellor* on the left; and after, the Officers of the *Order* follow the Sword, which is carried immediately before the Sovereign. In the beginning of Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, it was born by some of the Barons, but of later Times it hath been conferr'd on Persons of higher Rank, as *Anno* 4 *Car.* I. on the Earl of *Dover*; *Anno* 9 *Car.* I. on the Earl of *Danby*; and *Anno* 13 *Car.* II. on the Lord Viscount *Mordant*, then Constable of the Castle of *Windsor*; and at this Time 'tis usually born by none under the Degree of an Earl.

The Sovereign's Place in the Proceeding, *& notandum quod superior Ordinis tempore Processionis in dicta Capella transibit retro totam Sociarum Comitivam*; which though the *Statute* mentions here to be performed at the Grand Procession, yet it refers to all those times the Sovereign proceeds to, or from, no less than within the Chappel. In ancient Time, the Sovereign (if he were at *Windsor*, to celebrate the Grand Feast,) proceeded to the Chappel in Person, as well on the Eve, as on the Feast Day. Queen *Elizabeth* being the first who went not to the Chappel on the Eve of the Feast, unless we except King *Henry* VI. who, by reason of Sickness, was necessitated to make a Deputy in his stead: The aforesaid Omission of Queen *Elizabeth*, was first occasioned through Indisposition of Health, though she afterwards, without that necessity, did not comply, as in the 18, 25, 29, and 31 Years of her Reign, which gave occasion to King *James* to make Deputies at those three Grand Feasts he Celebrated at *Windsor*; and the like did King *Charles* I. in the first Year of his Reign; but in the fourth Year of his Reign, the ancient Custom (for many Years intermitted,) was restored, and the Sovereign (making no Lieutenant,) proceeded to the Chappel, not only on that Eve, but always observed it afterwards, as did King *Charles* II. in all the Grand Feasts he held, and is now observed.

It will be necessary to take notice, that the Proceeding begins from the Presence Chamber, call'd in the *Statutes* the Great Chamber; a Scheme whereof, on the Eve of the Grand Feast, is here exhibited.

The

The Attendants on the Knights-Companions,
Alms-Knights.
Virger of the Chappel.
Prebends of *Windſor*.
Officers of Arms.
Knights-Companions.
Black-Rod.
Regiſter.
Garter.
Chancellor.
Prelate.
The Sword.
The Sovereign.
Train-bearers.
Captain of the Penſioners.
Penſioners.

To the foregoing Proceeding have been occaſionally receiv'd ſome Perſons of Quality, and others Eminent in Place and Degree; (though their Offices do not particularly relate to this moſt Noble *Order*,) but are admitted by reaſon of their requiſite Attendance on the Sovereign, in his Proceedings on all Occaſions.

On St. *George's Eve*, *Anno* 3 *Eliz.* the old Ambaſſador of *Sweden*, accompanied by the Earl of *Hertford*, went in the Proceeding to the Cloſet at *White-Hall*, next after the Train-bearers, and immediately before the Ladies Attendants on the Sovereign; and the next Morning, when the Sovereign proceeded to the Chappel, the new Ambaſſador of *Sweden* went in the ſame Place.

As to thoſe admitted on the Account of their Offices, is the Lord Chamberlain, (though not a Knight of the *Garter*,) and is allowed Place ſomewhat behind, on the right Hand of the Sovereign, and the Vice Chamberlain on the left.

The Dean of the Sovereign's Chappel at *White-Hall* attends when the Proceedings are thither, going a little behind the Sovereign towards his left Hand; next goes the Clerk of the Cloſet, then the Maſter of the Robes, as alſo one of the Maſters of Requeſts, and then the Gentlemen of the Robes.

Of

Of the Proceeding to the Chapter-Houſe.

§ 3. Having under the precedent Head, treated at large of the Rank and Place of all thoſe that paſs in the Proceeding, wherein all are Bare-headed, except the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions*: I now come to the Place whither the Proceeding is directed.

The firſt Solemn Action on the Entrance of the Grand Feaſt, which the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* are obliged to perform, is to Celebrate a *Chapter*, to which end it hath been moſt uſual for them to proceed from the Preſence Chamber, *every one in their due Place and Order*; firſt to the *Chapter-Houſe*, to conſult of things of courſe; and next into the *Choir*, to hear Divine Service; which has been the conſtant Cuſtom from the Reign of King *Henry* V. as many Examples, recorded in the Regiſters of the *Order*, evidence.

As this Cuſtom of holding a *Chapter* on the Eve of the Grand Feaſt, was conſtantly obſerved when celebrated without Prorogation; ſo alſo hath a *Chapter* been in like manner held before *Veſpers*, on the Eve, at ſuch time as the Feaſt Day of St. *George* only hath been obſerv'd, when (for any cauſe) the Anniverſary of the Grand Feaſt receiv'd Prorogation: As for Inſtance, *Anno* 1 *Mary*, a *Chapter* was held at the Mannor of St. *James's*, on the *Vigil* of St. *George*, before the firſt *Veſpers*; whereunto is fixt this Note, *ut moris eſt*; and the Grand Feaſt for that Year receiv'd Adjournment, until the coming of *Philip*, then Prince (after King) of *Spain*.

In like manner, though the Celebration of the Grand Feaſts were removed from *Windſor*, and obſerved at other Places, yet this uſual Cuſtom of holding a *Chapter* on the Eve, was always practiſed; after which the proceeding to Evening Prayer ſucceeded, as is manifeſt by ſeveral Teſtimonies from the *Regiſters*.

The publick proceſſional way to the *Chapter-Houſe* at *Windſor*, uſed Time out of Mind, led from the Preſence Chamber through the Cloiſter, and the great Gate of the King's Lodging, to the upper Ward of the Caſtle, thence through the middle Ward, and part of the lower, to and through the Paſſage, between the Eaſt End of the Chappel and

and *Tomb-Houſe*; and thence into the *Chapter-Houſe*, Situate on the North East Corner of St. *George's Chappel*.

But the Sovereign hath ſometimes thought fit to wave this publick proceſſional way, and paſs along the private way, which leads from the King's Privy Chamber, down the Stairs into the Terrace, *viz.* through that ſtately Walk lying on the North ſide of the Caſtle, and entring again at a Door, heretofore made through a part of the Caſtle Wall into one of the Canons Lodgings, adjoining to *Winchester Tower*, (now made up) went thence through the Cloiſters, proceeding in the Order before ſhewed.

We ſhall cloſe this Head, with obſerving, that though the Proceedings to the *Chapter-Houſe* or Chappel, on the Eve of the Feaſt, have moſt commonly been on Foot; yet have they been alſo on Horſe-back, on extraordinary Occaſions, as *Anno* 3 *Hen.* VII. at which Time ſeveral Ambaſſadors being arrived here from Foreign Kings and Princes, they and many of the Nobility of this Kingdom, with the King's Council, the two Archbiſhops, the Biſhops of *Lincoln* and *Ely*, and the Chief Juſtice of the King's Bench, repaired alſo thither; and on the Eve, the Sovereign, accompanied with the *Knights-Companions*, rode from the upper Quadrangle down to the College. The Queen and the King's Mother rode in a Chair, covered with rich Cloth of Gold, drawn by ſix Courſers finely Harnaſs'd, and twenty one Ladies, habited in Crimſon Velvet, rode on white Palfries: Sir *Roger Cotton*, Maſter of the Queen's Horſe, led her Horſe of State, whereon was a Saddle of Cloth of Gold, and three Crowns of Silver gilt; as ſoon as they alighted, the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* proceeded to the *Chapter-Houſe*, and thence to Evening Song, which ended, they return'd in the Order they came.

King *Henry* VIII. in the eleventh Year of his Reign, at three a Clock in the Afternoon, with all the *Knights-Companions*, in the Habit of the *Order*, proceeded from the Preſence Chamber in *Windſor-Caſtle*, till they came to the Quadrangle, where they took their Horſes, and rode according to their Stalls, not according to their Eſtate, next before the King, and thence rode to the middle Door of the Chappel, and there alighted, and proceeded without the *Choir* to the *Chapter-Houſe*; there are other Examples, but theſe may ſuffice.

Of

Of the opening of the Chapter.

§ 4. The Proceeding being arriv'd at the Entrance into the Chappel, firſt the Attendants on the *Knights-Companions* divide themſelves as they enter, beginning at the outward Door, and Flank on each ſide the North Iſle of the Chappel, and ſo toward the Weſt Door of the *Choir*, making a ſtand along the Iſle for the *Alms-Knights*, *Virgers*, *Prebends*, and *Officers* of *Arms*, to paſs through them, who go on towards the ſaid Weſt Door; and when the *Junior Knights-Companions* are entred into the Chappel, the Proceeding makes a ſtand, while all the *Knights-Companions* following turn aſide on the right Hand into the *Chapter-Houſe*, next the Officers of the *Order*, and laſtly the Sovereign; but the Nobleman that carries the Sword, the Train-bearers, Penſioners, *&c.* ſtay without the *Chapter-Houſe* Door in the North Iſle; none being admitted in but the Sovereign, the *Knights-Companions*, and the Officers of the *Order*; who being all entred, the Door is ſhut by the Gentleman Uſher of the *Black-Rod*, and every Perſon ſeverally takes his due Place and Station, whereupon the *Chapter* immediately opens.

In what Manner and Order the Sovereign, *Knights-Companions*, and Officers of the *Order*, are ranked, at the holding of a *Chapter*, is deſcrib'd, *Anno* 11 *Hen.* VIII. when the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* conſulted in the *Chapter-Houſe*, on the Reformation and Explanation of the *Statutes* of the *Order*.

The Sovereign, on his Entrance, proceeded to the midſt of the North-end of the Table; the *Knights-Companions*, whoſe Stalls in the *Choir* were on the Sovereign's ſide, took the right Hand of the Table, and thoſe of the Princes ſide the left; then the Prelate of the *Order* came and ſtood on the Sovereign's right Hand, at the corner of the Table; *Regiſter* and *Garter* were at the lower end, and *Black-Rod* kept the *Chapter-Houſe* Door on the inſide. The Chancellor of the *Order* is not there mention'd, (as not being preſent) yet his Place is on the Sovereign's left Hand of the Table.

If the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* arrive at the *Chapter-Houſe* ſo late, that the Buſineſs neceſſary to be done can-

cannot be diſcuſs'd, without putting off the Celebration of *Veſpers*, beyond the Canonical Hour; it hath been uſual to adjourn the Debates till the next Morning, as was done *Anno* 14 *Car.* I.

Tranſactions in the Chapter *held before the* Veſpers.

§ 5. When the *Chapter* held before the *Veſpers* is open-ed, and no Adjournment given thereto, all things are then to be provided for, which concern the Honour and Dignity of this moſt Noble *Order*.

The matters of courſe are; firſt, Swearing, and admitting Officers; ſecondly, Debating about the *Knights-Companions* then abſent, and either diſpenſing with, or inflicting Penalties on them; and thirdly, Conſtituting or appointing an Officer, to carry on the State and Solemnity of the Feaſt in the Sovereign's abſence. But other Particulars that are occaſional, cannot ſo well be brought within Rule, as being wholly accidental.

As to the firſt, the Officers of the *Order*, ſoon after the *Chapter* is open'd, take their reſpective Oaths, in Order to perform the Duty of their ſeveral Places, during the Seſſion of the *Chapter*, and thenceforward, as is evident from ſeveral Examples, but one may ſuffice, from a *Chapter* held at *Windſor*, *Anno* 4 *Car.* I. whereat Dr. *Neal*, Biſhop of *Wincheſter*, was Sworn Prelate; Sir *Francis Crane*, Chancellor; and Dr. *Mathew Wren*, Biſhop of *Ely*, Regiſter.

It hath ſometimes happened, that ſome of the Officers of this *Order* have been Sworn at other Times, as at *Chapters* next enſuing their Nomination and Choice, wherein the Adminiſtration of the Oath is one of the firſt things done.

Touching the ſecond particular debated in *Chapter*, *viz.* the diſpenſing with, or puniſhing abſent Knights; it is to be conſidered, that the *Statutes* of the *Order* enjoin all the *Knights-Companions* to be preſent at the Celebration of the Grand Feaſt: that is, thoſe that are within the Kingdom, or elſewhere; although the Service of St. *George*, according to the Rites of the Church, be not celebrated, as on the Service of the Day whereon that of St. *George* has fallen, *viz.* *Good-Friday*: But with this Limitation,

ſo that they be in a capacity, or may conveniently repair thither.

Therefore the next thing uſually entred upon in the *Chapter*, is the Sovereign's and *Knights-Companions* taking notice, whether any of the Fellowſhip make default of coming at the Hour aſſign'd; and if ſo, they are conſidered under one of theſe Heads. Firſt, Stranger Princes; Secondly, Late Commiſſioners who are arrived, or every Minute expected; and Thirdly, Such as have given notice that they cannot be preſent, during the continuation of the Feaſt: Of theſe Excuſes of courſe, verbal Apologies, or Letters of Excuſe, are, or may be, offered; and in caſe they are approved or admitted, then the Penance, which by the *Statutes* ought otherwiſe to be inflicted, is admitted; all which ought to be recorded.

Stranger Princes are excuſed in courſe, on Account of their neceſſary Reſidence in their own Territories; and of their Excuſes and accuſtom'd Diſpenſations, are divers Inſtances in the Regiſters of the *Order*.

As to *Knights-Companions*, who are tardy in their Journey, or being come to the Caſtle, fall ſhort of the Hour, or of attending the Sovereign to the *Chapter-Houſe*, either through negligence, or want of timely notice, or other accident; the *Statutes* enjoin for Penance, that they be not permitted for that time to enter into the *Chapter*, but tarry without the Door, and not have Voice in any thing that ſhall happen to be done there, unleſs they can alledge a juſt Excuſe, or render ſuch a ſufficient cauſe as the Sovereign, or his Deputy, ſhall approve of; but few defaulters have been noted of this kind.

The third ſort of Delinquents, are thoſe *Knights-Companions* abſent, not only at the Hour of *Tierce*, but are likely to be ſo during the whole Feaſt; the Proceedings relating to them, are either upon what is offered in Excuſe of their abſence, or determined on their neglect of making Apology for it.

Excuſes for abſence, are either by Letters or Word of Mouth; if by Letters, they are directed to the Chancellor of the *Order*; or elſe the Sovereign ſends to his Lieutenant on their behalf, and both are produc'd by the Chancellor: But if Excuſes be made by Word of Mouth, then are they delivered by the Sovereign himſelf; or on motion

tion made by ſome of the *Knights-Companions* preſent in *Chapter*.

The Cuſtom of ſending Letters has been very ancient: The Lord *Powis*'s Letter, under his Hand and Seal, (certifying his Indiſpoſition of Body,) was produc'd in *Chapter, Anno* 8 *Hen.* V. And the following Year the Dukes of *York*, *Norfolk*, and *Buckingham*, with the Earls of *Saliſbury*, *Shrewsbury*, and *Pembrook*, Viſcount *Bourchier*, the Lord *Rivers*, and Sir *John Falſtaff*; being all abſent from St. *George*'s *Feaſt*, *they declared the reaſon of their abſence by their Meſſengers*. There are many Precedents of this kind, and of Letters ſent from the Sovereign, directed to his Lieutenant, to accept of *Knights-Companions* Excuſes, whoſe abſence he had beforehand diſpenc'd with; we obſerve thoſe Diſpenſations excus'd not the ſending their own particular Excuſes; for it is evident they were alſo expected, and that ſuch allowance of abſence was not Abſolute, the Clauſe running thus: *That you* [*the Sovereign's Deputy*] *allow theſe Excuſes ſo far as are conſonant to reaſon*. And in all other Letters of the ſame nature, a Clauſe to this Effect hath been inſerted: *That as the Sovereign thought good to advertiſe his Deputy, that for certain Cauſes he had diſpenc'd with their Attendance for that time; ſo he will'd him to accept their reaſonable Excuſes in that behalf accordingly*.

Secondly, The abſent *Knights-Companions* have had their Excuſes frequently made by Word of Mouth, either of the Sovereign, or ſome other of the *Knights-Companions*, preſent in the *Chapter*. This Favour is done either by the Sovereign himſelf; if preſent, or by his Order to the Lieutenant, in his abſence.

There have been many Examples of what hath been done in this Caſe, and alſo when the Sovereign hath not been preſent in *Chapter*, but hath beforehand verbally given his Deputy or Lieutenant direction to excuſe the abſence of ſeveral *Knights-Companions*.

It will be neceſſary to obſerve what Effect the Excuſes have uſually produc'd; whereinto we find the juſt and reaſonable favourably admitted, ſome ſuſpended, and divers diſallowed. Thoſe eaſily allow'd were, firſt, Sickneſs; (for thoſe of the *Knights-Companions* who have been either Sick, far ſpent with Age, or intent on publick Affairs, have been readily allow'd,) Secondly, The not

recovery of Wounds receiv'd in the publick Service; as we meet with in the Caſe of Sir *William Harington*, *Anno* 7 *Hen.* V. whom we ſee excus'd *for his Illneſs, occaſion'd from his Wounds then lately receiv'd at the Siege of* Rohan, *and elſewhere.* Thirdly, Impotency and old Age. Fourthly, Imployment in the Sovereign's Service, either Abroad or at Home; thoſe Abroad are neceſſarily excus'd, thoſe at Home we ſhall be more particular to. The Earl of *Shrewsbury*, *Anno* 22 *Eliz.* was taken up in certain Affairs, enjoin'd him by the Sovereign; the Earl of *Huntington*, 26 *Eliz.* being Preſident of the Council of the North, his abſence was for that, and ſeveral Years following, favourably excus'd; and a like Caſe was that of the Earl of *Danby*, *Anno* 13 *Car.* I. who for his neceſſary Attendance at the Seat of Juſtice in *Eyre*, was excus'd waiting on the Sovereign at the Grand Feaſt that Year. Fifthly, *When the Grand Feaſt hath receiv'd Prorogation, and any of the* Knights-Companions *have not had notice of the Day whereunto it was prorogued.* Sixthly, *When any of them have been in Captivity*; as was *Thomas*, Earl of *Salisbury*, and the Earl of *Huntington*, both Priſoners in *France*, *Anno* 2 *Hen.* VI. Seventhly, When any of them have obtain'd the Sovereign's Letters of Diſpenſation, of which ſufficient is ſpoken before. Laſtly, *Some other juſt and lawful Occaſion*, as well as Accident, having fallen out; (not relating to thoſe under the former Heads,) the Sovereign, on Information given in *Chapter*, hath been pleas'd to allow of; as in the Caſe of the Lord *Fauconbridge*, *Anno* 32 *Hen.* VI. was readily admitted, on his pleading *the care of his Domeſtick Affairs, he having been lately in Priſon, and had obtained leave to go and ſee his Houſe and Lands in the Country.* The Earl of *Arundel*'s abſence, *Anno* 15 *Car.* I. was pardon'd, by reaſon of the Dutcheſs of *Richmond*'s Death, who died on the Eve of the Grand Feaſt; that ſo he (being the chief of her Family,) might be at Hand to adviſe and aſſiſt in all things conducing to the Honour of the deceaſed Dutcheſs.

And as the *Knights-Companions* have been often excus'd for not appearing on the Grand Feaſt, ſo hath the Sovereign, on ſufficient Grounds, been pleas'd to licenſe and diſpence with their departure; from the ſame of this is an Example, 6 *Eliz.* when the Lord *Haſtings* of *Loughborough*, falling Ill a little before the Offering on St. *George*'s

George's Day, obtain'd Licence from the Sovereign to depart out of the *Choir*; and came no more abroad that Day, nor during the Feaſt. As alſo another in the Duke of *Lenox*, *Anno* 15 *Car.* I. *The Deputy Chancellor having, by Command of the Sovereign, and in diſcharge of the Duty of his Office*; who being forc'd to go back to *London*, by reaſon of the aforeſaid Dutcheſs of *Richmond*'s Death, had his Excuſe, and the Sovereign's Licence for departure.

We are next to conſider Excuſes, which, though ſent in due time, yet on Debate in *Chapter* were ſuſpended rather than allow'd; to which Head may be referr'd that Caſe of ſeveral of the *Knights-Companions*, who were Members of the Lord's Houſe in the long Parliament. For *Anno* 18 *Car.* I. the Deputy Chancellor having, by the Command of the Sovereign, and in diſcharge of the Duty of his Office, ſent to each of them a Summons, for their Attendance at the Celebration of the Grand Feaſt, to be held for the preceeding Year at *York*; and notice thereof being given to the Houſe of Lords, they immediately made the enſuing Order.

Die Martis 22 Maii, 1641.

Whereas the Lord Chamberlain of his Majeſty's Houſhould, and ſome other Lords of Parliament, Knights of the Garter, *have been Summoned to give their Attendance, and repair into the City of* York, *for the Celebration of St.* George's *Feaſt; who acquainting this Houſe with the Summons aforeſaid, it is this Day ordered by the Lords in Parliament, that they attend the weighty Affairs of the Kingdom diſcuſſed in Parliament, whereunto they are obliged by his Majeſty's Writ, and the Law of the Land.*

Jo. Browne, Cleric. Parliament.

Whereupon the ſaid *Knights-Companions*, before the Days appointed by Prorogation for holding the Feaſt, ſent their petitionary Letters of Excuſe to the Deputy Chancellor, wherein they profeſs'd their deſire and readineſs to attend, in Obedience of the ſaid Summons; nevertheleſs pleaded the foreſaid *Order* for the Ground of their ſtay in *London*, and therefore deſired him to obtain for them the Sovereign's Diſpenſation: On producing the ſaid Letters in *Chapter*, the Sovereign would not at that time either admit

mit or disallow of their Excuses, but referr'd the consideration to the next *Chapter*, to be held by Prorogation.

Of Excuses which have not been allow'd, the most remarkable is that of the Duke of *Norfolk*, and the Lord *Scales*, *Anno* 36 *Hen.* VI. who were adjudg'd to the Penalty of the Statute, in regard the Causes alledged to excuse their absence were not approved; the latter was signed by the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions*, in a Jewel to the value of twenty Marks, to be offered in the College; whereby the rigour of the *Statutes* appears to have been more strictly executed on him, than the Duke, probably because the Lord *Scales* was absent the Year before, and no cause thereof shewed to the *Chapter*.

In relation to the Proceedings on the absent *Knights-Companions* neglect of sending their Excuses, we shall observe, that some of them have with difficulty been remitted, some left in suspence, and others sentenc'd, and referr'd either to the Sovereign's pleasure, or the Punishment assign'd by Law; of the first kind we find that the Earl of *Westmorland*, *Anno* 10 *Hen.* V. though not very well, yet had much ado to be excus'd, because he signified not the Cause of his absence, as the *Statutes* required. So *Anno* 12 *Car.* I. the Earls of *Derby* and *Kelly*, having made no Excuse, were for that Omission blameable, but by the Grace of the Sovereign for that time pardon'd.

As to those who, through the indulgence of the Sovereign, (where probable cause hath induc'd it,) have not had Sentence pass'd on them presently, but were deferr'd in expectation of some satisfactory Cause to be shewed; we find in the Case of the Prince, the Duke of *Buckingham*, and five other *Knights-Companions* absent from the Feast, held *Anno* 18 *Hen.* VII. wherein it is registred, that *no cause of Excuse was shewed, but there was an expectation of one to be alledged.*

But as for those of the third sort, on whom Sentence hath pass'd; they have been left either to the pleasure of the Sovereign, or to those Penalties which the Law of this *Order* inflict; of which, as also of those on whom Judgment hath pass'd, are divers Instances.

Besides these Grounds of assigning Penances, there are other Causes set down in the before recited ninth Article, of the *Statutes* of Institution for Penances; as when the *Knights-Companions* are absent at other times, beside the Hour

Hour of *Tierce*, that is, the beginning of the firſt *Veſpers*. Secondly, At the beginning of the Morning Service on the Feaſt Day. Thirdly, At the beginning of the ſecond *Veſpers*. Fourthly, During the whole Feaſt. And, Fifthly, at the Grand Feaſt next following.

For the firſt, admitting any *Knight-Companion* hath failed of meeting and attending on the Sovereign at the Hour of *Tierce*, and thereupon ſuffered the Puniſhment of Non-admittance into the *Chapter-Houſe*, and deprivation of Vote; nevertheleſs if at the riſing of the ſaid *Chapter*, he be not ready to proceed with the Sovereign, and other the *Knights-Companions*, into the *Choir*, to the beginning of the firſt *Veſpers*; he ought not only to ſuffer the former, but this additional Penalty, that he ſhall not preſume to Enter into his Stall at that time, but tarry in that part of the *Choir*, where the Taper-bearers are wont to ſtand; nevertheleſs before his own Stall, until the holy Offices be ended; and the Law of the *Order* is the ſame in King *Henry* V's, and King *Henry* VIII's *Statutes*, only render the Place for the Delinquent Knight to ſtand in, to be before the Stalls in the Choiriſters Places; and now how the Penalty hath been inflicted, upon breach of the Law in this particular, we ſhall ſee by the following Inſtances.

At the Grand Feaſt celebrated at *Windſor*, *An.* 21 *H.* VII. when it ſeems the Lord *Kildare*, Sir *Gilbert Talbot*, and Sir *Richard Goulford*, came late to the Chappel, we find this Memorandum fixt to their Names; they ſtood without, (before their Stalls) by the Sovereign's Permiſſion, or rather Command: But yet this is not all the Puniſhment which hath been inflicted upon the *Knights-Companions* for this Offence; (though it be all that is ſet down in the foreſaid Article,) for *Anno* 25 *Hen.* VI. upon the Eve of St. *George*, the Marquiſs of *Dorſet* not coming to the firſt *Veſpers*, and being convicted of his late coming, was prohibited joining in the Nomination then made, for the Election of the King of *Portugal*, into the room of the Duke of *Glouceſter*.

Offenders in the ſecond and third Caſe, being ſuch as neglect to come before the beginning of the high Maſs, or the ſecond *Veſpers*, called alſo the *Veſpers* on St. *George's Day*, have the like Puniſhment with the former aſſigned them, throughout all the Bodies of the *Statutes*; *viz.*

Exclusion from their Stalls, and Station in the Choiristers Range.

Anno 1 *Hen.* VI. We observe the Lord *Willoughby* noted to be absent upon the Eve of the Grand Feast, but present on the Day; and consequently he incurred no further Penance than what his absence on the Eve drew on him; the Earl of *Derby*, *Anno* 18 *Eliz.* coming too late to the first Morning Service on the Feast Day, did for some short time undergo the same Penance, but soon after, upon Dispensation from the Lieutenant, went up to his Stall.

There are several other Instances; and besides the aforesaid Defaults, he is likewise to undergo the same Penalties, when the Grand Feast is prorogued, or celebrated at any other Place than *Windsor*.

But if he offend in all, and have no reasonable or allowable Excuse for his absence, he is then prohibited entering his Stall at the next Feast, and to pay ten Pounds, to be employed towards the Ornaments of the College; and sometimes the former Penance has been inflicted for late coming to Divine Service.

The fourth degree of Offence is yet greater than any, and the variety of Penances are heightened. If a *Knight-Companion* shall neglect coming to the Grand Feast, and have no allowable reason; he shall not at the Feast held the ensuing Year be permitted to enter his own Stall, but stand below it; he shall walk alone by himself before three Crosses, which, in ancient time, were born in the Grand Procession: When the Grand Procession returns to the *Choir*, he shall stand in the Place aforesaid, till the time of the Offertory; he shall Offer last by himself, and then humbly approach the Stall of the Sovereign, or his Deputy, and there desire Absolution. But there is no Instance that these Rigours were put in Execution, though many have offended in this kind.

Lastly, The *Statutes* enjoin; That where a *Knight-Companion* remains within the Kingdom, and shall be Guilty of an Omission two Years together, he ought to be so long interdicted his Stall, till he have offered a Jewel at St. *George's Altar*, to the Value of twenty Marks; and thenceforward every Year in which he shall be guilty of the same Omission, the Penalty to be doubled, till he is pardoned: The most memorable Case in the Prose-

cution

cution of a Contempt, was againſt the Earl of *Arundel*, 14 *Edw.* IV. who for being abſent two Years together, was Mulct forty Marks; and continuing his Contempt the next Year, was fined the Sum of eighty Marks.

Touching the Neceſſity, and Power, of the Sovereign's conſtituting a Deputy; it was provided for at the Inſtitution of the *Order*; the Sovereign being then engaged in the Wars of *France*, thought it reaſonable that Proviſion ſhould be made by the *Statutes*, for to depute ſome Perſon in his ſtead.

When therefore ſuch Occaſion happened, a Commiſſion was made out to one of the *Knights-Companions*, ſome reaſonable time before the approach of the Feaſt; ſo that none of the ancient Ceremonies might be omitted, or any Impediment happen through his abſence; and ſuch Deputy hath uſually been one of the chief of the *Order*, in Authority, Eminence, or Birth. The firſt ſo made was, *John* Duke of *Bedford*, 7 *Hen.* V. and the reaſon thereof given, in the *Regiſtrum Chartaceum*, is, becauſe the Sovereign was then employed in the Wars in *Normandy*.

And though the Title given by the *Statutes* to this Officer, be not particularly mentioned in the *Blue-Book*, where it ſpeaks of the ſaid Duke's holding the Feaſt of St. *George* that Year, but rather implied in the Words *Regiæ Sublimatis locum impievit*; yet in the *Regiſtrum Chartaceum* it is expreſly ſet down, and the ſaid Duke there ſtyled, *Depute de l'Ordre de Jaritiere*. Sometimes he has been ſtyled, *Deputatis Ordinis, & præſes clariſſimæ Ordinis*, &c.

About the beginning of the Reign of King *Henry* VIII. the Title of *Locum Tenens*, or Lieutenant, began to be taken up, and has, for the moſt part, continued in all ſucceeding Times; and the other Titles of Deputy, Preſident, and Vicegerent, laid aſide. As to the Buſineſs of this Officer, ſufficient has been ſaid already. As an Eſſential Honour to his Place, he has from ancient Time had ſome of the *Knights-Companions* aſſigned for his Aſſiſtants; the firſt mention of which is in the *Regiſtrum Chartaceum*, 8 *Hen.* VIII. The Number of theſe Aſſiſtants were in thoſe times uncertain; at the time aforeſaid they were 4. 21 *Hen.* VIII. 3. and 32 *Hen.* VIII. we find but two; which Number has been a conſtant Rule ever ſince, except once, *viz.* the laſt of *Hen.* VIII. They were always appointed in *Chapter*, and have Letters of notice

ſent

ſent them thereof: But neither the Lieutenant, nor Aſſiſtants, can be Choſen two Years together, except they ſhould pleaſe to be preſent at the Day or Feaſt; and after it was Decreed, 23 and 24 *Hen.* VIII. that this Indulgence ſhould extend to the term of three Years.

Laſtly, We obſerve that this Officer always held the Feaſt at his peculiar Coſt and Charge; and gave liberal Rewards to *Garter*, and for his Eſcutcheons, as alſo to the Officers of Arms, Gentlemen-Uſhers, Alms-Knights, and to all the ſeveral Waiters and Attendants employed in the Ceremony.

The Ceremonies relating to the firſt Veſpers.

§ 6. The firſt *Chapter* held on the Eve of St. *George* being finiſhed, the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* immediately proceed from the *Chapter-Houſe* to the *Choir*, to hear *Veſpers*. The Officers of Arms, Prebends, and Alms-Knights, having attended in the North-Iſle of the Chappel, do now put themſelves in Rank, and continue the Proceeding from the *Chapter-Houſe* Door, along the ſaid North-Iſle, to the Weſt Door of the *Choir*; in like manner as they did from the Preſence Chamber, to the *Chapter-Houſe*: The Organs then beginning to play, and ſo continue till *Veſpers* begin.

When the Alms-Knights arrive at the Weſt-Door, they firſt enter in a whole Body, while the reſt of the Proceeding makes a ſhort ſtand, and paſs forward near the middle of the *Choir*, where they make a joint and low Obeyſance; next, all turning about by the left Hand, to the Sovereign's Seat; then ſtill turning from the right, to the left Hand, they aſcend the *Haut Pas's*, even to the Rails ſet before the *Altar*; and forthwith divide themſelves, flanking on each ſide, the *Juniors* neareſt the Rails.

This done, the Prebends enter in a Body alſo, and having made the like Obeyſances in the middle of the *Choir*, divide themſelves, and take their Seats; which, by King *Henry* VIII's *Statutes*, are appointed in the lower range of Seats, between, but not in, the Stalls of the *Knights-Companions*. While the Prebends are entering their Seats, the Purſuivants, Heralds, and Provincial Kings of Arms, in a Body, likewiſe enter the *Choir*; and

and after due Reverence, paſs up to the *Altar*, and join the Alms-Knights; though anciently ſome difference was in this Ceremony.

Afterwards, the two *Junior Knights-Companions* enter, paſſing on till they come near their own Stalls, and there make their Reverences, and then divide, and take their ſtands directly before their Stalls; and ſo of the reſt of the *Knights-Companions*.

Next to the *Knights-Companions*, the *Black-Rod*, *Garter*, and *Regiſter*, enter in a Breaſt, who, proceeding to the middle of the *Choir*, make their Obeyſances, and then paſs to their Form, placed on the South-ſide of the *Choir*, before the Sovereign's Stall, and ſtand before it. After them, the Chancellor and Prelate in the like manner, ſtand before their Form, placed near the Sovereign's Seat: And for theſe Forms, whereon the Officers of the *Order* ſit in the Chappel, there is a ſpecial Decree for the allowance of them, entered at the end of the Conſtitutions of their Offices.

Laſt of all the Sovereign enters, (having the Sword born before him, but his Band of Penſioners ſtay at the *Choir* Door, to keep off the Crowd,) who, coming to the Steps which aſcend the Royal Seat, makes a Reverence toward the Altar, and then takes Place therein, before he makes a ſecond Reverence.

When the Lieutenant, in the Sovereign's abſence, proceeds to the firſt *Veſpers*; as ſoon as he enters the *Choir*, and comes near the Sovereign's Stall, he ſtands and makes a little pauſe there; then doing his Reverences, after he has again ſtood a while, before he aſcends his own; where being arrived, he makes the double Reverence a ſecond time, and then ſits down.

And now to placing the *Knights-Companions* in their Stalls: *Garter*, as ſoon as the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, is placed, makes again the uſual Reverence in the middle of the *Choir*; then turns to the *Senior* Knights, and doth his Reverence to each of them; whereupon, at one Inſtant, they make their double Reverences below, where they ſtood, and ſtrait aſcend at the firſt, or weſtern Entrance, that goes to the ſide Stalls; where being arrived, they make again their double Reverences, and then ſeat themſelves. But when the Sovereign's Lieutenant is preſent, each Knight adds a third Reverence to him, both when

ſent them thereof: But neither the Lieutenant, nor Aſſiſtants, can be Choſen two Years together, except they ſhould pleaſe to be preſent at the Day or Feaſt; and after it was Decreed, 23 and 24 *Hen.* VIII. that this Indulgence ſhould extend to the term of three Years.

Laſtly, We obſerve that this Officer always held the Feaſt at his peculiar Coſt and Charge; and gave liberal Rewards to *Garter*, and for his Eſcutcheons, as alſo to the Officers of Arms, Gentlemen-Uſhers, Alms-Knights, and to all the ſeveral Waiters and Attendants employed in the Ceremony.

The Ceremonies relating to the firſt Veſpers.

§ 6. The firſt *Chapter* held on the Eve of St. *George* being finiſhed, the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* immediately proceed from the *Chapter-Houſe* to the *Choir*, to hear *Veſpers*. The Officers of Arms, Prebends, and Alms-Knights, having attended in the North-Iſle of the Chappel, do now put themſelves in Rank, and continue the Proceeding from the *Chapter-Houſe* Door, along the ſaid North-Iſle, to the Weſt Door of the *Choir*; in like manner as they did from the Preſence Chamber, to the *Chapter-Houſe*: The Organs then beginning to play, and ſo continue till *Veſpers* begin.

When the Alms-Knights arrive at the Weſt-Door, they firſt enter in a whole Body, while the reſt of the Proceeding makes a ſhort ſtand, and paſs forward near the middle of the *Choir*, where they make a joint and low Obeyſance; next, all turning about by the left Hand, to the Sovereign's Seat; then ſtill turning from the right, to the left Hand, they aſcend the *Haut Pas's*, even to the Rails ſet before the *Altar*; and forthwith divide themſelves, flanking on each ſide, the *Juniors* neareſt the Rails.

This done, the Prebends enter in a Body alſo, and having made the like Obeyſances in the middle of the *Choir*, divide themſelves, and take their Seats; which, by King *Henry* VIII's *Statutes*, are appointed in the lower range of Seats, between, but not in, the Stalls of the *Knights-Companions*. While the Prebends are entering their Seats, the Purſuivants, Heralds, and Provincial Kings of Arms, in a Body, likewiſe enter the *Choir*; and

and after due Reverence, paſs up to the *Altar*, and join the Alms-Knights; though anciently ſome difference was in this Ceremony.

Afterwards, the two *Junior Knights-Companions* enter, paſſing on till they come near their own Stalls, and there make their Reverences, and then divide, and take their ſtands directly before their Stalls; and ſo of the reſt of the *Knights-Companions*.

Next to the *Knights-Companions*, the *Black-Rod*, *Garter*, and *Regiſter*, enter in a Breaſt, who, proceeding to the middle of the *Choir*, make their Obeyſances, and then paſs to their Form, placed on the South-ſide of the *Choir*, before the Sovereign's Stall, and ſtand before it. After them, the Chancellor and Prelate in the like manner, ſtand before their Form, placed near the Sovereign's Seat: And for theſe Forms, whereon the Officers of the *Order* ſit in the Chappel, there is a ſpecial Decree for the allowance of them, entered at the end of the Conſtitutions of their Offices.

Laſt of all the Sovereign enters, (having the Sword born before him, but his Band of Penſioners ſtay at the *Choir* Door, to keep off the Crowd,) who, coming to the Steps which aſcend the Royal Seat, makes a Reverence toward the Altar, and then takes Place therein, before he makes a ſecond Reverence.

When the Lieutenant, in the Sovereign's abſence, proceeds to the firſt *Veſpers*; as ſoon as he enters the *Choir*, and comes near the Sovereign's Stall, he ſtands and makes a little pauſe there; then doing his Reverences, after he has again ſtood a while, before he aſcends his own; where being arrived, he makes the double Reverence a ſecond time, and then ſits down.

And now to placing the *Knights-Companions* in their Stalls: *Garter*, as ſoon as the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, is placed, makes again the uſual Reverence in the middle of the *Choir*; then turns to the *Senior* Knights, and doth his Reverence to each of them; whereupon, at one Inſtant, they make their double Reverences below, where they ſtood, and ſtrait aſcend at the firſt, or weſtern Entrance, that goes to the ſide Stalls; where being arrived, they make again their double Reverences, and then ſeat themſelves. But when the Sovereign's Lieutenant is preſent, each Knight adds a third Reverence to him, both when

when they aſcend to, and deſcend from, their Stalls; and ſo likewiſe do all Perſons, who paſs in the Proceeding, add to their double Reverences ſo often as there is occaſion to make it, after ſuch time as the Lieutenant is entered his Stall; and ſo long as he continues therein, both on the Eve, the Feaſt Day, and the Morrow after.

The *Knights-Companions* being all ſeated, the Prelate and Chancellor paſs into the middle of the *Choir*, and having made double Reverences, return to their Forms, and ſit down. And after them, in the ſame manner, the *Regiſter*, *Garter*, and *Black-Rod*, proceed.

As to the Sovereign's other Attendants, the Nobleman who carries the Sword retires before the Sovereign's Stall, a little on the right Hand; and the Lord Chamberlain of the Houſhold, if not a Knight of the *Garter*, and the Vice Chamberlain, on the left, till the Sovereign give them leave to ſit down. The Clerk of the Cloſet ſtands at the Sovereign's right Hand, but the young Noblemen, that carry up the Sovereign, and the Gentleman of the Robes, ſometimes repoſe themſelves on the Steps going to the Sovereign's Stall.

This being done, preparation for *Veſpers* begin; in reference to which, the Prelate aſcends the *Altar*, it being the Duty of his Office, which if he omits, he is fined twenty Marks, to the uſe of the College, unleſs he give ſufficient reaſon for his abſence; in which Caſe, or on the vacancy of the See of *Wincheſter*, the Sovereign hath ſometimes appointed another Biſhop to Officiate for him. The Proceeding to the *Altar*, on this occaſion, is as follows.

Firſt, The Serjeant of the Veſtry makes a double Reverence, then comes before the Prelate, and makes a ſingle one to him; who thereon ariſes from his Seat, and the Serjeant proceeds before him into the middle of the *Choir*, where the Prelate makes a double Reverence; and paſſing forward after the Serjeant, and having aſcended the uppermoſt *Haut-pas* before the *Altar*, he makes one ſingle Reverence toward the ſame, and ſo goes to the North ſide of it.

After which, the two *Provincial Kings*, *Heralds*, and *Purſuivants*, leaving their fore-mentioned Stations, join together till they come near the Forms of the *Regiſter*, *Garter*, and *Black-Rod*; where, making their double Reverences,

verences, they divide again on each ſide, and there ſtand.

Laſtly, The Alms-Knights come down into the *Choir* in a Body, and there make their joint double Reverences, and then take their Chairs; all which being finiſhed, Divine Service is begun by the Prelate.

The like Solemnity is obſerved at any other Place, as well as at *Windſor*; where, becauſe the Alms-Knights are abſent, the Purſuivants at Arms aſcend nearer the *High-Altar* than when they are at *Windſor*; but this occaſions little Variation.

When the *Veſpers* are ended, the Prelate goes to the middle of the *Altar*, and with great Reverence makes an Obeyſance; and thence, with the Serjeant before him, deſcends to the middle of the *Choir*, where he makes his double Reverences, and ſo returns to his Seat; whereupon all make ready to paſs out of the *Choir*, which is performed in much the ſame manner, and with the ſame State, as they proceeded thither; and the Servants and Attendants of the *Knights-Companions* are marſhalled in the ſame Order as they were at the beginning of the Proceeding, that the whole Proceſſion may again paſs through them.

The Alms-Knights having entered the Guard Chamber, ſpread themſelves on each ſide thereof; the Prebends paſs through them, and fall off on either ſide the Room to the Preſence Chamber Door.

Then the *Purſuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings*, proceeding through the Lane made by the Alms-Knights and Prebends, enter the Preſence Chamber, and fall off on either ſide toward the Stall, the King's ſtanding uppermoſt.

Then enter the *Knights-Companions*, and place themſelves on each ſide of the State, in ſuch Order as they ſat in their Stalls, the eldeſt neareſt the State; but thoſe whoſe Companions are abſent, ſtand alone; after whom follow the Officers of the *Order*, diſpoſing themſelves conveniently near the State.

Laſtly, The Sovereign paſſes to the Step before the State, where, being arrived, he turns toward the *Knights-Companions*, who make their Reverences jointly to him, and he thereon puts off his Cap, and re-ſalutes them; which

which done, the Sovereign and they withdraw into the Privy Chamber till Supper time.

But in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, when the Feaſt of St. *George* was held at *White-Hall*, or *Greenwich*, and the Sovereign, as was uſual with her, proceeded no farther on the Eve to *Veſpers*, than to the great Cloſet, the ordinary way, and thence ſent her Lieutenant into the *Choir*. Then, in ſuch Caſe, when *Veſpers* were ended, the Lieutenant returned from the *Choir*, through the great Hall, and ſo back to the ſaid Cloſet, and ſtood at the Door thereof, attending the Sovereign's coming forth; from whence they all proceeded before her into the Preſence-Chamber, and there the Ceremony, for that time, ended.

But in the Reign of King *James* I. when the Supper on the Eve, as alſo the following Meals, were prepared in the Banquetting-Houſe, the Sovereign's Lieutenant frequently returned from the Cloſet, by the Lobby, to the ſaid Banquetting-Houſe, inſtead of going to the Preſence; and paſſing up the State, gave an End to the Ceremony till Supper time: And ſo we find it obſerved in the 7, 8, 9, 10, 12, 13, 14, and 16 of that King.

When the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* are retired, they are not to put off any part of their Robes till Supper is over, for that is prohibited by the *Statutes*, not only to thoſe who do not Sup, as well as thoſe who do. And hereon, 19 *Car.* II. the Sovereign having a mind to take the Air, went into *Hide-Park*, after he had taken leave of the *Knights-Companions*, the Dukes of *York* and *Monmouth*, and the Earl of *Oxford* being with him, but all in full Robes, and ſo returned to Supper.

The Supper on the Eve.

§ 7. When the Sovereign is pleaſed to Sup publickly, on the Eve of the Feaſt at *Windſor*, the Supper has been always prepared in St. *George*'s *Hall*. The uſual Place at *White-Hall*, was heretofore in the Preſence Chamber; of later times, the Banquetting-Houſe; and at *Greenwich*, either the Preſence, or the Council Chamber; where the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, were always preſent. But when the Feaſt of St. *George* was celebrated at *York*, 17 *Car.* I. the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* marched after

after the first *Vespers*, to a House prepared for that purpose, and supped there.

But if the Eve of the Feast fell out on a Fasting Day, as it did 22 *Hen.* VIII. and 11 *Jac.* I. the Supper was always omitted; and the Sovereign, with his Lieutenant, and *Knights-Companions*, were served of the Void only.

Nor does the Sovereign, when he Sups publickly, pass privately to the Place; but as soon as notice is given that the first Mess is set upon the Table, he presently enters the Presence Chamber, whence the Officers of the *Order*, and of Arms, the *Knights-Companions* in their full Robes, for so the *Statutes* expressly direct, having put themselves into their usual Order, proceed before him to St. *George's-Hall*: Where being entered, the *Pursuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings*, fall off all upon the right Hand, opposite to the *Knights-Companions* Table, the *Junior Pursuivants* standing toward the lower End of the Hall.

Then the *Knights-Companions* passing up beyond them, formerly divided themselves on either side, according to the Decree, 16 *Hen.* VIII. and made a stand, each taking Place, according to the Order of their Stalls. But at the Feast held at *White-Hall*, 19 *Car.* II. the Sovereign directed that they should stand all on the right Hand side, facing the Table.

Next, the five Officers of the *Order* follow, who ascending beyond the *Senior* Knight, retire on the right Hand: After them the Sovereign, and the Officers of Arms, all doing him Reverence as he passes by: Who passing up to the *Haut-pas*, before his own Table, turns himself to the *Knights-Companions*, and putting off his Cap, they return their Reverences jointly to him.

The Sovereign sitting down to Supper, is first served by Water by some Nobleman; then Grace is said by the Prelate; then is the *Senior* Knight conducted to his Table by two Officers of *Arms*, and so the rest in Order, to the Tables appointed them. Whereupon the Officers of the *Order*, and of Arms, retire out of the Hall to Supper.

If a Lieutenant be constituted, he proceeds to Supper in full Robes, and in the same Order as doth the Sovereign, and sits alone at the Sovereign's Table, yet on the left Hand of the Cloth of State, being served in all Points with Water, and by a *Cup-bearer*, *Carver*, and *Sewer*, as the Sovereign himself is.

When

When Supper is ended, and the Banquet taken away, the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* proceed back in the ſame Order they came to the Preſence Chamber, where the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, ſtanding on the Step before the Cloth of State, Salutes them as before; and then appoints the Hour and Place for the *Knights-Companions* to attend him the next Morning: The like, if the Supper be provided in any other Place beſides the Preſence Chamber, the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* proceed back thither, becauſe the Ceremony ought to end there, as has always been the Cuſtom. And if the Supper be prepared in the Preſence Chamber, they then take their Leave in the ſame Room, there being no occaſion to proceed farther.

If any of the *Knights-Companions* accompany the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, to his Lodgings, they then go after, not before him, in regard the State of that Night's Service ended in the Preſence Chamber; and after they have retired to their Lodging, they have Permiſſion to Unrobe.

When the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, do not Sup in St. *George's Hall* on the Eve of the Feaſt, on the following Night, the Officers of Arms have formerly had the Liberty to Eat there; and this Privilege was aſſigned them by Decree of a *Chapter* held 16 *Eliz.* appointing them *that Table, which was before that time uſed by the Chancellor, Regiſter,* and other *Officers* of the *Order:* But how they came to loſe this Privilege, is not mentioned; for now, inſtead of ſitting in the great Hall, they are neceſſitated to Eat in ſuch Rooms of the Caſtle as they can procure.

CAP.

CAP. XXI.

The Order of the Ceremonies on the Feaſt Day.

The Proceeding to the Chappel in the Morning.

§ 1. NOtwithſtanding the Celebration of the Feaſt takes up three Days, *viz.* part of the twenty ſecond, all the twenty third, and part of the twenty fourth of *April*, yet the twenty third, St. *George's Day*, is the Grand Part: The Ceremonies of which may be divided into Sacred and Civil, the firſt ſolemnized in the Chappel, the latter in St. *George's Hall*.

In Order to which, *the Knights-Companions* in full Robes repair to the Sovereign's Privy Lodgings, at the Hour appointed; as alſo the Officers of the *Order*. In the mean time the reſt of the Degrees and Perſons, which made up the Proceeding on the Eve of the Feaſt, take their ſeveral Stations then appointed them, to attend the Sovereign's coming out of the Preſence-Chamber.

When the Sovereign, having the *Knights-Companions*, and Officers of the *Order* before him, has entered the Preſence, the Sword is delivered to the Nobleman appointed to bear it; and after the uſual Salutations, the Proceeding ſets forward to the Chappel in the ſame Order as on the Eve; the *Knights-Companions* having their Trains born by ſome of their own Gentlemen.

At the Foot of the Stairs, entering the Cloiſter, or Stone Gallery, twelve Gentlemen of the Privy Chamber attend, with a rich Canopy of Cloth of Gold, who, when the Sovereign approaches, receive him under it, and bear it over his Head, till he comes to the *Choir Door* of St. *George's Chappel*; which Canopy is carried only on the Morning of the Feaſt Day, and not at any other time.

The Proceſſional way to the Chappel, is the ſame they traverſed on the Eve, if the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* proceed to the *Chapter-Houſe* firſt; for anciently

When Supper is ended, and the Banquet taken away, the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* proceed back in the ſame Order they came to the Preſence Chamber, where the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, ſtanding on the Step before the Cloth of State, Salutes them as before; and then appoints the Hour and Place for the *Knights-Companions* to attend him the next Morning: The like, if the Supper be provided in any other Place beſides the Preſence Chamber, the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* proceed back thither, becauſe the Ceremony ought to end there, as has always been the Cuſtom. And if the Supper be prepared in the Preſence Chamber, they then take their Leave in the ſame Room, there being no occaſion to proceed farther.

If any of the *Knights-Companions* accompany the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, to his Lodgings, they then go after, not before him, in regard the State of that Night's Service ended in the Preſence Chamber; and after they have retired to their Lodging, they have Permiſſion to Unrobe.

When the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, do not Sup in St. *George's Hall* on the Eve of the Feaſt, on the following Night, the Officers of Arms have formerly had the Liberty to Eat there; and this Privilege was aſſigned them by Decree of a *Chapter* held 16 *Eliz.* appointing them *that Table, which was before that time uſed by the Chancellor, Regiſter,* and other *Officers* of the *Order:* But how they came to loſe this Privilege, is not mentioned; for now, inſtead of ſitting in the great Hall, they are neceſſitated to Eat in ſuch Rooms of the Caſtle as they can procure.

CAP.

CAP. XXI.

The Order of the Ceremonies on the Feaſt Day.

The Proceeding to the Chappel in the Morning.

§ 1. NOtwithſtanding the Celebration of the Feaſt takes up three Days, *viz.* part of the twenty ſecond, all the twenty third, and part of the twenty fourth of *April*, yet the twenty third, St. *George's Day*, is the Grand Part: The Ceremonies of which may be divided into Sacred and Civil, the firſt ſolemnized in the Chappel, the latter in St. *George's Hall*.

In Order to which, *the Knights-Companions* in full Robes repair to the Sovereign's Privy Lodgings, at the Hour appointed; as alſo the Officers of the *Order*. In the mean time the reſt of the Degrees and Perſons, which made up the Proceeding on the Eve of the Feaſt, take their ſeveral Stations then appointed them, to attend the Sovereign's coming out of the Preſence-Chamber.

When the Sovereign, having the *Knights-Companions*, and Officers of the *Order* before him, has entered the Preſence, the Sword is delivered to the Nobleman appointed to bear it; and after the uſual Salutations, the Proceeding ſets forward to the Chappel in the ſame Order as on the Eve; the *Knights-Companions* having their Trains born by ſome of their own Gentlemen.

At the Foot of the Stairs, entering the Cloiſter, or Stone Gallery, twelve Gentlemen of the Privy Chamber attend, with a rich Canopy of Cloth of Gold, who, when the Sovereign approaches, receive him under it, and bear it over his Head, till he comes to the *Choir Door* of St. *George's Chappel*; which Canopy is carried only on the Morning of the Feaſt Day, and not at any other time.

The Proceſſional way to the Chappel, is the ſame they traverſed on the Eve, if the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* proceed to the *Chapter-Houſe* firſt; for anciently

it was the Cuſtom to hold a *Chapter* in the Morning of the Feaſt Day, either before Mattins, or after, before the Grand Proceſſion ſet forward. This Courſe received interruption in Queen *Elizabeth*'s time, during which, no Chapter was held in the Morning, except in the 26, 31, and 38 Years of her Reign, and then only for admitting ſome Officers of the *Order*: But the time of holding this *Chapter* was reſtored by King *Charles* I. who ſeveral times held it before the firſt Service began; as in the 5, 14, and 15, of his Reign.

But if no *Chapter* be held at this time, then, as ſoon as the Proceeding comes near the Chappel, inſtead of entering the Paſſage between the Eaſt-end of the Chappel, and King *Henry* VIII's Tomb Houſe, as it does on the Eve, by reaſon the Sovereign goes firſt to the *Chapter-Houſe*, it proceeds ſtraight on to the South Door, and thence into the *Choir*: Yet King *Charles* II. in the 15 of his Reign, appointed the whole Proceeding to paſs by the ſaid South Door, all along the South ſide of the Chappel, and then to enter at the Weſt Door, which was then, and ſince obſerved.

When the Alms-Knights are come to the Weſt Door of the *Choir*, they enter, and paſs up above the Steps of the *Altar*, in the very ſame Manner and Order as they did on the Eve, and ſo exactly of the reſt: Which being done, the Prelate begins the Morning Service, according to the Order obſerved in the Common-Prayer, only that the firſt Leſſon being made proper to the Feſtival, is taken out of the 44 Chapter of *Eccleſiaſticus*.

This Solemn Proceeding to the Chappel in the Morning of the Feaſt Day, is, and has been, moſt uſual performed on Foot; yet there are Inſtances heretofore, where the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* have proceeded on Horſe-back, for the greater Splendor and Gallantry of the *Order*: As in 16 *Edw.* IV. when ſeveral Ladies rode in the Cavalcade, richly adorned, of which Habit mention is already made. So alſo 3 *Hen.* VII. when it was augmented by the Preſence of the Queen, and the King's Mother, attended by a ſplendid Train of Ladies: And again the 22 of the ſame King, when he held the Feaſt at *Baynard's-Caſtle*, in *London*, he proceeded on Horſe back to St. *Paul's*: The like King *Henry* VIII. did at *Windſor*, on the Feaſt of St. *George*, 11 of his Reign; and King *Philip*,

Philip, 1 and 2 of *Phil.* and *Mar.* and Queen *Elizabeth*, in the 6 of her Reign, in her whole Habit of the *Order*; ſo did the Sovereign's Lieutenant at the ſame Feaſt ride to the firſt and ſecond *Veſpers*, and to the Morning Service the Day after.

It was a Cuſtom begun by Queen *Elizabeth*, and uſed when ſhe celebrated St. *George*'s *Feaſt*, either at *White-Hall*, or *Greenwich*, for the Sovereign's Lieutenant, and *Knights-Companions*, in full Robes, attended with the Officers of the *Order*, and of *Arms*, to meet in the Preſence Chamber, about nine in the Morning of the Feaſt Day, and proceed thence as they did the Evening before, through the Guard Chamber, down into the great Hall, and thence into the Chappel, where they took their Stalls, as on the Eve; after which, Morning Prayer was performed as far as the Litany, and this was called the firſt Service; which done, they all deſcended from their Stalls, in the accuſtomed Order, and proceeded back to the Preſence, and there waited the coming of the Sovereign, before whom they proceeded a ſecond time to the *Choir*, where the Litany, and Grand Proceſſion began, called the ſecond Service, at which the Sovereign was uſually Preſent; but ſeldom at the firſt Service.

The firſt Inſtance we have met with of this double Proceeding, is recorded in the *Blue-Book* of the *Order*, 3 *Eliz.* and was continued throughout her Reign; and that of King *James* I. not only when the Feaſt of St. *George* was celebrated at *White-Hall*, or *Greenwich*, but alſo at other times, when celebrated at *Windſor*; and ſo 1 *Car.* I. But from that time, the Sovereign went to the Chappel at the beginning of Morning Service, which was continued without interruption: Which way has been ever ſince duly obſerved.

But when it was known that the Sovereign did not go in the Grand Proceſſion, but his Lieutenant for him; then the Service was conſtantly gone through withal at once.

The Proceeding to the ſecond Service.

§ 2. When the Feaſt has been celebrated elſewhere than at *Windſor*, as ſoon as the Prelate was come

down from the *Altar*, on finiſhing the firſt Service, the *Knights-Companions* deſcended from their Stalls in uſual Order; and then the Lieutenant, with the Officers of the *Order*, and of *Arms*, proceeded before him to the Preſence, to conduct the Sovereign to the ſecond Service; which ſecond Proceeding was diſpoſed in the ſame manner as was that to the firſt Service in the Morning; only in the latter, becauſe the Sovereign proceeded, the Sword was alſo carried.

Of the Grand Proceſſion.

§ 3. We are now arrived at the Grand Proceſſion of this moſt Noble *Order*, which is indeed the moſt Solemn, and Magnificent Part of the whole Ceremony, and has always been celebrated in the Morning of the Feaſt Day of St. *George*; or on ſuch other Day, as the Sovereign hath appointed by Prorogation to hold the ſame. But as to the inſtant of Time when it began, it has ſometimes been uncertain; with reſpect to the conveniency of the Church Service, when it was conceived moſt proper; which was generally at the end of the ſecond Collect, and before the Litany: Nevertheleſs, in 6 *Eliz.* the Feaſt being then held at *Windſor*, it began preſently after the *Te Deum* was Sung; and the twentieth of the ſaid Queen's Reign, at *Greenwich*, after reading the ſecond Leſſon. And to come nearer our Times, the Grand Proceſſion ſet forward, 8 *Car.* I. when the firſt Service was finiſhed; and 17 *Car.* I. after the Sermon was ended: But at the Grand Feaſt, 13 *Car.* II. it was brought to its uſual time, after the laſt Collect.

As to the Proceeding, or Proceſſional way at *Windſor*, that has not been always the ſame; ſometimes it was confined within the Walls of St. *George*'s *Chappel*, but at other times enlarged through the lower Court of the Caſtle; a few Inſtances of both Caſes are remaining, but none of any ancient date.

What the Order and Manner of this Ceremony was, may be collected from what an old Relator ſays, of the Solemn Proceſſion made the 29 *May*, 5 *Hen.* VIII. *That it was ordered as of old Time accuſtomed.*

Firſt

Firſt went the Alms-Knights, two and two on either ſide the *Choir*, then the Officers of Arms, next the *Knights-Companions*; after them the Officers of the *Order*, and then the Prelate bearing the Heart of St. *George*, under a Canopy honourably aſſiſted, four Noblemen bearing each a Torch; and laſt of all the Sovereign.

And though here is no mention of any Eccleſiaſticks, that joined themſelves in the Proceeding; yet it cannot be ſuppoſed, that as part of the Divine Service was to be performed, but that ſome of the Chaplains and Prieſts were included. And we meet with one Inſtance, where the Prieſts not only went in the Grand Proceſſion, but had a Place aſſigned in it; where the Gentlemen of the Sovereign's *Chappel*, and *Choir* of *Windſor*, now go.

But it muſt be confeſſed, that the Records of the *Order* are very defective in this particular, relating to the Grand Proceſſion, and ſpeak of it only in general, or at moſt, take notice but of ſome of thoſe Degrees that attend in it; and this but of late Time neither: Among which, 23 *Eliz.* it is ſaid; *They all proceeded in Order, as the Cuſtom was*; the Sovereign following in the Rear of the Proceſſion.

As to Place and Precedency, it is in every reſpect the ſame, as in the Sovereign's Proceeding to the Chappel, on the Eve of the Grand Feaſt; only here are ſome Perſons added, which go not in that; Namely, the Gentlemen and Choiriſters of the Sovereign's Chappel at *White-Hall*; and the Petty-Canons, Vicars, and Choiriſters of *Windſor*: The whole Order is as follows.

The Morning Service having proceeded to the ſecond Leſſon, and the Prelate conducted by the Serjeant of the Veſtry from the *Altar* to his Seat;

The Alms-Knights riſe from their Seats, and paſs to the middle of the *Choir*; and after their accuſtomed Reverences, go up to the ſides of the *Altar*.

Next, in like manner, the Officers of Arms paſs up.

Hereupon *Garter* riſes from his Seat, and makes his uſual Reverences; then waving his Rod, ſummons the *Junior* Knights to deſcend.

Whilſt they and the reſt of the *Knights-Companions* are leaving their Stalls, with uſual Reverences; the Gentlemen of the Chappel, Petty-Canons, and Vicars of *Windſor*, put on Copes, and make themſelves ready to proceed.

Then the *Knights-Companions* being all come down, ſtand each under his proper Stall.

Then the *Black-Rod*, *Garter*, and *Regiſter* riſe, and ſtand before their Forms.

So do the Chancellor and Prelate.

This done, the Alms-Knights come down from the *Altar*, and paſſing into the middle of the *Choir*, make again their double Reverences, and proceed out of the *Choir*.

After them the Choiriſters paſs in a Body to the middle of the *Choir*, and having made their double Reverences, (as do all that follow,) proceed forth two and two.

So do the Vicars of *Windſor*.

Next, the four Petty-Canons come from their Seats, into the middle of the *Choir*; and there begin to Sing an Hymn.

Then follows the Serjeant of the Veſtry, bearing his gilt Rod.

After him the Gentlemen of the Chappel at *White-Hall*.

Next the Virger of *Windſor Chappel*, bearing his Silver Rod.

Then the Prebends of *Windſor*.

After whom the Officers of Arms come down from the *Altar*, and paſs on.

Then the *Knights-Companions*, the *Juniors* firſt.

Then the *Black-Rod*, *Garter*, and *Regiſter*.

The Chancellor and Prelate.

The Nobleman that bears the Sword of State.

Then the Sovereign, above in his Stall, makes a Reverence toward the *Altar*, and being deſcended, another below; then paſſes out, and enters under the Canopy, which waits for him at the *Choir Door*; the Lord Chamberlain of the Houſhold, if not a Knight of the *Order*, attending ſomewhat behind the ſide of the Canopy, on the Sovereign's right Hand; and the Vice Chamberlain at the like diſtance on his left; as in the Grand Proceſſion, 23 *Car.* II.

And laſtly, The Band of Penſioners, who attend the Guard on each ſide the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions*, with their Captain at the Head of them.

In this Order, to this Day, they proceed with great Devotion; the whole *Choir* Singing the Office appointed, which

which heretofore was the Litany; but is now generally a Thankſgiving Hymn.

The Grand Proceſſion, when it has been celebrated at *White-Hall*, or elſewhere than at *Windſor*, is for the moſt part ordered after the aforeſaid manner, as may be ſeen by the following Scheme.

Serjeant of the Veſtry, with his gilt Rod.
Choiriſters in Surplices.
Gentlemen of the Chappel in Copes.
Subdean in a Cope.
Officers of Arms.
Knights Companions.
Officers of the Order.
The Sword.
The Sovereign under a Canopy, with his Train born up.
The Penſioners as before.

But in what this Grand Proceſſion differs from that at *Windſor*, we ſhall here Note.

Firſt, Here the Serjeant of the Veſtry leads the Proceeding, and is followed by the Choiriſters.

Secondly, The Prebends and *Choir* of *Windſor*, and the Alms-Knights, are here wanting.

Thirdly, The Subdean and Dean of the Chappel are taken in, and proceed next to the Gentlemen of the Chappel, to whom the Sovereign's Almoner has ſometimes joined himſelf.

Fourthly, Whilſt the *Knights-Companions* are deſcending from their Stalls, the Gentlemen of the Chappel go into the Veſtry, to put on their Copes; but the Dean of the Chappel hath his brought into the *Choir*, which he puts on below, under his Seat.

Fifthly and Laſtly, In Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, the Ladies Attendants went with the Penſioners on either ſide the Sovereign.

To contribute more to the Pomp and State of this great Ceremony, a Canopy is born over the Sovereign's Head, by Knights and Gentlemen of Quality, while he paſſeth in Proceſſion, till he return to the *Choir Door*.

The Perſons appointed to carry the Canopy, *Anno* 11 *Hen.* VIII. were four Knights of the Body, when four other Knights bore four Wax Tapers; but ſince they are

the Gentlemen of the Privy Chamber in ordinary, who at the time of the Feaſt are in waiting, twelve of whom are appointed for this Service; the Sovereign hath alſo the long Train of his Mantle carried up by ſeveral of the young Nobility, who receive notice thereof by the Lord Chamberlain of the Houſhold.

In like manner the Lieutenants, or Deputies to the Sovereign, have had their Train carried up in the Proceedings, by Perſons of Diſtinction; and the Train of a Stranger King, perſonally preſent at *Windſor*, hath alſo been born up; and in like manner the Train of a Deputy from a Stranger King; and laſtly, the *Knights-Companions* have their Trains carried up by their own Gentlemen.

The Cloaths and Apparel of the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions*, and the great variety of rich Jewels which ſurround or adorn their Caps, or where elſe they may appear moſt conſpicuous, ſhine with great Luſtre.

The *Provincial Kings*, *Heralds*, and *Purſuivants*, habited in their rich Coats, and going together in one Body, appear alſo very conſpicuous, from the Royal Arms of the Sovereign richly Embroidered on them with fine Gold, Purples and Twiſt; the Ground of the *Provincial King's* Coats are blue Velvet, the *Heralds* blue Sattin, and the *Purſuivants* blue Damask.

The Habit in which the Canons of the College proceed, is alſo peculiar; for though, as Clergymen, they are veſted in Linen Surplices at all times of Divine Service, yet at this Solemnity they wear a Mantle over thoſe Surplices, which is a Habit appointed for them, from the Foundation of the *Order*; theſe Mantles are of *Murry Taffety*, and on the right Shoulder is an Eſcutcheon of St. *George's Arms* within a Rundlet, Embroidered with Gold and Silk, which is bought at their own Charge.

The Gentlemen of the Sovereign's Chappel, the Petty-Canons, and Vicars of *Windſor*, appear in Habits more glorious, being all (or the moſt part of them) veſted in rich Copes of Cloth of Gold, or moſt coſtly Embroideries; but the Children of the Chappel and Choiriſters, proceed habited in Surplices of white Linen; laſtly, the Habits of the Alms-Knights [a Mantle and Kirtle] are not unremarkable both for Colour and Materials, which appear ſuitable to their Age and Degree. The Mantles are of Cloth, which the *Statutes* appoint to be of a red

Colour,

Colour, with a Shield of the Arms of St. *George*, but without a Garter to ſurround them.

In this Grand Proceeding, the Habits entertain the Beholders with a very delightful Proſpect, being ſo ordered, that the Grave are placed between thoſe that are Rich and Gallant; and to add to the greater Shew of this Solemn Ceremony, the Regiſters of the *Order* make mention of divers Perſons of Rank and Quality, who put themſelves on the Duty of Attendance on their Sovereign, becauſe related to his Service, though in reference to the *Order* not ſo concerned as to be taken into the Proceeding; ſuch are divers of the Nobility, ſometimes great Ladies, many conſiderable Officers of the Houſhold, and other Courtiers, all richly habited and attired.

To complete the Pomp of this great Solemnity, we may (in the laſt Place,) fitly remember the Muſick, as a part thereof, the *Choirs* of the Sovereign's Chappel at St. *James*'s, and at *Windſor*, being united, all Singing the ſacred Hymn together, while the Grand Proceſſion devoutly paſſeth; and on their return to the *Choir Door*, the Alms-Knights firſt advance into it, and after double Reverences aſcend above the *Haut Pas*'s to the *Altar*.

Next the Choiriſters, and in like manner the Vicars, Petty-Canons of *Windſor*, Gentlemen of the Chappel, and Prebends, go to their Seats.

Then the Officers of Arms paſs up, and join to the Alms-Knights. After this the *Knights-Companions* enter, and ſtand before their Stalls.

The like doth the *Black-Rod*, *Garter*, and *Regiſter*.

As alſo the *Chancellor* and *Prelate*.

Then doth the Sovereign take his Royal Stall.

The *Knights-Companions* aſcend their Stalls.

The Officers of the *Order* ſit down on their Forms, in the ſame Manner and Order, and with like Reverences, as at their Entrance into the *Choir*, on the Eve of the Feaſt.

Then the Prelate, with two Prebends, (appointed to read the Epiſtle and Goſpel,) are conducted, the one by the Serjeants of the Veſtry, the other by the Virger, up to the *Altar*, (which they approach with uſual Reverences,) the Prelate paſſing to the North-ſide, and the Prebends to the South, to finiſh the remaining part of Divine Service.

Where-

Whereupon the Officers of Arms deſcend into the *Choir*; And

The Alms-Knights go down to their Seats, which, while they are ſo doing, the two Prebends put on their Copes at the South-ſide of the *Altar*. This done, the Prelate begins the ſecond Service, which hath been celebrated, ſince the time of the Reformation, according to the Book of *Common-Prayer*, and is the ſame commonly uſed on any other Feaſt Day; excepting a peculiar Epiſtle and Goſpel; the firſt being the thirty third Chapter of *Deuteronomy*, and the latter the fifth Chapter of St. *John*, beginning at the twenty fourth Verſe, and ending at the thirtieth; which being read, the Creed is Sung.

We may here Note, that before the Reformation, it belonged to the Abbot of *Tower-Hill* to read the Goſpel, and to the Prior of *Medemenham* in *Norfolk*, to read the Epiſtle.

The Offering of Gold and Silver.

§ 4. This Ceremony, whether it be performed in the Sovereign's Chappel at *Windſor*, or in any other Church or Chappel, is one and the ſame, (except the Sovereign's Offering of Gold and Silver, inſtead of the *Bezant*,) which is peculiar to *Windſor*.

The accuſtomed time of Offering on the Feaſt Day, is mentioned *Anno* 22 *Hen.* VIII. to be after the Sovereign's return to his Stall from the Grand Proceſſion, in the time of High Maſs, and at this Day begins immediately after this firſt Sentence of the Offertory is pronounced by the Prelate.

Let your Light ſo ſhine before men, &c.

This ſaid, the Organ begins to Play, and forthwith a Groom and Page of the removing Wardrobe, (with Reverence firſt made,) unrol a long Carpet, and ſpread it before the *Altar*; which being done, the *Alms-Knights* firſt, next the *Purſuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings*, aſcend in uſual Order, and flank the Carpet on both ſides. Then *Garter* ſteps from his Seat, and after double Reverences, and the uſual manner of waving his Rod, the *Knights-Companions* deſcend in their accuſtom'd Order, and ſtand before their Stalls.

After

After this, *Black-Rod* goes from his Seat to the *Altar*, towards which, making a ſingle Reverence, he turns his Back, and immediately the Groom of there moving Wardrobe delivereth him a little Carpet, anciently of Silk, now of Cloth of Gold; and the ſaid Groom holds on his Arms a Cuſhion of Cloth of Gold, for the Sovereign to Kneel upon, at the time of his Offering, which the *Black-Rod* forthwith lays on the upper *Haut Pas* before the *Altar*, and each of them, as well in delivering, as receiving the Cuſhion, kiſs it.

After this, the Prelate of the *Order* takes a gilt Baſon to receive the Sovereign's Offering, and ſtands before the middle of the *Altar*, with one of the Prebends to aſſiſt him, at which time the Sovereign ariſing makes his Reverence towards the *Altar*, and then deſcending, makes a little Reverence below, and aſcends towards the *Altar* with his Attendants, and being come into the middle of the *Choir*, he makes another Reverence, and at the firſt *Haut Pas* his laſt.

He that bears the Sovereign's Offering, is either the *Senior* Knight, the Prince, or the greateſt Eſtate among the *Knights-Companions* then preſent, and no other Perſon, (of what Degree ſoever) if he be not of this Noble Fraternity, performs this Service.

The Sovereign being come to the upper *Haut Pas* kneels, at which Inſtant *Black-Rod* on his Knee delivers (with Aſſay) the Sovereign's Offering to the *Senior* Knight, or other Perſon nominated, and he kneeling preſents it to the Sovereign, which he immediately Offers into the Baſon held by the Prelate, and then ariſeth, and is conducted and attended, as when he came up to Offer; at the Entrance into his Stall, he turns and makes a Reverence, and his Attendants alſo bow towards the *Altar*; and being attended into his Stall, doth the like again, and then repoſeth himſelf in his Seat.

An Entry is made in the *Red-Book*, *Anno* 6 *Car.* I. *That whereas in other Places* (*beſides* Windſor) *the Sovereign is wont to Offer a certain Gold Piece*, (*vulgarly called a Bezant*) *to be redeemed afterwards at a certain Price*; *the Uſher of the* Black-Rod *having been admoniſhed, that in theſe Services there is no Redemption to be made, ſhould never preſent the Bezant at* Windſor *to the Sovereign, but Gold and Silver of Engliſh Money.*

When

When the Sovereign is abſent, and the Lieutenant Offers for him, he performs the Ceremony as follows.

Firſt, (After the Preparations made for the Offering, as aforeſaid,) he deſcends from his Stall with the uſual Reverences, and goes to the Steps aſcending the Sovereign's Stall, and there ſtands a while; then making his double Obeyſance, he proceeds towards the *Altar* (the Officers of the *Order* going before him,) with one other Reverence in the middle of the *Choir*, and another at the firſt *Haut Pas* of the *Altar*; the Carpet and Cuſhion is ſpread and laid for him, as is for the Sovereign, and the Offering alſo given in the ſame way, and the Lieutenant kneeling puts it in the Baſon, and returns to the Sovereign's Stall in the ſame Order, *&c.* he came; where ſtanding a while again before it, he makes a Reverence towards it, and then goes up into his own Stall, where (if it fall out that the Lieutenant is not the *Senior* Knight,) he ſtays to receive the Reverences of all the *Knights-Companions* his *Seniors*, as they go up to Offer, and when his own turn comes to Offer, he deſcends with a double Reverence, and proceeds up with his Fellow, (if preſent) and Offers for himſelf in his own Place, but his Train is then let down, the Carpet, *&c.* taken away, and only two Officers of Arms (but none of the *Order*) proceeds before him, and when he has Offer'd, he returns to his Stall.

But it ſeems, 7 *Jac.* I. that *Garter* alone, on the Feaſt Day, brought up the Prince, then the Sovereign's Lieutenant, when he came to Offer for himſelf, which Service ought to have been performed by *Clarenceux* and *Norroy*, which was an overſight in *Garter*; as likewiſe his bringing down at the ſame, the *Knights-Companions* out of their Stalls to Offer, before the Epiſtle and Goſpel were Read, contrary to the uſage of former times; by which they were kept a tedious time waiting below in the *Choir*, before the Offering began. But 11 *Jac.* I. the Prince was brought up by *Clarenceux* and *Norroy*, when he came to Offer, and not by *Garter*. When the Lieutenant hath Offered for himſelf, he returns to the lower end of the Stalls, and paſſes to his own, where having paid the uſual Reverences, he enters it, and is ready to receive the Reverences of all the other *Knights-Companions*.

As ſoon as the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, is returned to his Stall, the two Provincial Kings paſs down into the

the middle of the *Choir*, where making Reverences jointly to the *Altar*, and next to the Sovereign, *Clarenceux* turns himſelf to the *Senior* Knight, and makes him a third Reverence, while *Norroy* at the ſame Inſtant does the ſame to the next *Junior* Knight, and ſo both, as an intimation of their going up to Offer; then each King retires a little backward toward the Stalls: In the mean time, the two *Senior* Knights draw near together, and making double Reverences, *Clarenceux* and *Norroy* ſtep forth, and paſs up before them, till they arrive near the Prelate; (or if the *Senior* Knight be without his Oppoſite, then he is brought up ſingle,) then making their Reverences, firſt towards the *Altar*, next to the Knights, *Clarenceux* retires to the right ſide, and *Norroy* to the left, waiting for the return of the Knights, who are kneeling on the uppermoſt *Haut Pas* of the *Altar*, making their Offering. Which humble Ceremony of kneeling, not being heretofore uſed, was fixed by a Decree of 4 *Car.* I.

The *Knights-Companions* Offerings are both of Silver and Gold, which is receiv'd by two of the Prebends, or by one Prebend and one Chantor, anciently by one Chantor only, when the Offering is at *Windſor*; but by the Dean of the Chappel, when at *White-Hall*. The Offering being made, the *Knights-Companions* riſe, and forthwith divide themſelves, *Clarenceux* conducting the *Senior* Knight to the lower end of the Stalls on the Sovereign's ſide; and *Norroy* the next *Junior* Knight, to the lower end of the Stalls on the Prince's ſide; and at parting make their Reverences, and return to their Stations before the *Altar*. The Knights, at their Entrance into the Stalls, make their double Reverences together, and then paſs on to their own; where making the like Reverences, they take their Seats.

But if any Stranger King be preſent at the Offering, he does not retire to his Seat, by the lower end of the Stalls, but along the *Choir*, as does the Sovereign, the ſame way he proceeded up: So did the King of *Denmark*, 4 *Jac.* I.

The Ceremonies of the two *Senior* Knights Offering being finiſhed, the two *Senior Heralds* obſerving their laſt Reverences, paſs down into the *Choir*, in the ſame manner as did *Clarenceux* and *Norroy*, to bring up the next two *Senior* Knights to Offer, who uſe all the ſame Ceremonies,

nies, and are conducted back in like manner to the *Altar*; and ſo of the other, brought up by the two next *Senior Heralds*; *Clarenceaux* and *Norroy* beginning again, if there are more Knights than the *Heralds* in one Courſe ſupply; and after them the *Heralds* again, till the whole is ended: And here it may be noted, that where any Knight goeth ſingle to Offer, he hath nevertheleſs two *Heralds* to attend him.

Touching the Offerings themſelves, made in the Chappel of *Windſor*, they belong of right to the Dean and Prebends, being conferr'd on them by the *Statutes* of the College: And ordained alſo, that the *Chantor* ſhould ſee them receiv'd, and faithfully kept; and at the end of every Month, or Weekly, if the College required it, give an Account of what was receiv'd: All which was confirmed by King *Edward* III. the Biſhop, Dean, and Chapter of *Salisbury*, to whoſe Juriſdiction the College of *Windſor* belongs; and alſo by the Biſhop of *Wincheſter*, Prelate of the *Garter*, 1352. But Dr. *Montague*, Biſhop of *Wincheſter*, at the Feaſt at *Windſor*, 21 *Jac.* I. challenged a right to the Offerings; and Biſhop *Andrews* did *de Facto* both receive, and keep the Offerings, whenever he officiated at *Windſor*. But on complaint of the Dean and Prebends of *Windſor*, this matter was referred to the Chapter; yet we do not find that any final or poſitive Determination was ever made to the time of the Reſtauration, from which time the right of the Dean and Canons has never been diſputed, and the *Statutes* have duly taken Place.

What has uſually been offered, either in Gold or Silver, we ſhall ſee by the Account given in by the Biſhop of *Wincheſter*, 4 *Car.* I. at St. *George's Feaſt* at *Windſor*, *September* 24.

The whole Offering of the eight Knights, is four Pounds fifteen Shillings, *viz.* in Gold ten Shillings each, and in Silver two; excepting the Lord Steward, whoſe Offering in Silver was only one Shilling; beſides the Sovereign's *Bezant* redeemable.

The Offerings on the twenty fifth Day.

His Majeſty's Offering in Gold one Pound, and in Silver ten Shillings.

The eight *Knights-Companions* the ſame as the Day before; the whole, beſides the King's *Bezant*, eleven Pounds.

When

When all the Knights have offered, and are returned to their Stalls, the Chancellor of the *Order* makes his Reverences; and after him, the *Regiſter*, *Garter*, and *Black-Rod*, theirs together, and take their Seats: Next, the Carpet being rolled up by the Groom and Page of the removing Wardrobe, the *Provincial Kings*, *Heralds*, and *Purſuivants*, and laſt of all the Alms-Knights, make their Reverences, and paſs into the *Choir*, where they remain till the Prelate has finiſhed the ſecond Service; who, conducted by the Serjeant of the Veſtry, comes down from the *Altar* with his accuſtomed Reverences to his Seat. After whom, the two Prebends are brought down by the Virger, who making their uſual Reverences take their Seats.

The Return to the Preſence.

§ 6. Immediately after, all prepare to paſs out of the *Choir*, and to proceed back to the Preſence Chamber, which is done in every particular as it is in the return of the Sovereign from the firſt *Veſpers*.

The Proceeding paſſes on through the South-Door of the Chappel, and here the Trumpets are taken in, and placed before the Alms-Knights, and ſound all the way to the Guard Chamber; at which time the Drums and Fifes begin to beat and play. Thence the Proceeding paſſes into the Preſence Chamber, whither it ought to go, before the Sovereign paſs into the great Hall to Dinner; and here the *Knights-Companions* take their uſual Stands; and after the Sovereign's Salutation, and their Reverences, the Sovereign retires into the Privy Chamber, and the Knights likewiſe retire till Dinner is ready.

Of the Dinner on the Feaſt Day.

§ 7. As ſoon as the Sovereign hath notice given him, that the firſt Meſs is ſet on the Table, the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* come out of the Privy Lodgings into the Preſence Chamber, attended by the Officers of the *Order*, and ſeat themſelves in the ſame manner, as at the Supper on the Eve of the Feaſt: The Muſick ſounding whilſt

whilſt the ſaid Meſs is carrying up; which is in the following Order.

Four Serjeants at Arms,	two and two.
The Comptroller.	The Treaſurer.
The Sewer.	
The Meſſes carried up by the Penſioners.	
Maſter of the Houſhold.	Cofferer.
A Clerk Comptroller.	A Clerk Comptroller.
Second Clerk of the Kitchin.	Chief Clerk of the Kitchin.

The Sovereign hath moſt frequently ſat alone, though ſometimes heretofore he hath been pleaſed to admit ſome of the *Knights-Companions* to ſit at the Table with him; but this Honour has not been offered to any of them ſince the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*. As ſoon as the Sovereign is placed, the *Knights-Companions* put on their Caps, and remaining covered, retire againſt the Tables prepared for them; where Water is brought them by a Gentleman of Quality; and having waſhed, they all ſit down.

The Order of paſſing to their Seats at the Table, 19 *Car.* II. and ſo appointed to be obſerved for the future, was after the following manner. Firſt, The Duke of *York* entered the Rails at the upper end of the Table, and paſſed down the hither ſide, to the lower end, and thence to the bench-ſide to his Place: In like manner followed all the other Knights, according to the Seniority of their Stalls, as it is ordained they ſhall ſit, and not according to their Eſtates or Dignities, (except the Sons of Stranger Kings, Princes, and Dukes,) and all on the right Hand, or farther ſide of their Table, not one againſt another, but two and two at a Table to a Meſs, and thoſe whoſe Oppoſites are wanting to ſit alone, and have a whole Meſs. Their Meat being uſually brought up by the Yeomen of the Guard; and are attended by ſome of the Gentlemen Penſioners, and others of the Sovereign's Servants, two to each Table.

It appears that anciently the Officers of the *Order* had a Table allowed them in the great Hall, and ſat covered

in

in the Sovereign's Preſence ; but on the Eve of the Feaſt, 10 *Car.* 1. it was ordered in *Chapter*, That they ſhould be at their Choice, to keep the Feaſt privately by themſelves, or ſit uncovered where the Sovereign dined. Whereupon, from that time, they forbore ſitting in the Hall, or where elſe the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* ſat. It likewiſe appears, that the Officers of Arms did anciently ſit in St. *George*'s *Hall*, at a Table joined to that, at which the Officers of the *Order* ſat.

Before the Entrance of the Sovereign's ſecond Courſe, he ſtands up and drinks to the *Knights-Companions*, (and ſo it is remembred to be done by *Phil.* and *Mar.*) they ſtanding all the while uncovered, till they have all pledged him : Which done, the Officers of Arms make themſelves ready, at the lower end of the Hall, to proceed up in the following *Order*.

Garter.
Clarenceux and Norroy.
Heralds two and two.
Purſuivants two and two.

And ſo altogether make their Reverence to the Sovereign, and proceed near the ſide of the Knights Table, till they come to the middle of the Hall, where, after another Reverence made, they go ſtill forward ; and when *Garter* has paſſed about two Yards beyond the Knights Table, and come near the *Haut Pas* aſcending the Sovereign's State, they make the like Reverence again jointly. Then *Garter* with a loud and audible Voice cries Largeſs thrice, though anciently but twice.

Upon *Garter's* beginning to cry Largeſs, all the *Knights-Companions*, unleſs Kings and great Princes, if any be preſent, ſtand up uncovered, till he has made an end ; (which Cuſtom, it ſeems, 7 *Car.* I. had been diſcontinued for ſome time.) Then *Garter* proceeds, and Proclaims the Sovereign's Stiles and Titles of Honour, firſt in *Latin*, after in *French*, and laſtly in *Engliſh* ; he and the Officers of Arms making a Reverence between ; and at the end join altogether in crying Largeſs thrice, and then all make Reverence together.

Hereupon, ſometimes the Treaſurer of the Houſhold puts the Sovereign's Largeſs, which is ten Pounds in Gold,

into *Garter*'s Hat ; and this is afterwards divided among the Officers of Arms, according to Cuſtom. But *Anno* 23 *Car.* II. the *Black-Rod* put the Largeſs into *Garter*'s Hat. This being finiſhed, all the Officers of Arms retire about three Yards backward, keeping their Faces towards the Sovereign, and there make a Reverence, and ſo a ſecond, and thence retire out of the Hall to Dinner.

This Ceremony ended, the Sovereign's ſecond Courſe is brought up ; firſt the Serjeants at Arms, next the Treaſurer and Comptroller of the Houſhold, next the Sewer, then the Gentlemen-Penſioners, bearing the Meſſes ; then the Cofferer and Maſter of the Houſhold, the two Clerks of the Green-Cloth, the two Clerks Comptrollers, and laſtly the two Clerks of the Kitchin, habited in their Gowns, and their Caps in their Hands. And after the Sovereign's Table is compleatly furniſhed, the ſecond Courſe is ſerved up to the Knights Table by the Yeomen of the Guard, in ſuch Order as was the firſt.

But where any *Knight-Companion* happens to be inſtalled at this Grand Feaſt, and is preſent at Dinner, then *Garter*, and the Officers of Arms, proceed in Order, (after they have proclaimed the Sovereign's Stile,) from the lower end of the Hall, till they come before the new inſtalled Knight's Meſs, and there *Garter* cries Largeſs once, and Proclaims his Stile in *Engliſh* only ; and then retires to Dinner.

In the laſt Place comes in the Banquet, brought to the Sovereign's Table by the Penſioners, in the ſame Order as the Meſſes ; (only in Place of the Clerk of the Kitchin, the Chief Clerk of the Spicery waits,) and the Banquet for the *Knights-Companions*, by the Yeomen of the Guard.

Dinner being ended, the *Knights-Companions* riſe firſt, and having waſhed, place themſelves a little below the State, in their uſual Order, and make their Reverences to the Sovereign. After which, the Sovereign hears Grace ſaid by the Prelate, then Water is brought in the uſual way, and the Sovereign waſhes: Which done, the Knights making again due Reverence to the Sovereign, he puts off his Cap, and ſalutes them, and then proceeds as uſually to the Preſence Chamber, with the Knights and Officers of the *Order* before him, *&c.*

In

In like manner does the Sovereign's Lieutenant proceed from the Preſence to the Hall, or ſuch other Room where the Dinner is prepared, only his Place at the Table is a little on the left Hand the Cloth of State, or at the end of the Table: And after Dinner, he returns to the Preſence in the ſame Order as the Sovereign does.

The Ceremonies belonging to the ſecond Veſpers.

§ 8. The uſual time for Proceeding to the *Chapter-Houſe*, hath uſually been about four a Clock in the Afternoon, but ſometimes not before five, by reaſon of the length of the Dinner. The Proceeding is as at other times; and when the Sovereign and Knights have made a Cavalcade of it on the Eve, or on the Feaſt Day, the ſame has been obſerved at the Proceeding to the ſecond *Veſpers*.

It has been cuſtomary to hold a *Chapter* before the ſecond *Veſpers*, for the regulation of the Affairs of the *Order*. When the ſecond *Veſpers* are ended, the Proceeding paſſes out of the *Choir* in the very ſame Order as at the firſt *Veſpers*; but *Anno* 15 *Car.* I. it happening to be late ere the ſecond *Veſpers* ended, the Sovereign did not go to the Preſence Chamber, but proceeded directly to the great Hall to Supper by Torch Light.

Of the Supper on the Evening of the Feaſt Day.

§ 9. It has not been frequently known, that the Sovereign hath ſupped publickly in St. *George's Hall* on the Feaſt Day; but when it happens, as 14 *Car.* I. the Proceeding thither, and return, are in all reſpects performed as at the Supper on the Eve. And if the Sovereign's Lieutenant hath on this Night ſupped publickly, then it was in the Preſence Chamber, where he ſat alone at the Sovereign's Table, as at other times.

CAP. XXII.

The Ceremonies obſerved on the laſt Day of the Feaſt.

Of the Proceeding to the Choir.

§ 1. THE manner of Proceeding to the *Chapter-Houſe* is performed in the ſame manner as it was on the Eve of the Feaſt; and differs only in this Point; that then the Sovereign and Knights are obliged by the *Statutes* to proceed in full Robes; here, by the Indulgence of King *Henry* VIII's *Statutes*, all are diſpenſed with, except the upper Robe or Mantle: And as then the Image of St. *George* was worn Pendant at the Coller of the *Order*, now a blue Ribbond ſufficeth; and inſtead of a Cap and Feather, only their ordinary Hats.

It was the ancient Cuſtom to Celebrate a *Chapter* in the Morning of the laſt Day of the Feaſt, before the Sovereign proceeded to the Chappel, chiefly to make Election of Knights, where any Stall is void; which has ſometimes been held, when the Sovereign did not go to the Chappel, in the Privy Chamber, and then the Lieutenant, waving the *Chapter-Houſe*, proceeds ſtraight on to the Chappel, and enters at the South Door.

Of the elect Knights proceeding into the Choir.

§ 2. Where an Election has been made of a Perſon then preſent at Court, he is called into the *Chapter-Houſe* by *Garter*, according to the uſual manner; and having been inveſted with the *George* and *Garter*, he uſually paſſed in the Proceeding to the Chappel, whether it were from the *Chapter-Houſe*, or Preſence Chamber; and in this ordinary Apparel, always bare-headed; the Place allowed him in the Proceeding being between the *Knights-Companions* and the Officers of Arms: But if two Knights

Knights have been elected, they then proceed together, before the *Knights-Companions*. At his Entrance into the *Choir*, the elect Knight is placed by *Garter*, next before the loweſt Stall; or if there be two elected, and both proceed to the Chappel, they are placed in the two loweſt Stalls; where they are to ſtand all Service time, unleſs upon Licence to ſit, as they have ſometimes obtained.

Of the Ceremonies performed at Divine Service.

§ 3. In this Morning Service, before the Reformation of our Church, the Maſs of *Requiem* was ſolemnly Sung, for the Souls of the *Knights-Companions*, and all faithful Souls departed, which was provided for by the *Statutes*. As likewiſe, that all the Knights ſhould be preſent thereat, unleſs upon Licenſe obtained, or ſpecial Caſe to the contrary. At this Celebration, was the deceaſed Knights Atchievements alſo offered with ſolemn Ceremony; of which we ſhall ſpeak preſently.

Another Ceremony belonging to the Service of this Morning, is the Offering of Gold and Silver, which (when the firſt Sentence of the Offertory has been pronounced,) is again performed by the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions*; the Ceremonies being the ſame, in all particulars, as are obſerved at the like Offering on the Feaſt Day.

Divine Service being ended, the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* frequently proceed to the *Chapter-Houſe*, and there put off their Mantles, and therewith the Ceremonies of this Grand Feaſt determine.

CAP. XXIII.

The Obſervation of the Grand Feaſt by abſent Knights.

Abſent Knights enjoined to obſerve the Grand Feaſt.

§ 1. HAving ſhewn with what Magnificence and Ceremony the Feaſt of St. *George* has been, and ought to be obſerved; as alſo how ſtrictly the *Statutes* oblige the *Knights-Companions* to appear annually thereat; and what ſevere Penalties they are liable to, if abſent, except on reaſonable Cauſe of Abſence. Yet leſt the Honour might receive diminution, from too ſmall an Appearance at its publick Solemnities; it was farther at the Inſtitution of the *Order* Decreed: *That none of them ſhould depart the Kingdom, without firſt acquainting the Sovereign, and obtaining his ſpecial Leave and Licenſe*; nevertheleſs the Sovereign granted them Licenſe to go beyond Sea, before the reſt of his Subjects, if they were diſpos'd to undertake any Military Expedition, from whence any Glory of Knighthood might be hop'd for.

It was then by the eleventh Article alſo ordained; (on whatſoever occaſion the Abſence might be,) *That whereſoever any of the* Knights-Companions *reſided, during the ſaid Feaſt, they ſhould wear their Mantles of the* Order, *from the Hour of the firſt* Veſpers *on the Eve of St.* George, *till the ſecond* Veſpers *on the Feaſt Day were finiſhed; as they ſhould have done, had they been preſent in Perſon, with the Sovereign or his Deputy, during the whole Celebration of the Feaſt; (in caſe they were not deprived of their Liberty,) the Prorogation of the Feaſt notwithſtanding.*

King *Henry* VIII. obſerving the Cuſtom of theſe Celebrations began to be neglected, in the eleventh year of his Reign, enlarged the Law in this particular, explaining the ſaid eleventh Article. He declar'd and enjoin'd the wearing of the whole Habit on the Eve of St. *George*, if the *Knight-Companion* were not under reſtraint. Then he enume-

enumerated the times for wearing it; to wit, on the Eve, at all times of Divine Service, Dinner and Supper; unleſs in caſe of War, Sickneſs, or other juſt Impediment; when it was ſufficient, if the abſent Knight did wear the *Garter* and *George*, either in a Gold Chain, or Silk Ribbond.

And when the ſame Sovereign, about three Years after, made a general Reformation of the *Statutes*, he enjoin'd the abſent *Knights-Companions* (unleſs under reſtraint,) to prepare a Capital Stall in the Church or Chappel where he deſign'd to hear Service, to the Honour of the Sovereign; in which ſhould be ſet up the Arms of the *Order* within a *Garter*; and alſo to erect another Stall, as far in diſtance (according to the proportion of the ſaid Church or Chappel,) from the Stall of the Sovereign, as is the abſent Knights Stall in the Caſtle of *Windſor*, and therein place his own Arms: And ſhould wear the whole Habit of the *Order*, and hear Divine Service, ſuch as the Church ordained for the ſaid time; as well on the Eve and Morning, as on the Afternoon on the Feaſt Day. He is likewiſe to do Reverence towards the *Altar*, in the Honour of God, and after towards the Stall erected for the Sovereign, at his coming in and going out of the ſaid Church or Chappel, and as often as he ſhould paſs before the ſaid Stall. But Emperors, Kings, Princes, or Electors, are excepted, who may place their Seats and Stalls as they think fitting.

This Decree is ſtill in full force, and we ſhall only further obſerve, that it has been uſual for the abſent Knight to perform the ſame Ceremonies as near as may be to what is obſerved at *Windſor*, and to be attended with a convenient Number of Gentlemen before him, well habited, with the Officers of his Houſhold, *&c.* who, according to their Degrees, proceed two and two together bare-headed; and that he Dines and Sups alone at all times, unleſs a *Knight-Companion* be with him.

How it is to be obſerved in Caſe of Sickneſs.

§ 2. In Caſe of Sickneſs, if the abſent Knight was only confin'd to his Chamber, the Cuſtom was to prepare a Capital Stall for the Sovereign, in the Chamber where

he lay, and another Stall for himſelf, placed according to the before-mentioned directions, to remain during the Feaſt; in which Room Divine Offices were celebrated. And if the abſent Knight was ſo Sick as to keep his Bed, then his whole Habit of the *Order* was laid thereon; and upon this Account *Ambroſe*, Earl of *Warwick*, falling Ill at *Greenwich*, when St. *George*'s *Day* was there celebrated, *Anno* 30 *Eliz.* retir'd to his Chamber, and ſat in his Robes.

In what manner the Feaſt hath been obſerv'd by abſent Knights.

§ 3. Of this, the *Black-Book* of the *Order* gives a very conſiderable Precedent; Namely, the Feaſt of St. *George* held at the Palace of *Hereford*, by Prince *Arthur*, 15 *Hen.* VII. being then in his Government of the Principality of *Wales*; and had with him Sir *Richard Pool*, one of the *Knights-Companions*; where every thing, according to the form of the *Statutes*, was duly obſerved. The Prince's Sword was born before his Stall, and the Service performed by his *Herald* with great exactneſs. Likewiſe the Sovereign's *Herald* ſtood all the while before the Sovereign's Stall, which was adorned with accuſtomed Ornaments; and the Biſhop, who performed Divine Service, had his Seat erected near the High *Altar*.

There are other Inſtances, as particularly thoſe obſerved by Sir *Henry Sidney*, at *Shrewsbury* and *Ludlow*, 23 and 24 Queen *Eliz.* which were very remarkable.

As to the obſervation of the Feaſt, by a Knight beyond Sea, there is an Inſtance in *Robert*, Earl of *Leiceſter*, Lieutenant for Queen *Elizabeth*, Governor, and Captain General of the united Provinces, and there celebrated the Feaſt, 1586. He had an Eſcutcheon of the *Order*, impailed with the Sovereign's Arms, fixt to the front of his Houſe, ſo alſo to the back of her Stall in the Church, and his own Arms at the back of his own Stall.

He proceeded on Horſe-back to the Church, a Purſuivant riding before him, wearing a King of Arms's Coat; who, after Sermon, proceeded before him to the Offering; which he made for the Sovereign and himſelf; Service being ended, he returned to his Lodging, and dined with great Solemnity.

Diſpen-

Diſpenſations for Abſence granted during Life.

§ 5. Sometimes Diſpenſations for Abſence have been obtained for Life, upon the Petite of the *Knights-Companions* ſetting forth their Age and Infirmity: An Inſtance of which, we find was granted to the Lord *Dacrees*, 26 *Hen.* VIII. and the Earl of *Derby*, 14 *Car.* I. and the Lord *Muſgrave*; but both with this Reſtriction; that the abſent ſhould be obliged to ſend to *Garter* for his Eſcutcheons, at the ſame time that he ſent his Excuſe, and Petite for Diſpenſation; and ſhould ſolemnly keep in his own Houſe the Feaſt, with all the ſacred Rites and Ceremonies, in his Robes, and other Ornaments, if Health permit; and in Caſe of Sickneſs, upon his Bed, according to the ancient *Statutes*.

This Act was thought of ſo great Importance to be obſerved, that the Chancellor was ordered to tranſcribe it, and ſend it to each of the *Knights-Companions*; acquainting them at the ſame time, with the Penalties they ſhould be liable to, if they neglected the leaſt Punctilio. And the like was again obſerved, and repeated to them, before the Feaſt of the enſuing Year.

CAP. XXIV.

The Degradation of a Knight-Companion.

§ 1. THE Enſigns of the *Order* are not to be withdrawn from a Knight, during Life, unleſs Guilty of ſome of thoſe Marks of Reproach, ſet down in King *Henry* VIII's *Statutes*, *viz.* Hereſy, Treaſon, or Flying from Battle: It has ſometimes been found, that Prodigality has been made a fourth Point, where a Knight has ſo waſted his Eſtate, as to be incapable of ſupporting his Dignity. The Pretence for di-

veſting

veſting *William*, Lord *Paget*, 6 *Edw.* VI. was, his not being a Gentleman of Blood, both by Father and Mother. But Felony comes not within the compaſs of this *Statute*, as not being expreſly mentioned among the Reproaches there Summ'd up; and ſo it was adjudged in a *Chapter*, 14 *Jac.* I. in the Caſe of *Robert*, Earl of *Somerſet*, then lately condemned for that Fact, whereon his Hatchments were not removed.

When a *Knight-Companion* is found Guilty of any of the Offences mentioned in King *Henry* VIII's *Statutes*, he is uſually degraded at the next *Chapter*, of which the Sovereign gives the *Knights-Companions* previous notice; and then commands *Garter* to attend ſuch of them as are appointed to go to the Convict Knight, who, in a ſolemn manner, firſt takes from him the *George* and *Ribbond*, and then his *Garter*. And at the enſuing Feaſt of St. *George*, or ſooner, if the Sovereign appoint it, publication of his Crimes and Degradation is made by *Garter*.

Next, *Garter*, by Warrant to that purpoſe, takes down his Atchievement, on which Service he is veſted in his Coat of Arms, and the Officers of Arms ſtanding about him, the *Black-Rod* alſo preſent; Firſt *Garter* reads aloud the Inſtruments of Degradation, after which one of the *Heralds*, who is placed ready on a Ladder ſet to the back of the Convict Knight's Stall, at the Words *expelled, and put from among the Arms*, takes his Creſt, and violently caſts it down into the *Choir*, after that his Banner and Sword; and when the Publication is read out, all the Officers of Arms ſpurn the Atchievements out of the *Choir*, into the Body of the Church, firſt the Sword, then the Banner, and laſt of all the Creſt, ſo out of the Weſt Door, thence to the Bridge, and over into the Ditch; and thus it was done at the Degradation of *Edward*, Duke of *Buckingham*, 13 *Hen.* VIII. Their Plates are likewiſe taken down from their Stalls and carried away.

Degradation not being alone thought ſufficient, it was debated in *Chapter*, 32 *Hen.* VIII. whether the Names of ſuch *Knights-Companions* as were convicted of Treaſon ſhould remain in the *Regiſters*, or be razed out: Where the Sovereign determined; That whereſoever the Actions or Names of ſuch Offenders ſhould be found, theſe Words [*Vah Proditor*] ſhould be Written in the Margin; by which means

means the *Regiſter* wou'd be preſerved fair, and not defaced with razures or blots.

In the cloſe of this Section we may obſerve, that ſome *Knights-Companions*, who have ſuffered Degradation, have lived to be reſtored thereto; being re-elected, and reinveſted, and their Atchievements ſet up again, by the Indulgence of the next Reign; as were the Lord *Paget*'s, 1 *Mar.* and the Marquiſs of *Northampton*, 1 *Eliz.* as likewiſe the Duke of *Norfolk*, 1 *Mar.*

CAP XXV.

Honours paid to deceaſed Knights-Companions.

1. AS to the firſt part of this Section, the celebrating Maſſes for defunct *Knights-Companions*, I think it very little material here; that Ceremony altering with the Form of Religion, became wholly diſuſed, 32 *Hen.* VIII. at which time, in a *Chapter* then held at *Weſtminſter*, the following Decree was made.

That every one of the Knights-Companions, *in lieu of the ſaid Maſſes, ſhould, for the future, after the Death of any of their Brethren, according to the Rates of their Degrees hereafter mentioned, and immediately upon Demand of the* Regiſter, *and Dean of* Windſor, *or one of them, pay the ſeveral Sums following.*

	l.	*s.*	*d.*		*l.*	*s.*	*l.*
The Sovereign	8	06	8	An Earl	2	10	0
A Stranger King	6	08	4	A Viſcount	1	01	8
The Prince	5	16	8	A Baron	1	13	4
A Duke	5	00	0	A Knight-Batchelor	0	16	8
A Marquiſs	3	16	0				

The Monies ſo collected, (called *Obiit Monies*) were by the ſaid Decree appointed to be diſtributed in Alms-Deeds,

Deeds, *as the Reparation of High Ways, the Relief of the Poor, &c.* The receipt and disburſements of theſe Sums were committed to the care of the Dean and Regiſter.

Mr. *Aſhmole*, has made this addition in his Library, which it will not be out of our way to obſerve, for the information of thoſe who may be deſirous to know how the Point then ſtood; that not withſtanding the aforeſaid Order in *Chapter*, made the 24th of *May*, *Anno* 32 *Hen.* VIII. for changing the Number of Maſſes uſually Sung for defunct Knights, into a pecuniary Rate, according their degrees; the Prayers for Souls departed, both by private Perſons, as alſo by the Clergy, in Maſſes and Exequies; nay farther, to give Alms to others, and to pray for them, was continued by the Church of *England* ſeveral Years beyond that ſpace; for in a Book, entituled the *Inſtitution of a Chriſtian Man, &c.* made by the Clergy of *England*, as appears by the Subſcriptions of the Archbiſhops, Biſhops, and others of the Clergy to the Preface; dedicated by them to King *Henry* VIII. and printed by *Thomas Bartelet*, the King's Printer, *Anno* 1537. *cum Privilegio*, the Article of Purgatory is there ſet down.

But to proceed. This charitable diſtribution, in a *Chapter* held at *Greenwich*, 5 *Edw.* VI. was enlarged to the relief of the Poor in the Town of *Windſor*, and other Towns, Villages, and Places, at the diſcretion of the Dean of *Windſor*. And though the ſaid Decree was confirmed by King *Edward* VI. Queen *Mary*, and Queen *Elizabeth*, yet for many Years, the Collection of theſe *Obiit* Monies was neglected; till in 9 *Car.* I. the Earl of *Portland*, out of his great Generoſity, as well as his Zeal for reſtoring ſo pious a Work, reiterated to the Sovereign the ancient Decrees made in this Caſe. Whereupon it paſſed in *Chapter*, that the ſame ſhould be revived, and for ever continued; and that the ſame ſhould begin for the five Knights, whoſe Atchievements were offered at that Feaſt, *viz.* the King of *Sweden*, the Elect or Palatine, the Earls of *Northumberland*, *Banbury*, and *Rutland*. And as to Stranger Princes, it pleaſed the Sovereign to expreſs himſelf, *That as by the* Statutes *they are left* to perform theſe Payments by themſelves, if they wou'd; ſo, if it were not done by them, that both then, and for the future, the ſame ſhould be paid by the Sovereign himſelf.

After-

Afterwards, all the Sums of Money, to be collected by Virtue of this Decree, together with the *Knights-Companions* Duties, at their firſt Entrance in the *Order*, were employed toward providing Plate for the *Altar*, within St. *George*'s *Chappel*, which is already treated of.

Of fixing on the Stalls Plates of their Arms and Stiles.

§ 2. The next thing provided for by the *Statutes* of Inſtitution, was the deceaſed Knight's Honour; in regard of which, it was ordained, *That when any one of the firſt Founders ſhould die, there ſhould be in Metal an Eſcutcheon of his Arms, with his Helm, or Creſt, faſtened at the back of his Stall, for a Mark of Honour to him that bore them.* And in like manner, *that their Succeſſors ſhould have a like Eſcutcheon fixed on the back of their Stalls*; and to difference them from thoſe of the firſt Founders, they were appointed to be made ſomewhat leſs, and to be placed a little underneath them. But this Article relates only to the *Knights-Companions*, not to the Sovereigns of the *Order*; nor do we find that any of them had Plates of their Arms and Stiles ſet upon the back of their Stalls, in manner as is before preſcribed to the reſt of the *Knights-Companions*.

King *Henry* VIII. in his Body of *Statutes*, alters this Article in three particulars; firſt, as to the ſetting up their Plates, which he appoints not to be after their Deaths, but within, after the Inſtallation of every *Knight-Companion*; ſecondly, as to the nature of the Metal, that it may be ſuch as the Knight ſhall pleaſe himſelf: And laſtly, as to the ſize, though he alſo reſtrains the *Knights-Subjects* to a leſſer than thoſe of the firſt Founders; yet he gives liberty to the *Knights-Strangers* to uſe their Plates and Faſhions at Pleaſure. As to the firſt of theſe, it has been pretty duly obſerved; and indeed the ſecond, of making them of Copper; but the laſt, *viz.* the ſize, has been very little regarded; for the very Plates of thoſe Knights who were ſoon after inſtalled, and thence downwards, are larger than thoſe of the firſt Founders.

In tract of time, many of theſe Memorials were, by ſacrilegious Hands, taken away, which King *Charles* I. taking

taking notice of, and desirous to put a stop to a Mischief not in his Power to prevent, and to preserve the Remembrance of the precedent *Knights-Companions*; commanded the Dean of *Windsor* to describe the Stiles of those that remained in a Book, which he accordingly did, and deposited the same in the College: But what became of this Book, could not be afterwards discovered; so that the most that could be done, was to draw the Arms, and Copy out the Stiles, engraven on the Plates then remaining; from whence the following Observations may be made.

First, That for many Years after the Institution of the *Order*, the Plate whereon the Shield was engraved, bore no other Inscription, than the deceased Knight's Name, set at the Foot thereof, under the Escutcheon of his Arms. Afterwards, the chief Title of Honour began to be added, though now and then, in the first and elder times, both were omitted, as also their Crests. But about the beginning of King *Henry* VIII's Reign, not only the Knight's chief Title, but all other his Titles and Dignities, whether Honorary, or Officiary, were drawn together in one Inscription, concluding with that of Knight of this most Noble *Order*; and which, about the same time, the *Knights-Companions* used to insert, in all their publick and private Instruments of Writing; a Custom observed by the Knights of other Sovereigns *Orders* Abroad.

At first the *Knights-Companions* gave their Paternal Coats of Arms, singly and without any Quarterings; but toward the beginning of *Hen.* V. they began to add their Quarterings, as appears from the Escutcheons of *Hugh*, Lord *Burnel*, who died 9 *Hen.* V. Sir *Lewis Robessart*, and others. Yet was not the same generally used, but left to the Pleasure of the *Knights-Companions*.

But of later times, this very thing was thought of such concern, that where a Knight has been elected, who wanted Quarterings, the Sovereign has been pleased to grant him another Coat of Arms, to quarter with his Paternal Coat; that his Banner, which ought to hang over his Stall, might not seem too naked.

Soon after King *Henry* VIII's Accession, the Knights compassed their Shields with the Royal *Garter*, and thereon (such as were Noblemen) placed the Coronet belonging to their Dignity. As to Supporters, we observe two

Plates

Plates to which they are added; the one of *John Beaufort*, the firſt Duke of *Somerſet* of that Name, elected 20 *Hen.* VI. the other of *Anthony Widvile*, Earl *Rivers*, elected 5 *Edw.* IV. and beſides theſe, till the Reign of King *Henry* VIII. there is not another Example: But then it grew into common uſage, as alſo the ingraving their peculiar Motto's, or Devices upon the Plates.

The Offering of Atchievements.

§ 3. A third Honour paid to the defunct Knight, is a moſt ſolemn Offering up his Atchievements at the High *Altar*; namely, the Banner of his Arms, his Sword, Helmet, and Creſt, with its Mantlings; all which had been ſet up over his Stall at his Inſtallation. The Ceremony of Offering theſe Enſigns does not appear to have been regulated at the Inſtitution of the *Order*, but rather added as an additional Honour, by King *Henry* V. and the manner thereof ſet down in the fourteenth Article of his Body of *Statutes*.

This Solemnity is local to the Chappel of St. *George*, within the Caſtle of *Windſor*, and not to be performed till the Sovereign has notice of the *Knight-Companion's* Death.

In 1 *Edw.* VI. at the Feaſt then held at *Windſor*, there aroſe a Queſtion, whether the Atchievements of King *Henry* VIII. which yet hung over the Sovereign's Stall, ſhould be taken down and offered at the Maſs of *Requiem* enſuing, or not? in regard his Banner, Sword, Helm, and Creſt, with Mantles, had been offered up before, at his Interment within that Chappel. In concluſion of which it was determined, *That the ſaid Atchievements ſhou'd not again be offered, but remain over the Sovereign's Stall, for his Son King* Edward VI. But when the Sovereigns of this moſt Noble *Order* are not interred at *Windſor*, then their Atchievements are offered up the next enſuing Feaſt; as were thoſe of Queen *Elizabeth*, which the *Blue-Book* notes to be done at Morning Prayer.

As to the time for performing this Ceremony, it was ordained to be on the Morrow after the Feaſt, when the Maſs was Sung for the Souls of the *Knights-Companions*, *&c.* and ſo was duly obſerved till the time of the Reformation, when the Maſs of *Requiem* being aboliſhed, it was nevertheleſs at the Morning Service, on the Morrow immediately

mediately after the Offertory: But after Queen *Elizabeth* had removed the Feaſt of St. *George* from *Windſor*, this Solemnity was frequently diſpatched in one Day, before they went out of the *Choir*; and the ancient Rule, as to the time, being thus broke, was never after reſtored, but generally performed the very ſame Morning wherein the elect Knights were inſtalled: And though the Day was thus changed, yet the Ceremony it ſelf was not performed till after the Inſtallation was finiſhed, that Solemnity having always the Precedency, till 9 *Jac.* I. when he obſerving how incongruous it ſeemed, to inſtal a new Knight before his Predeceſſor had been fully diſcharged of his Stall, gave Order for Offering the Atchievements of Sir *Henry Lea*, the Lord *Scroop*, and others, before the Inſtalment of the elect Knights.

Not long after, it was thought convenient to perform this Ceremony on the Eve of the Feaſt, preſently after the firſt *Veſpers* began; and next to proceed with the Inſtallations; whereby, as much as poſſible, the Stalls of the *Knights-Companions* might be ſupplied, in all the reſt of the Solemnities of the Feaſt. But if at any time, any of the new elect Knights were introduced into the *Choir*, before the Offering of the Atchievements began, they were appointed to ſtand there under the Stalls deſigned for them till that Ceremony was finiſhed.

Thus it continued from the ſaid 9 *Jac.* I. till the 15 *Car.* II. when it was performed at the time anciently accuſtomed for it; the Prince of *Denmark*, and the Duke of *Monmouth*, being both inſtalled before the firſt *Veſpers* began, and the Atchievements of the defunct Knights not offered till the Morrow after the Feaſt Day.

As to the Manner and Order of this Ceremony, among other Inſtitutions of King *Henry* V. it is appointed, *That as often as, through the vacancy of any Stall, the Swords, Helms, with the reſt of the defunct Knights, ought to be offered, the Sword of the deceaſed Knight ſhall be firſt offered, being carried up to the* High Altar *by two of the* Knights-Companions, *and afterwards the Helm, with the Creſt and Mantlings, by two other* Knights-Companions; *and this Offering is to be made for them, in the Order they were inſtalled, not as they died.*

But of the Offering of a defunct Knight's Banner, we find no expreſs mention till 18 *Hen.* VII. at which time the

the Banner of the Lord *Brook* was offered: But afterwards the direction for Offering their Enſign and Banner was taken into King *Henry* VIII's Body of *Statutes*. And ſince the ſame were introduced, according to the foregoing Precedent, it was to be offered firſt, and ſo hath been generally obſerved.

By the appointment of the *Statutes* of *Henry* V. the Sovereign is to nominate and aſſign the *Knights Companions*, who are ſeverally to perform this Ceremony; and ſo is the direction in *Henry* VIII's *Statutes*: But ſince the beginning of Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, the Knights have generally proceeded to this Offering, according to their Seniority; and when the Courſe ended, then the *Seniors* began again. There are likewiſe many Examples where the Sovereign's Lieutenant has joined in the Ceremony to aſſiſt the other Knights: Nor is a Proxy, or Deputy, to be admitted to perform any part of the Ceremony, though in the Offering of Money he ought.

We ſhall next proceed to the Duties of the Prelate of the *Order*, the Prebends, and Officers of Arms, as their Services ſeverally, or jointly, relate to the performance of this Ceremony. Firſt then, the Prelate, and two Prebends, ought to proceed up to the *Altar*, immediately before *Garter* ſummons down the *Knights-Companions* to the Offering; and there ſtand ready to receive the Atchievements, as they are ſeverally offered up.

It is next the Duty of the *Provincial Kings*, and *Heralds*, to conduct the *Knights-Companions*, when they proceed up to the *Altar*, bearing any part of the defunct Knight's Atchievements. The whole Ceremony is briefly thus.

Firſt *Garter* riſes from his Seat, and proceeds into the middle of the *Choir*, where, after his uſual Obeyſances, he ſummons the *Knights-Companions* to deſcend, who come down and place themſelves before their Stalls: Whereupon *Clarenceux* and *Norroy* (or in the abſence of either, the *Senior Herald*, or of both, of the two eldeſt *Heralds*,) paſs down from the Steps of the *Altar* into the Body of the *Choir*; in the interim *Garter* takes the *Banner* of the eldeſt defunct Knight, and preſents it, half rolled up, to the two *Senior Knights-Companions*; the two *Provincial Kings* by this time approaching them, make their double Reverences, and after to the other *Knights-Companions*, and then ſtand a little aſide; while the two *Senior* Knights,

having taken the *Banner* between them, make their double Reverence, and pass up to the *Altar*, (preceeded by the Kings) bearing it with the lower end of the Staff foremost, and at the first *Haut-Pas* make another double Reverence. The *Provincial Kings* being arrived at the uppermost *Haut-Pas*, after an humble Obeysance, divide themselves to make way for the Knights to Offer, who forthwith raise the Point of the *Banner* upwards, and after a single Reverence toward the *Altar*, present it upon their Knees, to the Prelate of the *Order*, who delivers it to two Canons, and they deposite it upon Cushions laid before the *Altar*. This done, the two *Provincial Kings* conduct the Knights back into the *Choir*, who, with the usual Reverences, retire to their Stations, under (not to) their Stalls, and the *Provincial Kings* to their, on either side the *Altar*.

Next the two *Senior Heralds* pass down into the *Choir*, as the *Provincial Kings* did, whilst *Garter*, taking up the Sword, presents it to the two next *Senior* Knights, who proceed to the *Altar* with the two *Heralds* before them, in the same Order as before, bearing the Sword between them, and offer the same with the Pommel or Hilt upwards, and then retire as before.

In the next place, the two next *Senior Heralds* go down as before, and the *Helm* and *Crest* is offered in the like manner: But the *Pursuivants* at *Arms* do no part of this Duty.

Heretofore we find that *Garter* has not only begun this Solemnity, by presenting the *Banner*, but has also conducted the two *Senior* Knights to the *Altar*, as he did 5 *Eliz.* by the *Banner* of the Lord *Grey*; and at some other times. It was likewise the usage heretofore for the Prelate to deliver the offered Atchievements, to some of the *Heralds*, to be depositied near the *Altar*.

There is nothing on this farther observable, than what relates to the Atchievement it self, which, as they became by this Ceremony part of the Goods of the Chappel, and included within the Words of the *Statutes* of the College, whereby the Sovereign granted to the Dean and Canons all Oblations, they could not be sold or alienated, and were therefore depositied by them in the *Chapter-House*: But the *Helms* and *Swords*, because they were at first forged for the Service of War, of an extraordinary large size, have been frequently redeemed, that they might serve again

again to the ſame uſes. And likewiſe, becauſe it belongs to *Garter* to provide Atchievements for new inſtalled Knights, he uſually hath compounded with the Dean and Canons for the defunct Knight's Atchievements.

Of depoſiting the deceaſed Knights Mantles *in the* Chapter-Houſe.

§ 4. In 9 *Eliz.* there paſſed a Decree, *That the* Knights-Companions *ſhould be bound by their Oaths, to take care, by their laſt Will, that after their Deceaſe, all their Ornaments, which they had receiv'd, ſhould be reſtored, the Robes to the College, and the Jewels to the King that gave them.* Sir *Chriſtopher Hatton* complied with the Decree, and ſent his *Mantle* accordingly; but that of Sir *Henry Lea*, being left to the diſpoſal of others, and not ſent to the College, happened at length to come into the Hands of Brokers, and was openly expoſed to Sale in *Long-lane*, to the great diſhonour of the *Order*.

This Decree was in after times but ſlackly obſerved, and therefore in a *Chapter* held at *Windſor*, 4 *Car.* I. the Knights were admoniſhed, *That when the Sovereign ſhould vouchſafe to beſtow the* Mantle *of the* Order, *the Knight ſhould take care at his Death, to have it ſent to the Chappel at* Windſor, according to the *Statutes*. But this taking little Effect, the Sovereign thought fit to reſtore vigorouſly the Law in this particular, by a Decree in *Chapter*, 13 *Car.* I. which obliged all *Knights-Companions*, receiving the Enſigns of the *Order* from the Sovereign, to take care, according to the tenor of their Oaths, that theſe, together with the Book of *Statutes*, ſhould be reſtored in the Hands of the Sovereign, after their Deaths; and a Command was therewithal given, *That certain* Books, Mantles, *and* Surcoats, *then lying at* White-Hall, *ſhou'd be delivered to the* Regiſter *of the* Order, *to be laid up at* Windſor, *in honourable Memory of theſe to whom they belonged.*

In Obſervation of theſe Decrees, where the *Habit* and *Enſigns* of the *Order* were either wholly, or in part, beſtowed by the Sovereign, Order was taken, at the Deceaſe of ſuch *Knights-Companions*, to ſend for them in again. As at a *Chapter* held 15 *Car.* I. the *Garter* and

George of the Lord Treaſurer *Weſton* being ſent back, were preſented to the Sovereign ; and after delivered to the *Dean* and *Chapter* of *Windſor*, to be preſerved : And in the ſame *Chapter* it was ordered, that the Earl of *Kelly*'s Robes and Ornaments of the *Order*, ſhould be ſent for by the Chancellor.

Theſe former Decrees were yet thought needful to be confirm'd by King *Charles* II. ſo that in a *Chapter* held 1669. at *White-Hall*, it was Decreed, *That the Mantle of each* Knight Companion, *with the Book of* Statutes, ſhould be ſent to *Windſor*, immediately after their Deaths ; *and that the Chancellor of the* Order *ſhould be obliged, by Letters to their Heirs and Executors, to put them in mind of ſending them thither.* But it is to be underſtood, that where the Mantle has been provided at the Knight's own Charge, there is no obligation for returning them.

Thus I have run through all the Particulars, relating to the Inſtitutions, Laws, and Ceremonies, of this moſt Noble *Order* ; I ſhall in the laſt Place proceed to give a Liſt of all thoſe who have enjoyed this ſingular Mark of Honour from its firſt Foundation. The Motives which excited the Royal Founder to ſet on Foot the ſaid *Order*, are already particularly treated of ; who having eſtabliſhed *Rules* and *Statutes* for the Government, and regulation thereof, he next reſolved to elect, from among the Flower of his own Wars, twenty five of the moſt celebrated Knights, who, together with himſelf, ſhould make up the Number of Twenty ſix ; for of ſo many does the *Order* by his Appointment conſiſt : And indeed that Age plentifully furniſhed him with Men of the moſt brave and celebrated Characters, and of ſignal Reputation in Arms, raiſed by the eminent Wars of thoſe times, and juſtly diſtinguiſhed by their own heroick Actions.

The firſt that he elected into this Noble *Order*, was *Edward*, his eldeſt Son, who already in part deſerved, and afterwards juſtly obtained the Title of a Brave and Martial Prince, of whom our Hiſtories ſpeak ſo largely. The reſt of his accompliſhed Collegues, were theſe that follow, and are thus placed in their Stalls.

The

1 *The Sovereign King* Edward *III.*	2 Edward *Prince of* Wales.
3 Henry, *Duke of* Lancaſt.	4 Th. Beauchamp, *E.* War.
5 Piers Capitow de la Bouch.	6 Ralph Stafford, *E.* Staff.
7 W. Montacute, *E. Salisb.*	8 Rog. Mortimer, *E.* March.
9 *Sir* John Lyſle.	10 *Sir.* Barthol. Burgherſh.
11 *Sir* John Beauchamp.	12 *Sir* John Mohun.
13 *Sir* Hugh Courteney.	14 *Sir* Thomas Holland.
15 *Sir* John Grey.	16 *Sir* Richard Fitz Simon.
17 *Sir* Miles Stapleton.	18 *Sir* Thomas Wale.
19 *Sir* Hugh Wroteſley.	20. *Sir* Nele Loring.
21 *Sir* John Chandos.	22 *Sir* James Audeley.
23 *Sir* Otho Holland.	24 *Sir* Henry Eam.
25 *Sir* SanchetDaubrichcourt	26 *Sir* Walter Paveley.

A Catalogue of their Succeſſors, with the Blazoning of their Arms, corrected in above ſixty Errors, in the Plates engrav'd in Aſhmole.

Knights afterwards elected in the Reign of King Edward III.

27. RIchard *of* Bordeaux, *afterwards King of* England; *of that Name the ſecond.*
Quarterly France ancient and England, a Label of three Points Argent on the middlemoſt, a Croſs of St. George.

28. Lionel *of* Antwerp, *Earl of* Ulſter, *and Duke of* Clarence.
Quarterly France ancient and England, on a Label of three Points Argent, as many Cantons Gules.

29. John *of* Gaunt, *Duke of* Lancaſter, *after created Duke of* Acquitaine.
Quarterly France ancient and England, a Label of three Points Ermine.

30. Edmund *of* Langley, *Earl of* Cambridge, *after Duke of* York.
Quarterly France ancient and England, on a Label of three Points Argent and nine Torteauxes.

31. John de Montford, *Duke of* Bretagne, *and Earl of* Richmond.
Plain Ermine.

32. William de Bohun, *Earl of* Hereford.
Azure a bend Argent between two Cottiſes, and ſix Lyons rampant Or.

33. William de Bohun, *Earl of* Northampton.
Azure on a bend Argent, cottized between ſix Lyons rampant Or, three Mullets Gules.

34. John Haſtings, *Earl of* Pembroke.
Or a manch Gules.

35. Thomas Beauchamp, *Earl of* Warwick.
Gules a feſs between ſix croſs Croſlets Or.

36. *Ric*[illegible]

36. Richard Fitz Alan, *Earl of* Arundel *and* Surrey.
Gules a Lyon rampant Or.
37. Robert Ufford, *Earl of* Suffolk.
Sable a Croſs ingrailed Or.
38. Hugh Stafford, *Earl of* Stafford.
Or a chevron Gules.
39. Ingelram de Coucy, *Earl of* Bedford.
Barry of ſix Vair and Gules.
40. Guiſcard d' Angouleſme, *Earl of* Huntingdon.
Or billetty a Lyon rampant Azure.
41. Edward Spencer, *Lord* Spencer.
Quarterly Argent and Gules, in the ſecond and third a fret Or, over all a bend Sable.
42. William Latimer, *Lord* Latimer.
Gules a Croſs patonce Or.
43. Reynold Cobham, *Lord* Cobham *of* Sterborough.
Gules on a Chevron Or three Eſtoils Sable.
44. John Nevil, *Lord* Nevil *of* Raby.
Gules a Saltire Argent.
45. Ralph Baſſet, *Lord* Baſſet *of* Drayton.
Or three Piles Gules a Canton Ermin.
46. *Sir* Walter Manny Banneret.
Or three Chevrons Sable, to which King *Edward* III. added an augmentation of a *Lyon Paſſant gardant Or, placed on the uppermoſt Chevron.*
47. *Sir* William Fitz Warin, *Kt.*
Quarterly per feſs indented Ermine and Gules.
48. *Sir* Thomas Ufford, *Kt.*
Sable a Croſs ingrailed Or with his difference.
49. *Sir* Thomas Felton, *Kt.*
Gules two Lyons paſſant in pale Ermine crowned Or.
50. *Sir* Francis Van Hale, *Kt.*
Gules within a bordure couſu Azure enurny verdoy of Lyons rampant and Flower Deluces, a Wyvern or bifooted Dragon riſing and crowned all Or, charged on the breaſt with an ineſcochion, of the firſt therein a double headed Eagle diſplaid Gold.
51. *Sir* Fulk Fitz Warrin, *Kt.*
Quarterly per feſs indented Argent and Gules.
52. *Sir* Allan Boxhull, *Kt.*
Or a Lyon rampant queve fourche Azure frettee Argent.
53. *Sir* Richard Pembruge, *Kt.*
Barry of eight Or and Azure.

54. *Sir* Thomas Wreight, *Kt.*
Gules on a Croſs patonce Or, *five mullets of the Field.*

55. *Sir* Thomas Baneſter, *Kt.*
Argent a Croſs patonce Sable.

56. *Sir* Richard de la Vache, *Kt.*
Gules three Lyons rampant Argent crowned Or.

57. *Sir* Guy de Bryan, *Kt.*
Or three Piles Azure.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Richard *II.*

58. Thomas *of* Woodſtock, *Earl of* Buckingham, *after Duke of* Glouceſter.
Quarterly France ancient and England, a bordure Argent.

59. Henry *of* Lancaſter, (*or* Bolinbroke,) *Earl of* Darby, *afterwards King of* England; *of that Name the fourth.*
Comme ſon Pere, No. 29.

60. William, *Duke of* Gelderland.
Parti per pale Or *and Azure, two Lyons rampant combatant and counter-changed.*

61. William *of* Bavaria, *Earl of* Oſtrevant, *after Earl of* Holland, Henault, *and* Zeland.
Quarterly the firſt and fourth Or, *a Lyon rampant Sable, the ſecond and third* Or, *a Lyon rampant Gules*, i. e. Flanders *and* Hainault.

62. Thomas Holland, *Earl of* Kent, *after Duke of* Surry.
England a border Argent, to which the King in Augmentation gave him King *Edward* the Confeſſor's, *viz. Azure a Croſs patonce between five martlets* Or, to be impaled before his own aforeſaid, aſſumed from his Grandmother of the Houſe of *Plantagenet Woodſtock*. *Vide* among the Founders.

63. John Holland, *Earl of* Huntingdon, *after Duke of* Exeter.
England a border of France, as deſcended maternally from *Plantagenet Woodſtock*.

64. Thomas Mowbray, *Earl of* Nottingham, *after Duke of* Norfolk.
England a Label of five Points Argent, his maternal Grandmother's Arms *Plantagenet* of *Brotherton*, his own Arms was *Gules a Lyon rampant Argent.*

65. Edward,

65. Edward, *Earl of* Rutland, *after Duke of* Albemarle.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 30.

66. Michael de la Pole, *Earl of* Suffolk.
Azure a Feſs between three Leopards Faces Or.

67. William Scroop, *Lord* Scroop, *after Earl of* Wiltſhire, *and Lord Treaſurer of* England.
Azure a bend Or, a Label of three Points Argent with difference, being of the *Maſham* Line.

68. William Beauchamp, *Lord* Bergavenny.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 35. *with a Creſcent difference.*

69. John Beaumont, *Lord* Beaumont.
France a Lyon rampant Or.

70. William Willoughby, *Lord* Willoughby.
Quarterly Ufford and Beke, viz. *Sable a Croſs ingrailed Or, and Gules a Croſs moline Argent*, his Grandmother *Ufford*'s Arms, his own proper Coat being *Or fretty Azure.*

71. Richard Grey, *Lord* Grey.
Barry of ſix Argent and Azure, a Label of five Points Gules.

72. *Sir* Nicholas Sarnesfield, *Kt.*
Azure an Eagle diſplaid Or, crowned Argent, potius Argent crowned Or.

73. *Sir* Philip de la Vache, *Kt.*
Comme, No. 56.

74. *Sir* Robert Knolls, *Kt.*
Gules on a Chevron Argent, three Roſes of the firſt.

75. *Sir* John Sulby, *Kt.*
Ermine four barrs Gules.

76. *Sir* Lewis Clifford, *Kt.*
Checquy Or and Azure a feſs Gules, potius a bend Gules.

77. *Sir* Simon Burley, *Kt.*
Or three barrs Sable in chief, two Pallets of the ſecond, in pretence Huſſey, viz. *Gules with three bars Ermine.*

78. *Sir* John d'Evereux, *Kt.*
Gules a feſs Argent in chief, three Plates.

79. *Sir* Richard Burley, *Kt.*
Comme, No. 77.

80. *Sir* Bryan Stapleton, *Kt.*
Argent a Lyon rampant Sable, on his Shoulder an annulet diff.

81. *Sir* Peter Courtney, *Kt.*
Or three Torteauxes, on a Label of three Points Azure, nine Plates

82. *Sir*

82. *Sir* John Burley, *Kt.*
Comme, No. 79.

83. *Sir* John Bourchier, *Kt.*
Argent a Croſs ingrailed Gules, between four water budgets Sable.

84. *Sir* Thomas Granſton, *Kt.*
Paly of ſix Argent and Azure, on a bend Gules, three eſcallops Or.

85. *Sir* Robert Dunſtavil, *Kt.*
Argent a fret Gules and Border ingrailed Sable, over all on a Canton, of the ſecond a Lyon paſſant Or.

86. *Sir* Robert de Namur, *Kt.*
Or a Lyon rampant Sable, ſuppreſſed by a Batime Gules.

87. *Sir* Sandich de Frane, *Kt.* alias vocat Sanchet la Towre.
Or a Lyon rampant quevee fourchee Gules.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Henry IV.

88. Henry, *Prince of* Wales, *after King of* England, *of that Name the fifth.*
Quarterly France ancient and England, a Label of three Points Argent.

89. Thomas *of* Lancaſter, *Earl of* Albemarle, *and Duke of* Clarence, *Brother to Prince* Henry.
Quarterly France ancient and England, on a Label Argent, three cantons Gules at the Label Ermine as his Grandfather, No. 29. but charged with *Cantons.*

90. John, *Earl of* Kendal, *and Duke of* Bedford, *after Regent of* France, *another Brother to Prince* Henry.
Quarterly France ancient and England, a Label of five Points perpale Ermine, and Azure ſemi de liz Or.

91. Humphry, *Earl of* Pembrook, *and after Duke of* Exeter.
Quarterly France ancient and England, a border Argent.

92. Thomas Beaufort, *Earl of* Dorſet, *and after Duke of* Exeter.
Quarterly France ancient and England, a border gobone Ermine and Azure, in every piece of the ſecond a Flower Deluce Or.

93. Ro-

N. B. *Sir* Thomas Percy, *Knight of the Garter, living* 7 Rich. II. *is mentioned by* Aſhmole, p. 213. *tho' omitted in his and other Catalogues. Or a Lyon rampant Azure.*

93. Robert, *Count Palatine, Duke of* Bavaria, *after Emperor of* Germany.
Quarterly Sable, a Lyon rampant crowned Or, for the Palatinate, *and Paly bendy Argent and Azure*, Bavaria.

94. John Beaufort, *Earl of* Somerſet, *and Marquiſs of* Dorſet.
Quarterly France ancient and England, a bord. gobone Argent and Azure.

95. Thomas Fitz Alan, *Earl of* Arundel.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 36.

96. Edmund Stafford, *Earl of* Stafford.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 38.

97. Edmund Holland, *Earl of* Kent.
England a border Argent.

98. Ralph Nevil, *Earl of* Weſtmorland.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 44.

99. Gilbert Roos, *Lord* Roos.
Gules three water budgets Argent.

100. Gilbert Talbot, *Lord* Talbot.
Gules a Lyon rampant within a border ingrailed Or.

101. John Lovell, *Lord* Lovell.
Barry nebulee of ſix Or and Gules.

102. Hugh Burnell, *Lord* Burnell.
Argent a Lyon rampant Sable, crowned Or, a border Azure.

103. Thomas Morley, *Lord* Morley.
Argent a Lyon rampant Sable crowned Or.

104. Edward Charleton, *Lord* Powis.
Or a Lyon rampant Gules.

105. *Sir* John Cornwall, *Kt. after Lord* Fanhope.
Ermine a Lyon rampant Gules crowned Or, a border ingrailed Sable beſanty.

106. *Sir* William Arundel, *Kt. of the Houſe of* Fitz Alan.
Gules a Lyon rampant Or, a creſcent difference.

107. *Sir* John Stanley, *Kt.*
Quarterly Argent and Or in the firſt, on a bend Azure, three Stags Heads Silver, in the ſecond a chief indented as the third, charged with three Plates, i. e. Stanley *and* Latham.

108. *Sir* Robert de Umfreville, *Kt.*
Gules Semi de creſs Croſlets a cinque foil Or, over all a bend ingrailed Argent.

109. *Sir* Thomas Rampſton, *Kt.*
Argent a Chevron, and in the dexter chief Point a cinquefoile Sable.

110. *Sir*

111. *Sir* Thomas Erpingham, *Kt.*
Vert an inescocheon within eight Marlets, placed in Orle Argent.

Hitherto the Knights of this Noble Order are ranked, as placed in divers other Catalogues, and according to their greateſt Dignities, becauſe the certain Years of their Elections cannot be found; only we have here removed Sir *John Sulbie*, and Sir *Sanchet de Trane*, from the Reign of King *Henry* IV. in which they are written in thoſe old Catalogues, to the Reign of King *Richard* II. for it appears in *Aſhmole*, Page 213. that they were Knights of the *Garter*, 7 *Rich.* II. and we have a little varied the Places of the Knights in that Reign following: The precedence in the Roll of Accounts of *Alan de Stoke* that Year, who reciting twenty three of theſe *Knights-Companions*, gives therein the preference to ſome of them after this manner; Sir *Guy Bryan*, Sir *William Beauchamp*, Sir *Thomas Percy*, Sir *Nele Loring*, Sir *John Sulby*, Sir *Lodowick Clifford*, Sir *Simon Burley*, Sir *Richard Burley*, Sir *Bryan Stapleton*, and Sir *Soldan de la Trane*. Theſe that follow are Marſhalled in an exact Series of their Elections.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Henry *V.*

111. *Sir* John Dabrichcourt, *Kt.*
Ermine three barrs humet Gules.

112. Richard Vere, *Earl of* Oxford.
Quarterly Gules and Or, in the firſt Quarter a Mullet Argent.

113. Thomas Camois, *Lord* Camois.
Or on a chief Gules, three Plates.

114. *Sir* Simon Felbryge, *Kt.*
Or a Lyon rampant, rather ſaliant Gules.

115. *Sir* William Harington, *Kt.*
Sable, a fret Argent, a Label of three Points, Gules.

116. John Holland, *Earl of* Huntingdon.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 63.

117. Sigiſmund, *Emperor of* Germany.
Or an Eagle double headed diſplaid Sable, on the Breaſt, Hungary and Bohemia, in pretence Brandenburgh.

118. Dux

118. Dux Hollandiæ *Lib. Nig. Fol.* 27.

119. . . . . *Duke of* Briga.
Or an Eagle diſplaid Sable, eſcharfoned croſs the breaſt Argent.

120. *Sir* John Blount, *Kt:*
Quarterly Sanchet of Spain, his Mother's Arms, *viz. Argent a Caſtle Azure and Blont, viz. barry nebulee of ſix Or and Sable.*

121. *Sir* John Robeſſart, *Kt.*
Vert a Lyon rampant Or, vulned on the Shoulders proper.

122. *Sir* William Phelip, *afterwards Lord* Bardolph.
Quarterly Gules and Argent, in the firſt Quarter an Eagle diſplaid Or, Guillim gives him the Lord *Bardolph's* Arms, whoſe Heir he Married, *Azure three Cinquefoils Or.*

123. John, *King of* Portugal.
Over Or, debraſing a Croſs d'Avis Or, of Calatrava, Portugal, viz. Argent five Eſcochions in croſs, each charged with five Plates ſaltirewiſe, a bordure of Caſtile, viz. Gules, therein Caſtles Or.

124. Eric, *King of* Denmark.
Or ſemi de Coeur or Hearts proper, three Lyons, paſſant gardant in pale Azure, crowned Or.

125. Richard Beauchamp, *Earl of* Warwick, *after Lieutenant General, and Governor in* France *and* Normandy.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 35.

126. Thomas Montacute, *Earl of* Salisbury.
Argent three loſenges in feſs Gules.

127. Robert Willoughby, *Lord* Willoughby.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 70. *viz. Vfford and Beke.*

128. Henry Fitz Hugh, *Lord* Fitz Hugh.
Azure three Chevrons fretted in baſe, and a cheif Or.

129. *Sir* John Grey, *Kt. Earl of* Tankervile.
Gules a Lyon rampant and border, ingrailed Argent.

130. Hugh Stafford, *Lord* Bourchier.
Quarterly Or, a Chevron Gules, a mullet diff. for Stafford and Argent, a Croſs ingrailed Gules between four water budgets Sable for Bourchier.

131 John Moubray, *Earl* Marſhal.
Comme ſon Pere, Plantagenet, Brotherton, No. 64. *making only the label to conſiſt of three Points.*

132. William

132. William de la Pole, *Earl of* Suffolk, *after Marquiſs and Duke of* Suffolk,
As his Grandfather, No. 66.

133. John Clifford, *Lord* Clifford.
Checquy Or and Azure, a feſs Gules.

134. *Sir* Lewis Robeſſart, *Kt. afterwards Lord* Bourchier.
Comme ſon Frere, No. 12.

135. *The* Heer, *or Sir* Henry Van Clux, *a* German *Lord, Captain of* Crewly *in* Normandy, 7 Hen. V.
Quarterly per feſs embatteled Gules and Argent, in the ſecond and third a branch of a Tree in bend, with four folages bend, couped at both ends, ſable rather Vert.

136. *Sir* Walter Hungerford, *after Lord* Hungerford, *and Lord* Treaſurer *of* England.
Sable two bars Argent in chief, three Plates.

137. Philip le Bon, *Duke of* Burgundy.
France a bordure Gobone, Argent and Gules being Burgundy Modern, aliter Quarterly, the firſt Auſtria, viz. Gules a feſs Argent; the ſecond Burgundy, Modernas aforeſaid; the third, Bendy Or and Azure Burgundy ancient; the fourth, Brabant Sable, a Lyon rampant Or, over all Flanders, Or a Lyon rampant Sable.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Henry VI.

138. John Talbot, *Lord* Talbot, *after Earl of* Shrewsbury.
Comme ſon Frere, No. 100.

139. Thomas Scales, *Lord* Scales.
Gules ſix eſcallops, three hundred and twenty one Argent.

140. *Sir* John Falſtoff, *Kt.*
Quarterly Or and Azure, on a bend Gules, three eſcallops Argent.

141. Peter, *Duke of* Conimbero, *third Son of* John *I. King of* Portugal.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 123. *but without the Calatrava Croſs of Flower Deluces, viz. Portugal a border of Caſtile.*

142. Humphry Stafford, *Earl of* Stafford, *after Duke of Bucks.*
Comme ſon Pere, No. 96.

143. *Sir*

143. *Sir* John Ratcliff, *Kt.*
Argent a bend ingrailed Sable.

144. John Fitz Alan, *Earl of* Arundel, *and Lord* Maltravers.
Comme, No. 106. *and* 95, *and* 36.

145. Richard, *Duke of* York, *the King's Lieutenant in* France *and* Normandy.
Quarterly France modern and England, on a label of three Points Argent nine torteauxes.

146. Edward, *King of* Portugal.
Comme, No. 123.

147. Edmund Beaufort, *Earl of* Moriton, *after Earl of* Dorſet, *and Duke of* Somerſet.
Quarterly France modern and England, a border gobone Ermine and Azure.

148. *Sir* John Grey, *Kt.*
Barry of ſix Argent and Azure in chief, three torteauxes over all, a label of three Points Argent for his difference, being of the Ruthyn Line.

149. Richard Nevil, *Earl of* Salisbury, *after Lord Chancellor of* England.
Quarterly firſt and fourth, his Wives Arms, *Argent three loſenges enjoyn'd in feſs, viz. Montague, Gules quartering Monthermer Or, an Eagle diſplaid Vert, ſecond and third, Gules a Saltire Argent, Comme ſon Pere*, No. 98. *with a label of three Points gobone Argent and Azure difference therein.*

150. William Nevil, *Lord* Falconbergh, *after Earl of* Kent.
Quarterly firſt and fourth, his Wives Arms, *Argent a Lyon rampant Azure Falconbergh, ſecond and third, Comme ſon Pere*, No. 98. *viz. Gules a ſaltire Argent, a mullet Sable difference.*

151. Albert, *Duke of* Auſtria, *afterwards Emperor.*
Or on the breaſt of an imperial Eagle, i. e. double-headed and diſplaid Sable, an Eſcochion of Auſtria, viz. Gules a feſs Argent.

152. John Beaufort, *Earl of* Somerſet, *afterwards Duke of* Somerſet, *and Earl of* Kendal.
Quarterly France modern and England, a border gobone Argent and Azure.

153. Ralph Butler, *Lord* Sudley, *after Lord Treaſurer of* England.

Gules

Gules a feſs checquy Argent and Sable, between ſix croſs patees fitchee of the ſecond.

154. Henry, *Duke of* Viſco, *fourth Son of* John *I. King of* Portugal, *after King of* Portugal.

Comme ſon Frere, No. 141.

155. John Beaumont, *Viſcount* Beaumont.

Comme ſon Beau Pere, No. 69.

156. Gaſton de Foix, *Earl of* Longueville *and* Benanges, Captain de Buch.

Quarterly firſt and fourth Or, three Pales Gules, the Arms of the old Counts *de Foix, ſecond and third Argent, two Cows paſſant, Gules armed and ingrailed, and collered Or, Bells hanging at their Necks, Azure for Bearne, vel vice verſa, both the maternal Coat of the Gaſton.* Over the whole Atchievement, *a label of three Points terminating in Croſſes Sable, on each of which charged with five eſcallops Argent,* in alluſion to the Arms of *Greilly,* the original Houſe of this *Gaſton.*

157. John de Foix, *Earl* of Kendal.

Comme ſon Pere, No. 156.

158. John Beauchamp, *Lord* Beauchamp *of* Powick, *and after Lord Treaſurer of* England.

Gules, a feſs between ſix martlets Or.

159. Alphonſus, *King of* Portugal.

Comme, No. 123.

160. Albro Vaſques d'Almada, *Earl of* Averence *in* Normandy.

Or on a bend Vert between two Eagles, diſplaid Gules, as many croſs patonces Argent pierced.

161. Thomas Hoo, *Lord* Hoo.

Quarterly Sable and Argent.

162. *Sir* Francis Surien, *Kt.*

Or three pales Gules, on a chief Sable, three eſcallops Argent.

163. Alphonſus, *King of* Aragon.

Aragon, viz. Or four pales Gules.

164. Caſimire *IV. King of* Poland.

Quarterly firſt and fourth, the Dutchy of *Lithuania, viz. Gules a Chevalier armed at all Points a Cap-a-pee, brandiſhing his Sword aloft, Argent garniſhed Or, Mounted on a barded Courſer, furniſhed throughout of the ſecond, and holding a Shield in his left Hand,*

Azure

Azure charged with a Croſs double croſſed as the ſecond; ſecond and third Gules, an Eagle diſplaid Argent, rather vice verſa, the laſt being *Poland.*

165. William, *Duke of* Brunſwick.
Gules two Lyons paſſant gardant in pale Or.

166. Richard Widvile, *Lord* Rivers, *afterwards created Earl* Rivers.
Argent a feſs and canton Gules. Philipot Vil. Cant. ſays he bore Rivers *in pretence. Gules a Gryphon rampant Or.*

167. John Mowbray, *Duke of* Norfolk.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 131.

168. Henry Bourchier, *Viſcount* Bourchier, *after Lord Treaſurer of* England, *and Earl of* Eſſex.
Bourchier Comme, No. 83. *quartering Lovain, viz. Gules a feſs between fifteen billets Or.*

169. *Sir* Philip Wentworth, *Kt.*
Sable a Chevron between three leopards faces Or.

170. *Sir* Edward Hall, *Kt.*
Argent three croſs Croſlets fitchee Azure in bend, between two cotiſes Gules.

171. Frederick *III. Emperor of* Germany.
Comme ſon Frere, No. 151.

172. John Talbot, *Earl of* Shrewsbury.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 138.

173. Lionell Wells, *Lord* Wells.
Or a Lyon rampant quevee fourchee Sable.

174. Thomas Stanley, *Lord* Stanley.
Quarterly firſt and fourth Or on a chief indented Azure, three Plates for *Latham,* his great Grandmother's Arms; *ſecond and third Stanley, viz. Argent on a bend Azure, three Staggs heads caboſhed Or.*

175. Edward, *Prince of* Wales.
The national Arms, *viz. Quarterly France modern and England, a label of three Points Argent.*

176. Jaſper, *Earl of* Pembroke, *after Duke of* Bedford.
Quarterly France modern and England, a border Azure, ſemi de Flower de Luce Or.

177. James Butler, *Earl of* Wiltſhire.
Or a chief indented Azure.

178. John Sutton, *Lord* Dudley.
Or a Lyon rampant quevee fourchee Vert.

179. John Bourchier, *Lord* Berners.
Argent a Croſs ingrailed Gules between four Water-budgets Sable, on a label of three Points, of the ſecond nine Lyons of England.

180. Richard Nevil, *Earl of* Warwick.
Quarterly of four; firſt, his Wives Arms, *Beauchamp,* Earl of *Warwick, viz. Gules a feſs between ſix Croſlets Or impaling* the old Earls of *Warwick checquy. Or and Azure a Chevron Ermine; ſecond,* his Mother's Arms, *viz. Montague, Argent three loſenges in feſs impaling Monthermer, Or an Eagle diſplaid Vert; third, Spenſer, viz. quarterly Argent and Gules a bend Sable, in the ſecond and third a fret Or; fourth, Clare, impaling Or, three Chevrons Gules impaling Nevil,* his paternal Coat, *viz. Gules a ſaltire Argent, differenced with a label gobonated Argent and Azure.*

181. William Bonvill, *Lord* Bonvill.
Sable ſix mullets, 3 2 1 *Argent pierced Gules.*

182. John Wenlock, *Lord* Wenlock.
Argent a Chevron Sable between three Negroes heads braſed proper.

183. *Sir* Thomas Kyriell, *Kt.*
Or two Chevrons Gules on a Canton, of the laſt a Lyon of England.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Edward IV.

184 George, *Duke of* Clarence.
Quarterly France and England, a label of three Points Argent, on each a canton Gules.

185. *Sir* William Chamberlayn, *Kt.*
Gules a Chevron between three eſcallops, Or a label extended of three Points Argent.

186. John Tiptoft, *Earl of* Worceſter, *after High Conſtable of* England.
Argent a ſaltire ingrailed Gules.

187. John Nevil, *Lord* Montague, *after Earl of* Northumberland, *and Marquiſs of* Montague.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 149. *a creſcent difference in pretence quarterly; firſt, Argent on a Canton Gules a roſe Or for Bradeſton, two Gules a Croſs ingrailed Argent,*

gent, for Ingolſthorp, [Wife of this Lord *Montague*] *third, Delapole, viz. Azure a feſs between three leopards faces Or; fourthly and laſtly, Brough Argent on a feſs dancet Sable three beſants.*

188. William Herbert, *Lord* Herbert, *after Earl of* Pembroke.

Parti per pale, Azure and Gules three lyons rampant Argent.

189. William Haſtings, *Lord* Haſtings.

Argent a Maunch Sable.

190. John Scrope, *Lord* Scrope *of* Bolton.

Azure a bend Or.

191. *Sir* John Aſtley, *Kt.*

Quarterly Azure a cinquefoil Ermine for Aſtley, and Or two barrs Gules for Harcourt, over both a label extended of three Points Ermine.

192. Ferdinand, *King of* Naples, *Son of* Alphonſus, *King of Aragon.*

Aragon, viz. Or four pales Gules, a baſton ſiniſter Argent.

193. Francis Sfortia, *Duke of* Milan.

Milan, viz. a Guivre or Snake wreathed and erected in pale Azure vorant, an Infant iſſuant proper.

194. James, *Earl of* Douglas.

Argent an heart Gules regally crowned proper as the augmentation, on a chief Azure, three mullets Argent.

195. Galiard de Duras, *Lord of* Duras.

Quarterly, Gules a lyon rampant Argent, and Argent a bend Azure, both by the Name of *Duras.*

196. *Sir* Robert Harcourt, *Kt.*

Gules two barrs Or.

197. Anthony Widvile, *Lord* Scales *and* Nucells, *afterwards Earl* Rivers.

Comme ſon Pere, No. 166. there ſhould be the due difference of a *label.*

198. Richard, *Duke of* Glouceſter, *after King of* England, *of that Name the third.*

Quarterly France and England, a label of three Points Ermine.

199. . . . . *Lord* Mountgryſon *in* Anjou.

. . . . . .

200. John Moubray, *Duke of* Norfolk.

Comme ſon Pere, No. 167. *viz.* Plantagenet Brotherton.

201. John de la Pole, *Duke of* Suffolk.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 132.

202. William Fitz Alan, *Earl of* Arundel.
Comme ſon Frere, No. 144.

203. John Stafford, *Earl of* Wiltſhire.
His Grandmothers Arms *Plantagenet Woodſtock, viz. Quarterly, France modern and England, a border Argent and Creſcent difference, aliter Quarterly, firſt, Plantagenet Woodſtock, ut ante; ſecond, Azure a bend Argent cotiſed between ſix lyons rampant Or, for Bohun*, Earl of *Hereford*; *third*, the ſaid laſt Coat *with three mullets Gules on the bend* for *Bohun*, Earl of *Northampton*; *fourth*, his own paternal Arms, *viz. Or a Chevron Gules*, in the Centre of the whole, *a Creſcent difference.*

204. John Howard, *Lord* Howard, *after Duke of* Norfolk.
Quarterly firſt and fourth, Plantagenet Brotherton pro Mowbray, viz. England a label of three Points Argent; ſecond and third, Howard, Gules a bend between ſix croſs Croſlets fitchee Argent.

205. Walter Devereux, *Lord* Ferrers *of* Chartley.
Argent a feſs Gules in chief three torteauxes.

206. Walter Blount, *Lord* Montjoy.
Quarterly; firſt Argent two Wolves paſſant in pale Sable, a border Gules of Saltires Argent for ayela; ſecond, Azure a Caſtle Or, ſanchet de ayela, his Grandmother's Arms, a *Spaniſh* Lady; *third, barry nebulee of ſix Or and Sable*, his own paternal Arms; *and fourth, Vair and Beauchamp* of *Hatch*, a maternal Anceſtor.

207. Charles, *Duke of* Burgundy.
Burgundy modern, viz. France a border gobonated Argent and Gules.

208. Henry Stafford, *Duke of* Buckingham.
Plantagenet Woodſtock, his great Grandmother's Arms, *viz. Quarterly France modern and mngland a border Argent*, his own Coat was, *Or a Chevron Gules.*

209. Thomas Fitz Alan, *Lord* Maltravers, *afterwards Earl of* Arundel.
Quarterly Fitz Alan, Comme ſon Pere, No. 202. *and Maltravers, viz. Sable a fret Or over the whole Atchievement, a label extended of three Points Argent for difference.*

210. *Sir*

210. *Sir* William Parr, *Knight of* Kendal.
Quarterly; firſt and fourth, Roſs of Kendal, viz. Or three Water-budgets Sable; ſecond and third, Argent two barrs Azure, a border ingrailed Sable Parr.

211. Frederick, *Duke of* Urbin.
Quarterly; firſt and fourth, Or an Eagle diſplaid Sable; ſecond and third, Or bends couped Azure, between the two uppermoſt an Eagle diſplaid Sable, the ſaid Quarterings ſeparated by a Pale Gules, charged with the Papal Infula or tripple Crowned Mytre Or in chief, and the Eccleſiaſtical Keys, in Saltire the dexter Gold, the Siniſter Argent in baſe tyed Azure, for his Office of Gonfalonier under the Pope, tho' properly this Mytre is a Gonfannon pavilionated.

212. Henry Percy, *Earl of* Northumberland.
Quarterly Percy, Lovain and Lucy, viz. Or a lyon rampant Azure and Gules, three lucies hauriant Argent.

213. Edward, *Prince of* Wales.
Quarterly France and England, a label of three Points Silver.

214. Richard, *Duke of* York, *ſecond Son to King* Edward.
Quarterly France and England, a label of three Points Argent, on the firſt one Canton Gules.

215. Thomas Grey, *Marquiſs of* Dorſet, *and Earl of* Huntingdon.
Barry of ſix Argent and Azure, in chief three torteauxes, a label extended of three Points Ermine.

216. *Sir* Thomas Montgomery, *Kt.*
Gules a Chevron Ermine between three Flower Deluces Or.

217. Ferdinand, *King of* Caſtile *and* Leon.
Quarterly Caſtile and Leon, viz. Gules a Caſtle Or and Argent, and lyon rampant Gules crowned Or.

218. Hercules d'Eſti, *Duke of* Ferrara.
Quarterly; firſt, Or an Eagle diſplaid Sable, bequd. membred and couroned Gules, the Empire; ſecond, for France a bordure parte per indenture throughout Gules and Or; for Ferrara, the ſaid Quarterings ſeparated by a Pale Gules, charged with the papal Keys in Saltire, the dexter being Or, the ſiniſter Argent as Gonfalonier, over all pretence Azure an Eagle diſplaid Argent for Eſti. Mr. *Aſhmole* afterwards corrected it as now

in his Library. *Palewiſe of three pieces, firſt, partie per feſs in the chief Or an Eagle diſplaid Sable, membred langued and Crown'd Gules, and in baſe Azure three Flower Deluces within a bordure indented Or and Gules; ſecondly, Gules, two Gules in Saltire, the one Or, the other Argent, charged in feſs with an Eſcutcheon of pretence Azure ſupporting an Eagle; of the third membred langued and Crown'd, of the ſecond, over all in chief a papal Crown Or, garniſhed with ſundry Gemms Azure and Parts; thirdly, the third as the firſt, counter plac'd.*

219. John, *King of* Portugal, *Son to* Alphonſus *V.*
Comme ſon Pere, No. 159.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Richard III.

220. *Sir* John Conyers, *Kt.*
Azure a manch Or.

221. Thomas Howard, *Earl of* Surrey, *after Lord Treaſurer of* England, *and Duke of* Norfolk.
Quarterly, firſt and fourth Gules a bend betwixt ſix croſs Croſlets fitchee Argent for Howard; ſecond and third, England a label of three Points Argent, for Plantagenet, Brotherton and Mowbray; over the whole a label extended of three Points Argent.

222. Francis Lovell, *Viſcount* Lovell.
Comme, No: 102.

223. *Sir* Richard Ratclift, *Kt.*
Argent a bend ingrailed Sable.

224. *Sir* Thomas Burgh, *Kt. after Lord* Burgh.
Azure three Flower Deluces Ermine.

225. Thomas Stanley, *Lord* Stanley, *after Earl of* Darby:
Argent on a bend Azure, three Stags Heads caboſhed Or, a creſcent diff.

226. *Sir* Richard Tunſtall, *Kt.*
Sable three combs Argent.

Knights elected in the Reign of Ki[ng] Henry VII.

227. John Vere, *Earl of* Oxford.
Comme ſon Beau Pere, No. 112.

228. *Sir*

228. *Sir* Giles d'Aubeny, *after Lord* d'Aubeny.
Gules four fuſils in feſs Argent.

229. Thomas Fitz Alan, *Earl of* Arundel.
This is the ſame Perſon, No. 209. *called* Thomas *Lord* Maltravers, *who ſucceeded his Father* William Fitz Alan, *Earl of* Arundel; *therefore one of them ſhould be out, for other Catalogues have him not temp.* Hen. VII.

230. George Talbot, *Earl of* Shrewsbury.
Comme ſon Beau Pere, No. 171.

231. John Wells, *Viſcount* Wells.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 173.

232. George Stanley, *Lord* Strange.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 225. *in pretence* his Wives Arms, *viz. Strange of knockin, Gules two lyons paſſant in Pale Argent quartering Mohun, Or a Croſs ingrailed Sable.*

233. *Sir* Edward Wydevile, *Knight Banneret.*
Comme, No. 197. *with due difference.*

234. John Dynham, *Lord* Dynham, *Lord Treaſurer of* England.
Gules four fuſils in feſs Ermine.

235. Maximilian, *King of the* Romans, *after Emperor of* Germany.
Or on the breaſt of a ſingle headed Eagle diſplaid Sable, an Eſcochion Quarterly of four firſt, Barry of eight Argent and Gules for Hungary; ſecond, Gules a feſs Argent for Auſtria; third, Gules a lyon rampant with two Tails, armed langued and crowned Or for Bohemia; fourth, bendy Or and Azure, a bordure Gules for Burgundy ancient.

236. *Sir* John Savage, *Kt.*
Quarterly, firſt and fourth, Argent a pale of Loſenges Sable, Daniel pro Savage; ſecond, Or on a feſs Azure, three garbs of the firſt Vernon; third and laſt, Gules a Chevron between three martlets Argent, the ancient Arms of *Savage,* over the whole Atchievement *a label extended of three Points Gules.*

237. *Sir* William Stanley, *Kt. Lord* Chamberlain.
Comme ſon Frere, No. 225. *a creſcent on a Creſcent difference.*

238. *Sir* John Cheney, *Knight Banneret.*
Azure ſix Lyons rampant Argent and Canton Ermine, Shirland's Arms his maternal Anceſtor.

239. Alphonſus, *Duke of* Calabria *and* Naples, *King of* Sicily *and* Jeruſalem.
Quarterly, the firſt Arragon, viz. Or four pales Gules, the ſecond Calabria, viz. *Argent a Croſs potent Sable.*

240. Arthur, *Prince of* Wales.
Quarterly France and England a label Argent.

241. Thomas Grey, *Marquiſs of* Dorſet.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 215.

242. Henry Percy, *Earl of* Northumberland.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 212.

243. Henry Bourchier, *Earl of* Eſſex.
Comme ſon Beau Pere, No. 168, *vel* 83.

244. *Sir* Charles Somerſet, *Knight Banneret, after Earl of* Worceſter, *and Lord* Herbert.
Quarterly France modern and England, a border Gobone Argent and Azure, over all a baſton ſiniſter Argent impaling his Wife *Herbert, viz. per pale Azure and Gules three Lyons rampant Argent.*

245. Robert Willoughby, *Lord* Brook.
Quarterly Ufford and Beke, viz. Sable a Croſs ingrailed Or, and Gules a croſs moline Argent, his maternal Anceſtors; but the proper Arms of his Family, *Or fretty Azure.*

246. *Sir* Edward Poynings, *Kt.*
Barry of ſix Or and Vert, a bend Gules.

247. *Sir* Gilbert Talbot, *Knight Banneret of* Grafton.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 172. *a Creſcent difference.*

248. *Sir* Richard Poole.
Parti per pale Or and Sable, a Saltire ingrailed counterchanged.

249. Edward Stafford, *Duke of* Buckingham.
Quarterly of four, firſt, Comme ſon Pere, No. 208. i. e. *Plantagenet Woodſtock; ſecond, Azure a bend Argent cotiſed between ſix Lyons rampant Or, Bohun* Earl of *Hereford; third, Or a Chevron Gules Stafford; fourth, Azure on a bend Argent cotiſed between ſix Lyons rampant Or, three mullets Gules, Bohun* Earl of *Northampton.*

250. Henry,

250. Henry, *Duke of* York, *after King of* England, *of that Name the eighth.*
Quarterly France and England, a label of three Points Ermine.

251. Edward Courtney, *Earl of* Devonſhire.
Or three Torteauxes.

252. *Sir* Richard Guilford, *Knight Banneret.*
Or a Saltire between four martlets Sable.

253. Edmund de la Pole, *Earl of* Suffolk.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 201.

254. *Sir* Thomas Lovell, *Knight Banneret.*
Argent on a Chevron Azure between three Squirrels, ſexcint Gules, an annulet difference.

255. *Sir* Reginald Bray, *Knight Banneret.*
Argent a Chevron between three Eagles Legs, eraſed a la quiſe Sable.

256. John, *King of* Denmark.
Denmark Comme, No. 124.

257. Guido Ubaldo, *Duke of* Urbin.
Comme, No. 211.

258. Gerald Fitz Gerald, *Earl of* Kildare.
Argent a Saltire Gules.

259. Henry Stafford, *Lord* Stafford, *after Earl of* Wiltſhire.
Plantagenet Woodſtock, a creſcent difference, Comme ſon Frere, No. 249.

260. Richard Grey, *Earl of* Kent.
Barry of ſix Argent and Azure, in chief three Torteauxes.

261. *Sir* Rys ap Thomas, *Knight Banneret.*
Argent a Chevron Sable between three corniſh Choughs proper.

262. Philip, *King of* Caſtile.
Quarterly Caſtile and Leon, Comme, No. 217.

263. *Sir* Thomas Brandon, *Knight Banneret.*
Barry of ten Argent and Gules, over all a Lyon rampant Or Crowned per pale; of the ſecond and laſt, a mullet difference.

264. Charles, *Archduke of* Auſtria, *Prince of* Spain, *after Emperor of* Germany.
Quarterly Caſtile and Leon, Comme, No. 217.

Knights

Knights elected in the Reign of King Henry VIII.

265. Thomas Darcy, *Lord* Darcy.
Azure ſemi of croſs Croſlets, three cinquefoiles Argent.

266. Edward Sutton, *Lord* Dudley.
Comme, No. 178.

267. Emanuel, *King of* Portugal.
Comme, No. 218. *viz. Portugal debruſing a Calatrava Croſs, or a Croſs Flower Deluced, within a bordure of Caſtile.*

268. Thomas Howard, *Lord* Howard, *eldeſt Son to* Thomas, *Duke of* Norfolk, *afterwards Earl of* Surry, *and ſecond Duke of* Norfolk.
Gules a bend between ſix croſs Croſlets fitchee Argent, a label of three Points Or.

269. Thomas Weſt, *Lord* La Ware.
Argent a feſs dancet Sable.

270. *Sir* Henry Marney, *Kt. after Lord* Marney.
Gules a Lyon rampant gardant Argent.

271. George Nevil, *Lord* Abergaveny.
Gules on a Saltire Argent, a Roſe of Lancaſter, i. e. *Gules.*

272. *Sir* Edward Howard, *Kt. ſecond Son to* Thomas, *Duke of* Norfolk, *ſecond Duke of that Family.*
Gules a bend between ſix croſs Croſlets fitchee Argent, a creſcent difference Sable.

273. *Sir* Charles Brandon, *after Duke of* Suffolk.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 264. *but without difference.*

274. Julian de Medices, *Brother to Pope* Leo X.
Or eight roundles in Orle, that in chief of France, viz. Azure charged with three Flower Deluces Gold, the other Gules.

275. Edward Stanley, *Lord* Monteagle, *ſecond Son to the Earl of* Derby.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 225. *in pretence Gules a Lyon rampant Or*, for his Wife *Vaughan.*

276. Thomas Dacres, *Lord* Dacres *of* Gilesſland.
Gules three eſcallops Argent.

277. *Sir* William Sandys, *after Lord* Sandys.
Argent a Croſs ragulee Sable in pretence Bray, his Wives Arms, *viz. Quarterly firſt and fourth, Gules three*

three Bars Vair Longville pro Bray; ſecond and third, Argent a Chevron between three Eagles Legs.

278. Henry Courtney, *Earl of* Devonſhire.

Quarterly firſt and fourth, an Augmentation, *viz. France and England within a Border of England and France Quarterly; ſecond, Courtney, Comme ſon Pere,* No. 251. *third, Rivers,* Earl of *Devonſhire, Or a Lyon rampant Azure.*

279. Ferdinand, *Prince and Infant of* Spain, *Archduke of* Auſtria, *after Emperor of* Germany.

Quarterly Caſtile and Leon, ut No. 216. *a label of three Points Azure, on the Foot of the firſt a Creſcent Or.*

280. *Sir* Richard Wingfield, *Kt.*

Argent on a bend Gules cottiſed Sable, three pair of Wings impailed, of the firſt an Eſtoile of ſixteen Rays.

281. *Sir* Thomas Bullen, *Kt. after Viſcount* Rochford, *and Earl of* Wiltſhire *and* Ormond.

Argent a Chevron Gules between three Bulls-Heads coupee Sable, afterwards his Mother's Arms, *Butler* of *Ormond, Or a chief indented Azure.*

282. Walter d'Evereux, *Lord* Ferrars *of* Chartley, *after Viſcount* Hereford.

Comme ſon Beau Pere, No. 205.

283. Arthur Plantaginet, *Viſcount* Liſle.

Quarterly firſt, France and England; ſecond and third, Ulſter, viz. Or a Croſs Gules; fourth, Mortimer, Earl of *March; viz, Barry of ſix Or and Azure, on a chief of the ſecond a pale two Eſquens baſed dexter and ſiniſter Gold, an Eſcochion Argent, over all a baton ſiniſter Azure.*

284. Robert Radcliff, *Viſcount* Fitz Walter, *after Earl of* Suſſex.

Quarterly firſt and fourth, Argent a bend ingrailed Sable, Radcliff, ſecond and third, Or a feſs between two Chevrons Gules Fitz Walter.

285. William Fitz Alan, *Earl of* Arundel.

Comme ſon Pere, No. 209. but without difference.

286. Thomas Mannors, *Lord* Roos, *after Earl of* Rutland.

Or two Barrs Azure a chief Quarterly, two Flower Deluces of France, and a Lyon of England.

287. Henry Fitz Roy, *after Earl of* Nottingham, *and Duke of* Richmond *and* Somerſet.

Quarterly

Quarterly France and England, a border Quarterly Ermine and compone Argent and Azure a baton ſiniſter of the ſecond.

288. Ralph Nevil, *Earl of* Weſtmorland.
Comme, No. 98.

289. William Blount. *Lord* Montjoy.
Barry nebulee of ſix Or and Sable.

290. *Sir* William Fitz Williams, *Kt. after Earl of* Southampton.
Loſengy Or and Gules a mullet difference.

291. *Sir* Henry Guilford, *Kt.*
Comme ſon Pere, No. 252. *with a Canton of Granada, viz. Argent a Pomegranet ſlipped and leaved all proper.*

292. Francis I. *the* French *King.*
France, viz. Azure three Flower Deluces Or.

293. John Vere, *Earl of* Oxford.
Comme ſon Couſin, No. 227.

294. Henry Percy, *Earl of* Northumberland.
Quarterly; firſt, Percy, Lovain, Or a Lyon rampant Azure; ſecond, Quarterly France modern and England a border gobonne; third, Lucy Gules three Lucies hauriant Argent; fourth, Poynings, Barry of ſix Or and Vert a bend Gules.

295. Anthony Montmorency, *Duke of* Montmorency.
Or a Croſs Gules between ſixteen Eagles diſplaid Azure.

296. Philip Chabot, *Earl of* Newblanch.
Quarterly; firſt and fourth, Or three Chabots Chubs or Chevin Fiſh hauriant Argent; ſecond, Argent a Lyon rampant Gules, Crowned Or; third, Gules a Sun Argent.

297. James V. *King of* Scotland.
Scotland, viz. Or a Lyon rampant within a double treſſure flory counter flory Gules.

298. *Sir* Nicholas Carew, *Kt.*
Or three Lyons paſſant in pale Sable, with due difference.

299. Henry Clifford, *Earl of* Cumberland.
Comme, No. 133.

300. Thomas Cromwell, *Lord* Cromwell, *after Earl of* Eſſex.
Azure on a feſs between three Lyons rampant Or a roſe Gules, on either ſide whereof a Chough proper.

301. John

301. John Ruſſell, *Lord* Ruſſell, *after Earl of* Bedford.
Argent a Lyon rampant Gules on a chief Sable, three eſcallops of the firſt.

302. *Sir* Thomas Cheyney, *Kt.*
Comme ſon Oncle, No. 237.

303. *Sir* William Kingſton, *Kt.*
Azure a feſs between three Leopards faces Or.

304. Thomas Audley, *Lord* Audley *of* Walden, *and Lord Chancellor of* England.
Quarterly per pale indented Or and Azure, in the ſecond and third, an Eagle diſplaid of the firſt, on a bend of the ſecond a fret between two martlets Gold.

305. *Sir* Anthony Browne, *Kt.*
Sable three Lyons paſſant in bend double cotiſed, Argent a Creſcent difference.

306. Edward Seymour, *Earl of* Hertford, *after Duke of* Somerſet.
Quarterly the Augmentation, *viz. Or on a Pile Gules between ſix Flower Deluces Azure, the Lyons of England; ſecond, Seymour, viz. Gules a pair of Wings conjoyned in pale tips downward Or.*

307. Henry Howard, *Earl of* Surrey.
Gules on the middle of a bend between ſix croſs Croſlets Argent, the Augmentation, *viz. an Eſcochion Or, therein a demi Lyon within a double Scotch treſſure Gules, an Arrow transfixing his Mouth, of the laſt a label of three Points Azure.*

308. *Sir* John Gage, *Kt.*
Quarterly per bend dexter and ſiniſter Azure and Argent, a Saltire Gules.

309. *Sir* Anthony Wingfield, *Kt.*
Comme ſon Frere, No. 281. but without the *Eſtoil.*

310. John Sutton, (alias Dudley) *Viſcount* Liſle, *after Earl of* Warwick, *and Duke of* Northumberland.
Or two Lyons paſſant in pale Azure, Somery his maternal Anceſtor.

311. William Paulet, *Lord* St. John *of* Baſing, *after Earl of* Wiltſhire, *and Marquiſs of* Wincheſter.
Sable three Swords in pile Points conjoyned in baſe Argent Hilts Or, a Creſcent difference.

312. William Parr, *Lord* Parr *of* Kendall, *after Earl of* Eſſex, *and Marquiſs of* Northampton.

Argent

Argent two Bars Azure a border ingrailed Sable, vide ſon Beau Pere, No. 210.

313. *Sir* John Wallop, *Kt.*
Argent a bend unde Sable.

314. Henry Fitz Alan, *Earl of* Arundel.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 285.

315. *Sir* Anthony St. Leger, *Kt.*
Azure frette Argent a chief Or.

316. Francis Talbot, *Earl of* Shrewsbury.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 172.

317. Thomas Wriotheſley, *Lord* Wriotheſley, *after Earl of* Southampton.
Azure a Croſs Or between four Falcons Argent.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Edward VI.

318. Henry Grey, *Marquiſs of* Dorſet, *after Duke of* Suffolk.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 241.

319. Edward Stanley, *Earl of* Derby.
Comme, No. 225.

320. Thomas Seymour, *Lord* Seymour *of* Sudley.
Comme ſon Frere, No. 307. *with a Creſcent or Mullet difference.*

321. *Sir* William Paget, *Kt. after Lord* Paget.
Sable on a Croſs ingrailed between four Eagles diſplaid Argent, five Lyons paſſant of the firſt.

322. Francis Haſtings, *Earl of* Huntingdon.
Comme, No. 189.

323. George Brook, *Lord* Cobham.
Gules on a Chevron Argent, a Lyon rampant Sable Crowned Or.

324. Thomas Weſt, *Lord* La Ware.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 269.

325. *Sir* William Herbert, *Kt. after Lord* Herbert *of* Cardiff, *and Earl of* Pembroke.
Perti per pale Azure and Gules, three Lyons rampant Argent, a border Gobonee Or, and of the ſecond beſanted.

326. Henry II. *the* French *King.*
France Comme, No. 292.

327. Edward

327. Edward Clinton, alias Fines, *Lord* Clinton, *after Earl of* Lincoln.
Argent six croſs Croſlets fitchee Sable on a chief Azure, two mullets Or pierced Gules.

328. Thomas Darcy, *Lord* Darcy *of* Chiche.
Argent three cinquefoiles Gules.

329. Henry Nevil, *Earl of* Weſtmorland.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 288.

330. *Sir* Andrew Dudley, *Kt.*
Or a Lyon rampant quevee fourchee Vert a Creſcent difference.

Knights elected in the Reign of Queen Mary.

331. Philip, *Prince of* Spain, *after King of* England, *by that Name the ſecond.*
Quarterly Caſtile and Leon, Comme, No. 262.

332. Henry Ratcliff, *Earl of* Suſſex.
Argent a bend ingrailed Sable.

333. Emanuel Philibert, *Duke of* Savoy.
Tierce emanche towards the chief the dexter Weſtphalia or ancient Saxony, viz. Gules on Horſe enraged Argent the ſame counterturned; the ſiniſter Saxony modern, viz. barry of eight Or and Sable, over all a chaplet of rue Vert in bend, ente in baſe Angria, viz. Argent three bouteroles Gules.

334. William Howard, *Lord* Howard *of* Effingham.
Gules on a bend between ſix croſs Croſlets Argent, the *Scotch* Augmentation, *Comme*, No. 307. *a mullet difference.*

335. Anthony Browne, *Viſcount* Montagu.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 305.

336. *Sir* Edward Haſtings, *Kt. after Lord* Haſtings *of* Loughborough.
Comme ſon Frere, No. 322. *a creſcent difference.*

337. Thomas Ratcliff, *Earl of* Suſſex.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 332.

338. William Grey, *Lord* Grey *of* Wilton.
Barry of ſix Argent and Azure, a label of five Points Gules.

339. *Sir* Robert Rocheſter.
Checquy Argent and Gules on a feſs Azure, three eſcallops Or.

Knights

Knights elected in the Reign of Queen Elizabeth.

340. Thomas Howard, *Duke of* Norfolk.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 308. but without the *label*, *viz. Howard* with the *Scotch* Augmentation in the middle of the *bend*.

341. Henry Manners, *Earl of* Rutland.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 286.

342. *Sir* Robert Dudley, *Kt. after Earl of* Leiceſter.
Comme ſon Oncle, No. 330.

343. Adolphus, *Duke of* Holſtein.
Norway, *viz. Gules a Lyon rampant Argent crowned Or, holding, or ſupporting with three of his Feet, a daniſh Battle Ax, of the laſt headed as the ſecond.*

344. George Talbot, *Earl of* Shrewsbury.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 316.

345. Henry Carey, *Lord* Hunſdon.
Argent, on a bend Sable three Roſes of the Field, a creſcent on a creſcent difference.

346. Thomas Percy, *Earl of* Northumberland.
Comme, No. 212. *viz. Percy, Lovain, and Lucy, Quarterly.*

347. Ambroſe Dudley, *Earl of* Warwick.
Comme ſon Frere, No. 342. without the *creſcent* diſtinction.

348. Charles IX. *the* French *King*.
France, *Comme*, No. 326.

349. Francis Ruſſel, *Earl of* Bedford.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 301.

350. *Sir* Henry Sidney, *Kt.*
Or a Pheon Azure.

351. Maximilian II. *Emperor of* Germany.
Or, on the Breaſt of an imperial Eagle, i. e. double headed and diſplaid Sable, an Eſcochion of Hungary and Bohemia, viz. barry of eight Argent and Gules impailing Gules, a Lyon rampant Argent crowned Or.

352. Henry Haſtings, *Earl of* Huntingdon.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 322.

353. William Somerſet, *Earl of* Worceſter.
Or, on a feſs France and England, Quarterly and borded gobonee Argent and Azure.

354. Francis

354. Francis Montmorency, *Duke of* Montmorency.
Comme, No. 295.

355. Walter d'Evereux, *Viſcount* Hereford, *after Earl of* Eſſex.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 282.

356. William Cecill, *Lord* Burghley, *after Lord Treaſurer of* England.
Barry of ten Argent and Azure on ſix Eſcocheons Sable, as many Lyons rampant of the firſt.

357. Arthur Grey, *Lord* Grey *of* Wilton.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 338.

358. Edmund Bruges, *Lord* Chandos.
Argent on a Croſs Sable, a Leopard's Face Or.

359. Henry Stanley, *Earl of* Derby.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 319.

360. Henry Herbert, *Earl of* Pembroke.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 325. *omitting the beſants.*

361. Henry III. *the* French *King*.
France Comme, No. 348.

362. Charles Howard, *Lord* Howard *of* Effingham, *after Earl of* Nottingham.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 334. *viz. Howard*, with a *mullet difference.*

363. Rodolph, *Emperor of* Germany.
Comme, No. 351.

364. Frederick II. *King of* Denmark.
Denmark, Comme, No. 257. but the *Lyons* crowned *Or.*

365. John Caſimire, *Count Palatine of the* Rhine.
Quarterly; firſt and fourth, the Palatinate, viz. Sable a Lyon rampant Or, crowned Gules; ſecond and third, loſongy bend-wiſe, Argent and Azure for Bavaria.

366. Edward Manners, *Earl of* Rutland.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 341.

367. William Brook, *Lord* Cobham.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 323.

368. Henry Scrope, *Lord* Scrope *of* Bolton.
Comme, No. 190.

369. Robert d'Evereux, *Earl of* Eſſex.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 355.

370. Thomas Butler, *Earl of* Ormond *and* Oſſery.
Or a chief indented Azure.

371. *Sir* Chriſtopher Hatton, *Kt. after Lord Chancellor of* England.
Azure a Chevron between three garbs Or.

372. Henry Ratcliff, *Earl of* Suſſex.
Comme ſon Frere, No. 337.

373. Thomas Sackville, *Lord* Buckhurſt, *after Lord Treaſurer of* England, *and Earl of* Dorſet.
Quarterly; *Or and Gules a bend vaire.*

374. Henry IV. *the* French *King.*
France, Comme, No. 361.

375. James VI. *King of* Scotland, *after King of* England, France, *and* Ireland.
Scotland, Comme, No. 297.

376. Gilbert Talbot, *Earl of* Shrewsbury.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 316.

377. George Clifford, *Earl of* Cumberland.
Comme ſon Beau Pere, No. 299.

378. Henry Percy, *Earl of* Northumberland.
Comme ſon Frere, No. 346.

379. Edward Somerſet, *Earl of* Worceſter.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 353.

380. Thomas Burogh, *Lord* Burogh.
Azure three Flower Deluces Ermine.

381. Edmond Sheffield, *Lord* Sheffield, *after Earl of* Mulgrave.
Argent a Chevron between three garbs Gules.

382. *Sir* Francis Knolles, *Kt.*
Azure cruſily, a Croſs moline voided Or.

383. Frederick, *Duke of* Wirtenbergh.
Or three Staggs attires placed Bar-ways Sable, id eſt, *Wirtenbergh.*

384. Thomas Howard, *Lord* Howard *of* Walden, *after Earl of* Suffolk, *and Lord Treaſurer of* England.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 340. with a *Creſcent difference.*

385. George Carey, *Lord* Hunſdon.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 345.

386. Charles Blount, *Lord* Montjoy, *after Earl of* Devonſhire.
Comme, No. 289.

387. *Sir* Henry Lea, *Kt.*
Argent a feſs between three Creſcents Sable.

388. Robert Ratcliff, *Earl of* Suſſex.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 372.

389. Henry

389. Henry Brook, *Lord* Cobham.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 367.

390. Thomas Scrope, *Lord* Scrope *of* Bolton.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 368.

391. William Stanley, *Earl of* Derby.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 359.

392. Thomas Cecil, *Lord* Burghley, *after Earl of* Exeter.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 356.

Knights elected in the Reign of King James I.

393. Henry, *Prince of* Wales.
Quarterly; *firſt and fourth*, *France and England quartered*; *ſecond*, *Scotland*, *viz. Or a Lyon rampant within a double treſſure counterflory Gules*; *third*, *Ireland*, *Azure an Harp or String Argent*, *over all a label of three Points Argent.*

394. Chriſtian IV. *King of* Denmark.
Denmark, *Comme*, No. 364.

395. Lodowich Stewart, *Duke of* Lenox, *and after Duke of* Richmond.
Quarterly; *firſt*, the Augmentation, *viz. France within a border couſu Gules, charged with eight round Buckles Or*; *ſecond*, *Or a feſs checquy*, *Argent and Azure*, *a border ingrailed Gules*, *for Stewart*, *over all in pretence Lenox*, *viz. Argent a Saltire ingrailed between four cinquefoils or roſes Gules.*

396. Henry Wriotheſley, *Earl of* Southampton.
Comme ſon Beau Pere, No. 317.

397. John Erskin, *Earl of* Marr.
Azure a bend between ſix croſs Croſlets fitchee Or, his Title of *Marr*, his proper Coat, *Argent a pale Sable.*

398. William Herbert, *Earl of* Pembroke.
Parti per Pale, *Azure and Gules*, *three Lyons rampant Argent.*

399. Ulrick, *Duke of* Holſtein.
Norway, *Comme*, No. 344. but the *Lyon* crowned *Or*.

400. Henry Howard, *Earl of* Northampton.
Comme ſon Frere, No. 341. *a Creſcent difference.*

401. Robert Cecil, *Earl of* Salisbury.
Comme ſon Frere, No. 392. with a *Creſcent difference.*

402. Thomas Howard, *Viſcount* Bindon.
Comme ſon Frere, No. 268. *viz*. *Howard* with a *Creſcent difference*, and without the *label*.

403. George Hinne, *Earl of* Dunbarr.
Vert a Lyon rampant Argent.

404. Philip Herbert, *Earl of* Montgomery, *after Earl of* Pembroke.
Comme ſon Frere, No. 398. *a Creſcent difference*.

405. Charles Stewart, *Duke of* York, *after Prince of* Wales, *and King of* England, *of that Name the firſt*.
Quarterly; *firſt and fourth*, *France and England*; *ſecond*, *Scotland*; *third*, *Ireland*; *Comme ſon Frere*, No. 393. *on a label of three Points Argent*, *nine Torteauxes*.

406. Thomas Howard, *Earl of* Arundel, *after Earl of* Norfolk.
Comme ſon Beau Pere, No. 340.

407. Robert Carr, *Viſcount* Rocheſter, *after Earl of* Somerſet.
Gules on a Chevron Argent, *three Mullets Sable in the dexter chief Point*, *a Lyon of England*, Augmentation and *difference*.

408. Frederick, *Count Palatine of the* Rhine, *Prince Elector of the Empire*, *and after King of* Bohemia.
Quarterly; *the Palatinate and Bavaria*, *Comme*, No. 365. *in pretence* the Augmentation, *viz*. *Gules an Imperial mound or globe Or*.

409. Maurice Van Naſſau, *Prince of* Orange.
Azure billettee a Lyon rampant O ; i. e. *Naſſau*.

410. Thomas Ereskine, *Viſcount* Fenton, *after Earl of* Kelly.
Quarterly; *firſt*, the Augmentation *Gules*, *an imperial Crown within a double Treſſure counterflory Or*; *ſecond*, Erskine, *Comme*, No. 397. with a *Creſcent difference*.

411. William Knolles, *Lord* Knolles, *after Viſcount* Wallingford, *and Earl of* Banbury.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 382.

412. Francis Manners, *Earl of* Rutland.
Comme ſon Oncle, No. 366.

413. *Sir*

413. *Sir* George Villiers, *Kt. after Baron of* Whaddon, *then Earl and Marquiſs of* Buckingham, *and laſtly, Earl of* Coventry, *and Duke of* Buckingham.
Argent on a Croſs Gules five Eſcallops Or, a martlet difference.

414. Robert Sidney, *Viſcount* Liſle, *after Earl of* Leiceſter.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 350.

415. James Hamilton, *Marquiſs* Hamilton, *and Earl of* Cambridge.
Gules three cinquefoiles pierced Ermine.

416. Eſme Stewart, *Duke of* Lenox, *and Earl of* March.
Comme ſon Frere, No. 395.

417. Chriſtian, *Duke of* Brunſwick.
Gules two Lyons paſſant gardant in pale Or, which is *Brunſwick.*

418. William Cecill, *Earl of* Salisbury.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 401.

419. James Hay, *Earl of* Carliſle.
Argent three Eſcocheons Gules.

420. Edward Sackvile, *Earl of* Dorſet.
Comme ſon Beau Pere, No. 373.

421. Henry Rich, *Earl of* Holland.
Gules a Chevron between three Croſſes bottonee Or.

422. Thomas Howard, *Viſcount* Andover, *after Earl of* Barkſhire.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 384. *viz. Howard*, with a *Creſcent* on a *Creſcent difference.*

Knights elected in the Reign of King Charles I.

423. Claude de Lorrain, *Duke of* Chevereux.
Hungary, viz. Barry of eight Argent and Gules; his proper Arms being *Lorrain, viz. Or on a bend Gules three Alerions* [*Doves*, or as others, *Eaglets* without *becques*,] *diſplaid Argent.*

424. Guſtavus Adolphus, *King of* Sweden.
Sweden, viz. Azure three Crowns Or.

425. Henry Frederick Van Naſſau, *Prince of* Orange.
Naſſau, Comme ſon Frere, No. 409.

426. Theophilus Howard, *Earl of* Suffolk.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 384.

427. William Compron, *Earl of* Northampton.
Sable three Helmets Argent with a Lyon of England Augmentation in *feſs* between them.

428. Richard Weſton, *Lord* Weſton, *Lord Treaſurer of* England, *and after Earl of* Portland.
Or, an Eagle regardant diſplaid Sable.

429. Robert Bertie, *Earl of* Lindſey.
Argent three battering Rams proper armed and garniſhed Or.

430. William Cecil, *Earl of* Exeter.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 392.

431. James Hamilton, *Marquiſs of* Hamilton, *Earl of* Cambridge *and* Arran.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 415.

432. Charles Lodowick, *Count Palatine of the* Rhine, *Prince Elector of the Empire, and Duke of* Bavaria.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 408.

433. James Stewart, *Duke of* Lenox, *and Earl of* March, *after Duke of* Richmond.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 416.

434. Henry Danvers, *Earl of* Danby.
Gules a Chevron between three mullets of ſix Points Or.

435. William Douglas, *Earl of* Morton.
Quarterly; firſt and fourth, Morton Argent on a chief indented Gules, two mullets of the firſt; ſecond and third, Douglaſs, Comme, No. 193.

436. Algernon Percy, *Earl of* Northumberland.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 378.

437. Charles, *Prince of* Wales, *after King of* England, *of that Name the ſecond.*
Comme ſon Oncle, No. 393.

438. Thomas Wentworth, *Earl of* Strafford.
Sable a Chevron between three Leopards faces Or.

439. James Stewart, *Duke of* York, *after King* James, *of that Name the ſecond.*
Comme ſon Frere, No. 437. *viz.* the national Arms with a *label Ermine.*

440. Rupert, *Count Palatine of the* Rhine, *and Duke of* Bavaria, *after Earl of* Holderneſs, *and Duke of* Cumberland, *ſecond Son of the King of* Bohemia.
Comme ſon Frere aiſne, No. 432. but without the Augmentation, No. 405. *viz. the Palatinate and Bavaria quarterly.*

441. Wil-

441. William Van Naſſau, *Prince of* Orange.
Naſſau, Comme ſon Pere, No. 425.

442. Bernard de Nogaret de Foix, *Duke* de Eſpernon *and* de Valette.
Quarterly; Caſtile and Leon, Comme, No. 331. *in pretence Nogaret, viz. Or a Nut-tree eradicated proper impailing Thouloſe,* i. e. *Gules a Croſs urdee voided Or, and pomellee as the Points Or, over both Coats a chief of Valette, viz. Gules a Croſs potent Argent.*

Knights elected in the Reign of King Charles II.

443. Maurice, *Count Palatine of the* Rhine, *and Duke of* Bavaria, *third Son of the King of* Bohemia.
Comme ſon Frere aiſne, No. 440.

444. James Butler, *Marquiſs of* Ormond, *after Earl of* Brecknock, *and Duke of* Ormond, *in* Ireland *and* England.
Comme, No. 370.

445. Edward, *Count Palatine of the* Rhine, *and Duke of* Bavaria, *fifth Son of the King of* Bohemia.
Comme ſon Frere aiſne, No. 443. *viz. the Palatinate and Bavaria quarterly.*

446. George Villiers, *Duke of* Buckingham.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 413.

447. William Hamilton-Dowglaſs, *Duke of* Hamilton.
Quarterly; firſt, Hamilton, Comme, No. 415. *ſecond, Dowglaſs, Comme,* No. 193.

448. Thomas Wriotheſley, *Earl of* Southampton.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 396.

449. William Cavendiſh, *Marquiſs of* Newcaſtle, *after Duke of* Newcaſtle.
Sable three Harts heads caboſhed Argent, a Creſcent difference.

450. James Graham, *Marquiſs of* Montroſe.
Or on a chief Sable, three eſcallops of the firſt.

451. James Stanley, *Earl of* Darby.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 391.

452. George Digby, *Earl of* Briſtol.
Azure a Flower Deluce Argent, a Creſcent difference.

453. Henry Stewart, *Duke of* Glouceſter, *third Son to King* Charles I.
Quarterly; *firſt and fourth, France and England, Quarterly*; *ſecond, Scotland*; *third, Ireland, on a label Argent nine Roſes of Lancaſter.*

454. Henry Charles de la Tremoville, *Prince* de Tarente.
Arragon, Sicily, viz. parti per Saltire the chief and baſe Or, four pales Gules for Arragon; *the ſecond and third, Argent an Eagle diſplaid Sable for Sicily in pretence*, his paternal Arms, *viz. Tremoville, Or a Chevron Gules between three Eagles diſplaid Azure.*

455. William Van Naſſau, *Prince of* Orange, *after King of* England, *of that Name the third.*
Naſſau, Comme ſon Pere, No. 441.

456. Frederick William, *Prince Elector of the* Empire, *Marquiſs of* Brandenburgh.
Argent an Eagle diſplaid Gules, which is *Brandenburgh.*

457. John Gaſpar Ferdinand de Marchin, *Count de* Gravil.
Quarterly; *firſt and fourth, Argent a Fiſh hauriant Gules*; *ſecond and third, Or two barrs Sable.*

458. *Sir* George Monk, *Kt. after Duke of* Albermarle.
Gules a Chevron between three Lyons Heads eraſed Argent.

459. *Sir* Edward Montague, *Kt. after Earl of* Sandwich.
Quarterly, Montague and Monthermer, viz. Argent three Loſenges in feſs Gules, a border Sable and Or, an Eagle diſplaid Vert, over all a Mullet difference

460. William Seymour, *Marquiſs of* Hertford, *after Duke of* Somerſet.
Comme, No. 306. *a Creſcent difference.*

461. Aubrey de Vere, *Earl of* Oxford.
Comme, No. 293.

462. Charles Stewart, *Duke of* Richmond *and* Lenox.
Comme ſon Oncle, No. 433.

463. Montague Bertie, *Earl of* Lindſey.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 429.

464. Edward Montague, *Earl of* Mancheſter.
Comme ſon Couſin, but with a *Creſcent difference.*

465. William Wentworth, *Earl of* Strafford.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 438.

466. Chriſtierne, *Prince of* Denmark, *after King of* Denmark.
Denmark, Comme, No. 394.

467. James

467. James Scot, *Duke of* Monmouth *and* Bucclugh.
The Imperial Arms of King *Charles* II. *a baſton ſiniſter Argent, In pretence, Scot of Bucclugh, viz. Or on a bend Azure, a Creſcent between two Mullets.*

468. James Stuart, *Duke of* Cambridge, *Son of* James, *Duke of* York.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 439. *viz.* the national Arms, *with a label of five Points Ermine.*

469. Charles IX. *King of* Sweden, Goths *and* Vandalls.
Sweden, Comme, No. 424.

470. John George II. *Duke of* Saxony, Juliers, Cleves *and* Monts, *and Prince Elector of the* Empire.
Quarterly; firſt, Thuringe, viz. a Lyon rampant barry of ten Argent and Gules.

471. Chriſtopher Monk, *Duke of* Albermarle.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 458.

472. John Maitland, *Duke of* Lauderdale.
Or a Lyon rampant diſmembred, Gules within a double treſſure counterflory Azure.

473. Henry Somerſet, *Marquiſs of* Worceſter, *after Duke of* Beaufort.
Quarterly, France and England, a border gobone Argent and Azure.

474. Henry Jermyn, *Earl of St.* Albans.
Sable a Creſcent between two Mullets in pale Argent.

475. William Ruſſell, *Earl of* Bedford, *after Duke of* Bedford.
Comme, No. 346.

476. Henry Bennet, *Earl of* Arlington.
Gules between three demi Lyons rampant couped Argent, a beſant after changed to an imperial mound, ſerving for both difference and Augmentation.

477. Thomas Butler, *Earl of* Oſſory.
Comme ſon Pere, No. 444.

478. Charles Fitz Roy, *Earl of* Southampton, *after Duke of* Southampton, *and now Duke of* Cleveland.
The Imperial Arms of *England, a Battune Siniſter Ermine difference.*

479. John, *Earl of* Mulgrave, *now Duke of* Buckingham.
Arragon a Chevron between three Garbs Gules.

480. William Cavendiſh, *Duke of* Newcaſtle.
Comme, No. 447.

481. Thomas

481. Thomas Osborn, *Earl of* Danby, *after Duke of* Leeds
Quarterly, Ermine and Azure a Croſs Or.

482. Henry Fitz Roy, *Duke of* Grafton.
The Arms of King Charles II. *with a Battoon Siniſter Gobony Argent and Azure.*

483. William, *Earl of* Salisbury.
Barry of ten Pieces Argent and Azure on ſix Eſcocheons Siniſter, as many Lyons rampant; of the firſt, a Creſcent difference.

484. Charles, *Count Palatine of the* Rhine.
Comme, No. 445.

485. Charles, *Duke of* Richmond.
The Arms of King *Charles* II. *within a Bordure Gobony Argent and Gules, the Argent charg'd with Roſes as the ſecond.*

486. George, *Prince of* Denmark.
Denmark, Comme, No. 466.

487. Charles Seymour, *Duke of* Somerſet, *&c.*
Quarterly; firſt, an Augmentation, *viz. Or on a Pile Gules, between ſix Flower Deluces Azure, three Lyons of England; ſecond,* the paternal Coat of *Seymour, Gules, two Wings conjoined in Lure Or.*

488. George Fitzroy, *Duke of* Northumberland.

Knights elected in the Reign of King James II.

489. Henry Howard, *Duke of* Norfolk.
Comme, No. 426.

490. Henry Mordaunt, *Earl of* Peterborough.
Argent a Chevron between three Eſtoils Wavy.

491. Laurence Hyde, *Earl of* Rocheſter.
Azure, a Chevron between three Lozenges, a Creſcent difference.

492. Louis de Duras, *Earl of* Feverſham.
Quarterly; firſt and fourth, Gules a Lyon rampant Argent; ſecond and third, Argent a bend Azure, with a label of three Points difference.

493. Robert Spencer, *Earl of* Sunderland.
Quarterly, Argent and Gules, in ſecond a Fret Or, over all a bend Sable, charged with three eſchallops of the firſt.

Knights

Knights elected in the Reign of King William *and Queen* Mary, *and King* William.

94. James Butler, *Duke of* Ormond.
Or, a chief indented Azure.

95. Frederick Schonbergh, *Duke of* Schonbergh.
Argent, an Eſcocheon Sable, over all a Carbuncle of eight Rays Or, a Creſcent difference.

96. William Cavendiſh, *Duke of* Devonſhire, *then Earl of* Devonſhire.
Sable, three Hearts Heads caboſhed, Argent.

97. Charles Sackville, *Earl of* Dorſet *and* Middleſex.
Quarterly, Or and Gules a bend Vaire.

98. Frederick III. *Marquiſs of* Brandenburgh, *Prince Elector, and Great Chamberlain of the Holy* Roman Empire; *after King of* Pruſſia.
Comme, No. 456.

99. George-William, *Duke of* Brunſwick *and* Lunenburg-Zell, *Prince of the Holy* Roman Empire.

00. Charles Talbot, *Duke of* Shrewsbury.
Gules a Lyon rampant, within a border ingrailed Or.

01. *Prince* William, *Duke of* Glouceſter.
The Arms of *England, with a label of three Points Argent*, the middlemoſt charged with the *Croſs of* St. *George, and an Eſcocheon* of his paternal Coat of *Denmark.*

02. John Holles, *Duke of* Newcaſtle.
Ermine, two Piles, their Points meeting in *baſe Sable.*

03. William Bentinck, *Earl of* Portland.
Azure, a Croſs Moline Argent.

04. Thomas Herbert, *Earl of* Pembroke *and* Montgomery.
Comme, No. 404.

05. Arnoldjooſt Van Keppel, *Earl of* Albermarle.
Gules, three eſchallops Argent.

06. James Dowglaſs, *Duke of* Queensbury *and* Dover.
Quarterly; firſt and fourth, a Heart Gules, Crown'd with an Imperial Crown Or, on a chief, Azure, three Mullets Argent; ſecond and third, Azure, a Bend Or, ſix croſs Croſlets of the ſame, all within a double Treſſure Counterflory Gules.

507. George-

507. George-Lewis, *Elector of* Brunſwick-Lunenburgh, *&c. the preſent Sovereign.*

Knights elected in the Reign of Queen ANNE.

508. Wriotheſly Ruſſel, *Duke of* Bedford.
Comme, No. 475.

509. John Churchill, *Duke of* Marlborough.
Sable, a Lyon rampant Argent, on a Canton of the ſecond, St. George's *Croſs.*

510. Meinhardt Schonbergh, *Duke of* Schonbergh.
Comme, No. 495.

510. Sidney Godolphin, *Earl of* Godolphin.
Gules, an Eagle with two Heads diſplay'd between 3 *Fleurs de Lis Argent.*

511. George Auguſtus, *Prince Electoral of* Hanover, *now Prince of* Wales.

512. William Cavendiſh, *Duke of* Devonſhire.
Comme, No. 496.

513. John Campbell, *Duke of* Argyle.
Girony of eight Pieces, Or and Sable.

514. James Hamilton, *Duke of* Hamilton *and* Brandon: *Placed here in his Order of Election, but lived not to be inſtalled.*
Comme, No. 447.

515. Henry Beaufort, *Duke of* Somerſet.
Comme, No. 473.

516. Henry de Grey, *Duke of* Kent.
Barry of ſix Argent and Azure.

517. John Poulett, *Earl* Poulett.
Sable, three Swords, their Points in Pile Argent, the Hilts Or.

518. Robert Harley, *Earl of* Oxford *and Earl* Mortimer.
Or, a bend cotiſed Sable.

519. Thomas Wentworth, *Earl of* Strafford.
Sable, a Chevron between three Leopards Heads Or.

520. Charles Mordant, *Earl of* Peterborough *and* Monmouth.
Comme, No. 490.

Knights elected by King George.

521. Charles Poulet, *Duke of* Bolton.
Sable, three Swords, their Points in pile Argent, their Hilts Or, a Creſcent difference.

522. John Maners, *Duke of* Rutland.
Comme, No. 412.

523. Lionel-Cranfield Sackvil, *Earl of* Dorſet *and* Middleſex.
Comme, No. 497.

524. Charles Montague, *Earl of* Halifax.
Argent three Lozenges in feſs Gules, within a border Sable difference.

A Catalogue of the ſeveral Officers of this moſt Noble Order, to this Time.

Prelates of the Order.

1. William de Edyngton, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter, *Lord Treaſurer, and after Lord Chancellor of* England.
2. William de Wykham, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter, *Prieſt, Cardinal of St.* Euſebius, *and Lord Chancellor of* England.
3. Henry Beaufort, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter, *Prieſt, Cardinal,* &c. *and Lord Chancellor of* England.
4. William de Waynfleet, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter, *and Lord Chancellor of* England.
5. Peter Courtney, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter.
6. Thomas Langton, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter.
7. Richard Fox, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter, *and Lord Privy-Seal.*
8. Thomas Wolſey, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter, *Prieſt, Cardinal,* &c. *and Lord Chancellor of* England.

9. Stephen

9. Stephen Gardiner, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter.
10. John Poynet, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter.
11. Stephen Gardiner *reſtored, and made Lord Chancellor of* England.
12. John White, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter.
13. Robert Horne, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter.
14. John Watſon, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter.
15. Thomas Cooper, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter.
16. William Wykham, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter.
17. William Day, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter.
18. Thomas Bilſon, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter.
19. James Montague, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter.
20. Lancelot Andrews, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter.
21. Richard Neyle, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter.
22. Walter Curle, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter.
23. Brian Duppa, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter.
24. George Morley, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter.
25. Peter Mew, *Biſhop of* Wincheſter.
26. *Sir* Jonathan Trelawny, *Bar. now Biſhop of* Wincheſter.

Chancellors of the Order.

1. Richard Beauchamp, *Biſhop of* Salisbury, *and Dean of* Windſor.
2. Lionel Woodevelle, *Biſhop of* Salisbury.
3. Thomas Langton, *Biſhop of* Salisbury.
4. John Blyth, *Biſhop of* Salisbury.
5. Henry Dean, *Biſhop of* Salisbury.
6. Edmond Audley, *Biſhop of* Salisbury.
7. *Sir* William Cecil, *Kt. Secretary of State.*
8. *Sir* William Peters, *Kt. Secretary of State.*
9. *Sir* Thomas Smith, *Kt. Secretary of State.*
10. *Sir* Francis Walſingham, *Kt. Secretary of State.*
11. *Sir* Amias Paulet, *Kt. Secretary of State.*
12. *Sir* John Woolee, *Kt. Secretary for the* Latin *Tongue.*
13. *Sir* Edward Dyer, *Kt.*
14. *Sir* John Herbert, *Kt. Secretary of State.*
15. *Sir* George More, *Kt.*
16. *Sir* Francis Crane, *Kt.*
17. *Sir* Thomas Row, *Kt.*
18. *Sir* James Palmer, *Kt.*
19. *Sir* Henry de Vick, *Bar.*

20. Seth Ward, *Biſhop of* Salisbury.
21. Gilbert Burnet, *now Biſhop of* Salisbury.

Regiſters of the Order.

1. John Coringham, *Canon of* Windſor.
2. John Deepden, *Canon of* Windſor.
3. James Goldwell, *Canon of* Windſor.
4. Oliver King, *Canon of* Windſor, *Secretary to Prince Henry, Son of King* Henry VI. *To King* Edward IV, V. *and* Henry VII.
5. Richard Nix, *Canon of* Windſor.
6. Chriſtopher Urſwick, *Dean of* Windſor.
7. Thomas Wolſey, *the Kings Almoner.*
8. William Atwater, *Canon of* Windſor, *after Biſhop of* Lincoln.
9. Nicholas Weſt, *Dean of* Windſor.
10. John Veſcy, *Dean of* Windſor.
11. Richard Sydnor, *Canon of* Windſor.
12. Robert Aldridge, *Canon of* Windſor.
13. Owen Oglethorp, *Dean of* Windſor.
14. John Boxal, *Dean of* Windſor, *and Secretary of State.*
15. George Carew, *Dean of* Windſor.
16. William Day, *Dean of* Windſor.
17. Robert Benet, *Dean of* Windſor.
18. Giles Thompſon, *Dean of* Windſor, *and Biſhop of* Glouceſter.
19. Anthony Maxey, *Dean of* Windſor.
20. Marc Antonio de Dominis, *Archbiſhop of* Spalato, *Dean of* Windſor.
21. Henry Beaumont, *Dean of* Windſor.
22. Matthew Wren, *Dean of* Windſor.
23. Chriſtopher Wren, *Dean of* Windſor.
24. Brune Ryves, *Dean of* Windſor.
25. *Dr.* Gregory Heskard, *Dean of* Windſor.
26. *Dr.* John Robinſon, *Dean of* Windſor, *ſince Biſhop of* London.
27. *Dr.* George Verney, *Lord* Willoughby *of* Brook, *now Dean of* Windſor.

Garters

Garters King of Arms.

1. *Sir* William Brugges, *Kt.*
2. John Smert.
3. *Sir* John Writh, *Kt.*
4. *Sir* Thomas Wriotheſley, *Kt.*
5. *Sir* Thomas Wall, *Kt.*
6. *Sir* Chriſtopher Barker, *Kt.*
7. *Sir* Gilbert Dethick, *Kt.*
8. *Sir* William Dethick, *Kt.*
9. *Sir* William Segar, *Kt.*
10. *Sir* John Borough, *Kt.*
11. *Sir* Henry St. George, *Kt.*
12. *Sir* Edward Walker, *Kt.*
13. *Sir* William Dugdale.
14. *Sir* Thomas St. George.
15. *Sir* Henry St. George.

Uſhers of the Black-Rod.

1. William Whitehorſe.
2. John Cray.
3. Thomas Sye.
4. John Athelbrig.
5. William Evington, *and* Edward Hardgyll.
6. Robert Marleton.
7. Ralph Aſhton, *and* Hugh Dennys.
8. *Sir* William Compton, *Kt.*
9. Henry Norreſſe, *Eſq;*
10. Anthony Knyvet, *Eſq;*
11. *Sir* Philip Hobby, *Kt.*
12. John Norres, *and* William Norres, *Eſqrs;*
13. Anthony Wingfield, *Eſq;*
14. Richard Coningsbye, *Eſq;*
15. James Maxwell, *Eſq;*
16. Peter Newton, *Eſq;*
17. *Sir* John Ayton, *Kt.*
18. *Sir* Edward Carteret, *Kt.*
19. *Sir* Thomas Duppa.
20. *Sir* Fleetwood Shepard.
21. *Sir* David Mitchell.
22. *Sir* William Oldes.

APPENDIX.

The Statutes of Inſtitution of the moſt Noble Order *of the* Garter, *as they were reform'd and explain'd by King* Henry VIII.

WHereas the mooſt famous, mooſt happieſt, and victorious Prynce *Edwarde*, the thirde of that Name, his Noble Progenitour ſometyme Kyng of *England* and of *Fraunce*, and Lord of *Irland*, &c. To th' onnoure of Almighti God, and of the Bleſſed and Immaculate Virgyn *Marie*, and the Bleſſed Martir Sainte *George*, Patron of the right Noble Roialme of *England*; and of Saynt *Edwarde*, Kyng and Confeſſour; To the exaltation of the holy Faith Catholique, ordeyned, eſtabliſhed, created, and founded within the Caſtel of *Wyndeſore*, a Company of twenty ſix Noble and Worthi Knyghtes, for to be of the ſaid mooſt Noble Ordre of Saynt *George*, named the Gartier, and for the honourable continuance, augmentation, and interteyning of the ſame.

The ſeid mooſt victorious Kyng did devyſe and inſtitute divers honorable Eſtatuts, and laudable Ordinances, for to be obſerved and kept by the Cobrethren and Confreres, Knyghtes and Compaynons of the ſaid mooſt Noble Ordre; amonge the which Eſtatutis been certeyne doubtis and ambiguities, which to be more playnly declared, interpreted and extended, it is thought right neceſſary and expedient, and that certeyne other new Ordinances and Articles be to the ſaid Statutes added and adjoyned. Wherefore the ſaid mooſt excellent and victorious Prynce *Henry* VIII. Kyng of *England* and of *Fraunce*, Defenſor of the Faith, and Lord of *Irland*, and Soverayne of the ſaid mooſt Noble Order; and for the right

ſingular Love, good Zeal, ardent and intier Affection that his Royall Majeſtie hath and bearith to the ſaid mooſt Noble Order, and to the Eſtate of Chivalrie and Knyghthood, and for the honorable contynuance and encreaſing the ſame. And alſo at the hmuble requeſte and inſtante deſire of the Knyghts and Companyons of the ſaid Noble Order, and by their Advyſe, Councell and Aſſent, the twenty third Day of *April*, in the Year of Grace MDXXII: and of his mooſt Noble Reign the eighth Year, made interpretacion and declaracion of the Obſcurities, Doubtis, and Ambiguities, of the ſaid Eſtatutes, Ordinances, Intetpretacions, Declaracions, Reformacions, with their additions aforeſaid, after the trew intencion of them, ſhall be from henceforth obſerved, kept and enſued by the Soverayne, and the Knyghtes Confreres and Companyons of the ſaid Noble Order, in manner and fourme following.

I. Firſte, It is ordened and accorded, That the Kyng and his Heires and Succeſſors, Kyngs of *England*, ſhall be for evermore Soveraynes of the ſaide mooſt Noble Order and amiable Companye of Saynt *George*, named the Gartier, to the which Soverayn, and to his Heires and Succeſſours, ſhall apperteine the Declaracion, Solucion, Determinacion, Interpretacion, Reformacion, and diſpoſition of all Cauſes, concernyng and towchyng any thing of Obſcuritie or Dowbte conteyned in the Statutes of the ſaid mooſt Noble Order.

II. *Item*, It is accorded, That none ſhall be elected and choſen for to be Fellow or Companyon of the ſaid mooſt Noble Order, except that he be a Gentilman of Blood, and that he be a Knyghte, and without reproche. And that the Knyghtes of the ſaid Noble Order, from henſforth, ſhall not Name any Perſon in their Election to be Felow or Companyon of the ſaid Noble Order, in whom thei ſhall thynke or extiem in their Conſcience to have Spotte of Reproche. And as towchyng the Declaracion of a Gentilman of Blode, it is declared and determined that he ſhall be deſcended of three decentis of Nobleſſe, that is to ſay, of Name and of Arms, both of his Father's ſide, and alſo of his Mother's ſide. And as towchyng or concernyng any manner of reproche, foraſmoche as there be divers and many ſundry Poyntis of reproche, there ſhall be here declared but three Poyntes of them oonly, as it is declared in manner and fourme folowyng.

The

A Liſt of all the preſent *Knights-Companions* of the mo
occur in their *Stalls* in the Royal Chappel of St. G
the reſpective Times of their Inſtallations.

The Sovereign's Side.

3.	1. *The Sovereign*, George, *King of* Great-Britain, France *and* Ireland; *inſtalled* March 13. 1702-3. 2 *Queen* Anne.
5. Charles Fitzroy, *Duke of* Cleveland *and* Southampton, *&c. inſtalled* April *the firſt*, 1673. 25 Charles II.	
7. Charles Lenox, *Duke of* Richmond, *&c. inſtalled* April 20*th*, 1681. 33 Charles II.	
9. George Fitzroy, *Duke of* Northumberland, *&c. inſtalled* April 8*th*, 1684. 36 Charles II.	
11. Charles Talbot, *Duke of* Shrewsbury, *&c. inſtalled* June 5*th*, 1694. 6 William *and* Mary.	
13. Arnold Jooſt Van Keppel, *Earl of* Albemarle, *&c. inſtalled* May 14*th*, 1700. 12 William III.	
15. Meinhardt Schonbergh, *Duke of* Schonbergh; *inſtalled* September 2*d*, 1703. 2 *Queen* Anne.	
17. John Campbel, *Duke of* Argyle, *&c. inſtalled* December 22*d*, 1710. 9 *Queen* Anne.	
19. John Poulett, *Earl* Poulett, *&c. inſtalled* Auguſt 4*th*, 1713. 12 *Queen* Anne.	
21. Thomas Wentworth, *Earl of* Strafford, *&c. inſtalled* Auguſt 4*th*, 1713. 12 *Queen* Anne.	
23. Charles Poulet, *Duke of* Bolton, *&c. inſtalled* December 9*th*, 1714. 1 *King* George.	
25. Lionel-Cranfield Sackvil, *Earl of* Dorſet *and* Middleſex; *inſtalled* December 9*th*, 1714. 1 *King* George.	

he moſt Noble Order of the *Garter*; as their Places St. *George*, within the College of *Windſor*: Shewing

The Prince's Side.

2. George-Auguſt, *Prince of* Wales, *&c. inſtalled* December 22*d*, 1706. 5 *Queen* Anne.	4.

6. John Sheffield, *Duke of* Buckingham *and* Normanby, *&c. inſtalled* May 28*th*, 1674. 26 Charles II.

8. Charles Seymour, *Duke of* Somerſet, *&c. inſtalled* April 8*th*, 1684. 36 Charles II.

10. James Butler, *Duke of* Ormond, *&c. inſtalled* April 5*th*, 1689. 1 William *and* Mary.

12. Thomas Herbert, *Earl of* Pembroke *and* Montgomery, *&c. inſtalled* May 14*th*, 1700. 12 William III.

14. John Churchill, *Duke of* Marlborough, *&c. inſtalled* March 13*th*, 1702-3: 2 *Queen* Anne.

16. William Cavendiſh, *Duke of* Devonſhire, *&c. inſtalled* December 22*d*, 1710. 9 *Queen* Anne.

18. Henry de Grey, *Duke of* Kent, *&c. inſtalled* Auguſt 4*th*, 1713. 12 *Queen* Anne.

20. Robert Harley, *Earl of* Oxford, *and Earl* Mortimer, *&c. inſtalled* Auguſt 4*th*, 1713. 12 *Queen* Anne.

22. Charles Mordant, *Earl of* Peterborough *and* Monmouth, *&c. inſtalled* Auguſt 4*th*, 1713. 12 *Queen* Anne.

24. John Maners, *Duke of* Rutland, *&c. inſtalled* December 9*th*, 1714. 1 *King* George.

26. Charles Montague, *Earl of* Halifax, *&c. inſtalled* December 9*th*, 1714. 1 *King* George.


BRITISH MUSEUM
26
46
AUG

The firſt Poynt of Reproche ys, That if any Knyght (as God defende) be convaynqued or attaynted of Errour againſt the Criſten Faith Catholique, or had for any ſuche Offence ſuffred any Payne or Punicion publique.

The ſecond Poynt of Reproche is, That if any Knyght (as God defende) had been arrayned, convicted, or attainted of High Treaſon.

The third Poynt of Reproche is, That if any Knyght departe or flee away from Batayle or Journei, beyng with his Soverayne Lord, his Lieutenant or Deputie, or other Capetayne having the Kyng's Power Royal and Auctoritie; and whereas Banners Eſtandatz, or Pennons, have bene diſplaied, and that thei preceded to Fight, he that then reniouſly and cowardly flieth or departeth away from thens, ought to be eſteemed and judged to have reproche, and never worthi to be elected Knyght of the ſaid Company, (as God forbidde) do commytte any ſuch reproche; that then he ſhall be departed and diſgraded of the ſaid Order, at the next Chaptier enſuyng, if it ſoo ſhall pleaſe the Soverayne and the Company.

III. *Item*, That every Yere upon the Vigill of Saynt *George*, that is to ſay, the twenty ſecond Day of the Month of *April*, on what Day ſoever it fall on, and tho' no Service of Saynt *George* be celebrate or done, all the Knyghts of the ſaid Company beyng in any Place or Places of their Liberties, in what Places ſoever it be, ſhall be bounde for to were the hole Habit of the ſaid Order; that is to wit, Robe, Mantell, Hudde, and Coller, from the owre of the firſt Even Songe, at the owre of *Tierce*, that is, at three of the Clocke at Afternone, untill the ſaid Even Songe, and other Devyne Service, Souper, and Voydance, be done and accompliſhed; and likewyſe on the Morrow on Saynt *George's Day* at Matens, Proceſſion, * Maſs, and the ſeconde Even Songe and all the ſaid Day, untyll that Souper and Voydance be done, as ys aforeſaid.

* *Divine Service.*

IV. *Item*, That if for any Cauſes it ſhould pleaſe the ſaid Soverayne to proroge the ſaid Feaſt and Solemnytie of Saint *George*, or that the ſaid Feaſt ſhuld be prolonged and proroged to another Day, that all the Knyghtis of the ſaid Order, that ſhall be within the Realme of *England*, ſhall gyve their Attendance the Even and the Day of Saynt *George*, on the Parſon of the ſaid Soverayne, and ſhall

fynde themſelffes in his Company, in what Place ſoever he be within the ſaid Realme of *England*, and they ſo gyving their Attendance upon his ſaid Parſon the ſaid Even and Day, ſhall obſerve and kepe the Servyce of Saynt *George*, if the Ordenance and Commaundement of holye Church doth ſuffre and permit it, and if the Ordenaunce of the Church doth not permit it, in this behalfe they be bound to tarry with the Soverayne, and heare ſuch Servyce as all be than limited and ordened by the holy Churche to be done and celebrated, the ſaid Even and Day of Saynt *George*, in obſervyng and kepyng, duryng the ſaid Daies, of all other Ceremonies, alwell in goyng to the Chapter upon the ſaid Even before Even Song at Afternone, and the ſaid Day of Saynt *George* at Afternone, before the laſte Even Songe, and alſo in weryng their hole Habit; and every Knyght beyng in his own Stall in kepyng the Devine Servyce, from the tyme of the fyrſt Even Song of the ſaid Even, Matens and * Maſſe, unto the laſt Even Song of the ſaid Day, and the Morrow after enſuying before the † Maſſe of *Requiem*, they ſhall take their Mantells, upon ſuche Gownes as ſhall pleaſe them, and ſhall enter into the Chapter, if there be eny Election or other great Affaires, before the ſaid * Maſſe of *Requiem*, in uſing ſuch Ceremonyes to this accuſtomed, as though they were preſent in the ſaid Caſtell of *Wyndeſore*. And in caſe that the ſaid Soverayne be come, and entred into the ſaid Chapiter, and that ſome of the ſeid Felows of the ſaid Order be not entred or come with hym, and ſhulde tary behynde, in caſe they that have not gyven and done dew Attendance upon hym, ſhall abide withoute the Dores of the ſaid Chapiter, without entryng into it, duryng all the tyme that the ſaid Soverayne and other Knyghtes ſhall be in the ſaid Chapter for that tyme. And if ſo be that eny of the above-named Knyghtes come to late to the firſt Even Song of the ſaid Even or Mattens * Maſſe, or laſte Even Soog, the ſaid Day of Saynt *Geooge*, he ſhall have for Penance, that during the tyme and ſpace of ſuch Devyne Servyce he ſhall knele or ſtande before his Stall in the Place of the Quereſters; and if he come not to gyve Attendance upon the Parſon of the ſaid Soverayne the ſayd Even and Day of Saynt *George* as is aforeſaid, and that he have no Lycence

* *Divine Service.*

† *Divine Service.*

* *Divine Service.*

* *Divine Service.*

cence or other reaſonable Excuſe, and that it be acceptable to the ſaid Soverayne; for his abſence in this Caſe, the ſaid Knyght that ſoo ſhall have done, for his Penance, ſhall not come in his Stall at the next Feaſt enſuyng, in the preſence of the Soverayne, nor in his ſaid Stall in the ſaid College of *Wyndeſore*; and farthermore ſhall Pay ten Pounds, for to be converted and beſtowed to the uſe of the Ornaments of the ſaid College.

V. *Item*, If it chaunſed that any of the Knyghtes of the ſaid Order, by Leave or Licens, or otherwiſe, were in his Houſe, or in any other Place, at his Libertie and Fraunchiſe, the ſaid Even and Day of Saynt *George*, he ſhall be bound to cauſe to be prepared a Capitall Stall in the Church or Chappel in the which he ſhall heare Devine Service. In the Capitall Stall ſhall be ſett and elevated the Order of Saynt *George*, named the Gartier, beyng within the Gartier; and his propre Arms, within the Gartier alſo ſhall be ſet at a Stall that ſhall be aſmoche in diſtance, after the proportion and quantity of the ſaid Church or Chappel, from the Stall of the ſaid Soverayn, as is his Stall in the Caſtle of *Wyndeſore*, and ſhall were his ſaid Habit hole, and ſhall heare the Devyne Service, ſuche as by the Holy Church is ordened and limited for the ſaid Day, as well the firſt Even Song Mattens * Maſſe, as the latter Even Songe. In doyng by him, firſt Reverence to the Aulter, in the Honor of God, and after to the Stall where is fixed or ſet up the Armes of the ſaid Order, as well and as often at his comyng in, as at his goyng owte of the ſaid Church or Chappel; and alſo as often as he ſhall paſſe before the ſaid Armes allwey, excepte the Emperours, Kynges, Princes, and Electors. The which may in this caſe ſo ordeyne their Seats and Stalles, as that ſhall ſeme them beaſt, and at their Pleaſure.

* *Divine Service.*

VI. *Item*, If that were ſo, that without any Prorogation the ſaid Feaſt and Solempnyte of Saynt *George* were kept and celebrated the ſaid Day and Even of Saynt *George*, in the ſaid Caſtell of *Wyndeſore*; and if it were not the Pleaſure of the ſaid Soverayne for to be preſent, or that conveniently he may not be there in Parſon the ſaid Day and Feaſt, at his ſaid Caſtell of *Wyndeſore*; That in this Caſe, in what Place that his Pleaſure ſhall be, beyng within this his Realme of *England*, his Majeſtie may ap-

poynte and Commande ſuche Knyghtes of the ſeid Order as beſt ſhall ſeme hym, there for to kepe Company and geve Attendance upon the Parſon, and to kepe all and lyke Ceremonyes as though they were at the ſaid Caſtell of *Wyndeſore*; and they doyng the thynges aboveſaid, ſhall be excuſed for their abſence of the Feaſt of Saynt *George*, holden at the ſaid Caſtell of *Wyndeſore* for that Yere.

VII. *Item*, It is agreed that if the Soverayne cannot be at Saynt *George*'s Feaſt, that he ſhall make his Deputy, by his Letters, for to kepe the Chapter upon Saynt *George*'s Even, at the Owre of *Tierce*, the which is at three of the Clocke at Afternone, and on Saynt *George*'s Day, to kepe the ſaid Feaſt at the Coſtes of the ſaid Soverayne for the ſpace aboveſaid, without any new Ordenance to be made, havyng Power to correcte and redreſſe all Poynts of the ſaid Chapter as for then ſhall ſeme neceſſary.

VIII. *Item*, That every one on Saynt *George*'s Even, that is to wit, the twenty ſecond Day of *April*, a gatheryng together ſhall be made of all the Knyghtes of Saynt *George* within the Caſtell of *Wyndeſore*, that is to wit, of all them that ſhall be within this Realme of *Englande* or withoute, that conveniently may come; and there they ſhall have the Service of Saynt *George*, and alſo ſhall were their hole Habit of the ſaid Order, duryng the ſeid Servyce, being ordinarily in theyre Stalls. And every of them ſhall have his Banner, Sworde, with his Helme and Creſte, above his Stall, the which, duryng his Lyff, ſhall abyde in the ſaid Chappell for his Honor, and in Signe and Knowledge that he beres them in defence of holy Churche, as the Order of Knyghthod requireth. But in Caſe that the ſeid Feaſt of Saynt *George* happen to fall within fifteen Days after the Feaſt of *Eaſter*, or upon any Fyſhe-Daye or Faſtyng-Day, then ſhall it be proroged and prolonged at the Soverayn's Pleaſure, as above is ſaid, if ſo be that the Day of the ſeid Feaſt be not aſſigned nor ordeyned to be kepte the twenty fourth, twenty fifth, twenty ſixth, nor the laſt Day of *April*, nor upon the fowre firſt Dayes of *May*, for by cauſe of the impediment or let of Devyne Servyce ordened by Holy Churche, for the double Feaſts of Saynt *Marke*, *Philipp* and *Jacob*, and the invention of the Holy Croſs of our Lord Jeſu Chryſte, nor at ſuch Dayes as ſhall fall the Aſſencion, or the Feaſt

of

of *Pentecoſte*, or any other Feaſte of Solempnitie as is ordened in Holy Churche, whereby the fyrſt or ſecond Even Songe, by ſuche Prorogacions, might be letted or diſtorbed.

IX. *Item*, That all the Knyghtes of the ſaid Order ſhall come Yerely in the ſaid Place of the ſaid Caſtell of *Wyndeſore*, on Saynt *George's* Even, at the Owre of *Tierce*, the which is at three of the Clocke at Afternoone, as it is aboveſaid; and if thei come not at the tyme aſſigned, without havyng a juſte and reaſonable Excuſe, that they may be acceptable to the ſaid Soverayne or to his Deputy, or otherwyſe pardoned by the ſaid Soverayne, of their abſence, by ſpecial Letters of Excuſe, in the whiche Letters theyr Names and Cauſes ſhall be wryten, or otherwyſe ſhall have their Pennance after the Ordenaunce and Agreement of the ſaid Chapter; And the ſaid Ordenaunce is ſuch, that they ſhall not entre into the Chaptre for that tyme, but ſhall byde without the Dore, and ſhall have Voyce in any thynge that is done in the ſaid Chapter at that tyme allonly; and if they come not to Even Songe before the begynnyng of the ſaid Even Songe, they ſhall not enter into their Stalles, but ſhall byde belowe affore the ſaid Stallis, in the Queriſters Places, duryng the ſaid Even Songe; and like Pennance is ordened for them that come not to the High * Maſſe betyme, and at Even Songe on St. *George's* Daye. And if there be any that come not to the Feaſte, and have not a reaſonable Excuſe towarde the Soverayne or his Deputye, as is above declared, his Pennance ſhall bee, that he ſhall not enter within his Stalle the next Feaſte after, but ſhall byde below, as it is ſaid at the firſt Even Songe, and ſhall goo in the Proceſſion before all the * three Croſſes, and ſhall ſit below as afore is ſaid, all the † Maſſe tyme, untyl the Offering, and he ſhall Offer laſte; and after his Pennance ſo done, incontinent he ſhall come before the Soverayn's Stalle, or his Deputye, and there he ſhall aske Pardon; and after that, the Soverayne or his Deputye ſhall Command hym to goo unto his Stalle in his fyrſt Eſtate; and if he come not to the ſeconde Feaſte, and be dwellyng within the Realm, without having any Excuſation alowable to the Soverayne or his Deputye, as is aboveſaid, he ſhall not enter into his

* *Morning Service.*

* *Queriſters.*
† *Divine Service.*

Stalle from thenceforth, until the tyme that he hath gyven and offered a Jewell unto Saynte *George*'s Aultar, within the ſaid Chappell, of the valew of twenty Markes of Silver of Troye, and fro thensforwarde, he ſhall double every Yere the Penaltie, unto the tyme he be reconſciled.

X. *Item*, It is agreed, That if any Knyghte of the ſayd Companye be founde in apperte without his Garter, that he pay anon, after that the Chalenge be made to hym by any of the five Officers of the Order, or of the Warden of the ſeid College, a Marke of Money, except he be boted for to ryde, that then it ſhall ſuffice to were under his bote a blew Ribande of Sylke, in ſignyfying of the Garter, and alſo provided that no Knyght of the ſeid Order from hensforthe, do entre into the Chaptre without his Garter, upon the Payne aboveſaid; and whoſoever of the ſaid Officers or Warden ſhall make the fyrſt Chalence, ſhall have the Penaltye for his Labor.

XI. *Item*, It is agreed, That the Knyghts of the Order of St. *George*, alway, and as often as they were theyr Mantels, they ſhall goo before there Soverayne, every of them with his Felow, that is for aneynſt him ordinarily as they be ſet in their Stalls. And if it ſhould happen that eny of them were not there preſent, his Felow for aneynſt hym ſhall goe alone. the which Order ſhall be kepte and obſerved, as well in goyng in Proceſſion as elliſwhere in other Places. But at the Offryng, the Soverayne or his Deputye ſhall goo before all the Company, and the ordinaire Officers of the ſaid Order ſhall goo as they have bene accuſtomed, when any Proceſſion ſhall be done in the Chapter, Chappell, or elliſwhere. And for the Order of the ſaid Knyghtes for to ſitt at the Table, for to take their refeccion by it at Dinner, or at Souper, they ſhall ſitt all along on one ſide after there Stalles, and not after there State, except Children or Bretherne of Kinges, Princes, and Dukes, that be Strangers, the which ſhall kepe their Places and Romes after their Aſtate; and at their voiding and going out ſhall abide and goo in Order, ſo as thei ſat at the Table.

XII. *Item*, It is agreed, That every one of them at the Caſtell of *Wyndeſore*, on the Morrow after the Feaſt of Saynt *George*, before the departyng of the Company, that the ſaid Knyghtes, upon ſuch Gownes as ſhall pleaſe them, at the Chapter Dore, ſhall take their Mantels, and ſhall

goo

goo into the ſaid Chapter, and after that ſhall goo and here a * Maſſe of *Requiem*, the which ſhall be Solempnely ſonge for the Souls of all the Felows of the ſaid Order, which be departed and deceaſſed, and for all Chriſten Sowlles; and that all the Company be there preſent, without eny of them be lett bi a reaſonable Cauſe, or have Lyſence of the Soverayne or his Deputie before the departyng; and when it happens that for any Cauſe of the voydyng of eny of the ſaid Felowſhip, there ſhall be certayne Banners, Swordes, Helmets, and Creſtes, the which ought to be offered up before the offeryng of eny Silver, the ſaid Hachements ought to be offered, fyrſt the Banner, by two of the ſeid Felowſhip, ſuch as the Soverayne or his Deputye ſhall appoynte or name, and after that the Sworde ſhall be offered by two other, and likewiſe his Helmet and Creſt by two other Knyghtes of the ſeid Order, aſſigned by the Soverayne or his Deputye; and if any Knyghte of the ſeid Order ſhuld deceaſe the Yere afore, then every Knyghte beyng in the ſaid Caſtell of *Wyndeſore*, at the ſaid * Maſſe of *Requiem*, ſhall offer a Tapre armed with a little Scuchion, of the Arms of the Knyghte departed; and if there were more then one deceaſſed, that then be made for every of them a Scuchion of Arms, and a grote ſett nye to the light of the Tapre, the which Scuchions and Tapers ſhall be made at the Coſte and Charge of the Knyghts of the ſeid Order.

* *Divine Service.*

* *Divine Service.*

XIII. *Item*, It is agreed, That all Strangers that ſhall be electe Felowes of the ſeid Order, ſhall be certifyed by Letters of the Soverayne of their Election. The which Letters of Certification, with the Statutes of the ſeid Order, under the common Seal, ſhall be ſent unto them, at the Coſte and Charges of the ſeid Soverayne, in all diligence, and at the ſardeſt thei ſhall be certifyed of this within foure Moneths after the ſeid Election, to the end that the ſeid Electe may advyſe them by the ſeid Statutis, if they will receyve the ſeid Order or no. But if the ſeid Soverayne have greate and high Lettes and Buſynes, that then he may deferre the Certification of the ſeid Election at his good Pleaſure, unto tyme of opportunitie and convenient. After that the Certification have byn delivered, and that the Soverayne ſhall be certefied that the

the ſaid Electe will receyve the ſaid Order; Then the Soverayne ſhall ſende unto the ſaid Electe by his Ambaſſadours his hole Habit, with the Gartier and Coller; and that all ſuch Strangers, of what Eſtate, Dignytie, or Condicion, that they be of, ſhall ſende within ſeven Moneths after the reception of the ſaid Gartier, Coller, and Habit, and that he have certified the Soverayne to have reſeyved thoſe thyngs, a ſufficient Deputye or Attorney, after the Aſtate of his Lorde and Maiſter, ſo be that he be a Knyghte without Repreche, to be ſtalled in his place; the whiche ſhall bryng with him a Mantell of blew Velvett, of the Order of that which he ſhall ſend him, and alſo his Banner, Sworde, Helme, and Creſt, for to be and abide within the ſaid College duryng his Lyff. And that the Mantell, in the tyme that the ſaid Deputye or Attorney ſhall be ſtalled by the Soverayne or his Deputye, put upon his right Arme, for to hold the ſaid Mantell upon his Arme, and ſhall be accompanyed and ledd by two of the Knyghtes of the ſaid Order, from the Dore of the Chapter unto the Stalle, and there beyng ſhall make his Oath, and ſhall be ſtalled for, and in the Name of his ſaid Lorde and Maiſter, and the ſaid Mantell aboveſaid, the ſaid Attorney or Deputye ſhall bere it upon his right Arme duryng the Devyne Servyce; beyng ſett in the Stalle of his ſaid Maiſter and Lorde without beryng of it at any tyme after: And to have no manner of Voyce in the Chaptre, or to come in it, in the abſence of hym that hath ſent hym. And if he ſend not his ſaid Attorney within ſeven Moneths aboveſaid, without havyng a reaſonable Excuſe, which ſhall be acceptable to the Soverayne or his Deputye, the Election ſhall be void of hym; except ſo be, that the ſaid Knyghte be lett and diſtorbed by great Affaires; then he may ſend his Excuſe to the ſaid Soverayne, or to his Deputye, within a Moneth after; and after he is, as the Soverayne or his Deputye will allowe it, or accepte it; that then the ſaid Soverayne or his Deputye, may geve unto hym four Moneths more of reſpite; and if he came not or ſent not his Attorney, before that the tyme of the four Moneths be fyniſhed, that then in this caſe the Election ſhall be hole voyde from hym for that tyme. And it is to be knowne, that this Favoure is done and ſhewed to the Strangers, the which may not well come in their proper Parſons, that they myght

myght be ſtalled by Attourneys; to the ende that they may be partetakers of the * Maſſes, and all the Prayers of the ſeid Order, for they they ſhoulde fayle of the half, yf they were not ſtalled before their Deathe. And likewiſe it is ordened for them that be never Choſen and electe of the ſaid Order, beyng in the Kyngs Warres by his Commaundement, for to enjoy of the Benefytes of the ſaid Statutes, to that that ſhall appertayne allonly to their Stallacion.

* *Divine Service.*

XIV. *Item*, There is alſo ordened a Dean and Warden, with twelve Cannons Seculers, the which ſhall be Priſtz at their entryng in, or ells within a Yere nexte folowyng; and alſo eight Peticanons and twelve Vicars, alſo Preſtes at their entryng in, or ells at the gyvyng of the next Orders, or at the furdeſt within a Yere after their Preſentacion; alſo thirteen Clerkes and thirteen Queriſters, for to ſyng and Pray unto God for the proſperity of the Soverayne and all the Knyghtes of the ſaid Order lyving, and alſo for the Sowles of all the Knyghtes of the ſaid Order departed, and for all Cryſten Sowles; and the Preſentation of the ſaid Cannons ſhall belonge allway to the Soverayne of the ſaid Order; and the ſaid Cannons, when any Knyghte of the ſaid Order is there preſent within the Quyer of the ſaid Chappel, ſhall ſitt in the lowermoſt Seates, where they be wonte to ſitt at the Feaſtes of Saynt *George*; and in the abſence of the ſaid Knyghtes, the ſaid Cannons may ſitt in the high Seates nexte unto the Stalles of the ſaid Knyghtes.

XV. *Item*, There be ordened five Officers appertaynyng to the ſaid Order; that is to witt, Prelate, Chaunceler, Regiſter, and Kyng of Armes, named Gartier, and an Huyſher at Armes, named the Blacke-Rod; the which ſhall be receyved and Sworne to be of the Councell of the ſaid Order; the Secretes, with alſoo their Charges and Privileges, ſhall expreſſely be declared in the Booke of the Ordenances of the ſaid Officers.

XVI. *Item*, It is alſo ordened, That thirteen pore Knyghtes, that have not wherwithall to lyve, for to have in that Place their lyvyng and ſuſtentacion conveniently, for their good Prayers in the Honor of God and Saynt *George*, of the which the Charges and Privileges hereafter ſhall be declared folowyng: The Ordynances of the Officers and of their Election is ordened, as of the Preſentacion

tacion of the Cannons, ſo that allway the Election ſhall abyde to the ſaid Soverayne; and it is agreed that the pore Knyghtes ſhall have their Mantells of Scarlett, and a Scuchion of the Armes of Saynt *George*, without a Gartier.

XVII. *Item*, It is agreed, That every Knyghte of the ſaid Company ſhall leave his Mantell within the ſaid College, for any ſodayne Chaunſes that myght happen, for to kepe, holde and obſerve, all ſuche Ordenances, Precepts and Commaundements, which may be advyſed in Chapter by the ſaid Sovereign. The which Soverayne, by the Conſent and Agrement of ſix Knyghtes of the ſaid Order, may at all Tymes and Places, at his Pleaſure, Sommon and make to be kepte Chaptre for all ſuche Cauſes, as it ſhall pleaſe to the ſaid Soverayne to name, towching the ſaid Order.

XVIII. *Item*, It is agreed, That if it fortune, that any of the ſaid Companye ſhulde come within eleven Myle of the Caſtell, that he ſhall goo in, if he may, for the Honor of the Place, if he be not buſied or lett by ſome juſte Cauſe, and that he take his Mantell before he entre within the ſaid Chappell; and alſoo that he enter not in, but he have his Mantell upon hym; and the Cannons there beyng preſent for that tyme, ſhall come to receyve hym, and devotly ſhall bring hym into the ſaid Chappel; and if it be in tyme of * Maſſe, he ſhall tarry and heare Maſſe in the Honor of God and of Saynt *George*; and if it be at Afternone, he ſhall come in, in manner aboveſaid; and there ſhall be ſaid by the Cannons *de Profundis*, for all Criſten Sowles, and there ſhall offer and returne to his Stalle; and if any of the ſaid Companye ride thorowgh the Town, and wyll not offer as agreed, that upon his Obedience for every tyme that he faileth, he ſhall goe one Myle a Fote from the ſaid Chappell unto the ſaid Place, in Honor of Saynt *George*; and alſo for every tyme that he ſhall ſo fayle, he ſhall gyve a Grote for his Offrynge; the which diſtance, for to come nygh unto the ſaid Caſtell, is two Myles allonly and no more.

* *Divine Service.*

XIX. *Item*, It is accorded the thirty ſecond Yere of our Soverayne Lorde Kynge *Henry* VIII. by the Grace of God, Kynge of *Englande* and of *Fraunce*, Defenſor of the Faithe, Lorde of *Irland*, *&c.* upon Saynt *George*'s Day, the

the twenty third Day of *Aprill*, at a Chapter holden at the Paleys of *Weſtminſter*, by the Soverayne and the Companyons of the ſaid Noble Order then there aſſembled; That as ſone as the deth of any of the Company of the ſaid Order ſhall be certeynly knowen, every of the reſt, beyng no Strangiers, ſhall, accordyng to the rates of their Degrees hereafter ſpecified, immediately, upon a demande to be made for the ſame by the Regiſter and the Dean, or one of them, to be by one of them employed in Aulmes Deeds, as in mendyng of High Wayes, or ſuch other Workes of Charitie, as the Kyng's Majeſtie from tyme to tyme ſhall lymite and appoynte, the ſeverall Somes of Money enſuyng. Furſt, The Soverayne, eight Pounds ſix Shillings and eight Pence; a King of another Realme, ſix Pounds thirteen Shillings and four Pence; the Prince, five Pounds ſixteen Shillings and eight Pence; a Duke, five Pounds; a Marqueſs, three Pounds fifteen Shillings; an Erle, fifty Shillings; a Viſconte, forty one Shillings and eight Pence; a Baron, thirty three Shillings and four Pence; a Bacheler Knyghte, ſixteen Shillings and eight Pence. Of all which Somes thus to be receyved, the ſaid Dean and Regeſter, or eyther of them, ſhall yerely, at the Chapter, preſent his Accompte to the Kyng's Majeſtie, with his true and juſte declaracion of disburſyng agayne, and defraying of the ſame. In that Cauſe the Partie whoſe Porcyon ſhall apere to be unpayde, ſhall in the Name of a Payne add unto his former Dutye another thirde parte of the ſame, and ſo for every Yere that he ſhall be behynde, to pay a thirde parte more than he ſhuld pay if he ſhuld ſatisfye his Ordinary, accordyng to the rate before expreſſed; and if the Dean or Regiſter, or any of them, ſhall not at every ſuche Chapter preſent the Certificate of the Receipts and Payments in fourme aforeſaid, whereby the ſame may apere to the Soverayne and Companyons of the Order then preſent, or at the leeſt he in whome the defawlt ſhall reſt, ſhall in the Name of a Payne contente and paye immediately, to be employed abowte like purpoſe as afore, the Some of ten Pounds for every ſuch defaulte.

XX. *Item*, It is agreed, That if any of the ſaid Companye die, that the Soverayne or his Deputie, after that they ſhall have certification of his Deth, ſhall be bounde for

for to ſend and gyve knowlege by ther Letters to all the Felowſhip of the ſaid Order, beyng within *Englande*, for to come and be with the ſaid Soverayne or his Deputie, in what place ſoever it be, where it ſhall pleaſe hym to aſſigne, convenyently within ſix Wekys after the certification of the Deth or Deceaſe of the ſaid Knyghte; the which allſoo aſſembled, or at the leſt ſix, with the Soverayne or his Deputie aboveſaid, every of them that there ſhall be preſent come to the Election, ſhall name nine of the worthieſt and ſufficient Knyghtes withoute Reproffe that he ſhall knowe, Subjectes to the ſaid Soverayne, or others, ſo be that they holde no contrary Partie or be agaynſt hym; that is to witt, three Dukes, three Marqueſs, Erles, or of greater Aſtate, three Barons, or Banerettis, and three Bachelers; the which denominations the cheiff Prelate of the ſaid Order ſhall wryte; that is to witt, the Byſhop of *Wyncheſter* for the tyme beyng, or in his abſence the Chaunceler, or the Dean, or Regiſter, or the mooſte auncient Reſidencer of the ſaid College in their abſence, and the denominacion ſoo done by all, or ſix at the leeſt, by hym that have Written ſhall be ſhewed to the ſaid Soverayne or to his Deputie, that then ſhall Choſe of them that be named he that ſhall have the mooſt Voyces, and alſo he that the Soverayne ſhall exteme to be mooſt Honorable to the ſayde Order, and mooſt profitable to his Crowne and to his Realme. And if there be any Knyght of the ſaid Order that doth fayle for to come to the ſaid Election, if he be not lett by a juſte Cauſe, and that the ſaid cauſe of his Excuſe ſhewed under his Seal of Armes, be founde by the Soverayne or his Deputie to be juſte and reaſonable, then his Excuſe to be accepted and allowed; and that if his Cauſe be not juſte, and that he come not to the Seremonies above-named, it is agreed that he ſhall Paye to the Warden of the College for to ſynge for hym that is departed, twenty Shillings Sterling; and at his nexte comyng to the Chapter, he ſhall not be before the Soverayne or his Deputie and the Company; and ſhall knele upon the Grounde in the myddes of the Chapter, untyll the tyme that he be reconſiled by the Soverayne or his Deputie and the ſaid Companye.

XXI. *Item*, It is agreed, That if any Knyghte of the ſaid Companye ſhulde departe, and another is Choſen and Electe, he ſhall have ſone after his Election the Garter,

in

in ſignyfyeng that he ys one of the Knyghtes and Felowes of the Order of the Garter, and his Robe and Hode ſhall be delivered hym in the Chapter-Houſe incontinently, after that his Commiſſion hath been red before the Soverayne or his Deputie and the Companye, and after that ſhall be led by two Knyghtes of the ſaid Order, accompanied with the other Noblemen, and the Officers of the Order ſhall alſo be preſent, and his Mantell ſhall be borne before hym by one of the Knyghtes of the ſaid Order, or by the Kyng at Armes of the Order. The which Mantell ſhall be delyvered to hym for his Habit, after that he ſhall have made his Oth before his Stalle, and not before. And this done, he ſhall retorne into the Chapter-Houſe, where he ſhall reſeyve, by the Soverayne or his Deputie, the Coler, and ſoo he ſhall have the full Poſſeſſion of his Habit holely, except great Prynces Strangers, the which may receyve their Habit holely within the Chapter-Houſe, as it hath been uſed and accuſtomed in tymes paſte, for the ſhortenyng of tyme. And if he die before he have receyved hys Habit, he ſhall not be named one of the Founders, ſeyng that he lacketh to have full Poſſeſſion of his Aſtate: But he ſhall have the one halfe of the Maſſes above-named for the delyverance of the Garter, and none other thynge above it. And if he ſoo Choſen come not in all good diligence, after the reception of the ſaid Garter in the ſaid Place to be ſtalled, and in ſpecyally within the Yere of his Election, if he be a Knyghte dwellyng within the Realme, and hath none Excuſe reaſonable, allowable, and acceptable to the ſaid Soverayne or his Deputie and the Company; then the Election ſhall be voyd of hym, and the Soverayne or his Deputie and the Companye, ſhall goo and make another new Election, and neyther the Banner, the Sworde, nor the Helmet, nor Creſt, of hym ſo Choſen, be put upon his Stalle within the Caſtell before his commyng; to the ende that if he come not, his ſaid Hachementes, as Banner, Sworde, Helmer, be not taken down nor avoled, but honeſly put oute of the Quyer, and the reaſt of other thyngs ſhall abyde, to the profitt and uſe of the ſaide Order.

XXII. *Item*, It is agreed, That if any of the Dukes, Marques, Erles, Vizcontes, Barons, Bandrettis, or Bachelers die; that he that ſhall come after and ſuccede in

his

his place and rome, be he Duke, Marqueſs, Erle, Vizconte, Baron, Baneret, Bacheler, or any of the Aſtates above-named, he ſhall have the ſelffe ſame Stalle his Predeceſſor had, and ſhall not change it, without he have eſpeciall Licenſe or Warrant of the ſaid Soverayne, allwayes all Emperours, Kyngs, and Prynces, be excepted, the which ſhall kepe and holde theyr Stalles after theyr Aſtate, and very nexte unto the Soverayne; and then by this meane a Duke ſhall take the Stalle of a Bacheler, and a Bacheler the Stalle of a Duke, in ſigne and knowlege of the fyrſt Founders.

XXIII. *Item*, If there be any Place or Stalle voyde, the Soverayne at his Pleaſure may advance and tranſlate, by his ſpecial Licenſe, any Knyghte of the ſaid Companye in the ſaid Stalle, ſo be it that it be more hyer then the Stalle that he was in afore; alſo the Soverayne onys in his Lyffe may, if it pleaſe hym, make a general Tranſlation of all the States at his pleaſure, excepte the Emperours, Kyngs, Prynces, and Dukes; the which allwey ſhall kepe ther Places and Stalles, if not that they be tranſlated in more hyer Rome and Stalle, in the which tranſlacion the long contynuance in the Ordre, and the praiſes, worthynes, and Merites of the Knyghtes ought to be conſidered and remembred; the which Knyghtes from hensforth in goyng and ſyttyng at all tymes, that they ſhall were their Mantells, ſhall kepe their Places after the Order of their Stallis, and not after their Aſtatis, as is aforeſaid.

XXIV. *Item*, It is agreed, That all the Felowis aboveſaid, at their fyrſt commyng in, ſhall gyve every of them a certayne Somme, after their Aſtate, for the entertaynyng and mayntenance of the Cannons and pore Knyghtes dwellyng in the ſaid Place, and for the Almes Dedes that is there perpetualli ordenyd; that is to witt, the Soverayne fourty Markes, a Stranger Kyng twenty Pounds, the Prynce twenty Markes, every Duke ten Pounds, every Marques eight Pounds ſix Shillings and eight Pence, every Erle ten Markes, every Vizconte five Pounds ſixteen Shillings and eight Pence, every Baron and Baneret, five Pounds, every Bacheler five Markes; and their Baners, Helmetts, Creſtis, and Swordis, ſhalle not be ſet over their Stalles untyll the tyme that they have payd, at their entryng, the foreſaid Sommes, every one after

after his Aſtate and Degree whereof he is; and that is to witt, the Soverayne is bounde to pay for every Stranger that ſhall be Choſen and electe, when he ſhall be ſtalled in his propre Parſon, or by procurement or Attornay, and theſe Gyftes be gieven, to the entent that every one of them that ſhall entre into the Ordre, be more worthy to have the Name, Title and Priyelege of one of the Founders of the ſaid Ordre.

XXV. *Item*, It ys agreed, That every Knight within the Yere of his Stallation, ſhall cauſe to be made a Scouchon of his Armes and Hachementis in a Plate of Metall, ſuche as ſhall pleaſe hym, and that it be ſuerly ſett upon the back of his Stall; and the other that ſhall come after, ſhall have their Scochons and Hachements in like manner; but their Plates of Metall nor there Hachements ſhall not be ſoo large nor ſoo greatte as they of the firſt Founders were; excepte Strangers, which may uſe their Plates and Faſhions at their Pleaſure.

XXVI. *Item*, It ys agreed, That no Knyght choſen and electe for to be Felow of the ſaid Noble Ordre, ſhall not be ſtalled by Procurement or Attornay, excepte he be a Straunger, and may not well come hyther in his propre Parſon for to be ſtalled, or other that is buſied withoute the Realme for the Affaires of the Soverayne, or by his Commandement and Lycence, as it ys above declared.

XXVII. *Item*, That every Knyght entryng in the ſaid Ordre, ſhall Promes and Swere faithfully to obſerve and kepe the Poyntis and Articles that here followeth; that is to witt, that to his trew Powre he ſhall helpe, duryng his Lyffe, and duryng the tyme that he ſhall be Felow of the ſaid Ordre, for to kepe, defende and ſuſtayne the Honor, Quarrelles, Rightes and Lordshippes of the Soverayne of the ſaid Ordre.

Item, That with all his Powre he shall enforce hymſelffe and take payne honorably to entertayne and augment the ſaid Ordre; and if it happen hym for to know any thynge that were imagyned or procured to the contrarye, of the defence and reſiſtence of this, with all his trew Powre he ſhall put hymſelf in more gretter endevorment.

Item, That well and trewly he shall accompliſshe and entertayne all the Statutis, Poyntis and Ordynances of the ſaid Ordre; and of all this shall make a generall Othe, all and ſo as though it were redde unto hym fro Poynt to

Poynt, and Article to Article, and ſhall make the ſaid Othe to the Soverayne of the ſaid Ordre, or his Deputie, in ſweryng and promiſyng upon the Holye Goſpellis, for to kepe them and entertayne them withoute any fraude or delacion. And upon this he ſhall touche the Boke, and kyſſe the Croſſe.

Item, This done, the ſaid Knyght ſoo Choſen, with due Reverence, ſhall receyve the Garter; the whiche the, Soverayne or his Deputye ſhall put it aboute his left Leg, in ſaying theſe Words: "Sir, The lovyng Companye of "the Ordre of the Garter hath receyved you theyr Bro- "ther, Lover, and Felow; and in token and knowlege "of this, they gyve you and preſent you this preſent "Garter; the whiche God wyll that you receyve and "were from hensforth to his Praiſe and Pleaſure, and to "the Exaltacion and Honor of the ſaid Noble Order, and "of your ſelf.

XXVIII. *Item*, It is agreed, That in caſe that the Soverayne be out of the Contrey, to the whiche he cannot in propre Parſon do that ſhall appertayne to the Stallation; he may gvye Powre and Auctorite, by his Letters of Commiſſion, to two of the Felows, or to dyverſe, for to exerciſe it in his Name.

XXIX. *Item*, It is agreed, That a common Seal, a Signet of the Arms of the Ordre be made, the which ſhall reſt in the cuſtodi and kepyng of the Chanceler of the Ordre, or of ſuch a Knyghte and Felow of the ſaid Ordre as ſhall pleaſe the Soverayne to name and aſſigne; and if he that ſhall have the Seales in kepyng or cuſtodi, ſhulde departe or goo forth for any cauſe twenty Miles farre from the Soverayne, then he ſhall deliver the ſaid Seals to the Soverayne, or to ſuch Knyghte of the Ordre, or to any other Parſon that it ſhall pleaſe the ſaid Soverayne for to ordeyne and appoynte; to the entent that at no tyme the ſaid Seals be out of the preſence of the ſeid Soverayne, he beyng within his Realme; and if he be owte of his Realme, the Signet ſhall ſuffice for to Seal all ſuche Actes and Wrytynges touchyng the ſaid Ordre, that there may be concluded and made.

XXX. *Item*, It is agreed, That every Felow of the ſaid Ordre, from hensforth, ſhall have the Statutis of the ſaid Ordre firſt collected and overſene by the Regiſter, and after that ſealed with the common Seal aforeſaid: And if the

the Knyght will have any Armes devyſed, or cognyſance made within the Boke of the ſaid Statutes, then the ſaid Boke shall be delyvered to the Kynge at Armes of the Ordre, for trewly to ordayne of it as it ſhall appertayne; and the original to be likewyſe ſigned and ſealed, the whiche shall abyde in the Treaſory of the ſaid College for evermore.

XXXI. *Item*, It is agreed, That after the Death of eny of the Knyghtes of the ſaid Companye, his Executours shall be bounde for to ſende agayne, and to delyver, the Statutes of the ſaid Ordre within three Monethes after, if ſo be that the Statutes hath been delivered unto hym by the Soverayne, or to his charge; the which Statutes shall be delivered agayn to the Warden or Regiſter of the ſaid College, or to one of the principal Officers for the tyme beyng.

XXXII. *Item*, It is agreed, That none of the Knyghtes of Saynt *George*, of the ſaid Companye of the Garter, shall not goo oute of the Contrey nor Dominion of the Soverayne, without havyng Leave and Liſence of the Soverayne; and therefore it is agreed, That if eny Viage be made, or any other notable Acte, appertaynyng to the Honor of Knyghthod; the ſaid Soverayne, of his Grace, for the great Love, Favor and Confidence that he beares towarde the Knyghtes of the ſaid Ordre, will prefarre, advance and prefent the ſaid Felowes and Knyghtes of the Order of Saynt *George* before all other.

XXXIII. *Item*, That none of the Knyghtes of the ſaid Ordre ſhall not Arme themſelves the one againſt the other, but in the Warres of his Soverayne Lorde, in his right and juſte Quarell; and if it shulde happen that any of the ſaid Ordre were retayned with any Lorde, and holdyng his Partie and Quarell, and the adverſari Partie deſireth alſoo to have another Felowe of the ſaid Ordre with hym; In this caſe ſuch a Knyght and Felowe shall not be retayned, but may excuſe hym from all ſuche thynges, becauſe his Felowe is armed againſt hym on the other ſyde, and was retayned before hym; and every Knyght of the ſaid Ordre shall be bounde to excepte when he shall be retayned, that he may be holely diſchargyd from his Servyce of Warre, if any of the Felowshipp before hym retayned or holdyng the contrary and adverſari Partye; and if he that is ſecond retayned, know that any of his

Felowes be retayned before hym, and armed with his adverſari Partye ; Then he that is ſeconde retayned, at the fyrſte knowledge that he ſhall have thereof, ſhall be bounde to excuſe hym toward his Maiſter, and leave that Quarell.

XXXIV. *Item*, That all the Lycencis gyven to the Knyghtes of the ſaid Ordre that goo oute of the Realme, for to ſeke and obtayne Honor ; and all Certifications or ſendynge Letters and Writynges concernyng the ſaid Ordre, from hensforth ſhall be Sealed with one of the Seales of the ſaid Ordre.

XXXV. *Item*, It is agreed, That if eny Knyght of the ſaid Ordre, for his Devocion, wyll dwell within the ſaid Caſtell contynually ; there ſhall be ordeny'd for hym a dwellyng Place convenient, by the Aſſignment of the Soverayne, and he of his propre Goods, and at his Coſtes and Charges, ſhall provyde for hys Lyveyng.

XXXVI. *Item*, If any other Knyght, not beyng of the ſaid Ordre, hathe any wyll to dwelle there for his Devocion ; there ſhall be ordened for hym a dwellyng Place, after the Wyll and Pleaſure of the ſaid Soverayne, and with the Conſentement of the ſaid Company.

XXXVII. *Item*, It is ordened, That yf any Knyght, or other Parſon, wylle gyve any Landes, Heritage, or Rentes, for to be participant of all the good Orayſons and Prayers that ſhall be ſaid in the ſayde Place, alſo his Name ſhall be regiſtred, and the Canons and pore Knyghts ſhall Pray perpetually unto God for hym ; and alſo the ſaid Deane, Warden, and Canons of the ſaid College, from hensforth, ſhall not take any maner of Charge upon the ſaid College, withoute the Advyſe and Conſentement of the ſayd Soverayne, or his Deputye, and the Felowſhip of the ſayd Order, in Preſence, and by them concented and agreed in playne Chapter.

XXXVIII. *Item*, For to have better knowledge of the Knyghtes that ſhall be of the ſaid Order, the Soverayne of it willyth and ordeneth, by the Willes and Conſentement of all the hole Company, that from hensforth, that every Knyght of the ſaid Ordre ſhall have and were apertly and openly, a Coller of Golde about his Necke, waying thirty Ounces of Troy Weyght, and not above, the whiche Coller ſhall be made by Pieces in Faſhion of Garters, in the myddes of which Garters ſhall be a double

Reſo,

Roſe, the one Roſe of Rede, and the other within White, and the other Roſe White, and the other Roſe within Rede, and at the ende of the ſaid Coller ſhall be put and faſtned the Ymage of Saynt *George*. The whiche Coller, the ſaid Soverayne, his Succeſſours, and amiable Companye of the ſaid Ordre, ſhall be bounde to were, and in eſpeciall in principall and ſolempne Feaſts of the Yere, and in other Dayes of the Yere ſhall be holden to were a ſmall Chayne of Gold, with the Ymage of Saynt *George* dependyng at the ende of the ſaid Chayne, excepte in tyme of Warre, Sickeneſs, long Viage; then it ſhall ſuffice hym to were alonely a Laſe of Sylke, with the ſaid Image of St. *George*; and if the ſaid Coller have any need of reparacion, it might be put into the Handes of the Goldeſmyth and Workeman, unto the tyme that it be repared; the whiche Coller allſo may not be made more richer with Stones or other thynges, reſerving the ſaid Ymage, the which may be garniſhed and enryched at the Pleaſure of the ſaide Knyghte: Alſo the ſaid Coller may not be ſolde, engaged, aliened, nor gyven, for any nede, cauſe, or neceſſity whatſoever it be.

F I N I S.



THE CONTENTS.

CHAP. I.

OF *Knighthood in general, and the ſeveral Orders in* England, &c. page 1.

CHAP. II.

Of the Religious Orders of Knighthood in Chriſtendom, &c. page 19.

CHAP. III.

An Account of the Orders of Knighthood abſolutely Military. page 53.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Caſtle, Chappel, and College of Windſor. page 79.

CHAP. V.

The Inſtitution of the moſt Noble Order *of the* Garter. page 119.

CHAP. VI.

The Statutes and Annals of the Order. p. 133.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Habits and Enſigns of the moſt Noble Order *of the* Garter. page 156.

CHAP.

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. VIII.
The Officers appointed for the Service of the Order. page 189.

CHAP. IX.
The Election of a Knight into the Order. page 225.

CHAP. X.
The Inveſtiture of a Knight Subject, with the Garter and George. page 272.

CHAP. XI.
Of Preparations for the perſonal Inſtallation of a Knight. page 286.

CHAP. XII.
The perſonal Inſtallation of a Knight-Subject. page 315.

CHAP. XIII.
The Inſtallation of a Knight-Subject by Proxy. page 352.

CHAP. XIV.
The Signification of Elections to Strangers. page 360.

CHAP. XV.
The Inveſtitures of Strangers with the Habit and Enſigns of the Order. page 367.

CHAP. XVI.
The Inſtallation of a Stranger by Proxy. p. 384.

CHAP.

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. XVII.

The Duties and Fees payable by the Knights-Companions at their Inſtallations. page 404.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Grand Feaſt of the Order. page 410.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Preparations for the Grand Feaſt of the Order. page 420.

CHAP. XX.

The Order of the Ceremonies on the Eve of the Grand Feaſt. page 433.

CHAP. XXI.

The Order of the Ceremonies on the Feaſt Day. page 465.

CHAP. XXII.

The Ceremonies obſerved on the laſt Day of the Feaſt. page 484.

CHAP. XXIII.

The Obſervation of the Grand Feaſt by abſent Knights. page 486.

CHAP. XXIV.

The Degradation of a Knight-Companion. p. 489.

CHAP. XXV.

Honours paid to deceaſed Knights-Companions. page 491.

CHAP. XXVI.

A Liſt of the Founders, and Catalogue of their Succeſſors, to the preſent time. page 501.

BRITISH MUSEUM 26 46 AUG